

# ELEMENTARY LATIN



ULLMAN AND HENRY

*Ullman*

+ PA 2087 .U5 4832  
Ullman, B. L.  
Elementary Latin.

PA  
Ull  
S  
LIBRARY  
IA

**GENE W. NEWBERRY**



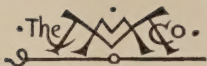
*Gene W. Newberry*

5





**ELEMENTARY LATIN**



THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

NEW YORK • BOSTON • CHICAGO • DALLAS  
ATLANTA • SAN FRANCISCO

MACMILLAN & CO., LIMITED

LONDON • BOMBAY • CALCUTTA  
MELBOURNE

THE MACMILLAN CO. OF CANADA, LTD.

TORONTO







# ELEMENTARY LATIN

WITH CORRELATED STUDIES IN  
ENGLISH  
FOR JUNIOR AND SENIOR HIGH SCHOOLS

BY

B.L. (Berthold Louis) (B. L. ULLMAN, Ph.D., 1882-1965)

PROFESSOR OF LATIN  
UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO

AND

NORMAN E. HENRY, M.A.

PEABODY HIGH SCHOOL, PITTSBURGH

*If elegance still proceedeth, and English pens maintain that stream [of new words] we have of late observed to flow from many, we shall within few years be fain to learn Latin to understand English.*

— SIR THOMAS BROWNE, 1646.

New York

THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

1928

*All rights reserved*

PRINTED IN THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

COPYRIGHT, 1923,  
BY THE MACMILLAN COMPANY.

---

Set up and electrotyped. Published March, 1923.  
Reprinted August, November, 1923; January, August, 1924; January,  
1925; September, November, 1925; February, 1926; June, 1926; October,  
1926; January, 1927; January, 1928.

SCHOOL OF THEOLOGY LIBRARY  
ANDERSON, INDIANA

Kingsport Press  
Tennessee

PA  
261  
.115

## TO THE TEACHER

ATTENTION is here called to the chief features of this book in order that teachers may use it most effectively.<sup>1</sup>

**1. Latin for English.** — First among the new features is the attention given to the correlation of Latin and English, for it is generally admitted that the chief value of first year Latin for most students is in the increased knowledge of English which it affords. Latin and English are correlated throughout as follows:

(a) *Vocabulary.* — The vocabulary of the lessons was taken chiefly from an unpublished list of those Latin words which have the largest number of English derivatives in ordinary prose. This list is the result of exhaustive research. The total vocabulary consists of only six hundred three words. Three hundred eighty-six of these words are primitives and two hundred seventeen are derivatives. The authors have made it a practice not to introduce Latin derivatives until after the primitive has been encountered, so that the task of mastering the lesson vocabularies may be simplified and the student taught to associate words according to their root meaning. By reference to Lodge's *Vocabulary of High School Latin*, it will be found that five hundred eight of these words are used five or more times in Caesar, although they

---

<sup>1</sup> In the preparation of this book careful consideration was given to the unpublished recommendations of the Committee on Classical Languages, appointed by the National Education Association, and to the *Latin Syllabus for Secondary Schools*, published by the University of the State of New York. Teachers will also find that the book meets the suggestions and requirements of the latest syllabi issued by various other state departments of public instruction.

are of a general rather than of a strictly military character. Many more Caesarean words occur in the reading selections.

For the benefit of New York teachers, it is pointed out that approximately ninety per cent of the words required by the New York Syllabus for the first and second half-years have been used in the lessons; the remaining are included in the general vocabulary at the end of the book. It will require little time for the teacher to dictate the Syllabus list by half-years and have the class check these words in the general vocabulary for special study for efficiency tests.

(b) *Word Study*. — Every lesson contains Latin and English Word Studies covering such topics as prefixes, suffixes, loan words, phonetic changes, spelling, interesting words, abbreviations, phrases and quotations, etc. Topics are introduced in the order of their importance and *grow out of the material presented in the lessons*; they are not relegated to the appendix.

(c) *Laboratory Method*. — The arrangement of a notebook giving English derivatives is explained and its use urged. Encouragement in its use is furnished by giving after each word in the lesson vocabularies one English derivative or related Latin word previously studied.

(d) *Correlation of Latin and English Grammar*. — A section of the Appendix is devoted to the elementary principles of grammar usually studied before the seventh grade. These are illustrated by English and Latin examples. The material is based upon that in use in the elementary schools. In the lessons themselves the topics treated in Elementary Grammar are assigned for review at the appropriate points. Some teachers may prefer to review this material at the outset.

In discussing matters of form and syntax, constant reference is made to English usage, and many difficult points in English grammar are elucidated (*e.g.* the relative and interrogative pronouns, Lesson XLIII). Difficult matters are developed slowly and with constant reference to English



(cf. the infinitive, including indirect statement, Lessons XVIII, XXXVI, LXVI, and the participle, Lessons XLVII, L, LXIV).

**2. Simplification:** (a) *Forms*. — In accordance with certain special investigations as to relative frequency, many unimportant forms commonly found in beginners' books have been omitted.

(b) *Syntax*. — Byrne's *Syntax of High School Latin* and the latest state syllabi have been consulted in an attempt to introduce the minimum of syntax consistent with sound teaching. *The Report of the N. E. A. Committee on Uniform Grammatical Nomenclature* has been followed with few exceptions.

**3. Lessons:** (a) Most of the lessons are short enough to be covered in one class period by high school students and even at times by junior high school classes; hence the large number of lessons.

(b) The vocabularies are put first to show their importance and to have them learned as such. They are uniformly short.

(c) All words are repeated at frequent intervals in the exercises.

(d) Words are introduced in the vocabularies to a large extent in the order of their importance for English word derivation. Primitives are regularly introduced before derivatives.

(e) Constructions are introduced as far as possible in the order of their importance, and only one new construction, as a rule, is developed in a lesson.

(f) The translation of English into Latin is subordinated to the translation of Latin into English.

**4. Reviews.** — Systematic reviews recur at intervals of nine or ten lessons throughout the book and are intended not only to furnish drill material for oral work but also to serve as the basis for written tests. It is expected, of course, that

the teacher will conduct additional reviews, for which the material in the review lessons will prove suggestive.

**5. Connected Reading.** — In the body of the book there is a considerable amount of graded reading dealing with Roman life, private and public, forming a continued story of interest to boys and girls. In this way the student is given an introduction to Roman civilization *through Latin*. Many of the passages are intended for rapid reading at sight, without the use of the vocabulary. A few new words are introduced in each to teach the student to rely upon himself. In addition, simplified material from *Viri Romae*, Eutropius, Nepos, etc. is given.

**6. Oral Work, Plays, etc.** — In the earlier part of the book conversational material is introduced as a sample of what may be done by the teacher. The pictures also may be made the basis for conversation. In the Appendix a list of classroom phrases is given. A special feature is the inclusion of two Latin plays for reading or presentation. These plays were written expressly for this book and therefore afford an excellent review of forms and vocabulary.

**7. French and Spanish.** — A supplement is devoted to correlating French and Spanish with Latin and shows the student how he may get the maximum profit from his Latin while studying these Romance languages.

**8. Teaching Devices.** — An effort has been made to furnish a number of aids for the teacher, *e.g.* *A Color Scheme for Learning Verb Forms* (Lesson XXXIX), *Vocabulary Matches* (Lesson LXVIII), drills, etc.

**The Junior High School.** — It is the belief of the authors that it is a mistake to use different beginning Latin books in the junior and the senior high school, since such use tends to make articulation difficult, as experience shows. Yet the current high school texts are not altogether suitable for the lower school. The changes which the four-year high school regards as desirable, the junior high school demands as neces-

sary. Most of the features mentioned above are in this class: the emphasis upon English derivation and grammar, simplification of forms and syntax, the short lessons, the introduction of interesting material in the form of readings, conversations, and plays, the French and Spanish supplement, the use of graphic teaching devices, etc. The numerous illustrations with helpful explanations are likewise intended to make the book particularly attractive to younger students.

The statue of Marcus Aurelius on the cover symbolizes for us the unbroken continuity of the Roman civilization, since this is said to be the only ancient statue in Rome that was never overthrown.

---

**Acknowledgments.** — The authors wish to acknowledge their indebtedness to Miss Louise M. Weller of the Dilworth School, Pittsburgh, for helpful suggestions with regard to the sections dealing with seventh and eighth grade English; to Miss Lillian B. Lawler of the University of Kansas, who wrote the two Latin plays expressly for this book and assisted in numerous other ways; to Mr. Charles R. Fisher of the Allegheny High School, Pittsburgh, Professor Charles H. Beeson of the University of Chicago, and Miss Helen M. Eddy of the University High School, Iowa City, who read the manuscript and offered many helpful suggestions for its improvement, to Mr. Bernard M. Allen of the Roxbury School, Cheshire, Conn., for valuable criticisms; and to Mr. George Kleine for the unique scenes from the motion picture "Julius Caesar."

B. L. U.

N. E. H.





# CONTENTS

|  | PAGE  |
|--|-------|
| VOCABULARY NOTEBOOK . . . . .  | xviii |
| TO THE STUDENT — EXERCISES IN PRONUNCIATION . . . . .  | 1     |
| LESSON   |       |
| I. FIRST DECLENSION : NOMINATIVE. <i>Latin Nouns in English</i> . . . . .  | 3     |
| II. USE OF THE NOMINATIVE. AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES. <i>Derivatives</i> . . . . .   | 5     |
| III. FIRST CONJUGATION : PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE. <i>Latin Nouns in English</i> . . . . .                                  | 7     |
| IV. FIRST DECLENSION : ACCUSATIVE. <i>Latin Phrases in English</i> . . . . .   | 10    |
| V. FIRST CONJUGATION : IMPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE. <i>Latin Nouns in English</i> . . . . .                                  | 13    |
| VI. FIRST DECLENSION : GENITIVE. <i>Latin Nouns in English</i> . . . . .   | 15    |
| VII. FIRST CONJUGATION : FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE. <i>Latin Nouns in English</i> . . . . .                                   | 17    |
| VIII. FIRST DECLENSION : DATIVE. INDIRECT OBJECT. <i>Latin Roots and English Derivatives. Reading : "Columbus"</i> . . . . . | 19    |
| IX. FIRST DECLENSION : ABLATIVE. ABLATIVE OF MEANS. <i>Latin Phrases in English</i> . . . . .                                | 22    |
| X. REVIEW. FIRST DECLENSION : A SUMMARY. Reading: " <i>Sicily</i> " . . . . .  | 24    |
| XI. SECOND CONJUGATION : PRESENT SYSTEM ACTIVE. <i>Latin Verbs in English</i> . . . . .                                      | 27    |
| XII. ABLATIVE OF PLACE WHERE. <i>Latin Case Forms in English</i> . . . . .   | 29    |
| XIII. SECOND DECLENSION : NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES IN -us. <i>Their Use in English</i> . . . . .                                 | 31    |
| XIV. ABLATIVE OF PLACE FROM WHICH. <i>Prefixes ab-, dē-, ex- in English. Reading : "Slaves"</i> . . . . .                    | 34    |

| LESSON   | PAGE |
|--|------|
| XV. SECOND DECLENSION : NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES<br>IN -er and -r. Prefix <i>ad-</i> in English. Assimila-<br>tion . . . . .   | 38   |
| XVI. PRESENT INDICATIVE OF <i>Sum</i> . ACCUSATIVE OF<br>PLACE TO WHICH. Prefix <i>in-</i> in English . . .  | 41   |
| XVII. SECOND DECLENSION : NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES<br>IN -um. Their Use in English . . . . .   | 43   |
| XVIII. IMPERFECT AND FUTURE INDICATIVE OF <i>Sum</i> .<br>INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT AND OBJECT. Latin<br>in English: Case Forms, Phrases. Reading :<br>"Spartacus to the Gladiators" . . . . . | 46   |
| XIX. REVIEW . . . . .  | 49   |
| XX. READING LESSON : "War and Victory." Con-<br>versation . . . . .  | 51   |
| XXI. THIRD CONJUGATION : PRESENT AND IMPERFECT<br>INDICATIVE ACTIVE. Latin Noun Base in<br>English . . . . .   | 53   |
| XXII. APPPOSITION. Latin Verb Base in English . . .  | 55   |
| XXIII. THIRD CONJUGATION -iō VERBS, FOURTH CON-<br>JUGATION VERBS : PRESENT AND IMPERFECT<br>INDICATIVE ACTIVE. Latin and English Vowel<br>Changes . . . . .                               | 57   |
| XXIV. WORD ORDER. Latin Phrases in English . . .   | 60   |
| XXV. THIRD CONJUGATION : FUTURE INDICATIVE AC-<br>TIVE. Latin Phrases in English . . . . .   | 62   |
| XXVI. ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT. Prefix <i>con-</i> in<br>English. Reading : "Brothers" . . . . .  | 64   |
| XXVII. FOURTH CONJUGATION, THIRD CONJUGATION -iō<br>VERBS : FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE. Prefix<br><i>re-</i> in English . . . . .  | 66   |
| XXVIII. IDIOMS. Latin Words and English Derivatives . .  | 68   |
| XXIX. REVIEW . . . . .   | 70   |
| XXX. SUBSTANTIVES. Hints for Reading and Trans-<br>lating. The Story of Lucius : Forum Rōmānum.<br>Conversation . . . . .  | 73   |
| XXXI. PRESENT SYSTEM PASSIVE OF THE FOUR CON-<br>JUGATIONS. Word Families . . . . .  | 75   |

| LESSON   | PAGE |
|--|------|
| XXXII. ABLATIVE OF AGENT. <i>Latin Phrases in English</i>  | 79   |
| XXXIII. PERFECT STEM. PERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS. <i>Latin in English: Prefix prō-. Latin Phrases</i>                          | 81   |
| XXXIV. PERFECT INDICATIVE OF Sum. USE OF IMPERFECT AND PERFECT. <i>Prefixes in- and dis- in English</i>  | 84   |
| XXXV. PAST PERFECT AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS. <i>Latin Suffixes in English: -ia</i>                                | 86   |
| XXXVI. PAST PERFECT AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE OF Sum. INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. <i>Suffix -tia in English. Reading: "A Clever Reply"</i> | 89   |
| XXXVII. PERFECT PARTICIPLE. PERFECT AND PAST PERFECT PASSIVE OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS. <i>Prefixes sub- and per- in English</i>                        | 92   |
| XXXVIII. FUTURE PERFECT PASSIVE AND PRESENT INFINITIVE PASSIVE OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS. <i>Latin Phrases in English</i>                               | 95   |
| XXXIX. REVIEW. Hints for Developing "Word Sense." How to Study a Connected Passage. The Story of Lucius: Lūdus. Conversation                           | 98   |
| XL. FIRST CONJUGATION: REVIEW OF PRINCIPAL PARTS. <i>Prefixes inter- and ob- in English</i>  | 103  |
| XLI. RELATIVE Quī. AGREEMENT OF THE RELATIVE. <i>Intensive Prefixes</i>  | 106  |
| XLII. SECOND CONJUGATION: REVIEW OF PRINCIPAL PARTS. ABLATIVE OF MANNER. <i>Interesting English Words</i>  | 109  |
| XLIII. INTERROGATIVE Quis. <i>Latin Phrases in English</i>   | 112  |
| XLIV. THIRD CONJUGATION: REVIEW OF PRINCIPAL PARTS. <i>Prefixes ante- and trāns-. Importance of the Verb</i>   | 114  |
| XLV. PERFECT PARTICIPLES USED AS ADJECTIVES AND NOUNS. Possum. <i>Latin Words and Phrases in English. Reading: "An Ancient Philanthropist"</i>         | 117  |

| LESSON  | PAGE |
|---|------|
| XLVI. FOURTH CONJUGATION. REVIEW OF PRINCIPAL PARTS. NUMERALS. <i>Latin Influence upon English</i> . . . . .          | 119  |
| XLVII. PARTICIPLES USED AS CLAUSES. <i>Latin Influence upon English (cont.)</i> . . . . .                             | 122  |
| XLVIII. REVIEW. Conversation : Counting. The Story of Lucius : Circus . . . . .                                       | 124  |
| XLIX. THIRD DECLENSION : MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS. <i>Latin Phrases in English</i> . . . . .                      | 130  |
| L. ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE. <i>Word Families in Latin and English</i> . . . . .   | 132  |
| LI. THIRD DECLENSION : NEUTER NOUNS. <i>Latin Nouns in English</i> . . . . .  | 135  |
| LII. SUMMARY OF ABLATIVE USES. <i>Latin Phrases in English</i> . . . . .  | 137  |
| LIII. THIRD DECLENSION : I-STEM NOUNS. <i>Latin I-stem Nouns in English</i> . Reading : "Romulus and Remus" . . . . . | 139  |
| LIV. CHOICE OF WORDS. <i>Suffix -tās in English</i> . <i>Latin Phrases</i> . . . . .                                  | 143  |
| LV. THIRD DECLENSION : ADJECTIVES. <i>Their Use in English</i> . . . . .  | 145  |
| LVI. ABLATIVE OF RESPECT. <i>Latin Phrases in English</i> . . . . .   | 148  |
| LVII. REVIEW. How to Learn Words. The Story of Lucius : Deī . . . . .   | 150  |
| LVIII. Hic AND Ille. <i>The Third Declension as an English Word Source</i> . . . . .                                  | 154  |
| LIX. ABLATIVE OF TIME WHEN. <i>Latin Phrases in English</i> . . . . .   | 157  |
| LX. Is. <i>How Our Months Were Named</i> . . . . .  | 159  |
| A LATIN PLAY : Victōria Mātris . . . . .  | 161  |
| LXI. Īdem. <i>Latin Phrases in English</i> . . . . .  | 163  |
| LXII. Ipse. <i>Latin as a Help in Spelling</i> . Reading : "Horatius at the Bridge" . . . . .                         | 165  |
| LXIII. IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES. <i>Latin as a Help in Spelling</i> . . . . .   | 168  |

# CONTENTS

XV

| LESSON   | PAGE |
|--|------|
| LXIV. PRESENT AND FUTURE ACTIVE PARTICIPLES.<br><i>Latin Phrases in English</i> . . . . .  | 170  |
| LXV. PERFECT ACTIVE INFINITIVE. <i>Suffix -or in English.</i> Reading: "Cincinnatus, the Plowman-Dictator" . . . . .   | 173  |
| LXVI. PERFECT PASSIVE AND FUTURE ACTIVE INFINITIVE. INDIRECT STATEMENT. <i>Suffixes -ant and -ent Distinguished</i> . . . . .  | 176  |
| LXVII. INDIRECT STATEMENT (cont.). TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE. <i>Suffixes -antia, -entia in English</i> .   | 179  |
| LXVIII. REVIEW. The Story of Lucius: <i>Virginēs Vestālēs</i> . . . . .  | 182  |
| LXIX. <i>Ferō.</i> <i>Phrases and Quotations in English</i> . .  | 186  |
| LXX. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES. DECLENSION OF THE COMPARATIVE. <i>Different Words from the Same Latin Stem Distinguished</i> . . . . .  | 188  |
| LXXI. FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS. <i>Suffix -iō in English</i> . . . . .  | 192  |
| LXXII. COMPARISON OF <i>-er</i> AND <i>-lis</i> ADJECTIVES. DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES. <i>Legal Phrases in English</i> . . . . .  | 194  |
| LXXIII. COMPARISON OF IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS. <i>Their Use in English.</i> Reading: "A Pyrrhic Victory" . . . . .  | 197  |
| LXXIV. SUBJUNCTIVE: PRESENT TENSE OF THE SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS. VOLITIVE SUBJUNCTIVE. <i>Phrases and Quotations in English</i> . . . . .  | 200  |
| LXXV. PURPOSE CLAUSES WITH <i>Ut</i> AND <i>Nē.</i> <i>Latin Abbreviations Used in English</i> . . . . .   | 203  |
| LXXVI. SUBJUNCTIVE: PRESENT TENSE OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION AND <i>Sum.</i> TENSE SEQUENCE. <i>Latin Word Base in English</i> . . . . .   | 205  |
| LXXVII. SUBJUNCTIVE: IMPERFECT OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS, <i>Sum</i> , <i>Possum</i> , AND <i>Ferō.</i> TENSE SEQUENCE IN PURPOSE CLAUSES. <i>Suffixes -men, -ium, -tūs.</i> Reading: "Pyrrhus and Fabricius" . . . . . | 208  |



| LESSON    |   | PAGE |
|-----------|---|------|
| LXXVIII.  | PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS. POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES. <i>Latin Phrases in English</i> . . . . .                                 | 211  |
| LXXIX.    | REVIEW. The Story of Lucius : <i>Caesaris Triumphus</i> . . . . .   | 216  |
| LXXX.     | RESULT CLAUSES WITH <i>Ut</i> AND <i>Ut Nōn</i> . <i>Prefixes prae-, contrā-, bene-, and male- in English</i> . . . . .           | 222  |
| LXXXI.    | ORDINAL NUMERALS. <i>Duo, Trēs, and Mille. How Latin Helps in English Spelling</i> . . . . .                                      | 224  |
| LXXXII.   | ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT. WORDS OFTEN CONFUSED. <i>Interesting Words from the Latin</i> . . . . .                                     | 227  |
| LXXXIII.  | INDIRECT QUESTIONS. <i>Latin and English Vowel Changes. Reading : "The Hero Regulus"</i> . . . . .                                | 230  |
| LXXXIV.   | SUBJUNCTIVE : PERFECT AND PAST PERFECT TENSES OF ALL CONJUGATIONS. SEQUENCE. <i>English Meaning of Words from Latin</i> . . . . . | 234  |
| LXXXV.    | DEPONENT VERBS. <i>Suffixes -ilis, -bilis, -āris, and -ārius in Latin and English</i> . . . . .                                   | 238  |
| LXXXVI.   | Post, Postea, AND Postquam DISTINGUISHED. <i>Prefixes ne-, circum-, and super- in English. Reading : "Scipio"</i> . . . . .       | 241  |
| LXXXVII.  | SUBORDINATE CLAUSES REVIEWED. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES : VOLITIVE AND RESULT . <i>Legal Phrases in English</i> . . . . .               | 244  |
| LXXXVIII. | Eō. <i>Norman-French Influence upon English</i> . . . . .   | 247  |
| LXXXIX.   | DESCRIPTIVE Cum CLAUSES. <i>State Names from Latin</i> . . . . .  | 250  |
| XC.       | REVIEW. SYNONYMS. The Story of Lucius : <i>Civis Novus Iter Facit</i> . . . . .   | 252  |
| XCI.      | IDIOMS. DATIVE AND ACCUSATIVE WITH To REVIEWED. <i>Suffixes -ānus, -ālis, -icus, -ivus, -ōsus in English</i> . . . . .            | 257  |
| XCII.     | SPECIAL VERBS WITH THE DATIVE. <i>Abbreviations and Titles from Latin</i> . . . . .   | 260  |
| XCIII.    | Volō AND Nōlō. <i>Suffixes -tūdō, -mentum, -tūra, -faciō in English</i> . . . . .   | 262  |

| LESSON  | PAGE |
|---|------|
| XCIV. FOURTH DECLENSION. <i>Influence of the Renaissance. "Doublets"</i> . . . . .  | 265  |
| XCV. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS. <i>Latin Phrases in English Reading: "The Gracchi"</i> . . . . .  | 268  |
| XCVI. FIŌ. PREDICATE NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES. <i>Musical Terms in English</i> . . . . .  | 272  |
| XCVII. FIFTH DECLENSION. <i>Latin Noun and Verb Forms in English</i> . . . . .  | 275  |
| XCVIII. DATIVES OF REFERENCE AND PURPOSE. ABLATIVE OF MEASURE OF DIFFERENCE. <i>Latin in Medicine</i> . . . . .                                       | 278  |
| XCIX. FUTURE PASSIVE PARTICIPLE (GERUNDIVE): USE WITH <b>Sum</b> . <i>Latin Forms of English Names</i> .  | 281  |
| C. GERUND AND ITS USES. GENITIVE AND ABLATIVE OF DESCRIPTION. <i>Gerundive in English Words. Latin Phrases. Reading: "Marius and Sulla"</i> . . . . . | 284  |
| A LATIN PLAY: <i>Sāturnālia</i> . . . . .   | 288  |
| SYNTAX OUTLINES FOR FINAL REVIEW . . . . .  | 291  |
| SUPPLEMENTARY READING   |      |
| Cicero's Jests; Roman Wit; Proverbs of Publilius Syrus; Isaiah on World Peace; Life of Julius Caesar . . .  | 297  |
| Caesar: Selections from <b>The Gallic War</b> . . . . .   | 300  |
| Books for Supplementary Reading or Reference . . . . .  | 302  |
| APPENDIX  |      |
| Pronunciation . . . . .   | 303  |
| Elementary Grammar . . . . .  | 306  |
| Summary of Inflections . . . . .  | 313  |
| French and Spanish through Latin . . . . .  | 338  |
| Helps for Classroom Conversation . . . . .  | 345  |
| Latin Songs . . . . .   | 346  |
| Supplementary Graded Readings . . . . .   | 349  |
| Word Lists for Vocabulary Drill . . . . .   | 385  |
| LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY . . . . .  | 393  |
| ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY . . . . .  | 417  |
| INDEX . . . . .   | 429  |

## VOCABULARY NOTEBOOK

Many teachers have found vocabulary and derivative notebooks helpful. A large notebook of the loose-leaf variety is preferable, with page ruled in three columns for (1) Latin Words, (2) Related Words, (3) English Derivatives (see illustration). The words of the advance vocabulary should be distributed by the student according to the part of speech, a page being reserved for each of the five declensions of nouns, one for each of the four conjugations, etc. In the second and third columns respectively he should record as many related Latin words and English derivatives as are readily suggested. Others should be added from time to time as encountered.

It will be found helpful to have the student compile a separate list of the prefixes and suffixes given in this book, together with numerous examples of their use in English words.

|   |  |  |
|---|--|--|
| <i>ponō, -ere, posui,<br/>positus/<br/>(put, place)</i> | <i>proponō</i>   | <i>position, positive,<br/>proposition</i>   |
| <i>mittō, -ere, misi<br/>missus/<br/>(let go, send)</i> | <i>committō, amittō,<br/>dimittō, hermittō,<br/>submitto</i> | <i>commit, committal,<br/>commissary, missive,<br/>mission, permission, submit</i> |
| <i>ducō, -ere, duxi,<br/>ductus/<br/>(lead).</i>        | <i>reducō, producō,<br/>educō, adducō,<br/>trāducō, duc</i>  | <i>ductile, reduction, educe,<br/>traduce, duke</i>                                |

### Other Types of Notebooks

#### Type 1 (with definitions)

**vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus,**  
*call*

*vocation* — a calling, occupation  
*convoke* — call together  
*invocation* — a calling upon, a  
prayer, etc.

#### Type 2 (with examples of use in English)

**mittō, mittere, misi, missus,**  
*send*

*mission* — He was sent on a mis-  
sion to Europe  
*missive* — The letter was a formi-  
dable missive  
*transmit* — They will transmit the  
message to us, etc.

# ELEMENTARY LATIN



# ELEMENTARY LATIN

## TO THE STUDENT

1. You are about to begin the study of a new language. Perhaps you are a little curious and eager about it because it is something new, different from anything you have studied ; or perhaps you are a little afraid of it because you think of it as something strange and difficult. Let us see what we know about it already.

Twenty-five hundred years ago Rome was one of many little towns in Italy. Its language, Latin, got its name from the district of Latium in which the town was situated. As the power of Rome spread, first over Italy and then over most of the civilized world of that day, its language came to be used everywhere. The modern civilization of Europe and America is largely the outgrowth of the Roman. American boys and girls play many games that Roman children played, American students read literature that was greatly influenced by the Roman, American citizens deal with political and legal ideas that are largely a Roman inheritance. To get acquainted with this Roman civilization is an important reason for studying Latin.

The Romans, however, have handed down not only their ideas but also their language. The Romance languages are the various forms which the Roman (Latin) language has taken in the course of centuries in the various parts of the Roman Empire. They are Italian, French, Spanish, Portuguese, Rumanian, and even, to a large extent, English, since about seventy per cent of our English words are derived from Latin. French, Spanish, and Italian become



very easy after a study of Latin. But the chief reason why you are going to study Latin is to get a better knowledge of English. The study of Latin will make English grammar much easier to understand. Then again, there are Latin words, phrases, and mottoes used in English, such as *radius*, *per annum*, and *e pluribus unum*. Many Latin phrases are used in law, such as *habeas corpus*; therefore lawyers must know Latin. Many abbreviations used in English are Latin, such as *i.e.* for *id est*.

You see then that this Latin of the Romans is not so remote a thing after all and that a knowledge of it will be very useful to you.

## 2.

## Exercise

1. *How many events of Roman history can you think of?*
2. *What famous Romans do you remember?*
3. *What Roman gods can you recall?*
4. *What do you know about Rome as it is to-day?*
5. *How many Latin words, phrases, legal terms, scientific terms, mottoes, proverbs, and abbreviations can you give?*

## Exercises in Pronunciation (see 603-611)

3. Pronounce *nā'vēs*, *Rū'fus*, *Marī'a*, *nau'tae*, *in'sula*, *eō'rum*, *exer'citus*, *appellā'tur*, *vīdis'set*, *cognō'vit*, *Mīran'da*, *tenē'bant*, *proe'liō*, *Colum'bus*, *Clā'ra*, *Iū'lius*, *Augus'tus*.

4. Read the following translation of a part of Lincoln's Gettysburg Address (by James A. Kleist):

*Octā'vus iam et octōgē'simus an'nus est hic, cum maiō'rēs nos'trī no'vam in hāc ter'rac par'te rem pū'blicam peperē'runt, quam libertā'tis in condiō'ne concep'tam in il'lam cōnsecrā'runt senten'tiam: ae'quō nās'cī iū're ho'minēs ūniver'sōs. Nunc vē'rō ingen'tī bel'lō civī'lī in'itō nōs experī'mur, haec'ne rēs pū'blica vel a'lia, sic nā'ta, sic cōnsecrā'ta, per lon'gum tem'poris spa'tium pos'sit stā're.*

## LESSON I

### FIRST DECLENSION: THE NOMINATIVE CASE

**ELEMENTARY GRAMMAR:** Review *Number*, 623; *Gender*, 624; *Case*, 625; *Nouns*, 614; *Inflection*, 622.

### Inflection or Declension of Nouns

**5. Number.** — In English, nearly all nouns undergo change to indicate plural number. Most nouns add *-s* or *-es*: *way, ways*; *bush, bushes*. A few form their plurals irregularly: *pony, ponies*; *knife, knives*; *ox, oxen*; *man, men*.

In Latin, most nouns undergo change of ending to indicate number.

**6. Gender.** — In English, masculine or feminine gender is assigned to nouns according to sex, nouns denoting sexless objects being classified as neuter. This use is known as **natural gender**.

In Latin, however, many nouns are regarded as masculine or feminine which are neuter in English: *via* (f.), *way*; *numerus* (m.), *number*. This use is known as **grammatical gender**. It is determined, not by the meaning of the word, but largely by its ending.

**7. Case.** — In English, with the exception of the genitive (or possessive) case, change of case does not involve change of ending: nominative (denoting the subject), “The *man* sees”; accusative (denoting the object), “I see the *man*”; but genitive (denoting possession), “the *man’s* hat.”

In Latin, however, change of case regularly requires change of ending. The hundreds of nouns in the Latin language are divided by **case endings** into five classes called **declensions**.

### 8. First Declension : Nominative Case Endings

The case endings for the **nominative**, singular and plural, of the **first declension** are as follows :

|            | SINGULAR | PLURAL |
|------------|----------|--------|
|            | -a       | -ae    |
| Examples : | via      | viae   |

These endings are preserved in many English words, as, singular, **alumna**, plural, **alumnae**. Other examples will be given later.

**9. Rule.** — *Nouns of the first declension are feminine (except a few which refer to males).*

### 10. English Word Studies

The following are English words, borrowed from the Latin first declension, which have never lost their Latin nominative endings. Consult the dictionary for the English pronunciation and meaning of these **loan words**. (Observe that in English **-ae** is usually pronounced *ē*, as in *me*.)

**alumna, alumnae; antenna, antennae; larva, larvae; minutiae** (singular rare).



FIG. 2. CUPIDS AS DYERS AND CLEANERS

From a Pompeian wall painting. One of a series of similar pictures (cf. Fig. 54).

## LESSON II

### USE OF THE NOMINATIVE. AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES

**ELEMENTARY GRAMMAR :** Review *Subject, Predicate*, **612**; *Nominative*, **627, a**; *Linking verb*, **617, b**; *Adjectives*, **616**; *Modifiers*, **612**.

#### 11. English Derivatives

An English word formed from a Latin word is called a **derivative**. In this book derivatives are given in parentheses after the words in vocabularies; for their meanings see the dictionary whenever necessary. Write additional derivatives in your notebook.

#### 12. Vocabulary

| NOUNS                           |             | ADJECTIVES                   |             |
|---------------------------------|-------------|------------------------------|-------------|
| <b>fā'ma</b> , report, fame     | (famous)    | <b>bo'na</b> , good          | (bonus)     |
| <b>fortū'na</b> , fortune       | (fortunate) | <b>lon'ga</b> , long         | (longitude) |
| <b>in'sula</b> , island         | (insulate)  | <b>mag'na</b> , large, great | (magnify)   |
| <b>vi'a</b> , way, road, street | (viaduct)   | <b>no'va</b> , new, strange  | (novice)    |
| LINKING (OR COPULA) VERB        |             |                              |             |
| <b>est, is</b>                  |             | <b>sunt, are</b>             |             |

#### 13. Nominative as Subject and Predicate

The nominative case in Latin has the same uses as in English :

(a) The subject of a verb is in the nominative case. This is called **subject nominative**.

(b) A noun or adjective used in the predicate after a linking verb (*is, are, seem, etc.*) to complete its meaning is in the nominative case. This is called **predicate nominative**.

- |  |     |     |     |
|--|-----|-----|-----|
| (a)  | (b) | (a) | (b) |
| 1. <b>Insula est magna</b> , <i>The island is large.</i>   |     |     |     |
| 2. <b>Sicilia est insula</b> , <i>Sicily is an island.</i> |     |     |     |
| (a)  | (b) | (a) | (b) |

**14. Adjectives**

In English, an adjective does not undergo change to indicate number, gender, and case. *This* and *that*, however, change in the plural to *these* and *those*.

In Latin, an adjective indicates by its ending the number, gender, and case of the noun which it modifies. Compare the adjectives in the following Latin and English sentences:

1. **Via longa est bona**, *A long street is good.*
2. **Viae longae sunt bonae**, *The long streets are good.*

**15. Rule.** — *An adjective agrees in number, gender, and case with the noun which it modifies.*

**16. Observe** in the above sentences:

- (a) There is no word in Latin for *a*, *an*, or *the*.
- (b) The Latin adjective regularly follows its noun.
- (c) The adjective may modify its noun directly or in the predicate.

**17. Exercises**

*Oral. (Read in Latin and translate into English.)*

1. **Īnsula est magna.** 2. **Via est nova.** 3. **Viae sunt longae.** 4. **Viae longae sunt bonae.** 5. **Fortūna est bona.** 6. **Via bona est longa.** 7. **Fāma est bona.** 8. **Īnsulae novae sunt magnae.** 9. **Īnsula nova est longa.** 10. **Viae bonae sunt novae.**

*Written.* 1. Long Island is large. 2. Great fortune is good. 3. The islands are long. 4. A new road is good. 5. New roads are good. 6. The new island is large. 7. Great is fame.

## LESSON III

### FIRST CONJUGATION: PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

**ELEMENTARY GRAMMAR:** Review Verbs, 617; *Common, progressive, and emphatic forms, 631.*

18.

### Vocabulary

| NOUN                         |          | VERBS                                 |              |
|------------------------------|----------|---------------------------------------|--------------|
| cau'sa, <i>cause, reason</i> | (causal) | accū'sō, <i>blame, accuse</i>         | (accusation) |
|                              |          | pa'rō, <i>get, get ready, prepare</i> | (prepare)    |
| ADJECTIVES                   |          | por'tō, <i>carry</i>                  | (porter)     |
| par'va, <i>small</i>         |          |                                       |              |
| vē'ra, <i>true</i>           | (verify) | ADVERB                                |              |
|                              |          | u'bi, <i>where</i>                    |              |

**Note.**—Enter the above words in your notebook and find additional derivatives.

19.

### English Word Studies

The following are additional **loan words**, borrowed from the Latin first declension, often found in high school textbooks of science:

nebula, nebulae; papilla, papillae; vertebra, vertebrae

Can you find others?



FIG. 3. ROMAN BUCKETS OF BRONZE



## 20. Formation of the Present Indicative Active

In English, verbs sometimes change to indicate person: *I have, he has*; sometimes also to indicate number: *I am, we are*; but usually the distinction of person and number is made only by use of the personal pronouns (*I, you, he, we, they*).

In Latin, the personal pronoun subjects are usually omitted, and sets of endings called **personal endings** serve to indicate the person and number of all verbs. The following are used in forming five of the six tenses of the **indicative active** of all verbs:

|            | SINGULAR                | PLURAL            |
|------------|-------------------------|-------------------|
| 1st person | -ō (or -m) = <i>I</i>   | -mus = <i>we</i>  |
| 2nd " "    | -s = <i>you</i>         | -tis = <i>you</i> |
| 3rd " "    | -t = <i>he, she, it</i> | -nt = <i>they</i> |

**Present Stem.** — The **present infinitive active** of all regular verbs ends in -re: **accūsāre, parāre**.

The present tense of any verb is formed by adding the personal endings directly to the **present stem**, obtained from the infinitive by dropping the ending -re. The hundreds of regular verbs in Latin are divided, according to the present stem, into four classes called **conjugations**. The present stem of verbs of the **first conjugation** ends in -ā. Thus **parō, parāre** (present stem **parā-**) is conjugated in the present indicative active as follows:

| SINGULAR   | PLURAL  |
|--|---|
| pa'rō, <i>I prepare, am preparing, do prepare</i>      | parā'mus, <i>we prepare, are preparing, do prepare</i>  |
| pa'rās, <i>you prepare, are preparing, do prepare</i>  | parā'tis, <i>you prepare, are preparing, do prepare</i> |
| pa'rat, <i>he prepares, is preparing, does prepare</i> | pa'rant, <i>they prepare, are preparing, do prepare</i> |

*a.* Remember that all vowels are shortened before **-nt** and final **-m** or **-t**, and that **-ā-** disappears entirely before final **ō** in the first singular.

*b.* Observe the three ways to translate each Latin verb form — **common**, **progressive**, and **emphatic**. In English, when *am* and *do* are used as auxiliary verbs, they have no Latin equivalent.

**21. Drill.** — Give the present indicative active of **accūsō** and **portō**, translating each form in three ways.

## 22. Exercises

*Oral.* 1. Accūsō; parās; portat. 2. Portāmus; accūsātis; parant. 3. Ubi est Longa Īnsula? 4. Causae sunt vērae. 5. Īnsula nova est parva. 6. Via parva est nova. 7. Ubi sunt viae longae?

*Written.* 1. The reason is true. 2. The new islands are small. 3. Where are the islands? 4. He does accuse; they prepare; he is carrying.



FIG. 4. ROME IN ANCIENT TIMES

## LESSON IV

### FIRST DECLENSION: THE ACCUSATIVE CASE

**ELEMENTARY GRAMMAR:** Review *Direct object*, 626, b; *Accusative*, 627, b; *Transitive and intransitive verbs*, 617, a.

#### 23.

#### Vocabulary

| NOUNS                           | VERB  |
|---------------------------------|---|
| a'qua, <i>water</i>             | (aqueous) pro'bō, probā're, <i>test, prove, approve</i> |
| māte'ria, <i>matter, timber</i> | (material) (probation)                                  |
| nau'ta, m., <i>sailor</i>       | (nautical) ADJECTIVE                                    |
| CONJUNCTION                     | mul'ta, <i>much</i> ; plur., <i>many</i>                |
| et, <i>and</i>                  | (multitude)   |

**Dictionary drill.** Consult a large dictionary to see how many interesting facts you can discover about the derivatives of words in this vocabulary. How does a *nautical* mile differ from an ordinary mile? Why is the "chambered nautilus" so called? One of Oliver Wendell Holmes' finest poems bears this title.

#### 24.

#### Latin Phrases in English

**Magna Charta**, the *Great Paper*, or document, which is the corner stone of English liberty.

māteria medica, *material*, such as herbs, used in making *medicines*.

Fortūna caeca est, *Fortune is blind*.

#### 25.

#### Accusative: Direct Object

The endings of the **accusative** in the **first declension** are:

|                  | SINGULAR | PLURAL |
|------------------|----------|--------|
|                  | -am      | -ās    |
| <b>Examples:</b> | viam     | viās   |

1. Anna nautam accūsāt, *Anna blames the sailor.*
2. Nauta Annam accūsāt, *The sailor blames Anna.*
3. (a) *I saw him.* (b) *He saw me.*

Observe in the preceding sentences :

(a) In 1 and 2 a noun in English does not undergo change to indicate the direct object in the accusative (objective) case, but difference in case depends solely upon word order and sense.

(b) In 3 (a) and (b) personal pronouns do have different forms for the accusative.

(c) In Latin the accusative of a noun is distinguished from the nominative by its ending.

**26. Rule.** — *The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative.*

**Caution.** — A noun is not necessarily in the accusative because it is used with or after a verb. *Est* and *sunt* serve as an equation sign (=) and take the same case after them as before them :

*Italy is a country, Italia est terra.*

**Query.** — Why is it incorrect to say in English, *It is him?*

**27. Drill.** — Give the Latin nominative and accusative, singular and plural, of *island, fortune, matter, water.*

## 28. Agreement

1. *Nauta aquam portat, The sailor carries water.*
2. *Viam parāmus, We are preparing a way.*
3. *Anna et nauta causās probant, Anna and the sailor approve the reasons.*

Observe the following points :

(a) The verb in each sentence shows the person and number of its subject by means of personal endings.

(b) The personal endings are not translated by pronoun subjects when a noun subject occurs.

(c) The verb stands last.

(d) Two singular subjects connected by *et* require a plural verb.

**29. Rule.** — *A verb agrees with its subject in person and number.*

## 30.

## Exercises

*Oral.* 1. Nautās accūsō. 2. Causās bonās probātis. 3. Multam māteriam parātis. 4. Fāmam et fortūnam probās. 5. Nautae multās causās probant. 6. Anna et nauta multam aquam portant. 7. Causae sunt multae et vērae. 8. Nautae aquam et māteriam portant.

*Written.* 1. You (*sing.*) approve; you (*plur.*) are carrying; we do prepare. 2. We are carrying water. 3. The sailor approves many reasons. 4. Where are the small islands?



FIG. 5. IN A ROMAN PARK

## LESSON V

### FIRST CONJUGATION: IMPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

ELEMENTARY GRAMMAR: Review *Progressive verb forms*, 631, a.

#### 31. Vocabulary

| NOUN                          |             | VERBS                              |             |
|-------------------------------|-------------|------------------------------------|-------------|
| ter'ra, <i>land, earth</i>    | (territory) | a'mō, amā're, <i>love</i>          | (amiable)   |
|                               |             | vās'tō; vāstā're, <i>lay waste</i> | (devastate) |
| ADJECTIVE                     |             |                                    |             |
| plā'na, <i>level</i>          | (plane)     |                                    |             |
| LINKING VERB                  |             |                                    |             |
| e'rat, <i>he, she, it was</i> |             | e'rant, <i>they were</i>           |             |

#### 32. English Word Studies

The following, now regarded as English words, have been adopted from the Latin without change in the nominative singular. Their plurals sometimes end in *-ae*, but usually in *-s*, like most English nouns:

amoeba, arena, aurora, camera, copula, formula



FIG. 6. TEMPLE OF NEPTUNE, PAESTUM

One of the best preserved Greek temples, built in the sixth century B.C. Southern Italy, in which Paestum is situated, was inhabited by Greeks at an early period.



## 33.

## Imperfect Indicative Active

A regular verb forms its imperfect tense by adding the tense sign **-bā-** to the present stem and then attaching the personal endings: <sup>1</sup>

| SINGULAR  | PLURAL                                      |
|---|---|
| parā'bam, <i>I was preparing, did prepare, prepared</i> | parābā'mus, <i>we were preparing, etc.</i>  |
| parā'bās, <i>you were preparing, etc.</i>               | parābā'tis, <i>you were preparing, etc.</i> |
| parā'bat, <i>he, she, it was preparing, etc.</i>        | parā'bant, <i>they were preparing, etc.</i> |

**Note** that the personal ending for the first person singular is **-m** (not **-ō** as in the present tense). Observe that the Latin imperfect, like the English progressive past, denotes *continuous* or *repeated* action (or being) in past time.

**34. Drill.** — Give the imperfect indicative active of **amō**, **accūsō**, **vāstō**, with meanings.

## 35.

## Exercises

*Oral.* 1. Ubi erat Anna? 2. Nautam accūsābāmus. 3. Causās bonās probātis. 4. Ubi est terra nova? 5. Viae erant longae et plānae. 6. Nauta Annam amābat et Anna nautam amābat. 7. Terrās multās vāstābātis. 8. Nautae aquam et māteriam portābant.

*Written.* 1. He accused; we were preparing; they did love. 2. We love; you (*sing.*) carried; they are getting. 3. They laid waste the land. 4. The little street was new. 5. Where are the good streets?

<sup>1</sup> A similar formation is seen in the English solemn style: **accūsā-bā-s**, (thou) *accuse-d-st.*

## LESSON VI

### FIRST DECLENSION: GENITIVE CASE

**ELEMENTARY GRAMMAR:** Review *Genitive (possessive) case*, 627, d.

#### 36. Vocabulary

| NOUNS   |           | VERB  |
|---|-----------|---|
| cō'pia, <i>supply, abundance</i> ; plur.,<br>forces, troops | (copious) | spec'tō, spectā're, <i>look at, face</i><br>(spectacle) |
| cū'ra, <i>care, concern</i>                                 | (curator) | ADJECTIVE   |
| fōr'ma, <i>shape</i>  | (form)    |   |
|   |           | clā'ra, <i>clear, famous</i> (clarify)                  |

#### 37. English Word Studies

The following words have been borrowed without change from the Latin. Each has an English plural in -s (wherever used):

inertia, insomnia, militia, nausea, saliva

#### 38. Genitive

In English, possession is indicated by the genitive (or possessive) case ending in -'s, or by the accusative (objective) with *of*: *the boy's father* or *the father of the boy*.

In Latin, we have already seen that a noun undergoes change in case ending to show a change in case relation. Possession is expressed by the **genitive** case. The genitive endings of the first declension are:

|           | SINGULAR | PLURAL |
|-----------|----------|--------|
|           | -ae      | -ārum  |
| Examples: | viae     | viārum |

1. *insulae viae, the roads of the island.*
2. *insulārum viae, the roads of the islands.*

**39. Drill.** — Write the Latin nominative, genitive, and accusative, singular and plural, of *water, supply, sailor, land*.

## 40.

## Exercises

*Oral.* 1. Nautās amāmus. 2. Multae erant nautārum causae. 3. Magnam cōpiam aquae portat. 4. Magnās cōpiās insulae clārae spectābāmus. 5. Est<sup>1</sup> cōpia aquae. 6. Cūrae Annae erant multae et magnae. 7. Nautae cōpiam aquae clārae portābant. 8. Fōrma insulae erat nova.

*Written.* 1. The sailors accused Anna. 2. Anna looked at the sailors. 3. Where did they get the water supply<sup>2</sup>? 4. The sailor's reasons were true. 5. We are carrying an abundance of good water.



FIG. 7. THE AMPHITHEATER AT POMPEII

Mt. Vesuvius, the eruption of which destroyed Pompeii in 79 A.D., is shown in the background, with smoke issuing from it. Amphitheaters were used for gladiatorial contests—duels between professionals. Beast fights—similar to the modern bull fights—were also held there.

<sup>1</sup> Supply *there*, which is omitted in Latin when it does not refer to place.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. Oral 3.

## LESSON VII

### FIRST CONJUGATION: FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE

ELEMENTARY GRAMMAR: Review *Future tense*, 630, c.

#### 41.

#### Vocabulary

##### NOUNS

fami'lia, -ae, f.,<sup>1</sup> household, fam-  
ily (familiar)

pecū'nia, -ae, f., money  
(pecuniary)

prae'da, -ae, f., booty, prey  
(predatory)

sil'va, -ae, f., forest, woods  
(Pennsylvania)

un'da, -ae, f., wave (undulate)

##### VERB

nā'vigō, -ā're, sail (navigation)

##### PREPOSITION

ad, with acc., to, toward (with verbs  
of motion); near (with verbs of  
rest)

What other derivatives are suggested by these words?



FIG. 8. PECŪNIA

In early times the Romans did their trading with sheep and oxen (*pecus*). Then bars of bronze bearing the figure of an ox, as above, were used for money. Each piece weighed five pounds and was worth sixteen cents. But the cost of living was very low then.

#### 42.

#### English Word Studies

The following are additional loan words of the first declension with an English plural in -s:

area, corolla, dementia, toga, villa

---

<sup>1</sup> Memorize the nominative, genitive, and gender of each noun as printed in all vocabularies.

## 43.

## Future Indicative Active

The **future active** is formed by adding the tense sign **-bi-** (corresponding to *shall* and *will* in English) to the present stem before attaching the personal endings:

| SINGULAR                                  | PLURAL                              |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| parā'bō, <i>I shall prepare</i>           | parā'bimus, <i>we shall prepare</i> |
| parā'bis, <i>you will prepare</i>         | parā'bitis, <i>you will prepare</i> |
| parā'bit, <i>he, she, it will prepare</i> | parā'bunt, <i>they will prepare</i> |

Note that the future sign **-bi-** loses *i* before **-ō** in the 1st sing. and changes to **-bu-** before **-nt** in the 3rd plur.

44. Drill. — Give the future indicative active, with meanings, of *spectō*, *probō*, *nāvigō*.

## 45.

## Exercises



FIG. 9. A ROMAN LANTERN

*Oral.* 1. Ubi magnam cōpiam pecūniae parābis? 2. Ad terram novam nāvigābimus. 3. Pecūnia est vēra causa cūrārum. 4. Magnae undae sunt ad insulam. 5. Nautae ad insulam nāvigābunt. 6. Nautae erant ad terram. 7. Praedam ad silvam portābunt. 8. Anna cōpiam aquae ad familiam portābit.

*Written.* 1. We shall sail to the new land. 2. They will look-at the large waves. 3. I shall carry the money to the large family. 4. Many are the cares of the sailors. 5. The roads of the large island were level and good.

## LESSON VIII

### FIRST DECLENSION: DATIVE CASE. INDIRECT OBJECT

ELEMENTARY GRAMMAR: Review *Dative*, 627, c; *Prepositions*, 619.

#### 46.

#### Vocabulary

| NOUNS   | VERBS                                   |
|---|---|
| lit'tera, -ae, f., <i>letter</i> (of the alphabet); plur., <i>letter, epistle</i> | dō'nō, -ā're, <i>give, present</i>      |
| (literary)  | (donation)                              |
| poe'na, -ae, f., <i>penalty, punishment</i>                                       | man'dō, -ā're, <i>intrust</i>           |
| (penal)   | (mandate)                               |
| victō'ria, -ae, f., <i>victory</i>  | mōns'trō, -ā're, <i>point out, show</i> |
| (victorious)  | (demonstration)                         |
|   | nūn'tiō, -ā're, <i>report, announce</i> |
|   | (denunciation)                          |

#### ADJECTIVE

grā'ta, *pleasing, grateful* (gratify)

#### 47.

#### English Word Studies

Always try to see the relation between the meaning of the English derivative and the Latin word from which it comes, and then use the derivative in a sentence.

(a) A thing is "familiar" when it is well known, like a member of the *family*.

(b) An author is a man of "letters," or a "literary" man; a "literal" translation is one that is almost *letter for letter*.

(c) An "undulating" motion is like that of the *waves*.

(d) A "mandate" is something *intrusted* to a person or a group, as the government of a weak nation.

(e) A "navigable" river is one on which *sailing* is possible.

(f) A "novelty" is something *new*.

(g) A person who is placed on "probation" is being *tested*.



### 48. Dative: Indirect Object

The endings of the **dative** in the **first declension** are :

|            | SINGULAR | PLURAL |
|------------|----------|--------|
|            | -ae      | -īs    |
| Examples : | vīae     | viīs   |

*Nautae pecūniam dōnō, I give money to the sailor, or I give the sailor money.*

a. Observe the following points :

(1) In addition to the direct object (*pecūniam, money*) in the accusative, an indirect object (*nautae, sailor*) may be used to indicate the receiver.

(2) In Latin the indirect object is expressed by the dative, but in English it may be expressed either by the dative, as in the second translation, or by the accusative with *to* (or *for*).

(3) In English there is no separate form for the dative.

(4) In Latin and English the dative is placed before the accusative.

(5) The genitive and dative singular have the same ending.

b. Note. — The dative is used with verbs of *giving, reporting, telling, showing, etc.*

**49. Rule.** — *The indirect object of a verb is in the dative.*

**Caution.** — After verbs of motion like “come” and “go” *to* is expressed in Latin, as in English, by a preposition (*ad* with the acc.).

1. He reported the case *to the officer* (dative of indirect object).
2. He went *to the city* (accusative with *ad*).

**50. Drill.** — Give the Latin nominative, genitive, dative, and accusative, singular and plural, of *family, money, care, reason.*



FIG. 10. ANCIENT SPINNING TOPS

## 51.

## Exercises

*Oral.* 1. Nautīs poenam nūntiābimus. 2. Familiae pecūniam dōnābit. 3. Fortūnam bonam et fāmam magnam amāmus. 4. Nautae litterās mandābimus. 5. Nautīs victōriam grātam nūntiābō. 6. Aquam clāram et bonam ad īnsulam parvā portābant. 7. Annae viās silvae mōnstrābō. 8. Nautae Annae magnam pecūniam dōnābunt.

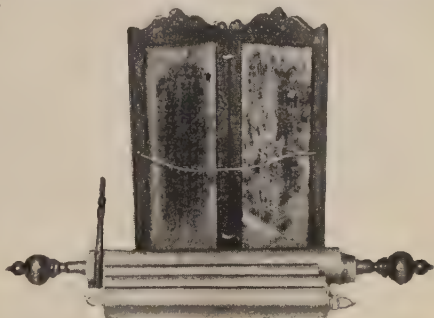


FIG. 11. WAX TABLET AND PAPYRUS ROLLS

*Written.* 1. We shall intrust the money to Anna. 2. He is giving money to many families. 3. He will report the punishment to Anna. 4. I shall intrust the letter to the sailor. 5. They point-out the road for the sailors.

Wax tablets, used for letters, accounts, etc., were of wood, covered with a thin layer of wax on which the letters were scratched with a bone or metal stylus. The rolls were used for books. Ink was used on them. (Photographed from models.)

## 52.

## COLUMBUS

Columbus nauta ad Hispāniam nāvigat. Isabellae, rēgīnae (*queen*) Hispāniae, nūntiat: "Terra nōn (*not*) plāna est; probābō!" Isabella nautae pecūniam dōnat. Columbus nauta nāvigat et probat; terram novā Americā mōnstrat. Nunc (*now*) fāma nautae magna est.

## LESSON IX

### FIRST DECLENSION: ABLATIVE CASE. ABLATIVE OF MEANS

53.

#### Vocabulary

##### NOUNS

|   |
|---|
| iniū'ria, -ae, f., <i>wrong, injustice</i><br>(injurious) |
| memo'ria, -ae, f., <i>memory</i><br>(memorial)            |
| pug'na, -ae, f., <i>battle</i><br>(pugnacious)            |
| vī'ta, -ae, f., <i>life</i><br>(vital)                    |

##### VERBS

|  |
|--|
| in'citō, -ā're, <i>urge on, arouse</i><br>(excitement) |
| oc'cupō, -ā're, <i>seize</i> (occupation)              |
| pug'nō, -ā're, <i>fight</i> (pugnacity)                |
| ser'vō, -ā're, <i>save, guard</i><br>(conservation)    |

54.

#### Latin Phrases in English

Nova Scōtia, *New Scotland*, a province in Canada.  
 aqua vitæ, *water of life*, formerly applied to alcohol.  
 ad nauseam, *to* (the point of) *seasickness* or *disgust*.

55.

#### Ablative

In English, the object of any preposition is in the accusative (objective).

In Latin, the object of some prepositions is in the accusative; of others, in a special case called the **ablative**, the endings of which are :

##### SINGULAR

-ā

Examples:

viā

##### PLURAL

-īs

viīs

56.

#### Ablative of Means

Many thought relations expressed by prepositional phrases in English are expressed in Latin by the ablative alone without a preposition, as the following common type :

**Litteris victōriam nūntiant,** *They report the victory by-means-of a letter.*

Observe that **litteris** (abl.) shows *by-what-means* they report and that no preposition is used.

**57. Rule.** — *Means or instrument is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.*

**58. Sentence Analysis.** — Before writing an English sentence in Latin, make it your practice to place above every noun the case and number required in the Latin sentence, as follows:

- |    |   |         |                 |
|----|---|---------|-----------------|
|    | NOM. S.   | ACC. S. | DAT. S.         |
| 1. | The <i>man</i> gave a <i>book</i> to the <i>boy</i> .           |         |                 |
|    | GEN. S.   | NOM. S. | ACC. S. ABL. S. |
| 2. | My <i>friend's son</i> saved his <i>life</i> by <i>flight</i> . |         |                 |

## 59.

## Exercises

*Oral.* 1. **Pugnīs** īnsulam vāstābātis. 2. **Aquā** vītām Annae servābō. 3. **Pugnābimus** et terram novam occupābimus. 4. **Litterīs** familiae magnam victōriam nūntiābit. 5. **Viae** silvārum grātae sunt. 6. **Memoria** iniūriae nautās incitābit. 7. **Victōriīs** vītām et terram et pecūniam servābant. 8. **Magnā** pecūniā multās familiās servābitis. 9. **Columbus** nautīs īnsulam parvam mōnstrābat.

*Written.* 1. By-the-victory we shall save the island. 2. We urged the sailors on to battle with-money. 3. The memory of (their) wrongs will arouse the sailors. 4. I shall announce the victory to the family. 5. They saved the timber of the forest with-water.

## LESSON X

### REVIEW

#### 60. English Word Studies

Give the nominative, genitive, gender, and meaning of the Latin noun suggested by each of the following English derivatives:

*aqueduct, causal, copious, curate, fortunate, injure, insulation, literature, memorable, nautical, pecuniary, penalize, pugnacity, viaduct, vitality*

#### 61. Present System : A Summary

The present system comprises the present, imperfect, and future tenses of a verb, which are built upon the present stem (20).

62. Drill. — Give the infinitive and present stem, and conjugate in the present system **probō, spectō, nūntiō**.

63.

| First Declension : A Summary |                  |                                     |                              |                           |
|------------------------------|------------------|-------------------------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------|
| ENDINGS                      |                  | ENGLISH FORCE                       | <i>via longa, a long way</i> |                           |
| SING.                        | PLUR.            |                                     | SING.                        | PLUR.                     |
| <i>Nom.</i>                  | <b>-a -ae</b>    | Subject                             | <i>vi'a lon'ga</i>           | <i>vi'ae lon'gae</i>      |
| <i>Gen.</i>                  | <b>-ae -ārum</b> | Possessive<br>( <i>of</i> )         | <i>vi'ae lon'gae</i>         | <i>viā'rum lon-gā'rum</i> |
| <i>Dat.</i>                  | <b>-ae -is</b>   | Indir. obj.<br>( <i>to or for</i> ) | <i>vi'ae lon'gae</i>         | <i>vi'is lon'gīs</i>      |
| <i>Acc.</i>                  | <b>-am -ās</b>   | Direct obj.                         | <i>vi'am lon'gam</i>         | <i>vi'ās lon'gās</i>      |
| <i>Abl.</i>                  | <b>-ā -īs</b>    | <i>from, by, with, in</i>           | <i>vi'ā lon'gā</i>           | <i>vi'īs lon'gīs</i>      |

*a. Note.* — That part of a word to which endings are attached is called the **base**. The base of a noun or adjective is obtained by dropping the genitive singular ending: gen. sing. **viae**, base, **vi-**.

**b. Observe the following points:**

(1) The nominative and ablative singular both end in *-a*, but the *-a* is long in the ablative.

(2) The genitive and dative singular and the nominative plural have the same ending (*-ae*).

(3) The dative and ablative plural have the same ending (*-īs*).

(4) Most of the endings contain *-a*, for this is the **A-Declension**.



FIG. 12. A HOUSE IN POMPEII

The main room (*atrium*) at the front of the house. The basin in the foreground caught the rain water which fell through the skylight. In the background are the columns of the rear of the house (*peristyle*) with its garden (cf. Figs. 71, 80).

**64. Drill.** — (a) Like *via longa* (see 63) decline together in all cases, singular and plural, *cōpia magna, silva grāta, victōria parva*.

(b) Give the singular and plural of the following nouns in the cases required:

- (1) *victōria* in the dative; (2) *poena* in the genitive;
- (3) *unda* in the ablative; (4) *īnsula* in the accusative;
- (5) *littera* in the nominative.

(c) Translate into Latin:

- (1) *a large island* in the nom., sing. and plur.
- (2) *the true reason* in the gen., sing. and plur.
- (3) *a new letter* in the dat., sing. and plur.
- (4) *a long battle* in the acc., sing. and plur.
- (5) *great wrong* in the abl., sing. and plur.

**65. Blackboard Exercise** (*To the teacher*). — Write a number of miscellaneous forms in columns and ask for the possibilities of each with regard to case and number.

**66. Perception Cards for Word Reviews.** — An excellent way to review vocabularies is by the use of “flash” cards. The Latin word should be printed on one side and the English meaning on the other. The lettering should be large enough to be seen clearly when held before the class.



FIG. 13. AETNA

**67.**

## SICILY

Sicilia est insula ad Italiam. Multae colōniae (*colonies*) Graeciae erant in Siciliā. Magna erat fāma insulae. In Siciliā est Aetna clāra. Aetna saepe (*often*) terram “lavā” vāstat.



## LESSON XI

## SECOND CONJUGATION: PRESENT SYSTEM ACTIVE

## 68. Vocabulary

## NOUNS

**disciplī'na, -ae, f.,** *training, learning* (disciplinary)

lin'gua, -ae, f., *tongue, language*  
(linguistic)

pa'tria, -ae, f., *fatherland, country*

## VERBS

au'geō, -ē're, *increase* (augment)

do'ceō, -ē're, *teach* (docile)

ha'beō, -ē're, *have, hold* (habit)

ter'reō, -ē're, *terrify* (terrific)

## ADVERB

nōn, *not* (nonconductor)

## 69. Second Conjugation: Present System Active

The verbs that have occurred in previous lessons contain the stem vowel **-ā-** and belong to the **first conjugation**. All verbs which show the stem vowel **-ē-** in the **present system** (present, imperfect, and future tenses) belong to the **second conjugation**.

PRESENT

ha'beō, *I have, am having,  
do have*

ha'bēs, *you have*, etc.

ha'bet, *he, she, it has, etc.*

habē'mus, *we have, are having,  
do have*

habē'tis, *you have*, etc.

ha'bent, *they have*, etc.

## IMPERFECT

habē'bam, *I was having, did have, had* .

habē' **bās**, *you were having*, etc.

habē'bat, *he, she, it was having,*  
etc.

habēbā'mus, we were having, did  
have, had

habēbā'tis, *you were having*, etc.

habē'bant, *they were having*, etc.

## FUTURE

habē'bō, *I shall have*

habē'bis, *you will have*

habē'bit, *he, she, it will have*

habē'bimus, *we shall have*

habē'bitis, *you will have*

habē'bunt, *they will have*

70. **Drill.** — Conjugate *doceō* in the present tense, *terreō* in the imperfect tense, and *augeō* in the future tense.

## 71.

## Exercises



FIG. 14. RUINS OF A BAKERY

The bakers ground their own flour in stone mills and baked the bread in large brick ovens.

*Oral.* 1. Magnae undae Annam terrebant. 2. Linguam patriae amamus. 3. Multas linguas non docēbō. 4. Familiis patriae magnam victoriam nuntiābimus. 5. Magnae undae curas nautarum augent. 6. Anna linguas docet et multam disciplinam habet. 7. Victoria copiarum copiam pecuniae non augebit. 8. Magnam

pecuniam et parvam disciplinam habebat.

*Written.* 1. He will teach; they increased; you (*sing.*) terrified; we have. 2. The sailors were frightening Anna. 3. We gave much money to the country. 4. He is teaching languages. 5. We are reporting the victory by letter.

## 72.

## English Word Studies

A number of Latin verb forms are preserved as English words. First conjugation: *veto*, *habitat*, *ignoramus*, *mandamus*. Second conjugation: *tenet*. For their meanings, see the dictionary.

## LESSON XII

### ABLATIVE OF PLACE WHERE

73.

#### Vocabulary

##### NOUNS

##### VERBS

|   |  |           |
|---|--|-----------|
| <b>amici'tia</b> , -ae, f., <i>friendship</i> [ <b>amō</b> ] <sup>1</sup> | <b>ma'neō</b> , -ē're, <i>remain</i>   | (manse)   |
| <b>glō'ria</b> , -ae, f., <i>glory</i> (glorious)                         | <b>vi'deō</b> , -ē're, <i>see</i>      | (provide) |
| <b>grā'tia</b> , -ae, f., <i>gratitude, favor, influence</i>              | <b>[grāta]</b>                         |           |
| <b>vigi'lia</b> , -ae, f., <i>watchfulness, guard</i>                     | <b>in</b> , with abl., <i>in or on</i> |           |
|   | (vigilant)                             |           |

##### PREPOSITION

74. Drill. — (a) Decline **magna grātia, vīta longa**, and **lingua nova**.

(b) Give in Latin:

- (1) *true friendship* in the accusative, singular and plural.
- (2) *good memory* in the genitive, singular and plural.
- (3) *a great country* in the ablative, singular and plural.
- (4) *a famous language* in the dative, singular and plural.

75.

#### Prepositions of Place

In the preceding lessons the various relations of the English accusative with *of*, *to*, *for*, *by*, and *with* have been expressed in Latin by means of case endings without the use of prepositions. But certain constructions of the English accusative with prepositions require corresponding prepositions in Latin. Chief among these constructions in Latin are the three constructions of place — answering the questions (a) *Where?* (b) *Where from?* (c) *Where to?* — which will be discussed in this and the following lessons.

---

<sup>1</sup> When a new word in the vocabulary is related to a word previously studied, the latter is given in brackets instead of an English derivative.

**a. Place Where.** In with the ablative = *in* or *on*.

**Examples:**      *in silvā, in a forest.*  
                          *in viīs, on the streets.*

## 76.

## Exercises

*Oral.* 1. Magnam pecūniam in patriā habēmus.  
 2. Magna erat grātia nautārum. 3. Nautae in terrā nōn manēbunt. 4. Vēra amicitia est grāta. 5. Cōpiae fāmam et glōriam patriae augēbunt. 6. Multās vigiliās in viīs videō. 7. Multam māteriam in silvīs vidēbitis.

*Written.* 1. We saw guards on the streets. 2. (There) is much timber in the forest. 3. The troops did not remain on the island. 4. We shall see many forests. 5. Great is the glory of true friendship.

## 77.

## English Word Studies

The Latin ablative of the first declension is preserved in English in the word *via*: "I am going to New York *via* (by way of) Pittsburgh." The ablative plural is found in *gratis*: "He is giving this *gratis*" (out of favor, *i.e.* for nothing). *Gratis* is a contracted form of *grātiūs*.

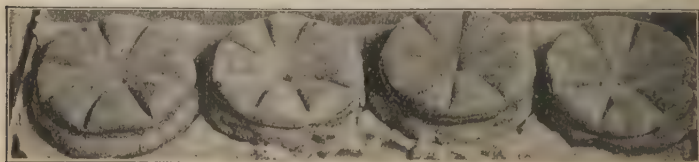


FIG. 15. ROMAN BREAD

Charred loaves of bread found at Pompeii and now in the Museum at Naples. They are marked with lines so that they may be broken into pieces easily, as is still the custom in Italy. (Other foods were found intact at Pompeii, even uncracked eggs.)

## LESSON XIII

### SECOND DECLENSION: NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES IN -US

#### 78. Vocabulary

| NOUNS  |             | ADJECTIVES                            |            |
|--|-------------|---------------------------------------|------------|
| <b>car'rus</b> , -ī, m., <i>cart, wagon</i>      | (car)       | <b>al'tus</b> , -a, <i>high, deep</i> | (altitude) |
| <b>nu'merus</b> , -ī, m., <i>number</i>          | (numerical) | <b>me'us</b> , -a, <i>my, mine</i>    |            |
| <b>ser'vus</b> , -ī, m., <i>slave</i>            | (servile)   | <b>pū'blicus</b> , -a, <i>public</i>  | (publish)  |
| <b>so'cius</b> , so'cī, m., <i>comrade, ally</i> | (associate) |                                       |            |
| VERBS  |             |                                       |            |
| <b>me'reō</b> , -ē're, <i>deserve, earn</i>      | (merit)     |                                       |            |
| <b>te'neō</b> , -ē're, <i>hold, keep</i>         | (retention) |                                       |            |

#### 79. Second Declension: Nouns and Adjectives in -us

All nouns studied thus far have the genitive singular ending **-ae** and belong to the **first declension**. Nouns of the **second declension** have the genitive singular ending **-ī**; the endings of the other cases also are different. Nouns ending in **-us** in the nominative are masculine.

**Adjectives** of the first and second declensions are declined in the feminine like nouns of the first declension and in the masculine like those of the second declension.

| ENDINGS                  |       | ENGLISH<br>FORCE       | <b>ser'vus bo'nus</b> , <i>a good slave</i><br>(base, serv- bon-) |                         |
|--------------------------|-------|------------------------|---|-------------------------|
| SING.                    | PLUR. |                        | SINGULAR  | PLURAL                  |
| <i>Nom.</i> -us (ius) -ī |       | Subject                | ser'vus bo'nus  | ser'vī bo'nī            |
| <i>Gen.</i> -ī           | -ōrum | Possessive             | ser'vī bo'nī  | servō'rum bo-<br>nō'rum |
| <i>Dat.</i> -ō           | -īs   | Indir. obj.            | ser'vō bo'nō  | ser'vīs bo'nīs          |
| <i>Acc.</i> -um          | -ōs   | Direct obj.            | ser'vum bo'nū   | ser'vōs bo'nōs          |
| <i>Abl.</i> -ō           | -īs   | With preposi-<br>tions | ser'vō bo'nō  | ser'vīs bo'nīs          |

**Observe that :**

(a) The genitive singular and the nominative plural have the same ending (-ī), just as these cases have the same ending (-ae) in the first declension.

(b) The dative and ablative singular have the same ending (-ō), likewise the dative and ablative plural (-īs); the latter is the same as in the first declension.

(c) Several of the endings include an -o, for this is the **O-Declension**.

(d) Nouns (not adjectives) ending in -ius contract -iī to -ī in the genitive singular: so'ciū becomes so'ci. The accent is not changed. The -i-, being a part of the base, appears in every form: dat. so'ciō, etc.

**Caution:** the nominative plural does not contract.

(e) The nominative singular and plural are preserved in many English words: **alumnus, alumni**. Other examples are given in **82**.

**80. Drill.** — (a) Decline **carrus parvus, socius meus**.

(b) Give in Latin :

- (1) *a good cart* in the nominative, singular and plural.
- (2) *a new comrade* in the genitive, singular and plural.
- (3) *a small number* in the dative, singular and plural.
- (4) *a large forest* in the accusative, singular and plural.
- (5) *a public slave* in the ablative, singular and plural.

**81.****Exercises**

**Oral.** 1. Amicitiam sociōrum merēmus. 2. Magnus numerus servōrum est in viā. 3. Sociō meō carrum novum mōnstrābō. 4. Magnum numerum carrōrum altōrum in viā pūblicā vidēbam. 5. Anna magnam grātiā et amicitiam servōrum meret. 6. Socii pugnāt in terrā et in aquā; victōriis magnis patriam servābunt. 7. Parvam cōpiam aquae bonae in insulā tenēbāmus.

**Written.** 1. Where did you see the allies' carts? 2. The slaves did not remain on the streets. 3. The strange language terrified the slaves. 4. We shall keep a large number of good wagons.



## 82. English Word Studies

The following are some words of the **-us** type preserved in English in their original form. Note that in English **-i** is pronounced like **-i** in mile:

| SINGULAR | PLURAL                                      |
|----------|---|
| alumnus  | alumni                                      |
| bacillus | bacilli                                     |
| genius   | genii (or geniuses, with different meaning) |
| radius   | radii (or radiuses)                         |
|          | literati (singular rare)                    |

Other **-us** nouns without plurals or with plurals in **-es**: **campus, circus, discus**. Adjectives: **bonus, quietus** (both nouns in English).



FIG. 16. POMPEII FROM AN AIRPLANE

© International



## LESSON XIV

### ABLATIVE OF PLACE FROM WHICH

83.

#### Vocabulary

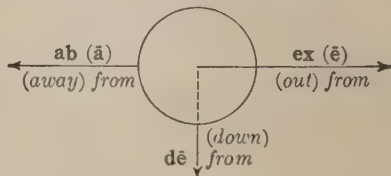
| NOUNS                              |             | ADJECTIVES   |            |
|------------------------------------|-------------|--|------------|
| ami'cus, -ī, m., <i>friend</i>     | [amō]       | ma'lus, -a, <i>bad</i>                             | (malice)   |
| capti'vus, -ī, m., <i>prisoner</i> | (captivate) | sin'gulī, -ae, plur., <i>one at a time</i>         | (singular) |
| VERBS                              |             | PREPOSITIONS                                       |            |
| mo'veō, -ē're, <i>move</i>         | (movement)  | ā, ab, <sup>1</sup> with abl., <i>from, by</i>     |            |
| vo'cō, -ā're, <i>call, summon</i>  | (vocation)  | dē, with abl., <i>down from, from, concerning</i>  |            |
|                                    |             | ē, ex, <sup>1</sup> with abl., <i>out of, from</i> |            |

#### 84. Prepositions of Place : Place from Which

ā, ab }  
 dē } used with the ablative = *from*.  
 ē, ex }

Examples : ā viā, (*away*) *from the road*.  
 dē silvā, (*down*) *from the forest*.  
 ex aquā, (*out*) *from the water*.

**Note.** — While all three prepositions convey the general idea of separation (*from*), **ab** means *away from the outside*, **ex** *out from the inside*, **dē** *merely from* when it is not important to distinguish between *away from* and *out from*. Sometimes **dē** means *down from*. See diagram :



<sup>1</sup> The shorter forms **ā** and **ē** are used only before words beginning with a consonant (except *h*).



FIG. 17. A ROMAN HOUSE

Note the arca, or safe, at the right. (From "Julius Caesar.")

**85. Blackboard Drill** (*To the teacher*). — Select fifteen or twenty nouns of the first and second declensions in various cases, singular and plural, place them on the board without reference to order of cases, and exhaust the possibilities of case and meaning. This will afford an excellent drill for the rapid recognition of forms.

**86.****Exercises**

*Oral.* 1. Servī malī magnam pecūniam et praedam ab insulīs portābant. 2. Carrōs singulōs dē silvā altā movēbunt. 3. Servōs ē silvā vocābimus et ab insulā nāvigābimus. 4. Socii captīvōs ē viā publicā movēbunt. 5. In malā fortūnā vērōs amicōs habēbāmus. 6. Māteriam dē silvis ad aquam portābimus. 7. Magnus numerus carrōrum erat in viīs plānīs.

*Written.* 1. Anna had a large number of true friends. 2. We moved many prisoners from the island. 3. My friends carried the timber out-of the woods. 4. The allies are summoning forces from many lands. 5. One-at-a-time they sailed from the island to the new land.

**87.****Latin and English Word Formation**

A great many Latin words are formed by joining prefixes (*prae* = *in front*; *fixus* = *attached*) to *root* words. These same prefixes, most of which are prepositions, are those chiefly used in English, and by their use many new words are continually being formed. Thus through them English *lives* and grows — without them it would be *dead*.

The following are examples of the prefixes **ab-**, **dē-**, and **ex-**:

(a) **ab-** (**abs-**, **ā-**): *a-vocation*, *ab-undance*, *abs-tain*.

(b) **dē-**: *de-fame*, *de-form*, *de-ter*, *de-viate*.

(c) **ex-** (**ē-**, **ef-**): *ex-alt*, *ex-port*, *ex-pect* (from *spectō*), *e-voke*.

Define the above words according to prefix and root. For root words, see previous vocabularies.

The following are other examples of the prefix *ex-* in English: *ex-cuse*, *e-dict*, *ex-empt*, *ef-fect*, *e-gress*, *ex-it*, *e-ject*, *e-mit*, *ex-quisite*.

## 88.

## SLAVES

Servī Rōmānī erant captīvī. Rōmānī pugnīs multās terrās vāstābant et magnus erat numerus captivōrum. Servōs ē Graeciā, ē Galliā, ex Asiā, ex Āfricā parābant. In familiā Rōmānā erant multī servī. Aquam portābant, litterās Graecās docēbant, vigiliae erant, medicī (*doctors*) erant. Multī clārī Graecī erant servī Rōmānōrum. Amīcitiam et grātiām Rōmānōrum merēbant. Litterae Rōmānōrum memoriām servōrum bonōrum et malōrum servant. Poena servī malī magna erat.



FIG. 18. A POMPEIAN HOUSE WALL

Our chief knowledge of Roman houses comes from Pompeii, because the lower portions of them were well preserved by the ashes thrown out by Mt. Vesuvius (cf. Fig. 7). Most of the walls were handsomely painted in bright colors.

## LESSON XV

### SECOND DECLENSION: NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES IN -ER AND -R

89.

#### Vocabulary

##### NOUNS

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| a'ger, a'grī, m., <i>field</i>           | (agrarian) |
| e'quus, -ī, m., <i>horse</i>             | (equine)   |
| magis'ter, magis'trī, m., <i>teacher</i> | (Mr.)      |
| pu'er, pu'erī, m., <i>boy</i>            | (puerile)  |
| vir, vi'rī, m., <i>man, hero</i>         | (virile)   |

##### ADJECTIVES

|                               |             |
|-------------------------------|-------------|
| li'ber, li'bera, <i>free</i>  | (liberty)   |
| nos'ter, nos'tra, <i>our</i>  | (nostrum)   |
| sa'cer, sa'cra, <i>sacred</i> | (desecrate) |



FIG. 19. PUER RŌMĀNUS

This Roman boy looks like a bright, modern schoolboy.

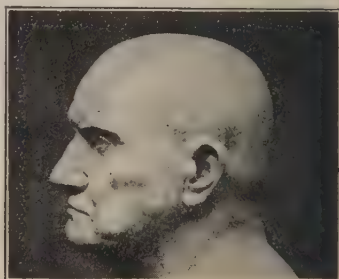


FIG. 20. VIR RŌMĀNUS

This ancient Roman looks like a modern business man or lawyer.

### 90. Second Declension : Nouns and Adjectives in -r

Masculine nouns and adjectives whose base ends in -r omit the ending in -us in the nominative singular. Such words accordingly end in -er or -r in the nominative. The genitive singular shows whether -e- is retained before -r in the other forms. In memorizing vocabularies, always note carefully (a) the *nominative*, (b) the *genitive*, (c) the *gender* of every noun.

| a'ger nos'ter, our field<br>(base, agr- nostr-) |                      | pu'er li'ber, a free boy<br>(base, puer- liber-) |                       |                           |
|---|----------------------|--|-----------------------|---------------------------|
| SINGULAR  |                      | SINGULAR   |                       |                           |
| PLURAL  |                      | PLURAL   |                       |                           |
| Nom.  | a'ger nos'ter        | a'grī nos'trī                                    | pu'er li'ber          | pu'erī li'berī            |
| Gen.  | a'grī nos'trī        | agrō'rum nos-<br>trō'rum                         | pu'erī li'berī        | puerō'rum li-<br>berō'rum |
| Dat.  | a'grō nos'trō        | a'grīs nos'trīs                                  | pu'erō li'berō        | pu'erīs li'berīs          |
| Acc.  | a'grum nos'-<br>trum | a'grōs nos'-<br>trōs                             | pu'erum li'be-<br>rum | pu'erōs li'be-<br>rōs     |
| Abl.  | a'grō nos'trō        | a'grīs nos'trīs                                  | pu'erō li'berō        | pu'erīs li'berīs          |

**Note.** — (1) Nouns and adjectives like **puer** and **liber** retain the **-e-** throughout; those like **ager** and **noster** retain it only in the nominative singular, while **vir** has no **e** at all. Most **-er** words are like **ager**; no others are like **vir**.

(2) The English derivative will usually help determine whether the **-e-** is retained or not; *e.g. puerile, liberal, miserable; agriculture, sacred, magistrate.*

**91. Drill.** — Decline **magister liber, ager malus, vir bonus.**

## 92. Exercises

**Oral.** 1. Puer equum ad aquam incitābat. 2. Magister noster linguam clāram docet. 3. Magister puerō malō pecūniam nōn dōnābit. 4. Magnōs agrōs et viās bonās et virōs liberōs in Americā vidēbitis. 5. Memoria clārōrum nostrōrum virōrum sacra est. 6. Virī nostrī agrōs sociōrum nōn vāstābant. 7. Equōs nostrōs magistrō et puerīs mōns-trābimus.

**Written.** 1. I shall give Anna the boy's money. 2. Our country is free and sacred. 3. They were moving the timber out-of the forest to the water with horses. 4. I see many horses in our friends' fields. 5. The teacher is showing the shapes of the letters to the boys.



## 93.

## English Word Studies

Several Latin words of the *-er* type are in common use in English :

*Nouns*: **arbiter**, **cancer**, **minister**, **vesper**.

*Adjectives*: **integer**, **miser**, **neuter**, **sinister** (the first two are used as nouns in English).

**Assimilation**. — Some prefixes change their final consonants to make them like the initial consonants of the words to which they are attached. This is called **assimilation** (**ad** = *to*; **similis** = *like*).

The prefix **ad-** is generally assimilated. Define the following — all formed from words in the previous vocabularies: *ac-curate*, *al-literation*, *an-nounce*, *ap-paratus*, *a-spect*, *as-sociate*, *ad-vocate*.

Additional examples of assimilation of **ad-** are: *ab-breviate*, *af-fect*, *ag-gressive*, *ac-quire*, *ar-rogant*, *at-tend*.



FIG. 21. A ROMAN WEDDING. (From "Julius Caesar.")



## LESSON XVI

PRESENT INDICATIVE OF SUM. ACCUSATIVE  
OF PLACE TO WHICH

## 94. Vocabulary

| NOUNS   | VERBS   |
|---|---|
| a'nimus, -ī, m., <i>mind, courage</i><br>(animated) | ha'bitō, -ā're, <i>live</i> (habitation)            |
| colō'nus, -ī, m., <i>settler</i> (colonize)         | labō'rō, -ā're, <i>labor, suffer</i><br>(laborious) |
| nūn'tius, nūn'ti, m., <i>messenger</i>              | mi'grō, -ā're, <i>depart</i> (migratory)            |
| [nūntiō]  |   |

### PREPOSITION

**in**, with acc., *into*; with abl., *in*, *on*

95. Present Indicative of *Sum*

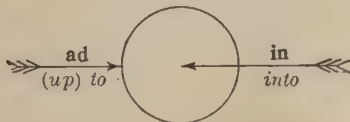
The verb *to be* is irregular in both English and Latin:

|                            |                        |
|----------------------------|------------------------|
| sum, <i>I am</i>           | su'mus, <i>we are</i>  |
| es, <i>you are</i>         | es'tis, <i>you are</i> |
| est, <i>he, she, it is</i> | sunt, <i>they are</i>  |

### 96. Prepositions of Place : Place to Which

**ad** with acc. = (up) to

**in** with acc. = *into*



Carrōs {<sup>ad</sup><sub>in</sub>} aquam movent, *They move the carts {<sup>to</sup><sub>into</sub>} the water.*

Compare a like difference between **ab** and **ex** (84).

## 97.

## Exercises



FIG. 22. CARICATURE OF  
AN OFFICER

Drawn in red chalk by a Roman soldier on the wall of the barracks in Pompeii. Many interesting things are found scratched, drawn, or painted on the walls of Pompeii: notices of elections, games, etc., schoolboys' nonsense, poetry.

*Oral.* 1. Servi estis et in agris labōrātis. 2. Bonus servus labōrat iniūriā<sup>1</sup> malī servī. 3. Animus magnus virōrum nautās terrēbat. 4. Māteriam equīs et carrīs dē silvīs ad aquam portābitis. 5. Multi liberī virī in insulā magnā habitant. 6. Sociī nostrī numerum magnum captivōrum in insulam movēbant. 7. Colōnī ex Eurōpā migrant et ad liberam Americam nāvigant. 8. Servi equōs nūntī in silvās incitābant.

*Written.* 1. We are messengers of a great victory. 2. The messenger's horse is in our field. 3. The prisoners will carry the timber from the woods into the fields with horses. 4. We shall give the booty to the settlers of the island. 5. The boys are in the woods.

## 98. English Word Formation

The prefix *in-* is often assimilated. Define the following, formed from words found in recent vocabularies: *in-gratiate*, *in-habit*, *im-migrant*, *im-port*, *in-spect*, *in-undate*. Additional examples of assimilation of *in-* are: *im-bibe*, *il-lusion*. Words that have come in through the French often have *en-* or *em-* for *in-* or *im-*: *enchant*, *inquire* or *enquire*.

<sup>1</sup> The **ablative of cause** is used chiefly with verbs and adjectives expressing feeling: *Labōrāre iniūriā*, *To suffer because of the wrong*.

## LESSON XVII

### SECOND DECLENSION: NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES IN *-UM*

99.

#### Vocabulary

##### NOUNS

*cas'tra*, *-ō'rum*, n., plur., *camp*  
(Lancaster)

*cōnsi'lium*, *-ī*, n., *plan, prudence,*  
*advice* (counsel)

*sig'num*, *-ī*, n., *sign, standard, signal*  
(sign)

*frūmen'tum*, *-ī*, n., *grain*  
(fruition)

*prae'mium*, *-ī*, n., *reward*  
(premium)

##### VERB

*ē'vocō*, *-ā're*, *call out, summon*  
[*vocō*]

Watch for other English derivatives in your daily reading.

### 100. Second Declension: Neuter Nouns and Adjectives in *-um*

The second declension, in addition to the masculine nouns ending in *-us*, *-er*, and *-r*, contains a large group of neuter nouns ending in *-um*. The only difference between them and the *-us* nouns is in the nominative and accusative, singular and plural.

| CASE ENDINGS           |              | <i>sig'num par'vum, a small sign</i><br>(base, <i>sign- parv-</i> ) |                            |
|------------------------|--------------|---|----------------------------|
| SINGULAR               | PLURAL       | SINGULAR  | PLURAL                     |
| <i>Nom.</i> <i>-um</i> | <i>-a</i>    | <i>sig'num par'vum</i>  | <i>sig'na par'va</i>       |
| <i>Gen.</i> <i>-ī</i>  | <i>-ōrum</i> | <i>sig'nī par'vī</i>  | <i>signō'rum parvō'rum</i> |
| <i>Dat.</i> <i>-ō</i>  | <i>-īs</i>   | <i>sig'nō par'vō</i>  | <i>sig'nīs par'vis</i>     |
| <i>Acc.</i> <i>-um</i> | <i>-a</i>    | <i>sig'num par'vum</i>  | <i>sig'na par'va</i>       |
| <i>Abl.</i> <i>-ō</i>  | <i>-īs</i>   | <i>sig'nō par'vō</i>  | <i>sig'nīs par'vis</i>     |

**Note.** — (a) Neuter nouns and adjectives of all declensions have the same form in the accusative singular as in the nominative.

(b) Neuter nouns and adjectives of all declensions end in *-ā* in the nominative and accusative plural.

(c) Neuter nouns and adjectives of the second declension ending in *-ium* contract *-iī* to *-ī* in the genitive singular: *cōnsi'liī* becomes *cōnsi'li*. The accent is not changed. The *-i-*, being a part of the base, appears in every form: (dat.) *cōnsiliō*, etc.

**101. Drill.** — (a) Decline *frūmentum bonum* and *prae-mium grātum*.

(b) Give in Latin:

- (1) *a new standard* in the accusative, singular and plural.
- (2) *a famous reward* in the ablative, singular and plural.
- (3) *a great plan* in the genitive, singular and plural.
- (4) *a small camp* in the dative.

## 102.

## Exercises

*Oral.* 1. *Amīcus meus multa praemia meret.* 2. *Cōnsiliō bonō vitam amīcī nostrī servābō.* 3. *Litteris virōs ad castra ēvocābat.* 4. *Servī frūmentum ex agrīs in castra portābant.* 5. *Captīvī singulī nostrīs virīs cōnsilium nūntiābant.* 6. *Castra sociōrum nostrōrum sunt in magnā insulā.* 7. *Signō amīcīs victōriam nūntiābimus.*

*Written.* 1. We shall give our friends great rewards. 2. The men were moving the grain from the camp with horse and wagon. 3. We saw much grain (*plur.*) in our friends' fields. 4. The colonists will sail from Europe to America and live in a free land.

## 103.

## English Word Studies

(a) The following are Latin words of the *-um* and *-ium* type preserved in their original form in English:

| SINGULAR    | PLURAL               | SINGULAR   | PLURAL              |
|-------------|----------------------|------------|---------------------|
| bacterium   | bacteria             | curriculum | curricula (or -ums) |
| candelabrum | candelabra (or -ums) | spectrum   | spectra             |

(b) Latin adjectives and participles used as nouns in English :

| SINGULAR | PLURAL                                      | SINGULAR   | PLURAL              |
|----------|---|------------|---------------------|
| addendum | addenda                                     | memorandum | memoranda           |
| datum    | data (remember to<br>say <i>these</i> data) | minimum    | (or -ums)<br>minima |
| dictum   | dicta (or -ums)                             | stratum    | strata (or -ums)    |
| maximum  | maxima (or -ums)                            |            |                     |



© International

FIG. 23. ROMAN AMPHITHEATER AT NÎMES, FRANCE  
The amphitheater in accord with its past is used to-day for bull fights.

## LESSON XVIII

### IMPERFECT AND FUTURE INDICATIVE OF *SUM*. INFINITIVE USED AS SUBJECT AND OBJECT

#### 104. Vocabulary

##### NOUNS

ar'ma, -ō'rum, n., plur., *arms, weapons* (armor)  
 auxi'lium, -ī, n., *help, aid*; plur., *reinforcements* (auxiliary)  
 bel'lum, -ī, n., *war* (belligerent)  
 concor'dia, -ae, f., *harmony* (concord)

##### VERBS

dē'beō, -ē're, *owe, ought, be obliged to* (debt)  
 mātū'rō, -ā're, *hasten* (maturity)

#### 105. Imperfect and Future Indicative of *Sum*

Review the present tense of the verb *sum* (95). The imperfect and future tenses of *sum* are likewise irregularly formed :

##### IMPERFECT

|                               |                          |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------|
| e'ram, <i>I was</i>           | erā'mus, <i>we were</i>  |
| e'rās, <i>you were</i>        | erā'tis, <i>you were</i> |
| e'rat, <i>he, she, it was</i> | e'rant, <i>they were</i> |

##### FUTURE

|                                   |                             |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| e'rō, <i>I shall be</i>           | e'rimus, <i>we shall be</i> |
| e'ris, <i>you will be</i>         | e'ritis, <i>you will be</i> |
| e'rit, <i>he, she, it will be</i> | e'runt, <i>they will be</i> |

Caution. — Do not say *You was*.

#### 106. Infinitive Used as Subject

In English, a verb preceded by *to* (as *to see, to hear, etc.*) is called an *infinitive*. The English infinitive sign, therefore,

is *to*.<sup>1</sup> The corresponding sign of the present active infinitive in Latin is *-re*, which is added directly to the present stem; as *portā-re*, *to carry*; *vidē-re*, *to see*.

(a) The infinitive is a verbal noun, and as such it may be used as the subject of a verb; as,

*Habēre amicōs est grātum*, *To have friends is pleasing*.

(Cf. *Errāre hūmānum est*, *To err is human*.)

**Note.** — While Latin nouns are declined and represent different genders, the infinitive when used as subject is indeclinable and is always *neuter* (see *grātum* in the example above).

(b) An infinitive may be used as a predicate nominative; as, *Vidēre est crēdere*, *To see is to believe*.

### 107. Infinitive Used as Object

With many verbs the infinitive may be used as direct object, like other nouns; as,

*Parat cōpiās movēre*, *He prepares to move the troops*.

**Note.** — This is sometimes called the **complementary infinitive**, because it *completes* the meaning of the main verb.

### 108. Exercises

*Oral.* 1. *Grātum erat vidēre magnum numerum equōrum in agrīs.* 2. *Magnum est vitam amīcī servāre.* 3. *Puerō prae-mium nostrum mōnstrāre mātūrāmus.* 4. *Nūntiī pecūniā et prae-miīs animōs nautārum incitāre parābant.* 5. *Cōpiae signa et arma ad terram novam portāre mātūrant.* 6. *Patriae nostrae pecūniam mandāre dēbēmus.* 7. *Socii nostrī arma et frūmentum habēre dēbent.* 8. *Bonum erit habēre concordiam et auxilium in bellō.*

---

<sup>1</sup> The preposition *to* introducing the infinitive is omitted, however, after the verbs *bid*, *dare*, *feel*, *hear*, *let*, *make*, *need*, *see*, and the auxiliary verbs *can*, *may*, *must*, *shall*, and *will*.



*Written.* 1. It was pleasing to see the courage and harmony of the troops. 2. The free men are preparing to fight with new weapons on land and water. 3. The slaves will hasten to increase the supply of grain. 4. The messenger ought to report the plan of war to the men. 5. It will be pleasing to see tall grain (*plur.*) in the fields.

### 109. English Word Studies

English words borrowed from the Latin which have preserved the original case forms of the second declension are :

Gen. *agri*-culture, *horti*-culture  
Abl. *quarto*, *limbo*, *No.* (= *Numero*)

### *a*, Latin Phrases in English

*multum in parvō*, *much in little*.

*dē novō*, *anew*, literally, *from a new (start)*.

*in memoriam*, *to the memory (of)* — the title of a poem by Tennyson.

### 110. SPARTACUS TO THE GLADIATORS

Spartacus erat clārus servus, captīvus Rōmānōrum. Sociōs ēvccābat et incitābat: "O sociī, Rōmānī nōn sunt amīcī nostrī; sunt malī! Puer eram in patriā meā et vīta grāta erat. Silvās et agrōs amābam; liber eram. Vērūm amīcum habēbam, puerum bonum et grātum. Sed (*but*) Rōmānī patriam meam vāstant: mē et amīcum meum ex patriā portant: nunc (*now*) captīvus sum et servus! Vir sum et in arēnā pugnō. Hodiē (*to-day*) virum necāre (*kill*) debēbam — et erat amīcus meus! Virī estis; Rōmam nōn amātis! Pugnābimus! Liberī erimus et ad patriam migrāre mātūrābimus!"

## LESSON XIX

### REVIEW

**111.** Review the nominative, genitive, gender, and meaning of every noun in Lessons XI–XVIII.

### 112. Declension and Agreement of Adjectives and Nouns

We have noted (14) that an adjective in Latin must agree with its noun in gender, number, and case. This agreement is indicated by endings. In order, therefore, to modify nouns of different genders, every adjective thus far studied has a threefold declension as follows :

| SINGULAR    |         |         |         | PLURAL         |                |                |  |
|-------------|---------|---------|---------|----------------|----------------|----------------|--|
|             | M.      | F.      | N.      | M.             | F.             | N.             |  |
| <i>Nom.</i> | mag'nus | mag'na  | mag'num | mag'nī         | mag'nae        | mag'na         |  |
| <i>Gen.</i> | mag'nī  | mag'nae | mag'nī  | magnō'-<br>rum | magnā'-<br>rum | magnō'-<br>rum |  |
| <i>Dat.</i> | mag'nō  | mag'nae | mag'nō  | mag'nīs        | mag'nīs        | mag'nīs        |  |
| <i>Acc.</i> | mag'num | mag'nam | mag'num | mag'nōs        | mag'nās        | mag'na         |  |
| <i>Abl.</i> | mag'nō  | mag'nā  | mag'nō  | mag'nīs        | mag'nīs        | mag'nīs        |  |

**113. Drill.** — (a) Decline in full **liber, libera, liberum** and **novus, nova, novum**.

(b) Decline the adjective **sacer, sacra, sacrum** in turn with **nūntius, via, and bellum**.

### 114. A Study in Agreement

Inasmuch as **nauta** is masculine and belongs to the first declension, an adjective, when made to agree with it in gender, number, and case, must assume the masculine endings of the second declension, as follows: **nauta bonus, nautae bonī**, etc. Decline in full.

**115. Drill.** — Decline together *a bad boy, pleasing harmony, and public aid*.

## 116.

## Review of Verbs

(1) Give the present stems of the following verbs: **habitō, terreō, vocō, moveō, dēbeō, mātūrō, augeō.**

(2) Conjugate in full, with meanings, (a) **migrō** in the present, (b) **maneō** in the imperfect, (c) **doceō** in the future.

(3) Give in Latin: *they were, he will be, I am, you (sing.) are, she is, you (plur.) were, we shall be, I was, they are.*

## 117.

## Rapid-fire Drills

(1) *Translate:* we were; **habēbis**; **māteriā**; **probāmus**; to the small waves; **manent**; she did intrust; of our gratitude; **bonōs amīcōs**; you were laying waste.

(2) What forms are: **tenent, soci, amābāmus, vigiliis, nūntiū, nūntiābimus, docēbitis, mōnstrās, auxiliōrum?**

## 118.

## English Word Studies — Review

(1) Give and define three English nouns which retain Latin nominative forms, singular and plural, of the first declension.

(2) Give and define three English words which preserve Latin verb forms.

(3) Give and define three English nouns which retain Latin nominative forms, singular and plural, of the second declension, masculine.

(4) Give and define three English nouns which retain Latin nominative forms, singular and plural, of the second declension, neuter.

(5) Give prefix and root word from which the following are derived, and define:

*defame, approve, advocate, invocation, immigrant, emigrant, avocation, vocation, deter.*

(6) What is the original form of the prefix in the following?

*affect, effect, defect, aspect, improve, alliteration, affront, abstain, illusion.*

## LESSON XX

### CONNECTED READING: WAR AND VICTORY. CONVERSATION

119.

#### WAR AND VICTORY

Colōnī in insulā manēbant et sociīs arma et frūmentum dōnābant. Equīs et carrīs frūmentum ad castra portābant. Virī pūgnāre et augēre numerum captīvōrum mātūrābant. Longum erat bellum, magna victōria. Cōpia sociōrum multōs agrōs vāstābant et colōnīs praedam multam dōnābant. Castra movēre et nāvigāre parābant. Multōs nautās et nūntiōs singulōs in viā vidēbāmus. Erat novum vidēre multōs virōs, equōs, et carrōs. Multōs captīvōs et arma habēbant. Cōpia ad patriam nāvigābant. Patria pugnās et victōriās memoriā tenēbit.

120.

#### Questions

In Latin a question is regularly introduced by an interrogative word — either a pronoun or adverb (*who? where? etc.*), or the particle *-ne*. The latter is never used alone but is always attached to the first word in the sentence. Such attached words are called **enclitics**. As the enclitic becomes part of the preceding word, the word accent may shift: *insulam'ne*, *Corsi'cane*. When *nōn* is used in a question, it is put first and the enclitic *-ne* is attached to it.

121.

#### Conversation: A Geography Lesson

M. = Magister, *teacher*

D. = Discipulī, *pupils*

M. Spectātisne? D. Spectāmus.

M. Ubi est Italia? D. In Eurōpā Italia est.

M. Īnsulamne vidētis? D. Corsicam vidēmus.

M. Corsicane est magna īnsula? D. Parva, nōn magna īnsula est Corsica.

M. Magnam insulam mōnstrō; Britannia est. Colōnī ex Britannīā ad Americam migrābant.

M. Ubi magna victōria erat? D. In Galliā magna victōria erat.

M. Nōne magna erat glōria Galliae? D. Magna erat et est et erit glōria Galliae.

Note. — Ask questions and make statements similar to the above, using the accompanying map or preferably a large wall map.

### Questions to Be Answered in Latin

1. Eurōpane est in Italiā? 2. Īnsulane est Italia? 3. Ubi est Rōma?

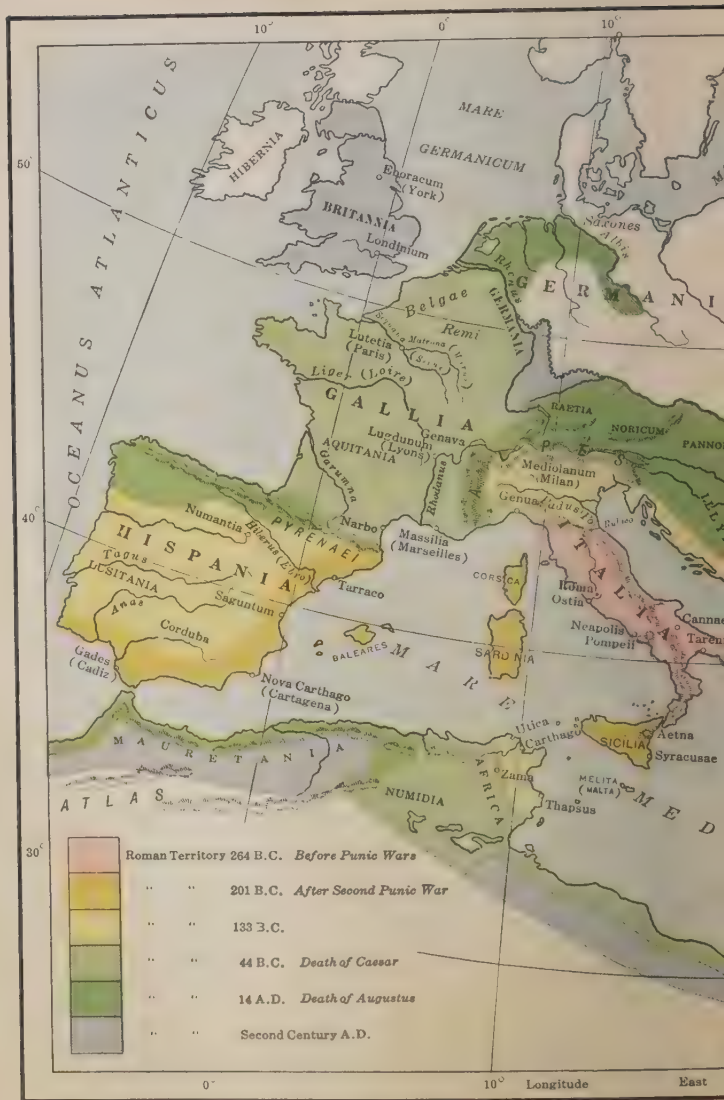


FIG. 24. THE TOMB OF HADRIAN AND THE TIBER

The emperor Hadrian (117-138 A.D.) built this tomb for members of the imperial family. It was so used for eighty years. During the Middle Ages it was used as a fortress and its handsome exterior was destroyed.









**IMPERIUM ROMANUM**

Scale of miles  
0 100 200 300 400 500



## LESSON XXI

### THIRD CONJUGATION: PRESENT AND IMPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

#### 122.

#### Vocabulary

|   |               |
|---|---------------|
| a'gō, -ere, <i>drive, do, discuss, live or spend (time)</i> | (agent)       |
| cē'dō, -ere, <i>move, retreat</i>                           | (accede)      |
| accē'dō, -ere, <i>approach (w. ad)</i>                      |               |
| excē'dō, -ere, <i>go away, depart</i>                       |               |
| dēfen'dō, -ere, <i>defend</i>                               | (defendant)   |
| op'pidum, -ī, n., <i>town</i>                               |               |
| pō'nō, -ere, <i>put, place</i>                              | (postpone)    |
| sem'per, adv., <i>always</i>                                | (sempiternal) |

#### 123.

#### Third Conjugation

(a) Verbs of the **third conjugation** have the stem vowel **-ě-**. Note the difference of stem vowel in:

*1st Conj. (Long-A Verbs):* Pres. stem **parā-** (from infin. **parāre**)

*2nd Conj. (Long-E Verbs):* Pres. stem **vidē-** (from infin. **vidēre**)

*3rd Conj. (Short-E Verbs):* Pres. stem **pōnē-** (from infin. **pōnēre**)

(b) The short vowel **-e-** of the third conjugation changes to **-i-** in forming the present tense, except in the third person plural, where it becomes **-u-**. In the first person singular it disappears before **-ō**. Short **-e-** is lengthened in the imperfect tense.

| PRESENT ( <i>I place, etc.</i> ) |          | IMPERFECT ( <i>I was placing, etc.</i> ) |            |
|----------------------------------|----------|--|------------|
| pō'nō                            | pō'nimus | pōnē'bam                                 | pōnēbā'mus |
| pō'nis                           | pō'nitis | pōnē'bās                                 | pōnēbā'tis |
| pō'nit                           | pō'nunt  | pōnē'bat                                 | pōnē'bant  |

**124. Drill.** — Memorize the model verb **pōnō** and conjugate **agō**, **dēfendō**, and **cēdō** in the present and imperfect tenses.

**125.**

### Exercises

*Oral.* 1. Vitam bonam semper agēbat. 2. Colōnī ex agrīs in oppida excēdēbant. 3. Equōsne in aquam agis? 4. Memoria poenae nōn grāta est. 5. Ubi praedam pōnitis? In viā praedam pōnimus. 6. Sociī ad castra accēdunt et pugnāre parant. 7. Ad insulam cēdēbāmus et castra dēfendere parābāmus.

*Written.* 1. He was living a good life. 2. They are defending the camp with arms. 3. The slave is-getting-ready to put the grain into the wagon. 4. We ought to increase the number of our forces in the land of our allies. 5. Is he not living a long life?

**126.**

### English Word Studies

We have seen that many English nouns have preserved their original Latin forms. A great many more have preserved the base of the Latin noun. Others again consist of the Latin base plus silent **-e**. Some adjectives also preserve the Latin base or the base plus **-e**. The following are examples:

(a) *form*, *public*, *long*, *sign*; (b) *cause*, *fortune*, *fame*, *cure*, *plane*.

The same rule is illustrated in the following words, which have undergone changes in the base:

(a) *letter* (*littera*), *number* (*numerus*), *car* (*carrus*), *clear* (*clārus*); (b) *single* (*singuli*).

Give other examples of this rule from nouns and adjectives already studied.

## LESSON XXII

### APPOSITION

#### 127.

#### Vocabulary

|  |                |
|--|----------------|
| ae'quus, -a, -um, <i>even, equal, fair, just</i> | (equality)     |
| expec'tō, -ā're, <i>look out for, await</i>      | [spectō]       |
| mit'tō, -ere, <i>let go, send</i>                | (intermittent) |
| offi'cium, -ī, n., <i>duty</i>                   | (office)       |
| po'pulus, -ī, m., <i>people</i>                  | (popular)      |
| re'gō, -ere, <i>guide, rule</i>                  | (regent)       |
| sed, conj., <i>but</i>                           |                |

#### 128.

#### English Word Study

Many English verbs preserve the Latin base with or without silent *-e*: (a) *cede, probe, accuse, evoke*; (b) *defend, labor*.

Give other examples of this rule from verbs that you have studied.

#### 129.

#### Apposition

1. *Multi viri, amici captivorum, in castris sunt, Many men, friends of the prisoners, are in the camp.*

2. *Nautis, amicis nostris, pecuniam donamus, We give money to the sailors, our friends.*

Observe that *amici* (1) describes the subject *virī* and stands in direct relation to it and is therefore in the nominative, while *amicis* (2) limits or refers directly to *nautis*, the indirect object, and is accordingly in the dative. No verb intervenes. This construction is called **apposition**.

**130. Rule.** — *A noun in apposition with another noun (or pronoun) is in the same case.*

**131. Drill.** — (a) Decline *officium nostrum* and *populus aequus*.

(b) Conjugate *expectō*, *mittō*, and *regō* in the present and imperfect tenses.



## 132.

## Exercises

*Oral.* 1. Puerōs malōs, cūram familiārum, nōn amāmus. 2. In Americā, patriā nostrā, semper habitābimus. 3. Vir bonus et aequus populum patriae nostrae regit. 4. Dēfendere patriam est officium virōrum. 5. Cōpia in castris nōn manent sed ad oppidum cēdunt et nūntium exspectant. 6. Auxilia ad Rōmānōs, sociōs nostrōs, nōn mittēbat. 7. Magna erat et semper erit glōria populi Rōmānī.

*Written.* 1. Did the boys see our friend, the sailor, on the street? 2. It is the duty of the slave to drive the horses to water. 3. Are you sending aid to our allies, the Roman people? 4. The sailors, our allies and friends, were departing from the town.



FIG. 25. VIA RŌMĀNA IN ĀFRICĀ

This street is in Timgad, Algeria. Under Roman rule all northern Africa was rich and prosperous.

## LESSON XXIII

### THIRD CONJUGATION -IŌ VERBS, FOURTH CONJUGATION VERBS: PRESENT AND IMPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

133.

#### Vocabulary

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| ca'piō, -ere, <i>take, seize</i>        | (captive)   |
| acci'piō, -ere, <i>receive</i>          |             |
| fa'ciō, -ere, <i>do, make</i>           | (efficient) |
| mū'niō, -ī're, <i>fortify</i>           | (munitions) |
| quod, conj., <i>because</i>             |             |
| ve'niō, -ī're, <i>come</i>              | (convene)   |
| inve'niō, -ī're, <i>come upon, find</i> |             |

#### 134. Latin and English Word Formation : Vowel Changes

When a Latin word is compounded with a prefix, short **a** or short **e** in the root is usually "weakened" to short **i** before a single consonant except **r**. The English derivatives show the same change. Long vowels are not affected; for example :

From **agō**, Latin **ex-igō**, **ab-igō**, **red-igō**, etc.; English *exigency*, etc.

From **capiō**, Latin **ac-cipiō**, **in-cipiō**, etc.; English *incipient*, *recipe*, etc.

From **faciō**, Latin **ef-ficiō**, **dē-ficiō**, etc.; English *efficient*, *deficient*, etc.

From **habeō**, Latin **pro-hibeō**, **ex-hibeō**, etc.; English *prohibit*, *exhibit*, etc.

From **teneō**, Latin **con-tineō**, **re-tineō**, etc.; English *continent*, *retinue*, etc.

**Exercise.** — Illustrate the rule further with English derivatives of the Latin verbs which you have studied in previous lessons.

### 135. Third Conjugation Verbs in *-iō* : Present and Imperfect Indicative Active

A small but important group of verbs of the third conjugation ends in *-iō* instead of *-ō*. While their present stems end in *-ĕ*, *-i-* is inserted before the lengthened stem vowel in forming the imperfect and future tenses, as well as in the first person singular and the third person plural of the present tense. Compare the following model of an *-iō* verb with *pōnō* (123, b) :

| PRESENT ( <i>I take, etc.</i> ) |          | IMPERFECT ( <i>I was taking, etc.</i> ) |             |
|---------------------------------|----------|---|-------------|
| ca'piō                          | ca'pimus | capiē'bam                               | capiēbā'mus |
| ca'pis                          | ca'pitis | capiē'bās                               | capiēbā'tis |
| ca'pit                          | ca'piunt | capiē'bat                               | capiē'bant  |

### 136. Fourth Conjugation

Most verbs ending in *-iō*, however, belong to the **fourth conjugation** and are distinguished by the stem vowel *-ī-*.

Verbs of the fourth conjugation are called **Long-I Verbs**, because they retain long *-ī* throughout their conjugation except where long vowels are regularly shortened (20, a). Note by contrast that *-iō* verbs of the third conjugation have short *-i-* throughout.

| PRESENT ( <i>I fortify, etc.</i> ) |          | IMPERFECT ( <i>I was fortifying, etc.</i> ) |             |
|------------------------------------|----------|---|-------------|
| mū'niō                             | mūnī'mus | mūniē'bam                                   | mūniēbā'mus |
| mū'nīs                             | mūnī'tis | mūniē'bās                                   | mūniēbā'tis |
| mū'nit                             | mū'niunt | mūniē'bat                                   | mūniē'bant  |

**137. Drill.** — Conjugate and give all possible meanings of the present and imperfect tenses of *accēdō*, *inveniō*, *faciō*.

## 138.

## Exercises

*Oral.* 1. Magnam pecūniam in viā invenit. 2. Ubi estis? Venīmus. 3. Magnam poenam merent puerī malī sed bonī multa praemia merent. 4. Nōne aequum est semper dēfendere amīcōs? 5. Castra mūniēbant et virōs ēvocābant, quod pugnāre parābant. 6. In castrīs captīvōs inveniunt et multam praedam capiunt. 7. Magna praemia virī accipiunt, quod officium faciunt et armīs patriam dēfendunt.

*Written.* 1. We do not find good timber in the forest. 2. We were fortifying the camp and defending the island with arms. 3. It is pleasing to find money. 4. We shall sail to the island and lay waste the fields. 5. Marcus is not receiving a reward because he was a bad boy.

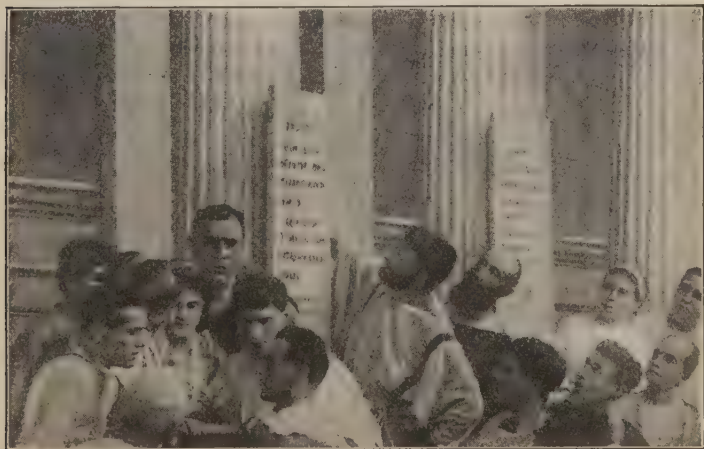


FIG. 26. WATCHING THE BULLETIN BOARDS

The Romans had no newspapers like ours and depended on bulletin boards for news. (From "Julius Caesar.")

## LESSON XXIV

### WORD ORDER

139.

#### Vocabulary

|  |                  |
|--|------------------|
| dū'cō, -ere, <i>lead</i>                                 | (reduce)         |
| effi'ciō, -ere, <i>make out, bring about</i>             | [ <i>faciō</i> ] |
| lo'cus, -ī, m., <i>place</i> ; plur., lo'ca <sup>1</sup> | (local)          |
| pre'tium, -ī, n., <i>price</i>                           | (precious)       |
| ter'minus, -ī, m., <i>end, boundary</i>                  | (terminal)       |

140.

#### Latin Phrases in English

- ad infinitum, *to infinity, i.e. without limit.*  
 ad astra per aspera, *to the stars through difficulties.*  
 ex animō, *from the heart (sincerely).*  
 Experientia docet, *Experience teaches.*

141.

#### Word Order

We have observed from the beginning (7) that the words in a Latin sentence show their connection with one another by means of endings, regardless of position (unlike English). They may therefore be shifted rather freely without obscuring the relationship. The normal order is:

| SUBJECT   |      |
|---|------|
| NOUN — adjective, ( <i>genitive, appositive</i> ) |      |
| PREDICATE   |      |
| ablative — indir. obj. — dir. obj. — adverb —     | VERB |

(a) **Remember**, therefore, that the normal order of words is as follows:

1. Adjectives usually follow their nouns, but adjectives of quantity precede: **virī boni; multi virī.**
2. A genitive follows its noun.
3. An indirect object stands before a direct object.

---

<sup>1</sup> When used in this original sense, **locus** changes gender in the plural.

4. A word used to ask a question usually stands first, as in English.
5. The verb stands last. Forms of the linking verb are often placed in the middle of a sentence, as in English.
6. For *nōnne*, see 120.

(b) But this normal order is far less regular in Latin than the normal order is in English. The shifted order serves to bring out varying shades of emphasis. This is done also in English, though to a less extent, largely in imitation of the Latin. Emphasis is gained particularly by:

1. Putting the emphatic word *first* in the sentence.
2. *Separating* the emphatic word from the word to which it belongs.

The former is common in English: *Great is the glory of the Lord!*

## 142.

## Exercises

*Oral.* 1. Arma nova capiunt et locum dēfendunt. 2. Ad terram sociōrum cōpiās dūcēbāmus. 3. Multōs equōs habēre dēbēmus, sed magnum est pretium. 4. Magister concordiam nōn efficit, quod puerī sunt malī. 5. Ad arma virōs vocāmus et loca plāna mūnimus. 6. Ubi est terminus agrōrum Mārci, amīcī nostrī? 7. Ad oppidum auxilia mittimus, sed locum nōn mūnimus.

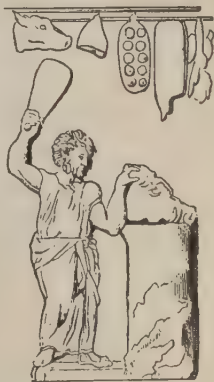


FIG. 27. A BUTCHER SHOP

*Written.* 1. The price of instruction is small, but the rewards are great. 2. Great is the fame of our teacher. 3. The sailors were seizing and fortifying many places on the island. 4. We are coming to the boundaries of our friends' fields. 5. They are hastening to lead a large number of prisoners to the small camp.





## LESSON XXV

### THIRD CONJUGATION: FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE

#### 143.

#### Vocabulary

|  |                 |
|--|-----------------|
| com'modus, -a, -um, <i>suitable, convenient</i>              | (commodity)     |
| fu'giō, -ere, <i>flee</i>                                    | (fugitive)      |
| ō'tium, -ī, n., <i>leisure, rest</i>                         | (otiose)        |
| puel'la, -ae, f., <i>girl</i>                                | [ <i>puer</i> ] |
| stu'dium, -ī, n., <i>eagerness, interest; plur., studies</i> | (studious)      |
| va'leō, -ē're, <i>be strong, be well, be powerful</i>        | (valid)         |
| va'rius, -a, -um, <i>changing, varying</i>                   | (variety)       |

#### 144.

#### Latin Phrases in English

victōria, nōn praeda, *victory, not booty.*

auxiliō ab altō, *by aid from (on) high.*

Montānī semper liberi, *Mountaineers (are) always free* (motto of West Virginia).

*ex officiō*, *out of (as a result of) one's duty or office; e.g. a president of an organization may be a member of a committee ex officio, as a result of his office as president* (pronounced "offishio").

#### 145.

#### Third Conjugation: Future Active

The future sign of verbs of the first and second conjugations is **-bi-** (43). The future sign of verbs of the third and fourth conjugations, however, is **-ē-**. The **-ō** verbs of the third conjugation, in forming the future, substitute **-ē-** for the stem vowel **-ē-**, except in the first singular (**-am**).<sup>1</sup>

pō'nam, *I shall place*  
pō'nēs, *you will place*  
pō'net, *he will place*

pōnē'mus, *we shall place*  
pōnē'tis, *you will place*  
pō'nent, *they will place*

**146. Drill.** — Give the present of **mittō**, the imperfect of **cēdō**, and the future of **dūcō**, **dēfendō**, and **agō**.

<sup>1</sup> The third singular and plural have **-ē**, according to rule (20, a).

## 147.

## Exercises

*Oral.* 1. Valēsne? Valeō. 2. Puerī bonī magnam fā-  
mam ex studiīs accipiunt. 3. Varia est fortūna bellī, sed  
victōria erit nostra. 4. Vitam in ōtiō nōn agēmus sed  
semper labōrābimus. 5. Puerī nōn excēdent sed puellās  
dēfendent. 6. Cōpiaē nostrae ē castrīs nōn fugiunt sed  
ad locum commodum excēdunt. 7. Litterās ad Mārcum,  
amīcum meum, mittam.

*Written.* 1. They will be powerful; we are fleeing; he  
will lead; they were fortifying. 2. Where were the girls?  
Did they remain in a suitable place? 3. We shall remain  
in the town and send a messenger to our slaves. 4. They  
fortify the camp and summon reinforcements from the  
town.



FIG. 28. ROMAN RUINS IN PALMYRA, SYRIA

## LESSON XXVI

### ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT

148.

#### Vocabulary

|   |                  |
|---|------------------|
| <b>affi'ciō</b> , -ere, <i>affect, visit with, afflict with</i> | [ <b>faciō</b> ] |
| <b>cum</b> , prep. with abl., <i>with</i>                       |                  |
| <b>dū'rus</b> , -a, -um, <i>hard, harsh</i>                     | (durable)        |
| <b>fir'mus</b> , -a, -um, <i>strong, steadfast, firm</i>        | (firmness)       |
| <b>ge'rō</b> , -ere, <i>carry on, manage</i>                    | (belligerent)    |
| <b>inci'piō</b> , -ere, <i>take to, begin</i>                   | [ <b>capiō</b> ] |
| <b>perpe'tuus</b> , -a, -um, <i>constant</i>                    | (perpetuity)     |

#### 149. Latin and English Word Formation

The preposition **cum** is often used as a prefix in Latin and English but always in the assimilated forms **com-**, **con-**, **col-**, **cor-**, **co-**. It usually means *together* rather than *with*.

Define the following words, all formed from verbs which you have studied: *convoke, collaborate, commotion, convene*.

Give some other English words formed by attaching this prefix to Latin verbs, nouns, or adjectives already studied.

150.

#### Ablative of Accompaniment

The means or instrument *with which* something is done is expressed by the ablative without a preposition (57): *They fought with arms, Armis pugnābant*. When, however, *with* means *together with* or *along with*, the preposition **cum** with the ablative is used. This expresses **accompaniment**: **Cum servō venit**, *He is coming with the slave*.

**Caution.** — When tempted to use **cum** (*with*), be sure that *with* means accompaniment or association. In the following English sentences determine when **cum** should be used and when it should be omitted:

(a) *Anna is with the sailor.*

(b) *Soldiers fight with weapons; generals fight with armies; both soldiers and generals fight with their enemies.*

**151. Rule.** — *The ablative is used with cum to express accompaniment.*

**152.**

**Exercises**

*Oral.* 1. Amicus noster cum familiā ad Eurōpam nāvigābit. 2. Cum cōpiīs insulārum bellum dūrum et perpetuum gerēmus. 3. Armīs oppida dēfendent et cum sociīs pugnābunt. 4. Magister dūrus sed aequus puerōs malōs et puellās malās poenā afficit. 5. Nautae terram firmam vidēre incipiēbant. 6. Grātum est amicitiam cum multis virīs bonīs gerere. 7. Servus cum magnā cōpiā pecūniae ē patriā fugit; nōn otium sed dūrās cūrās invenit. 8. In amicitia firmā et perpetuā cum sociīs nostrīs manēbimus.

*Written.* 1. It is not just to carry on war with friends. 2. They fortify the camp and begin to fight with our allies. 3. A bad boy afflicts the family with constant care. 4. The settlers began to flee to the town with (their) families. 5. We shall send reinforcements with grain and defend the island with our troops.

**153.**

**BROTHERS**

Rōmānī et Aquitānī, socii Rōmānōrum, cum Germānīs pugnābant. Lūcius, clārus Aquitānus, ex equō virōs Rōmānōs et Aquitānōs in Germānōs incitābat. Servus Lūciō nūntiat: “Germānī frātre(m) tuum (your) Mārcum capiunt!” Lūcius frātre(m) amābat. Equum incitat, Germānōs terret, frātre(m) servat, fugit, sed equus nōn valēbat: Lūcius frātre(m) solum (alone) in equō pōnit, et ad castra Aquitānōrum et Rōmānōrum equum incitat. Tum (then) solum Germānōs exspectat. Multī Germānī accēdunt. Lūcius cēdere incipit, auxilium exspectat — sed auxilium nōn venit — ē vitā excēdit. Mārcus videt et equum in Germānōs incitat — et vitā amittit (loses).



## LESSON XXVII

### FOURTH CONJUGATION: FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE. FUTURE OF *-iō* VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION

154.

#### Vocabulary

|   |                  |
|---|------------------|
| <i>au'diō, -ī're, hear</i>                              | (auditory)       |
| <i>conti'neō, -ē're, hold together, detain, contain</i> | [ <i>teneō</i> ] |
| <i>tar'dus, -a, -um, slow, late</i>                     | (retard)         |
| <i>tra'hō, -ere, draw, drag</i>                         | (traction)       |
| <i>ver'bum, -ī, n., word</i>                            | (verbal)         |

### 155. Future Active of Fourth Conjugation and Third Conjugation *-iō* Verbs

Verbs of the fourth conjugation form the future by adding *-ē-* directly to the present stem (long *-ī-* of the stem is shortened, however, since it precedes another vowel). Verbs of the third conjugation ending in *-iō* resemble fourth conjugation verbs in the future tense, owing to the insertion of *-i-* (135):

|                |                  |                |                  |
|----------------|------------------|----------------|------------------|
| <i>mū'niam</i> | <i>mūniē'mus</i> | <i>ca'piam</i> | <i>capiē'mus</i> |
| <i>mū'niēs</i> | <i>mūniē'tis</i> | <i>ca'piēs</i> | <i>capiē'tis</i> |
| <i>mū'niet</i> | <i>mū'nient</i>  | <i>ca'piet</i> | <i>ca'pient</i>  |

156. Drill. — Give the future of *portō, contineō, trahō, incipiō, audiō*.

157.

#### Exercises

*Oral.* 1. *Grātum est audire vĕra verba amīcōrum.*  
2. *Captīvōs in locō commodō continēbimus.* 3. *Nauta ex aquā puerum trahit et vitam servat.* 4. *Armīsne oppidum dēfendere incipiēmus?* 5. *Magister tardōs puerōs poenā afficiet sed puellās bonās verbis dūrīs nōn terrēbit.*

6. Colōnī ex agrīs ad oppidum carrīs frūmentum portābunt et magnam pecūniam accipient. 7. Magnus numerus equōrum multōs carrōs trahēbat. Carrī frūmentum continēbant. Frūmentum ad sociōs mittere mātūrābāmus.

*Written.* 1. Anna, a good girl, will receive a large reward. 2. We shall fortify the camp and defend (it) with arms. 3. The men are dragging the prisoner to the water. 4. The boys will not receive the reward, because they are late. 5. The late boys and girls will not hear the words of the famous man.

### 158. Latin and English Word Formation

Most prefixes are prepositions, but a few are not. **Re-** is used only as a prefix in Latin and English: it means *back* or *again*. It sometimes has the form **red-**, especially before vowels. Examples: *retineō*, hold *back*; *reficiō*, make *again*; *redigō*, drive *back*.

In English, **re-** is freely used with all sorts of words: *reduce*, *revisit*, *rehash*, *refill*.

**Exercise.** — Give other examples of the prefix **re-** in Latin and English words.

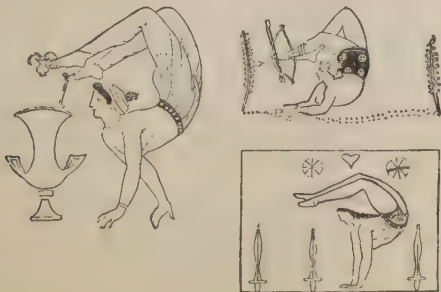


FIG. 29. ACROBATS



## LESSON XXVIII

### IDIOMS

159.

#### Vocabulary

conve'niō, -ī're, *come together, assemble*

[veniō]

con'vocō, -ā're, *call together*

[vocō]

i'bi, adv., *there*

me'dius, -a, -um, *middle, middle of*

(mediator)

redū'cō, -ere, *lead back*

[dūcō]

senten'tia, -ae, f., *feeling, opinion, motto*

(sentence)

160.

#### English Word Study

A friend is a person whom you know well, love dearly, and treat familiarly. How many English words can you call friends, according to this definition? If you will trace English words back to their Latin roots, you will gain many new friends. For example: A "sentence" in grammar is a single, complete *opinion* or expression. A judicial "sentence" is a judge's *opinion*. A "convention" *comes together* in an "auditorium" to *hear* the speaker. A "mediator" settles disputes by taking a *middle* position. A spiritualistic "medium" is supposed to take a *middle* position between the unseen spirit and the "audience" who *hear*. A "studious" person is one who is *eager* to learn. An "alarm" is a call *to arms* (**ad arma**). To "repatriate" a person is to bring him *back* to his *fatherland*. Learn to look carefully at the *make-up* of every strange English word and you will often detect an old Latin friend *in disguise*.

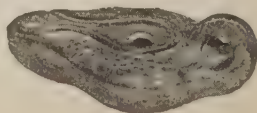


FIG. 30. A ROMAN LAMP

161.

Idioms

Every language contains set phrases or fixed expressions with meanings which can not be translated literally. For example, we say, *How are you?* when we really mean, *How do you feel?*

Certain set phrases occur in Latin which are peculiar to it and can not be translated literally into English. These fixed expressions are said to be **idiomatic**. The following should be memorized and entered in the notebook under the general heading "Idioms":

1. *grātiās agere*, to thank, with dat. (literally, to act gratitude)
2. *grātiām habēre*, to feel grateful, with dat. (lit., to have gratitude)
3. *vītam agere*, to live a life (lit., to act life)
4. *bellum gerere*, to wage or carry on war
5. *castra pōnere*, to pitch camp (lit., to place camp)
6. *castra movēre*, to break camp (lit., to move camp)
7. *viam mūnīre*, to build a road (lit., to fortify a road; roads were built like walls)
8. *verba facere*, to speak, make a speech (lit., to make words)
9. *memoriā tenēre*, to remember (lit., to hold in memory)

162.

Exercises

*Oral.* 1. In agrīs castra pōnēmus et ibi liberam vītam agēmus. 2. Magistrō nostrō grātiām habēmus et grātiās agēmus. 3. Cōpiās ex mediā silvā redūcam et pugnāre incipiam. 4. Rōmānī multās longās viās in Italiā mūniēbant. 5. Puerōs singulōs convocābimus et sententiās audiēmus. 6. Virī ex multis terrīs convenient et verba facient. 7. Magister verba faciet et puellis grātiās aget.

*Written.* 1. We shall break camp and come to town with our friends. 2. The boys and girls feel grateful and will thank the teacher. 3. We ought to feel grateful to our friends. 4. The boys will find water and pitch camp. 5. We shall remember the teacher's words concerning duty.



## LESSON XXIX

### REVIEW

#### 163. Nouns and Adjectives

**Drill Exercises.**—(1.) Decline (a) *oppidum commodum*, (b) *puella bona*, (c) *vir aequus*, (d) *officium magnum*.

(2.) Decline in Latin (a) *a small word*, (b) *harsh opinion*, (c) *a sacred place*, (d) *a famous people*.

3. Give the nominative, singular and plural, of *great interest*.

Give the genitive, singular and plural, of *a constant duty*.

Give the dative, singular and plural, of *a good price*.

Give the accusative, singular and plural, of *varying opinion*.

Give the ablative, singular and plural, of *a firm man*.

#### 164. Verbs: Present System of the Four Conjugations

**Drill Exercises.**—(1.) Conjugate in the present indicative active: *sum, exspectō, dēbeō, mittō, efficiō, veniō*.

(2.) Conjugate in the imperfect indicative active: *sum, convocō, mereō, cēdō, afficiō, inveniō*.

3. Conjugate in the future indicative active: *sum, mātūrō, videō, dēfendō, accipiō, audiō*.

#### 165. Recognition of Verb Forms — Rapid-fire Drills

I. Give tense, person, and number, and translate: *Vident, mittent, dūcent, pōnit, pōnet, terrent, mittunt, incipient, erunt, valēbō, erās, fugiēbās, es, audiētis, exspectābimus, eris, dūcēbant, capiēmus, inveniēmus, erimus, veniam, accēdunt, erant, exspectāmus*.

II. Give in Latin: We shall send; he will be; I fortified; they approached; you (*sing.*) await; we are strong; we were; they will flee; they receive; you (*plur.*) did come; they were; he is managing; he is; they will begin; they will be.

**166. Conundrum.** — Why is the future tense of the third and fourth conjugations like a horse without a bridle? (Answer: It has no “-bit.”)

**167. English and Latin Word Studies**

1. Give prefix and Latin root word from which the following are derived: **redigō, concipiō, attrahō, corrigō, committō**; *respect, allocation, depopulate, exigency, deficient.*

2. Define according to derivation: *inspect, exponent, fugitive, verbose, incipient.*

3. Make Latin words out of **ad-** and **capiō**, **in-** and **pōnō**, **con-** and **labōrō**, **ad-** and **teneō**, **dē-** and **mereō**.



FIG. 31. VIA APPIA

The first and most famous of Roman roads, built by Appius Claudius in 312 B.C. to connect Rome with southern Italy. Portions of it are still used. In many places the ancient surface blocks may be seen. Roman roads compare favorably with the best modern highways.

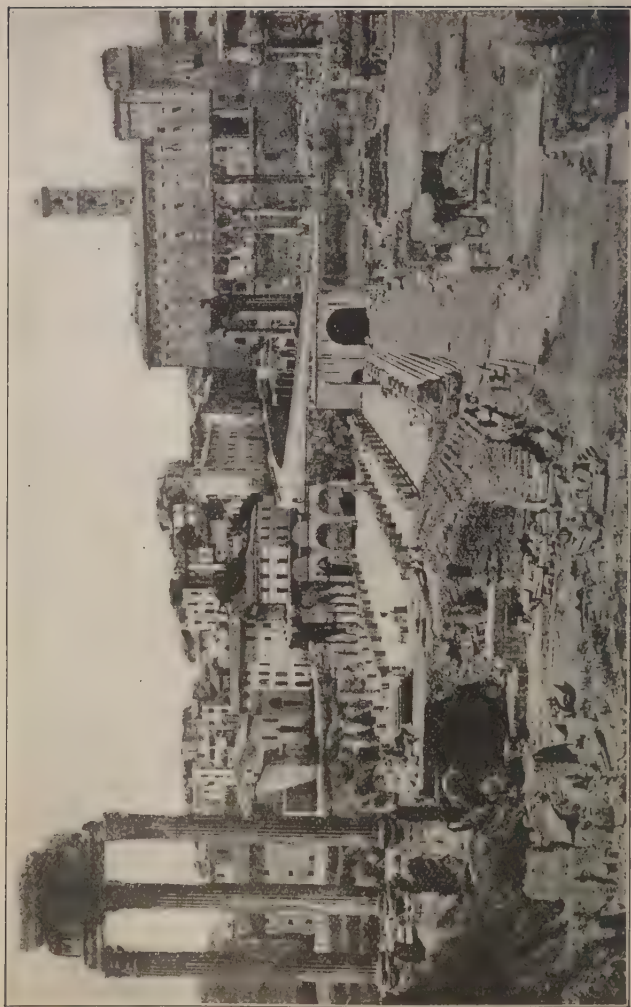


FIG. 32. FORUM RŌMĀNUM

A view of the Forum as it is to-day, facing west (cf. Figs. 34, 36). At the left are three columns of the temple of Castor. The rostra is to the left of the arch shown at the extreme right.

## LESSON XXX

### SUBSTANTIVES. CONNECTED READING: FORUM RŌMĀNUM

168.

#### Substantives

When any part of speech, other than a noun or pronoun, is used like a noun or pronoun, it is called a **substantive**. We have already noted the substantive use of the infinitive (106, 107). Likewise, an adjective may be used substantively; the masculine refers to persons, the neuter to things:

(a) **Nostri (virī) veniunt**, *Our (men) are coming.*

(b) **Multa audiēs**, *You will hear many (things).*

169.

#### Hints for Reading and Translating

The first step in translating Latin is to follow the order of words, separating them into groups according to their agreement. Such word groups or phrases should be read and translated as units, with proper attention to emphasis and expression.

After translating **Forum Rŏmānum** with due regard to the word groups in each sentence, practice reading the entire passage aloud in the Latin with as much expression as you can.

170.

### THE STORY OF LUCIUS

#### Forum Rŏmānum

Quondam (*once upon a time*) puer parvus Lūcius in Italiā habitābat. Dē glōriā patriae multa audiēbat. Magister Lūciō et cēteris (*the other*) pueris loca clāra Rŏmae mōnstrābat. In Forum Rŏmānum puerōs dūcēbat. In hunc (*this*) locum populus Rŏmānus conveniēbat. Ibi virī amicōs vidēbant et aedificia (*buildings*) pūblica spectābant. Ibi





nūntiū magnās victōriās nūntiābant. Ibi virī clārī in rōstris<sup>1</sup> verba faciēbant. Magister multa dē patriā in Forō docēbat. Puerī magistrō magnam grātiā habēbant, quod Forum amābant. Ē Forō puerī cum magistrō in Sacram Viam ambulābant (*walked*) et tabernās (*shops*) spectābant. Cupi-  
tisne (*desire*) plūra (*more*) dē Lūciō audire?

## 171.

## Conversation

(See *Color Map of the Roman World* between pp. 52 and 53.)

**M. = Magister**

**D. = Discipulī**

**M.** Spectātisne, puerī et puellae? **D.** Spectāmus.

**M.** Ubi oppida vidētis? **D.** In Āfricā et in Asiā et in Eurōpā multa oppida vidēmus.

**M.** In mediā terrā aquam vidētis. Illam<sup>2</sup> aquam “Medi-terrā-neum Mare” (*Sea*) vocāmus.

**M.** Ibi est Lūsitānia — vidētisne? **D.** Vidēmus.

**M.** Ubi est Hibernia? **D.** Hibernia est insula in Ōceanō Atlanticō.

**M.** Multī virī multōrum populōrum in Eurōpā habitant.

**M.** Ubi pugnābant Sociī in Bellō Magnō? **D.** Sociī in Galliā et in Italiā pugnābant.

## Questions to Be Answered in Latin

1. Ubi habitāmus? 2. Nōnne officium nostrum erat virōs et arma in Galliam mittere? 3. Ubi Germānī agrōs vāstābant? 4. Reguntne Germānī in Galliā?

---

<sup>1</sup> *The rostra* (speakers' platform).    <sup>2</sup> *That*.



## LESSON XXXI

### PRESENT SYSTEM PASSIVE OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS

**ELEMENTARY GRAMMAR:** Review *Voice*, 632; *Progressive verb forms*, 631; *Participles*, 635.

#### 172.

#### Vocabulary

commit'tō, -ere, *join together, commit, intrust*; proe'lium

commit'tere, *to begin battle*

[mittō]

fini'timus, -a, -um, *neighboring*; fini'timus, -ī, m., *neighbor*

pau'cī, -ae, -a, *few*

(paucity)

proe'lium, -ī, n., *battle*

-que, conj., *and* (translated before the word to which it is joined)

re'liquus, -a, -um, *remaining, rest of*

(relic)

#### 173.

#### English and Latin Word Formation

We have seen how Latin and English words are formed from others by the use of prefixes. There are other ways of forming new words. These we shall discuss later. For the present it is sufficient to recognize the roots that words have in common. Note the relationship and review the meanings of the following words which have occurred in the preceding vocabularies:

(a) amīcus and amīcītia, (b) nāvigō and nauta, (c) nūntiō and nūntius, (d) capiō and captivus (a "captive" is one who is *taken*), (e) pugna and pugnō, (f) puer and puella, (g) habeō and habitō (to "inhabit" a place is to keep on *having* it).

From now on try to associate new Latin words with those you have already had, as well as with English derivatives which you find.

#### 174.

#### Voice : Active and Passive

1. Vir accūsābit, *The man will accuse.*

2. Vir accūsābitur, *The man will be accused.*

**Observe** (a) that in 1 the verb shows that the subject *acts* (**active voice**), and in 2 it is *acted upon* (**passive voice**); (b) that voice is indicated by endings in Latin.

**Note.** — The linking verb *sum* has no voice, for it indicates merely existence.

### 175. Progressive and Passive Verb Forms Distinguished in English

Be careful to distinguish between active progressive

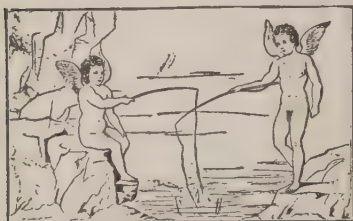


FIG. 33. CUPIDS FISHING

The cupids *are catching* fish (active).

The fish *are being caught* (passive).

forms and true passive verb phrases, both of which employ the verb *to be*.

**ACTIVE** (progressive): The present participle combined with any tense of the verb *to be* is active: *He is seeing* (*videt*); *They were calling* (*vocābant*).

**PASSIVE:** The past participle combined with any tense of the verb *to be* is passive: *He is seen* (*vidētur*); *They were called* (*vocābantur*).

**Summary:** 1. *to be* + present participle = active  
2. *to be* + past participle = passive

### 176. Passive Voice of the Four Conjugations in Present System

The passive personal endings, which are substituted for the active,<sup>1</sup> are:

<sup>1</sup> But in forms ending in *-ō* in the active (as *parō* and *parābō*), the passive ending *-r* is added to, not substituted for, the active ending. The *-o-* becomes short.

| PERSONAL ENDINGS  |       | PRESENT                           |  |
|---|-------|-----------------------------------|--|
| -r  | -mur  | pa'ror, <i>I am prepared</i>      | parā'mur, <i>we are prepared</i>                 |
| -ris  | -minī | parā'ris, <i>you are prepared</i> | parā'minī, <i>you are prepared</i>               |
| -tur  | -ntur | parā'tur, <i>he is prepared</i>   | paran'tur, <sup>1</sup> <i>they are prepared</i> |
| Similarly habeor, pōnor, capior, mūnior (see 661, 662, 663, 664). |       |                                   |  |

## IMPERFECT

|  |  |
|--|--|
| parā'bar, <i>I was being prepared</i>                                    | parābā'mur, <i>we were being prepared, etc.</i>    |
| parābā'ris, <i>you were being prepared, etc.</i>                         | parābā'minī, <i>you were being prepared, etc.</i>  |
| parābā'tur, <i>he was being prepared, etc.</i>                           | parāban'tur, <i>they were being prepared, etc.</i> |
| Similarly habēbar, pōnēbar, capiēbar, mūniēbar (see 661, 662, 663, 664). |  |

## FUTURE

|  |   |
|--|---|
| parā'bor, <i>I shall be prepared</i>                               | parā'bimur, <i>we shall be prepared</i>   |
| parā'beris, <i>you will be prepared</i>                            | parābi'minī, <i>you will be prepared</i>  |
| parā'bitur, <i>he will be prepared</i>                             | parābun'tur, <i>they will be prepared</i> |
| Similarly habēbor, pōnar, capiar, mūniar (see 661, 662, 663, 664). |   |

177. Drill. — Conjugate pugnō, videō, dēfendō, accipiō, and inveniō in the present system passive.

<sup>1</sup> For the vowel shortened before -ntur, see 20, a.

## 178.

## Exercises

*Oral.* 1. Reliqui nautae ad insulam mittentur. 2. Rōmānī proelium cum finitimīs committunt. 3. America terra liberōrum est. 4. Pauca signa proelī in finitimīs agrīs oppidisque vidēbantur. 5. Multa praemia reliquīs puerīs puellisque dōnābuntur. 6. Captivī ad oppidum redūcentur et proelium committētur.

*Written.* 1. We shall be accused ; he is being taught ; it was not approved ; they will be sent. 2. They will receive a few words of advice ; a few words of advice will be received. 3. Where are the-rest-of the boys ? Are they working in the fields ? 4. The-rest-of the men will be sent to the island and will lead-back many prisoners.



FIG. 34. FORUM RŌMĀNUM

A view from the Capitoline Hill, facing east (cf. Figs. 32, 36). In the foreground, the **Basilica Iulia** (a courthouse) ; to the left, the Forum proper ; in the left background, the Colosseum (Fig. 41) ; on the right, the Palatine Hill, where the imperial palaces stood.

## LESSON XXXII

### ABLATIVE OF PERSONAL AGENT

179.

#### Vocabulary

appel'lō, -ā're, *call, call upon, name* (appellate)  
aut, conj., *or*; aut . . . aut, *either . . . or*  
et . . . et, conj., *both . . . and*  
ne'que (or nec), conj., *and not, nor*; ne'que . . . ne'que, *neither . . . nor*  
praesi'dium, -ī, n., *garrison, guard, protection*

180.

#### Latin Phrases in English

magnum bonum, *great good*.  
terra firma, *solid earth* (as opposed to water).  
via media, *a middle way or course*.  
cōsiliō et armīs, *by counsel and by arms*.  
nōn ministrārī, sed ministrāre, *not to be served, but to serve* (motto of Wellesley College).  
In Deō spērāmus, *In God we trust* (motto of Brown University).

181.

#### Ablative of Personal Agent

1. Amāmur ab amicīs, *We are loved by our friends*.
2. Vir ā puerō vidētur, *The man is seen by the boy*.

182. Rule. — *The ablative preceded by ā or ab is used with a passive verb to denote the person by whom anything is done.*

Caution. — The ablative of personal agent must be carefully distinguished from the ablative of means, both of which are frequently translated with *by*. Remember that *means* refers to things, while *agent* always denotes a person. Furthermore, the ablative of means *never* takes a preposition, while the ablative of personal agent is never used without the preposition ā (ab).

1. Oppidum cōsiliō capitur, *The town is taken by strategy (means)*.
2. Oppidum ā nostrīs capitur, *The town is taken by our men (agent)*.

**183. Agreement.** — In both English and Latin, when two singular subjects are connected by *or* (*aut*), *either . . . or* (*aut . . . aut*), *neither . . . nor* (*neque . . . neque*), the verb is in the singular: *Neither the boy nor the girl is in the forest*, *Neque puer neque puella in silvā est*.

## 184.

## Exercises

*Oral.* 1. Puer equōs dūcit; equī ā puerō dūcuntur.  
2. Magister puerōs puellāsque docēbat; puerī puellaeque



FIG. 35. A GAME OF KNUCKLEBONES

Bones an inch long were used to play the game now called jacks. They were also used in gambling, like dice.

girls were frightened by the bad boys. 3. The grain is being carried by wagon to the town. 4. The troops were fleeing to the neighboring woods; there they were captured by our strong guard. 5. Neither water nor grain is being carried by the-rest-of the men.

ā magistrō docēbantur.  
3. Aut puerī aut virī equōs ad agrōs redūcent.  
4. Neque servus neque equus in viīs vidēbitur.  
5. Multa grāta praemia ā reliquīs puerīs puellisque accipiuntur. 6. Neque praesidium neque auxilium ā nostrīs sociīs mittitur. 7. Et sociī et amīcī<sup>1</sup> ā multis populis appellābimur.

*Written.* 1. The men see few signs of battle; few signs of battle are seen by the men. 2. The

<sup>1</sup> Observe that the predicate nominative (13, b) may be used with other verbs than *sum*.

## LESSON XXXIII

### PERFECT STEM. PERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS

185.

#### Vocabulary

āmit'tō, -ere, āmī'sī, *let go, lose*

[mittō]

an'nus, -ī, m., *year*

(annual)

lī'ber, lī'bri, m., *book*

(library)

nunc, adv., *now*

perī'culum, -ī, n., *trial, danger*

(perilous)

prō, prep. with abl., *in front of, before, for*

pro'perō, -ā're, -ā'vī, *hasten*

186.

#### Latin and English Word Formation

As a prefix **prō-** has its prepositional meanings, with the additional one of *forward*. Define the following derivatives of words which you have already studied :

*provoke, prospect, produce, proceed.*

a.

#### Latin Phrases in English

prō patriā, *for (one's) country.*

prō bonō pūblicō, *for the public good.*

prō fōrmā, *for (as a matter of) form.*

187.

#### The Perfect Stem

In English, the **perfect** tense is formed by use of the auxiliary *have (has)* with the past participle: *I have prepared, he has gone.*

In Latin, the **perfect stem** is used in forming the three perfect tenses in the active — the **perfect**, **past perfect**, and **future perfect**. The perfect stem is found by dropping the personal ending **-ī** from the perfect active indicative: **āmīsi**, **āmīs-**.



**Note.** — All verbs of the first conjugation thus far studied form the perfect stem by adding **-v** to the present stem: **properā-**, **properāv-**. No rules, however, can be given for forming the perfect stem of verbs of the other conjugations. Hereafter the first person singular of the perfect active indicative will be given in the vocabularies as the third form. This should be memorized.

## 188.

## Perfect Active Indicative

The following endings (used in no other tenses) are added directly to the perfect stem in forming the **perfect indicative active**:

| PERFECT<br>ENDINGS                                 |  |  |
|--|--|--|
| -ī   | parā'vī, <i>I have prepared, I prepared</i>  | ha'buī, <i>I have had, I had</i>       |
| -istī  | parāvis'tī, <i>you have prepared, etc.</i>   | habuis'tī, <i>you have had, etc.</i>   |
| -it  | parā'vit, <i>he has prepared, etc.</i>       | ha'buit, <i>he has had, etc.</i>       |
| -imus  | parā'vimus, <i>we have prepared, etc.</i>    | habu'imus, <i>we have had, etc.</i>    |
| -istis   | parāvis'tis, <i>you have prepared, etc.</i>  | habuis'tis, <i>you have had, etc.</i>  |
| -ērunt   | parāvē'runt, <i>they have prepared, etc.</i> | habuē'runt, <i>they have had, etc.</i> |
| Similarly posuī, cēpī, mūnīvī (see 662, 663, 664). |  |  |

**189. Drill.** — Conjugate the following in the perfect indicative active:

convocō (convocāv-), agō (ēg-), excēdō (excess-), dēfendō (dēfend-), mittō (mis-), trahō (trāx-), accipiō (accēp-), videō (vid-), fugiō (fūg-), veniō (vēn-).

## 190.

## Exercises

*Oral.* 1. Amīsimus; nūntiāvit; augēbis; occupāvistis; amittitur; ēvocāminī. 2. Puer in viā librum amīsit. 3. Ex oppidō excessimus et ad agrōs silvāsque properāvimus. 4. Multī vītam in bellō amīsērunt sed magnam glōriam accēpērunt. 5. Multōs annōs in periculō ēgimus; nunc ōtium habēmus. 6. Properāre dēbēmus, quod periculum nunc est magnum. 7. Multī captīvī ā puerīs prō castrīs vidēbantur.

*Written.* 1. To lose; he has departed; we have intrusted; we shall be heard. 2. Were the girls being frightened by the horses? Where were the boys? 3. They have seen the danger and are fleeing to the camp. 4. I have intrusted the care of the camp to the guards.



FIG. 36. FORUM RŌMĀNUM

Thus it appeared during the Roman Empire (cf. Figs. 32, 34). In the left background, the temple of Jupiter on the Capitoline Hill.

## LESSON XXXIV

### PERFECT INDICATIVE OF *SUM*. THE USE OF THE IMPERFECT AND THE PERFECT

**ELEMENTARY GRAMMAR:** Review *Past and present perfect tenses*,  
630, b, d.

191.

#### Vocabulary

|  |           |
|--|-----------|
| agri'cola, -ae, m., farmer   | [ager]    |
| com'parō, -ā're, -ā'vī, get together, prepare                      | [parō]    |
| fi'lius, -ī, m., son   | (filial)  |
| nōs'cō, -ere, nō'vī, learn; in perf. tenses, "have learned" = know |           |
| prōcē'dō, -ere, prōces'sī, go forth, advance                       | [cēdō]    |
| sum, es'se, fu'ī, be   | (essence) |
| ab'sum, abes'se, ā'fui, be away from, be absent                    |           |

192.

#### Perfect Indicative of *Sum*

The verb **sum** is conjugated regularly in the perfect:

|                                  |                                    |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| fu'ī, I have been, I was         | fu'imus, we have been, we were     |
| fuis'tī, you have been, you were | fuis'tis, you have been, you were  |
| fu'it, he has been, he was       | fuērunt, they have been, they were |

#### 193. How the Perfect and the Imperfect Differ in Latin

The perfect tense represents an act (a) as *now complete*, like the English present perfect, expressed by *has* and *have*: **vidī**, *I have seen*; (b) as a *simple act performed once*, like the English past: **vidī**, *I saw*. The latter use of the Latin perfect is to be carefully distinguished from the imperfect, which always denotes a state of being or an act as *repeated*, *customary*, or *continuous*, like the English progressive past:

*Perfect:*   **vidī**, *I saw* (once).

*Imperfect:* **vidēbam**, *I kept seeing* (all along), *I was seeing*.

The perfect tense is used more commonly in Latin than the imperfect.

## 194.

## Exercises

*Oral.* 1. Multī puerī aberant. Nōne valēbant?  
 2. Aquam portābam et reliquī puerī in magnō agrō castra  
 pōnēbant. 3. Paucī (of us) labōrābāmus, sed reliquī puerī in  
 castrīs semper manēbant. 4. Agricolārum filiī multa dē  
 agrīs et equīs nōvērunt. 5. Magistrī filius multa dē librīs  
 rōvit, sed agrī filium agricolae docent. 6. Multī virī servī  
 fuērunt; nunc liberī sunt. 7. Prō patriā ad pugnam prōces-  
 sērunt; prō patriā et arma et frūmentum comparāvērunt;  
 prō patriā labōrāvērunt et pecūniam dōnāvērunt.

*Written.* 1. We are the sons of free (men) and love our  
 native land. 2. We know much about many lands and  
 peoples. 3. Much grain is being prepared by the farmers.  
 4. We hastened from the town into the fields and learned  
 many (things). 5. The farmer has spent many years in  
 the fields.

## 195. Latin and English Word Formation

We have already studied the preposition **in** used as a prefix  
 (98). There is another prefix **in-**, used chiefly with adjectives  
 and nouns, which has an entirely different meaning and  
 must be carefully distinguished from the former. It is a  
 negative prefix (like "un-"), as in *injustice*. It is assimilated  
 like the other prefix **in-**, e.g. *il-legal*, *im-moral*, *ir-regular*.  
 Define the following derivatives of words which you have  
 studied:

*immemorial, immaterial, inglorious, ingratitude, illiberal, illiterate, infirm.*

The prefix **dis-** in English and Latin means *apart*; but  
 sometimes it is purely negative like **in-**. Distinguish carefully  
 from **dē-**. It is either assimilated or left unchanged, as  
 follows:

*dis-inter, dis-locate, dis-arm, dif-fuse, di-vert, di-stant, dis-similar.*

Define the first three of these words, derived from words  
 in previous vocabularies.

## LESSON XXXV

### PAST PERFECT AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS

**ELEMENTARY GRAMMAR:** Review *Past perfect and future perfect*, 630, e, f.

196.

#### Vocabulary

|  |           |
|--|-----------|
| dīmit'tō, -ere, dīmī'sī, <i>let go, send away</i>                        | [mittō]   |
| inimī'cus, -a, -um, <i>unfriendly, hostile</i> ; as a noun, <i>enemy</i> | [amīcus]  |
| in'teger, -gra, -grum, <i>untouched, fresh</i>                           | (integer) |
| por'ta, -ae, f., <i>gate</i>   | (portal)  |
| prōdū'cō, -ere, prōdū'xī, <i>lead forth or out</i>                       | [dūcō]    |
| reti'neō, -ē're, reti'nui, <i>hold back, restrain, keep</i>              | [teneō]   |

197.

#### Past Perfect Indicative Active

In English, the **past perfect** tense is formed by use of the auxiliary *had* with the past participle: *I had prepared, they had prepared.*

In Latin, the **past perfect** (sometimes called pluperfect) is formed by adding the tense sign **-erā-** to the perfect stem, together with the personal endings used throughout the present system. It is equivalent in form to the various forms of the imperfect tense of **sum** added to the perfect stem of the given verb:

|   |  |
|---|--|
| parā'veram, <i>I had prepared</i>           | parā'verā'mus, <i>we had prepared</i>  |
| parā'verās, <i>you had prepared</i>         | parā'verā'tis, <i>you had prepared</i> |
| parā'verat, <i>he, she, it had prepared</i> | parā'verant, <i>they had prepared</i>  |

Similarly habueram, posueram, cēperam, mūniveram.

(For full conjugation see 661, 662, 663, 664.)

### 198. Future Perfect Indicative Active

In English, the **future perfect** tense is formed by use of the auxiliary *shall have* with the past participle: *I shall have prepared*.

In Latin, the **future perfect** is formed by adding the tense sign **-eri-** to the perfect stem, together with the personal endings of the present system. It is equivalent in form to the future tense of **sum** (with the exception of **-erint** in the third plural) added to the perfect stem of the given verb :

parā'verō,<sup>1</sup> *I shall have prepared*

parā'veris, *you will have prepared*

parā'verit, *he, she, it will have prepared*

parāve'rimus, *we shall have prepared*

parāve'ritis, *you will have prepared*

parā'verint, *they will have prepared*

Similarly **habuerō**, **posuerō**, **cēperō**, **mūniverō**.

(For full conjugation see 661, 662, 663, 664.)

**Note.** — The three tenses, perfect, past perfect, and future perfect, which are based upon the perfect stem, form the **perfect system**.

**199. Drill.** — Conjugate the following in the perfect system active: **videō**, **-ēre**, **vīdī**; **cēdō**, **-ere**, **cessī**; **efficiō**, **-ere**, **effēcī**; **moveō**, **-ēre**, **mōvī**; **incipiō**, **-ere**, **incēpī**.

### 200.

### Exercises

**Oral.** 1. Inimicōs nostrōs amāre dēbēmus. 2. Parvī puerī linguam retinēre dēbent. 3. Magister puerōs dīmīsīt, quod fōrmās verbōrum nōn nōverant. 4. Nostri castra movēre et proelium committere parāverint. 5. Integrae

<sup>1</sup> -i- disappears before final ō (20, a).



cōpiaē nostrae bellum gerere incēpērunt et prō populis liberis pugnāvērunt. 6. Marius prō portis castrōrum cōpiās



FIG. 37. A PORTABLE HOT WATER HEATER

The heater has the form of a fortified camp. A charcoal fire was built in the interior. The water was poured into the towers and circulated around the fire. Note the modern-looking faucet at the right.

prōdūxerat. 7. Viri ē castris vēnerant et ad oppidum prōcēdēbant.

*Written.* 1. The slave deserved a large reward, because he had saved the life of our friend's son. 2. Marius had fought for (his) native land in Gaul. 3. We shall have seen strange lands, towns, and peoples. 4. We shall

have sent away the messenger to the camp.

## 201. Latin and English Word Formation

We have seen that prefixes are so called because they are attached to the beginnings of words (87). Particles which are attached to the ends of words are called **suffixes** (*sub, under, after; fixus, attached*). Like the Latin prefixes, the Latin suffixes play a very important part in the formation of English words.

The suffix *-ia* usually has the form *-y* in English. Give the English forms of the following words found in the preceding vocabularies: **memoria**, **glōria**, **familia**, **iniūria**.

What must be the Latin words from which are derived *colony*, *luxury*, *perfidy*?

Some *-ia* nouns drop the *-ia* entirely in English (126): *concord*, *vigil*, *matter* (from **māteria**).





FIG. 38. POMPEII, A.D. 79



## LESSON XXXVI

### PAST PERFECT AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE OF SUM. INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE

ELEMENTARY GRAMMAR: Review *Infinitive*, 634.

202.

#### Vocabulary

|  |         |
|--|---------|
| discē'dō, -ere, disces'sī, <i>go away, depart</i>            | [cēdō]  |
| e'tiam, adv., <i>also, even</i>                              |         |
| iu'beō, -ē're, ius'sī, <i>order, command</i>                 |         |
| li'berī, -ō'rum, m., <i>children</i>                         | [liber] |
| red'igō, -ere, redē'gī, <i>drive or bring back, reduce</i>   | [agō]   |
| remo'veō, -ē're, remō'vī, <i>move back, remove, withdraw</i> | [moveō] |

#### 203. Past Perfect and Future Perfect of Sum

| PAST PERFECT                   | FUTURE PERFECT                       |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| fu'eram, <i>I had been</i>     | fu'erō, <i>I shall have been</i>     |
| fu'erās, <i>you had been</i>   | fu'eris, <i>you will have been</i>   |
| fu'erat, <i>he had been</i>    | fu'erit, <i>he will have been</i>    |
| fuerā'mus, <i>we had been</i>  | fue'rimus, <i>we shall have been</i> |
| fuerā'tis, <i>you had been</i> | fue'ritis, <i>you will have been</i> |
| fu'erant, <i>they had been</i> | fu'erint, <i>they will have been</i> |

#### 204. Infinitive Object as in English

1. Virōs discēdere iussī, *I ordered the men to go away.*
2. Puerōs esse bonōs docēmus, *We teach the boys to be good.*

Observe that (a) in English such verbs as *order, teach* (also *wish, forbid, etc.*) take an infinitive as *object*, often with a noun or pronoun in the accusative, which may be regarded as its *subject*; (b) in Latin certain verbs of similar meaning take the infinitive with subject accusative.

205. Rule. — *The subject of an infinitive is in the accusative.*

## 206.

## Exercises

*Oral.* 1. Liberōs nostrōs semper retinēre bonōs librōs docēmus. 2. Nōne bonum est inimicōs in amicitiam et concordiam redigere? 3. Magister puerōs puellāsque etiam inimicōs amāre docēbat. 4. Nostrī ex oppidō arma remōverant et ad finitima castra prōcesserant. 5. Finitimōs nostrōs dīmittere cōpiās et etiam discēdere ex insulā iussimus. 6. Cum sociīs nostrīs fuerat et prō patriā nostrā in Galliā pugnāverat. 7. Novum erat vidēre magnum numerum captivōrum in viīs oppidī.

*Written.* 1. I had been ; we shall have been ; they had been ; you will have been. 2. It was good to see our forces near the gates of the town. 3. They had begun to remove the grain by wagon to the camp. 4. The children of the farmers are being taught to fight for (their) native land. 5. He has ordered the boy to lead out fresh horses to the gate. 6. We are preparing to carry the timber by wagon to the town.

## 207.

## Latin and English Word Formation

The Latin suffix *-tia* as a general rule has the form *-ce* in English. It is to be carefully distinguished from the Latin suffix *-ia*, which usually has the form *-y* in English (201).

Give the English forms of the following words found in the preceding vocabularies: *grātia*, *sententia*.

What must be the Latin words from which are derived *science*, *diligence*, *prudence*?

a.

## Latin Verb Forms in English

Present: *deficit*.

Perfect: *affidavit*, *vici*.

## 208.

## A CLEVER REPLY

Bellō<sup>1</sup> Pūnicō T.<sup>2</sup> Līvius Tarentum, oppidum Italiae, āmīsīt et ad arcem<sup>3</sup> oppidī fūgit. Q.<sup>4</sup> Fabius Maximus magnā vigilantīā et magnō cōsiliō oppidum recēpit. Tum ad arcem properāvit. Ibi Līvius superbus Fabiō dīxit<sup>5</sup>: “Meā operā Tarentum recēpistī.” Fabius respondit: “Certē,<sup>6</sup> nam ego recēpī oppidum quod (*which*) tū āmīsistī.”



FIG. 39. PORTA CASTRORUM

A fortified camp at Saalburg, Germany, part of the system of defense consisting of camps and a wall, erected by the Romans.

<sup>1</sup> Abl.: *during*.    <sup>2</sup> T. = Titus.    <sup>3</sup> Acc. of *arx*.    <sup>4</sup> Q. = Quintus.  
<sup>5</sup> From *dīcō*, *dictus*; derivative?    <sup>6</sup> Adv.

## LESSON XXXVII

### PERFECT AND PAST PERFECT PASSIVE OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS

#### 209.

#### Vocabulary

|  |                  |
|--|------------------|
| <i>ēgre'gius, -a, -um, distinguished, excellent</i>  | (egregious)      |
| <i>exem'plum, -ī, n., sample, example</i>  | (exemplary)      |
| <i>per, prep. with acc., through</i>   |                  |
| <i>prōpō'nō, -ere, prōpo'suī, prōpo'situs, set forth, present</i>                                  | [ <i>pōnō</i> ]  |
| <i>rema'neō, -ē're, remān'sī, remānsū'rus,<sup>1</sup> remain behind, remain</i>                   | [ <i>maneō</i> ] |
| <i>sub, prep., under, close to; with acc. after verbs of motion; with abl. after verbs of rest</i> |                  |

#### 210.

#### Latin and English Word Formation

The preposition **sub**, used as a prefix in Latin and English, means *under, up from under*: **sus-tineō, to hold up**; **suc-cēdō, to come up**. It is regularly assimilated before certain consonants: *sup-port, suc-ceed, sug-gest, sus-ceptible, suf-fer, sur-rogate, sus-tenance, sus-pend*, but *sub-mit, sub-trahend*. We use it freely in English to form new words: *sub-let, sub-lease*.

**Per** usually remains unchanged when used as a prefix.

#### 211.

#### Perfect Participle

The perfect participle in Latin is passive and is declined like *magnus, -a, -um*. It agrees with a noun or pronoun in gender, number, and case like an ordinary adjective. The perfect participle of each new verb will hereafter be given in the vocabularies as the fourth part. In the first conjugation it is regularly formed by adding **-tus** to the present stem: **parā-tus**.

---

<sup>1</sup> A few verbs lack the perfect participle; some of these have the future active participle in **-ūrus**, which appears as the fourth principal part.

## 212. Perfect System Passive

In English, all the passive tenses are compound, consisting of two or more parts.

In Latin, the tenses of the present and perfect systems thus far studied have been single or **simple** in form. The three perfect tenses in the passive, however, are **compound**, i.e. they are formed by combining the perfect participle of the given verb in turn with the present, imperfect, and future tenses of **sum** to form the perfect, past perfect, and future perfect tenses respectively.

## 213. Perfect Indicative Passive

In English, the present perfect passive is formed by using the perfect tense of *to be* (i.e. *have been*) as an auxiliary with the past participle.

In Latin, the perfect passive is formed by using the *present* tense of **sum** as an auxiliary with the perfect participle.

|   |   |                    |   |                        |
|---|---|--------------------|---|------------------------|
| parā'tus<br>(-a, -um)   | { | sum, I was, have   | { | su'mus, we were, have  |
|   |   | been prepared      |   | been prepared          |
|   |   | es, you were, have |   | es'tis, you were, have |
|   |   | been prepared      |   | been prepared          |
|   | { | est, he was, has   | { | sunt, they were, have  |
|   |   | been prepared      |   | been prepared          |
| Similarly habitus sum, positus sum, captus sum, mūnītus sum.<br>(For full conjugation see 661-664.) |   |                    |   |                        |

## 214. Past Perfect Indicative Passive

In English, the past perfect passive is formed by using the past perfect tense of *to be* (i.e. *had been*) as an auxiliary with the past participle.



In Latin, the past perfect passive is formed by using the *imperfect* tense of **sum** (*i.e.* **eram**) as an auxiliary with the perfect participle (cf. the formation of the corresponding active tense by adding the imperfect tense of **sum** to the perfect stem: **parāv-eram**):

|                       |   |                                     |                      |   |                                       |
|-----------------------|---|-------------------------------------|----------------------|---|---------------------------------------|
| parā'tus<br>(-a, -um) | { | e'ram, <i>I had been prepared</i>   | parā'tī<br>(-ae, -a) | { | erā'mus, <i>we had been prepared</i>  |
|                       |   | e'rās, <i>you had been prepared</i> |                      |   | erā'tis, <i>you had been prepared</i> |
|                       |   | e'rat, <i>he had been prepared</i>  |                      |   | e'rant, <i>they had been prepared</i> |

Similarly **habitus eram, positus eram, captus eram, mūnītus eram.**  
(For full conjugation see 661-664.)

**215. Drill.** — Conjugate the following in the perfect and past perfect passive:

trahō, -ere, trāxī, trāctus  
videō, -ere, vidī, vīsus

moveō, -ere, mōvī, mōtus  
agō, -ere, -ēgī, āctus

## 216.

## Exercises

*Oral.* 1. Ēgregium exemplum ā magistrō prōpositum est. 2. Arma carrīs ad castra portāta erant. 3. Equī ab agricolā per silvam ad aquam āctī erant. 4. Puellae magnīs undīs terrentur sed iniūriam nōn accipient. 5. Ēgregiumne exemplum amīcitiae memoriā tenētis? 6. Sub aquā remanēre nōn grātum est. 7. Vir ā puerō sub aquam trāctus erat sed et vir et puer servātī<sup>1</sup> sunt.

*Written.* 1. They have been seen; I had been dragged; you had been moved; he had been; they will have been. 2. The rest of the books had been removed by the boy's teacher. 3. The farmer's son had seen few towns but he knew much about horses and fields and woods. 4. In Gaul my son had fought for our country in many battles.

<sup>1</sup> Note that the participle is plural because it refers to both **vir** and **puer**.

## LESSON XXXVIII

### FUTURE PERFECT PASSIVE AND PRESENT INFINITIVE PASSIVE OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS

#### 217. Vocabulary

|   |           |
|---|-----------|
| ad'sum, ades'se, ad'fui, adfutū'rus, <i>be near, be present</i>                           | [sum]     |
| de'us, -ī, m., <i>god</i>   | (deify)   |
| ēdū'cō, -ere, ēdū'xī, educ'tus, <i>lead out</i>   | [ducō]    |
| permit'tō, -ere, permī'sī, permis'sus, <i>let go through, allow, in-trust (with dat.)</i> | [mittō]   |
| pri'mus, -a, -um, <i>first</i>  | (primary) |
| susci'piō, -ere, suscep'pī, suscep'tus, <i>take up, undertake</i>                         | [capiō]   |

#### 218. Latin Phrases in English

Deō grātiās, *thanks to God.*

Deī grātiā, *by the grace of God* (seen on Canadian coins).

per annum, *by (through) the year.*

sic semper tyrannīs, *thus always to tyrants* (motto of the state of Virginia).

sub rosā, *under the rose, i.e. in concealment.*



FIG. 40. THE FORUM AT POMPEII

### 219. Future Perfect Indicative Passive

In English, the future perfect passive is formed by using the future perfect tense of *to be* (i.e. *shall have been*) as an auxiliary with the past participle.

In Latin, the future perfect passive is formed by using the *future* tense of **sum** (i.e. **erō**) as an auxiliary with the perfect participle (cf. the formation of the corresponding active tense by adding the future of **sum** to the perfect stem : **parāv-erō**) :

|                       |   |   |                      |   |   |
|-----------------------|---|---|----------------------|---|---|
| parā'tus<br>(-a, -um) | { | e'rō, <i>I shall have been prepared</i>   | parā'tī<br>(-ae, -a) | { | e'rimus, <i>we shall have been prepared</i> |
|                       |   | e'ris, <i>you will have been prepared</i> |                      |   | e'ritis, <i>you will have been prepared</i> |
|                       |   | e'rit, <i>he will have been prepared</i>  |                      |   | e'runt, <i>they will have been prepared</i> |

Similarly **habitus erō, positus erō, captus erō, mūnitus erō.**

(For full conjugation see 661-664.)

**220. Drill.** — Conjugate the following in the perfect system passive: **āmittō, -ere, āmīsī, āmissus; ēdūcō, -ere, ēdūxī, ēductus; suscipiō, -ere, suscēpī, susceptus.**

### 221. Present Infinitive Passive

In English, the present infinitive passive is formed by using the auxiliary *to be* with the past participle.

In Latin, the present infinitive passive is formed by changing the active infinitive ending **-re** to **-rī** :

*Active* : parā're, *to prepare*; habē're; mūnī're

*Passive* : parā'rī, *to be prepared*; habē'rī; mūnī'rī

**Note.** — In the third conjugation, final **-ēre** is changed to **-ī** :

*Active* : pō'nere, *to place*; ca'pere

*Passive* : pō'nī, *to be placed*; ca'pī

222. Drill.—Form the present passive infinitive of *videō*, *agō*, *trahō*, *suscipiō*, and *moveō*.

223.

## Exercises

*Oral.* 1. Causam populī suscipere est officium bonōrum. 2. Vitam meam et fortūnās amicis permisi. 3. Equi ex oppidō per agrōs ēducti erunt. 4. Pecūnia merēri et servārī ā pueris puellisq̄ debet. 5. Deō grātiām habēre dēbeō, quod vitam meam regit. 6. Pueri adfuērunt primī, quod puellae tardae fuērunt. 7. Verbis bonōrum virōrum semper incitārī et regi dēbēmus.

*Written.* 1. God teaches men to love (their) enemies. 2. The troops will have been ordered to advance and seize the town. 3. Where are the boys? They are absent, but the girls are present. 4. We have ordered the boys to be dismissed. 5. The boys ought to be called together by the teacher.



FIG. 41. THE COLOSSEUM

This amphitheater (cf. Fig. 7) was built in 80 A.D. and had room for at least 50,000 people. Much of its marble and limestone was carried away several centuries ago to build numerous palaces in Rome. To the right is the Arch of Constantine (cf. Fig. 47).

## LESSON XXXIX

### REVIEW

**224. Rapid-fire Drills.** — (a) *Give tense, person, and number, and translate :*

Appellantur, reducēmini, amiserunt, novī, erant, afuerunt, retinuit, dimiseramus, iusserō, processerant, discessisti, prōdūxeram, redēgerunt, prōpositum est, remānsit, fuerō.

(b) *Give in Latin :*

1. It was committed ; you have been away ; we have hastened. 2. I have prepared ; he had been ; to remove. 3. To dismiss ; to be presented ; to be called.

**225. Decline** (a) *proelium integrum*, (b) *agricola bonus*, (c) *filius meus*, (d) *liber parvus*, (e) *periculum magnum*.

**226. Synopses<sup>1</sup> :** (Six tenses)

- (a) 1. Give *iubeō* in the 1st sing., indic. act.  
2. Give *prōpōnō* in the 2nd sing., indic. pass.  
3. Give *prōdūcō* in the 3rd sing., indic. act. .  
4. Give *appellō* in the 2nd plur., indic. pass.  
(b) Give *sum* in the 1st sing. ; *absum* in the 3rd sing. ;  
*adsum* in the 2nd plur.

**227. A Color Scheme for Learning Verb Forms**

It has been seen that a Latin verb need never be blindly memorized, for it is conjugated regularly throughout by combining certain stems with tense signs and personal endings in a logical way, as may be shown by the following color scheme :

Use white chalk for the present stem and yellow for the perfect stem ; light red for all tense signs, light green for personal endings. For the compound tenses of the perfect system passive, use blue for the past participle, and white for the three tenses of *sum*.

---

<sup>1</sup> For definition of synopsis see *Elementary Grammar*, 636.

## 228.

## English Word Study

Find and use in sentences as many English derivatives as possible from *servō*, *moveō*, *dūcō*, *capiō*. For example: from *servō* is derived *conservation*, used as follows: *The conservation of our forests is a necessity.*

Enter the derivatives in your notebook, using a separate page for each Latin word.

## 229.

## Hints for Developing "Word Sense"

No word in any language, except a few prepositions, etc., has the same meaning at all times. While words, as a rule, have one general meaning, they may have several *shades of meaning*, which depend entirely upon their context or surroundings. You have doubtless seen the chameleon, a lizardlike creature which, for protection, changes its color to suit that of the leaf or limb upon which it rests. This we call "imitative coloring." Words, like chameleons, take on a local color. In translating a Latin word, therefore, it is necessary to derive its exact meaning (as opposed to its general or "vocabulary" meaning) from its context or setting; for example,

## AGERE

|        |           |        |         |        |            |
|--------|-----------|--------|---------|--------|------------|
| equōs  | praedam   | multum | grātiās | causam | cum virō   |
| drive  | carry off | do     | give    | plead  | deal       |
| horses | booty     | much   | thanks  | a case | with a man |

The above are only a few of the meanings of *agō*. From now on, do not confine yourself to the meanings given to words in the vocabulary, but select the one best suited to the context.



### 230. How to Study a Connected Passage

*Do not turn to the vocabulary at the end of the book for a word you do not know. Read an entire paragraph before you look up a word. There are three ways to find the meaning of a word without looking it up:*

1. *English derivatives* (nearly every Latin word has at least one English derivative).
2. *Related Latin words* (if you know the meaning of *re-* and *dūcō*, you know the meaning of *redūcō*).
3. *Sensible guessing*.

Use the vocabulary merely to verify results. In this way you will save time and gain a better command of Latin.



FIG. 42. LŪDUS

A school scene from a stone relief found in Trier, Germany.

### 231. THE STORY OF LUCIUS (*Cont.*)

#### Lūdus

Lūciumne in memoriā habētis? Lūcius reliquique puerī Rōmānī ā magistrō in Forum Rōmānum ductī erant. Nunc iterum dē Lūciō audiētis, quod bonī puerī puellaeque fuistis. Dē lūdō Lūcī nunc agēmus. Lūdus est locus ubi magister puerōs puellāsque docet. Prīmus lūdus vocābātur “lūdus litterārum.” In Lūcī lūdō puellae nōn erant, et paucī puerī. Nōn erat pūblicus lūdus, sed tamen pretium disciplīnae erat



parvum. Puerī pecūniam et praemia ad magistrum portābant. Servi puerōs ad lūdum ante aurōram dūcēbant et lanternam librōsque portābant. Nōne dūrum erat puerum Rōmānum esse? Servi in lūdō manēbant et puerōs ad familiās redūcēbant.

### WHAT ROMAN BOYS STUDIED

Etiam magister servus erat. Litterās et verba et numerōs docēbat. Lingua lūdī erat Latīna, quod puerī Rōmānī erant. Numerōs Lūcius nōn amābat. Magister puerīs fōrmās litterārū mōnstrābat. Tum digitōs puerōrum tenēbat et litterās faciēbant. Sententiae (*mottoes*) puerīs ā magistrō mōnstrābantur. Exemplum sententiae est: "Ibi semper est victōria ubi concordia est." Sententiās semper amābat Lūcius et in memoriā tenēbat. Diligentiā et studiō praemia merēbat.



FIG. 43. LŪCIUS IN LŪDŌ POENĀ AFFICITUR

### BAD LUCK

Tardī discipulī poenā afficiēbantur, sed Lūcius semper primus veniēbat, quod ad lūdum properābat neque in viīs remanēbat. Sed mala fortūna vēnit. Pecūnia ā Lūciō ad magistrum portābātur et in viā āmissa est. Tardus fuit. Magister puerōs appellāverat et reliquī puerī responderant,

“Adsum!” Tum magister Lūcium appellāvit. Puerī respondērunt, “Abest!” Tum vēnit Lūcius et magister puerīque dē pecūniā audivērunt. Magister dūrus Lūcium ā puerīs sublevārī iussit et poenā eum (*him*) affēcit, quod pecūniam amiserat et tardus fuerat.

### FOUND!

Magister discipulōs dimisit et singulī excessērunt. Lūcius cum servō discessit et pecūniam in viā invēnit. Ad lūdum properāvit et magistrō pecūniam dōnāvit. Magister bonō puerō grātiās ēgit et librum dōnāvit.

### 232. Conversation : School

**Magister.** Discipulōs appellābō. **Anna.** **Anna.** Adsum. **M. Mariā.** **Mariā.** Adsum.

**M. Mārcus.** **Discipulī.** Abest.

**M.** Ubi est Mārcus? **D.** Ad lūdum nōn vēnit. (Etc.)

**M.** Grātumne erat esse puerum Rōmānum? **D.** Nōn grātum erat esse puerum Rōmānum, quod puerī Rōmānī ante aurōram in lūdum dūcēbantur.

**M.** Ubi puerī Rōmānī labōrābant? **D.** In lūdō puerī Rōmānī labōrābant.

**M.** Multine puerī in lūdō fuērunt? **D.** Paucī puerī in lūdō fuērunt.

### Questions to Be Answered in Latin

1. Ubi nunc estis?
2. Estne grātum in lūdō esse?
3. Pecūniamne amīsistī?
4. Ubi librum Latinum amīsistī?
5. Tardusne in lūdum vēnistī?
6. Semperne tardus in lūdum veniēs?

## LESSON XL

### FIRST CONJUGATION : REVIEW OF PRINCIPAL PARTS

#### 233.

#### Vocabulary

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| diligen'tia, -ae, f., <i>carefulness, diligence</i>                            | (diligent) |
| dō, <sup>1</sup> dā're, de'dī, dā'tus, <i>give</i>                             | (dative)   |
| in'ter, prep. with acc., <i>between, among</i>                                 |            |
| ob, prep. with acc., <i>toward, on account of, for</i>                         |            |
| perti'neō, -ē're, -ti'nūī, -ten'tus, with ad, <i>extend to, pertain to</i>     | [teneō]    |
| submit'tō, -ere, -mī'sī, -mis'sus, ( <i>send from under</i> ), <i>dispatch</i> | [mittō]    |

#### 234.

#### Latin and English Word Formation

As a prefix in Latin and English, **inter-** has its usual meanings. It is rarely assimilated. It is used rather freely in English to form new words: *inter-class, inter-state, inter-scholastic*, etc.

As a prefix **ob-** has the meaning *towards* or *against*. It is regularly assimilated before certain consonants: *oc-cur, of-ficial, o-mission, op-ponent*; but *ob-tain, ob-serve, ob-durate, ob-vious*.

#### 235.

#### Principal Parts

(a) In English, every verb has three parts which, from their importance in forming the tenses, are called **principal parts**. Verbs that form the past tense by adding **-ed** to the present are said to be *regular*, while those which form the past tense in other ways—chiefly by changing the root vowel of the present—are said to be *irregular*. Note the following examples:

---

<sup>1</sup> **Dō** is irregular in three parts—perfect **dedī**, and **ā** in **dare** and **datus**. The **a** is short in all indicative forms except the present tense, second person singular.

|                    | PRESENT | PAST   | PAST PARTICIPLE |
|--------------------|---------|--------|-----------------|
| <b>Regular :</b>   | call    | called | called          |
| <b>Irregular :</b> | be      | was    | been            |
|                    | see     | saw    | seen            |
|                    | do      | did    | done            |
|                    | sing    | sang   | sung            |

**Query.** — Can you give the principal parts of *drink, write, go, come, run, give, sit, set, lie, lay*?

(b) In Latin, every verb regularly has four principal parts. They will hereafter be printed in the vocabularies and should be memorized. The principal parts of the model verbs of the four conjugations and of **sum** are as follows :

| CONJUGATION            | PRES. INDIC. | PRES. INFIN.   | PERF. INDIC. | PERF. PART.                      |
|------------------------|--------------|----------------|--------------|----------------------------------|
| I                      | parō         | parāre         | parāvī       | parātus                          |
| II                     | habēō        | habēre         | habuī        | habitus                          |
| III                    | (a) pōnō     | pōnere         | posuī        | positus                          |
|                        | (b) capiō    | capere         | cēpī         | captus                           |
| IV                     | mūniō        | mūnīre         | mūnīvī       | mūnītus                          |
| <i>Irregular Verbs</i> | sum<br>absum | esse<br>abesse | fui<br>āfui  | futūrus <sup>1</sup><br>āfutūrus |

## 236.

## Tense Stems

Every Latin verb has approximately *one hundred and fifty forms*, all of which are built upon **three stems**, obtained from the principal parts as follows :

1. To find the **present stem**, drop <sup>†</sup>-re from the present infinitive active: parā-, etc.

2. To find the **perfect stem**, drop -ī from the perfect indicative active: parāv-, etc.

<sup>1</sup> See 209, footnote 1.

3. To find the **participial stem**, drop **-us** from the perfect participle: **parāt-**, etc.

**Query.** — What tenses are formed (a) upon the present stem, (b) upon the perfect stem, (c) with the perfect participle?

### 237. First Conjugation: Review of Principal Parts

Verbs of the first conjugation generally form the perfect stem by adding **-v** to the present stem (187, **Note**) and form the perfect participle by adding **-tus** to the present stem (211). Review the following and give their principal parts:

**accūsō, amō, appellō, convocō, dōnō, ēvocō, exspectō, habitō, incitō, labōrō, mandō, mātūrō, migrō, mōnstrō, nāvigō, nūntiō, occupō, portō, probō, pugnō, servō, spectō, vāstō, vocō.**

### 238.

### Exercises

*Oral.* 1. Officium pūblicum est puerīs puellisque disciplinam dare. 2. Dīligentia puerōrum amīcīs nūntiāta erit. 3. Castra in altō locō erant inter oppidum et silvam. 4. Ob multās causās amīcitia et concordia inter liberōs esse dēbent. 5. America ob amīcitiam auxilium submīsīt. 6. Ob magnum perīculum cōpiaē nostrae colōnis arma permīsērunt. 7. Agrī nostrī ad viam pertinent.

*Written.* 1. On-account-of the war we did not sail to Europe. 2. The fields had been laid waste and the town seized by the slaves. 3. He has been aroused by the messenger's harsh words. 4. We have dispatched a large number of reinforcements.

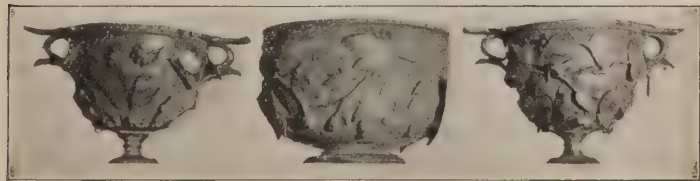


FIG. 44. ROMAN CUPS

## LESSON XLI

### DECLENSION OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUN *QUI*. AGREEMENT OF THE RELATIVE

ELEMENTARY GRAMMAR: Review *Relative pronouns*, 615, c.

#### 239.

#### Vocabulary

*cūr*, interrog. adv., *why?*

*nātū'ra*, -ae, f., *nature*

*pul'cher*, -chra, -chrom, *beautiful*

*susti'neō*, -ē're, -ti'nui, -ten'tus, *hold up, maintain, endure* (natural) (pulchritude) [*teneō*]



FIG. 45. A ROPE WALKER

#### 240.

#### Word Study: Intensive Prefixes

Most of the Latin prepositions which are used as prefixes in Latin and English may have intensive force, especially **con-**, **ex-**, **ob-**, **per-**. They are then best translated either by an English intensive, as *up* or *out*, or by an adverb, as *completely*, *thoroughly*, *deeply*. Thus **commoveō** means to *move greatly*, **permagnus**, *very great*, **obtimeō**, to *hold on to*, **conciō**, to *rouse up*, **excipiō**, to *catch, receive*.

#### 241.

#### The Relative Pronoun *Qui*

The pronouns *who*, *which*, *what*, and *that* in English are called **relative** pronouns because they *relate* or refer to some *foregoing* word, called their **antecedent**.

There is only one relative pronoun in Latin, declined as follows:

| quī, <i>who, which, that</i>            |                       |       |       |                        |        |        |
|---|-----------------------|-------|-------|------------------------|--------|--------|
|   | SINGULAR              |       |       | PLURAL                 |        |        |
| Nom.                                    | quī                   | quae  | quod  | quī                    | quae   | quae   |
| Gen.                                    | cuius <sup>1</sup>    | cuius | cuius | quōrum                 | quārum | quōrum |
| Dat.                                    | cui                   | cui   | cui   | quibus                 | quibus | quibus |
| Acc.                                    | quem                  | quam  | quod  | quōs                   | quās   | quae   |
| Abl.                                    | quō                   | quā   | quō   | quibus                 | quibus | quibus |
| English Meanings in Singular and Plural |                       |       |       |                        |        |        |
|   | M. AND F.             |       |       | N.                     |        |        |
| Nom.                                    | <i>who, that</i>      |       |       | <i>which, that</i>     |        |        |
| Gen.                                    | <i>of whom, whose</i> |       |       | <i>of which, whose</i> |        |        |
| Dat.                                    | <i>to (for) whom</i>  |       |       | <i>to (for) which</i>  |        |        |
| Acc.                                    | <i>whom, that</i>     |       |       | <i>which, that</i>     |        |        |
| Abl.                                    | <i>by, etc., whom</i> |       |       | <i>by, etc., which</i> |        |        |

## 242. Relative Pronouns as Used in English

While *that* as a relative can be used to refer to both persons and things, *who* always refers to persons and *which* to things (in other words, *which* is the neuter of *who*). *Which* and *that* do not change form to indicate case, while *who* does:

Nom. *who* Gen. *whose* Dat. and Acc. *whom*

## 243. The Relative Pronoun as Used in Latin

In the following sentences the antecedent and relative are underscored. Give the number and gender of each:

1. (a) Puella abest; puellam accūsō, *The girl is absent; the girl I accuse.*

(b) Puella quam accūsō abest, *The girl whom I accuse is absent.*

2. Oppidum quod vidit erat parvum, *The town which he saw was small.*

<sup>1</sup> Note that the genitive singular is alike in all genders, likewise the dative singular, and that the accusative singular, masculine and feminine, ends in *-m*, as in English *whom*.



3. Castra ex quibus vēnimus erant magna, *The camp from which we came was large.*

4. Virum cui librum dedi vidistī, *You saw the man to whom I gave the book.*

5. Puer cuius librum habeō est amicus noster, *The boy whose book I have is our friend.*

Observe that the relative and the antecedent are always of the same number and gender but not necessarily in the same case.

**244. Rule.** — *The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends upon its use in its own clause.*

**245.** (a) While the relative may be omitted in English, it is never omitted in Latin: *The man (whom) I saw, Vir quem vidī.*

(b) Fill in the blanks and write in Latin:

1. *I saw the horses — were on the road.*
2. *The boy — I saw was fighting.*

## 246.

## Exercises

*Oral.* 1. Vir cui pecūniam permīsi erat amicus meus. 2. Cūr nōn sustinētis fortūnam quam Nātūra dedit? 3. America bellum suscepit ob iniuriās quās accēperat. 4. Virī quōrum filiōs deceō ēgregiī agricolae sunt. 5. Cūr pecūniam puerō nōn dedistī quem viā vidistī? 6. Librōs quī ad fāmam et fortūnam pertinent puerī amant. 7. Via quā vēnimus erat pulchra.

*Written.* 1. The boy whom I saw in the woods is approaching. 2. He endured constant dangers on-account-of (his) enemies. 3. I saw the boy whose book I lost. 4. The war which was waged by our men in Europe had been approved by the people. 5. The men who did not fight maintained the country with money.

## LESSON XLII

### SECOND CONJUGATION: REVIEW OF PRINCIPAL PARTS. ABLATIVE OF MANNER

#### 247. Vocabulary

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| cōnser'vō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, <i>save, preserve</i>   | [servō]    |
| intermit'tō, -ere, -mī'sī, -mis'sus, (lit., <i>let go between</i> ), <i>suspend, stop, cease</i> | [mittō]    |
| obti'neō, -ē're, -ti'nuī, -ten'tus, <i>hold, obtain</i>  | [teneō]    |
| permo'veō, -ē're, -mō'vī, -mō'tus, <i>move deeply, induce</i>                                    | [moveō]    |
| pe'tō, -ere, peti'vī, peti'tus, <i>seek, ask</i>   | (petition) |
| tum, adv., <i>then</i>   |            |

#### 248. Interesting English Words

Many English words that seem quite dull and ordinary have very interesting stories locked up within them. The key to these stories is Latin. Use this key and do not lose it. Let us try it now.

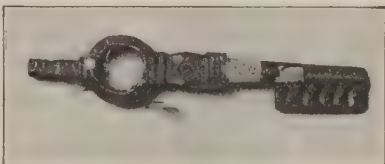


FIG. 46. A ROMAN KEY

The “efficient” person is the one who *accomplishes* (*efficiō*) something — remember this when you hear people talk about “efficiency.” A “traction” company is engaged in *drawing* or *hauling* vehicles. What is a “tractor”? What sort of person is a “tractable” person? Politicians should remember that a public “office” is a *duty*. An “office” is also a place where one does his *duty* or *daily work*.

#### 249. Second Conjugation : Review of Principal Parts

The following are verbs already studied, but whose principal parts have not been given in full. Memorize their principal parts and give the three stems of each :

|          |           |          |           |
|----------|-----------|----------|-----------|
| dēbeō    | dēbere    | dēbuī    | dēbitus   |
| mereō    | merere    | meruī    | meritus   |
| terreō   | terrere   | terruī   | territus  |
| valeō    | valere    | valuī    | valitūrus |
| teneō    | tenere    | tenuī    | tentus    |
| contineō | continere | continūī | contentus |
| retineō  | retinere  | retinuī  | retentus  |
| doceō    | docere    | docuī    | doctus    |
| augeō    | augere    | auxī     | auctus    |
| maneō    | manere    | mānsī    | mānsus    |
| iubeō    | iubere    | iussī    | iussus    |
| moveō    | movere    | mōvī     | mōtus     |
| removeō  | removere  | remōvī   | remōtus   |
| videō    | videre    | vīdī     | vīsus     |

**Note.** — It will be seen that no general rule can be given for forming the perfect and participial stems of verbs of the second conjugation. The most common type, however, is illustrated by *dēbeō*. Note the other types, which are arranged in groups.

## 250.

## Ablative of Manner

In English, the manner of an action is expressed by an adverb or a phrase answering the question *How?* When a phrase is used, a preposition, such as *with*, introduces it.

In Latin, manner is similarly expressed. Examine the following:

1. *Cum studiō labōrat, He labors with eagerness (eagerly).*
2. *(Cum) magnō studiō labōrat, He labors with great eagerness (very eagerly).*

**Note** that when an adjective is used with the noun, *cum* may be omitted.

**251. Rule.** — *The ablative of manner with cum describes how something is done. Cum may be omitted if an adjective is used with the noun.*

252.

Exercises

*Oral.* 1. Magnā cūrā silvās nostrās cōservābimus.  
 2. Servus pecūniam petet quae ab agricolā retenta est.  
 3. Magnā iniuriā tum populus regēbātur. 4. Puer quī  
 primum locum obtinuerat cum magnā cūrā et studiō laborā-  
 verat. 5. Multī puerī studia ob bellum intermisērunt.  
 6. Amīcus noster litterīs neque permōtus neque territus est  
 sed aequō animō ad castra prōcessit. 7. Frūmentō et  
 pecūniā et armīs causam Sociōrum nostrōrum sustinuimus.

*Written.* 1. He has been deeply moved by my words.  
 2. The teacher carefully taught the boys to save money.  
 3. The bad boy very carefully removed the teacher's books.  
 4. Why do you not seek the friendship of the girls who live  
 on High Street? 5. The slave was unjustly accused by the  
 prisoner.



FIG. 47. THE ARCH OF CONSTANTINE

Such arches were built in honor of generals and emperors. To the right  
 a corner of the Colosseum (cf. Fig. 41) is visible. Constantine died in  
 337 A.D.

## LESSON XLIII

### DECLENSION OF THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN *QUIS*

ELEMENTARY GRAMMAR: Review *Interrogative pronouns*, 615, b.

253.

#### Vocabulary

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| cô'gō, -ere, coē'gī, coāc'tus, ( <i>drive together</i> ), <i>collect, compel</i> | [agō]      |
| Gallia, -ae, f., <i>Gaul</i> (modern France)                                     |            |
| mo'dus, -ī, m., <i>measure, limit, manner</i>                                    | (moderate) |
| mo'neō, -ē're, mo'nuī, mo'nitus, <i>remind, warn</i>                             | (monitor)  |
| rēg'num, -ī, n., <i>royal power, kingdom</i>                                     | [regō]     |
| tu'us, -a, -um, <i>your</i> (referring to one person)                            |            |
| ves'ter, -tra, -trum, <i>your</i> (referring to two or more)                     |            |

254.

#### Latin Phrases in English

Cui bonō? (lit., *to whom for a good?*) *What good is it?*

in absentia, *in absence.*

in perpetuum, (*to perpetuity*), *forever.*

Īlium fuit, *Ilium has been* (i.e. *no longer exists*), said of Troy (Īlium) after its destruction by the Greeks; now applied to anything that is past.

255.

#### Interrogatives

I. **Pronoun.** — In English, the interrogative pronoun *who* refers only to persons, *what* refers only to things.

In Latin, the interrogative pronoun corresponding to *who* and *what* is *quis*, *quid*, declined as follows:

|      | M. AND F.             | N.                      | M.      | F.      | N.      |
|------|-----------------------|-------------------------|---------|---------|---------|
| Nom. | quis, <i>who?</i>     | quid, <i>what?</i>      | quī     | quae    | quae    |
| Gen. | cu'ius, <i>whose?</i> | cu'ius, <i>of what?</i> | quō'rum | quā'rum | quō'rum |
| Dat. | cui, <i>to whom?</i>  | cui, <i>to what?</i>    | qui'bus | qui'bus | qui'bus |
| Acc. | quem, <i>whom?</i>    | quid, <i>what?</i>      | quōs    | quās    | quae    |
| Abl. | quō, <i>by whom?</i>  | quō, <i>by what?</i>    | qui'bus | qui'bus | qui'bus |

Note. — The plural is translated like the singular.

**II. Adjective.** — In English, the interrogative pronoun *who* can not be used as an adjective; we can not say, *Who man?* But *what* may be used as an adjective, referring to persons or things: *What man? What thing?*

In Latin, the interrogative adjective is **quī, quae, quod**, declined throughout like the relative pronoun (241). Compare the interrogative **quis** with the relative **quī** and note differences in the singular.

**Note.** — In English, *which* can be used as pronoun or adjective, referring to persons or things. It differs in meaning from *who* and *what* in that it implies a limited choice: *Which hat shall I wear? Which do you mean, Mr. Jones or Mr. Smith?* **Quis** and **quī** are used in this sense only when more than two are involved.

**256. Drill.** — Decline *what ally? what price? what nature?*

**Lapsūs Linguae** ("Slips of the Tongue"). — Have you ever said, *Who did you see?* Why is *who* incorrect? Give the correct form and translate the sentence into Latin.

**257.**

### Exercises

**Oral.** 1. *Quī puer verbis bonī virī nōn permōtus est?*  
 2. *Quid amīcī tuī fēcērunt et quod praemium accipient?*  
 3. *Quō modō Sociī pecūniam coēgērunt?* 4. *Quod cōnsilium ā magistrō vestrō puerīs datum est?* 5. *Gallia tum multa rēgna continēbat quae ā populō Rōmānō occupāta erant.* 6. *Puerī magnā cūrā dē periculīs monitī erant.* 7. *Quod fuit pretium librī quem ab amīcō tuō accēpistī?* 8. *Cui puerō, cui puellae, Nātūra nōn vitam grātā dedit?*

**Written.** 1. To whom shall we give the money and present the rewards? 2. By what street did you come and whom did you seek? 3. In what manner did you obtain the money which you have? 4. Whose words were, "My kingdom for (**prō**) a horse!"? 5. How (in what manner) did you obtain your books? What did you give the **man**?



## LESSON XLIV

### THIRD CONJUGATION: REVIEW OF PRINCIPAL PARTS

258.

#### Vocabulary

**an'te**, adv. and prep. with acc., *before* (of time or place)

**cognōs'cō**, -ere, **cognō'vī**, **cog'nitus**, *learn*; perf. tenses,

"have learned" = *know*

**do'minus**, -ī, m., *master, lord, ruler*

**iam**, adv., *already*

**le'gō**, -ere, **lē'gī**, **lēc'tus**, *gather, choose, read*

**pli'cō**, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *fold*

**scri'bō**, -ere, **scrip'sī**, **scrip'tus**, *write*

**trāns**, prep. with acc., *across*

[**nōscō**]

(dominate)

(legible)

(implication)

(Scripture)

#### 259. Latin and English Word Formation

**Ante-** has its regular meaning and form when used as a prefix. **Trāns-** means *through* or *across*, and sometimes has the form **trā-**, as **trā-dūcō**.

**Importance of the Verb.** — The most important part of speech in Latin for English derivation is the verb, and the most important part of the verb is the *perfect participle*. This form is also the most important for Latin word formation. Therefore *learn carefully* the principal parts of every verb. Nothing is more important.

By associating Latin word and English derivative, you can make the English help you in your Latin, and *vice versa*. You can often tell the conjugation or the perfect participle of a Latin verb by the help of an English derivative. The English word *mandate* shows that **mandō** has **mandātus** as its perfect participle and is therefore of the first conjugation. Similarly *migrate*, *donation*, *spectator*, etc. The word *vision* helps one remember that the perfect participle of **videō** is **vīsus**. Similarly *motion* from **mōtus**, *merit* from **meritus**, *missive* from **missus**, *position* from **positus**, *active* from **āctus**.



# 260. Third Conjugation : Review of Principal Parts

Memorize the principal parts of these verbs already studied and give the three stems of each. No rule can be given for the formation of the third and fourth parts, from which the perfect and participial stems are obtained, but the commonest type has a perfect ending in *-sī*. The participle ends in *-tus* or *-sus* :

|    |  |           |         |           |
|----|--|-----------|---------|-----------|
| I  | cēdō   | cēdere    | cessī   | cessus    |
|    | (Similarly accēdō, discēdō, excēdō, prōcēdō) |           |         |           |
|    | gerō   | gerere    | gessī   | gestus    |
|    | mittō  | mittere   | mīsī    | missus    |
|    | (Similarly āmittō, committō, dīmittō)        |           |         |           |
|    | dūcō   | dūcere    | dūxī    | ductus    |
|    | (Similarly prōdūcō, redūcō)                  |           |         |           |
|    | regō   | regere    | rēxī    | rēctus    |
|    | trahō  | trahere   | trāxī   | trāctus   |
|    | pōnō   | pōnere    | posuī   | positus   |
|    | dēfendō                                      | dēfendere | dēfendī | dēfēnsus  |
|    | agō  | agere     | ēgī     | āctus     |
|    | nōscō  | nōscere   | nōvī    | nōtus     |
| II | capiō  | capere    | cēpī    | captus    |
|    | accipiō                                      | accipere  | accēpī  | acceptus  |
|    | incipiō                                      | incipere  | incēpī  | inceptus  |
|    | faciō  | facere    | fēcī    | factus    |
|    | afficiō                                      | afficere  | affēcī  | affectus  |
|    | efficiō                                      | efficere  | effēcī  | effectus  |
|    | fugiō  | fugere    | fūgī    | fugitūrus |

**Note.** — The change or lengthening of the vowel of the perfect and participial stems may be compared with the change of vowel in English *sing, sang, sung*, etc.

**Query.** — What is the sign of the future which is found in verbs of the third conjugation ?

## 261.

## Exercises

*Oral.* 1. Bellum trāns Ōceanum cum victōriā gessimus.  
2. Signa ante cōpiās posita erant. 3. Litterās quās scripsī  
plicābō et ad amīcum meum mittam. 4. Bonus est do-  
minus noster, quod populum cum cōsiliō et concordiā regit.  
5. Linguam Latīnam cum studiō legere et scribere incipi-  
mus, quod multa nova verba iam cognōvimus. 6. Litterae  
quās ad meum amīcum mīsi cum cūrā plicātae erant.



FIG. 48. PORTA RŌMĀNA

This gate in the wall around Rome built by Aurelian (270-275 A.D.) leads to the road to Ostia (cf. Fig. 129).

*Written.* 1. The new words ought always to be learned.  
2. I do not know the boy who lives across the street.  
3. The prisoners had been dragged across the fields and placed in-front-of the camp. 4. Who wrote the letter which you are reading?

## LESSON XLV

### PERFECT PARTICIPLES USED AS ADJECTIVES AND NOUNS. CONJUGATION OF *POSSUM*

262.

#### Vocabulary

|   |              |
|---|--------------|
| cer'nō, -ere, crē'vī, crē'tus, ( <i>separate</i> ), <i>discern</i> , <i>see</i> | (discretion) |
| cer'tus, -a, -um, <i>fixed</i> , <i>sure</i>                                    | [cernō]      |
| commo'veō, -ē're, -mō'vī, -mō'tus, <i>move away</i> , <i>disturb</i>            | [moveō]      |
| fac'tum, -ī, n., <i>deed</i>  | [faciō]      |
| nam, conj., <i>for</i>  |              |
| nō'tus, -a, -um, <i>known</i> , <i>familiar</i>                                 | [nōscō]      |
| parā'tus, -a, -um, <i>prepared</i> , <i>ready</i>                               | [parō]       |
| possum, pos'se, po'tuī, —, <i>can</i> , <i>be able</i> (with infinitive)        | [sum]        |

#### 263. Perfect Participles Used as Adjectives and Nouns

Perfect participles of many verbs came to be used as simple adjectives, just as in English: **parātus**, “prepared,” *ready*; **nōtus**, “known,” *familiar*; **certus**, “decided,” *sure*. A participle, like any adjective, may be used substantively: **factum**, “having been done,” *deed*.

#### 264. Drill. — Decline *via nōta* and *signum certum*.

265.

#### Conjugation of *Possum*

**Possum** is a compound of **sum** and is therefore **irregular**. It has no passive voice. Review the conjugation of **sum**. **Possum** = **pot(e)** + **sum**. **Pot** becomes **pos** before all forms of **sum** which begin with **s**. The perfect tenses are regular.

##### PRESENT

|   |   |
|---|---|
| pos'sum, <i>I can</i> , <i>am able</i>                        | pos'sumus, <i>we can</i> , <i>are able</i>      |
| pot'es, <i>you can</i> , <i>are able</i>                      | potes'tis, <i>you can</i> , <i>are able</i>     |
| pot'est, <i>he can</i> , <i>is able</i>                       | pos'sunt, <i>they can</i> , <i>are able</i>     |
| Imperfect pot'eram, etc.,<br><i>I could</i> , <i>was able</i> | Future pot'erō, etc.,<br><i>I shall be able</i> |

(For full conjugation see 667.)

## 266.

## Exercises

*Oral.* 1. "Semper parātus" est nōta sententia, quam bonī puerī memoriā tenēre dēbent. 2. Amīcus certus in malā fortūnā cernitur. 3. Perīcula vītæ bonum virum commovēre nōn possunt. 4. Linguam Latinam et legere et scribere possum. 5. Facta virōrum clārōrum semper nōta erunt. 6. "Facta, nōn verba" nostra sententia esse dēbet. 7. Ante bellum patria nostra nōn parāta erat; nam magnās cōpiās nōn habēbāmus.

*Written.* 1. The great deeds of our troops will be remembered by a grateful people. 2. Few men can neither read nor write. 3. We came across the fields, because the road was not familiar. 4. They had not been able to come on-account-of the bad streets. 5. My motto is: "Always ready." Is it yours?

## 267. Latin Words and Phrases in English

errātum (plur., errāta), *error*.

ante bellum, *before the war*.

dē factō, *from or according to fact, actual*; as a dē factō government.

## 268.

## AN ANCIENT PHILANTHROPIST

Plīnius, clārus Rōmānus, ad oppidum parvum in quō nātus<sup>1</sup> erat vēnit et ibi amīcum cum filiō vīdit. Plīnius puerō dixit<sup>2</sup>: "Discipulusne es?" Puer respondit: "Discipulus Mediōlānī (*at Milan*) sum." "Cūr nōn hīc (*here*)?" "Quod magistrōs hīc nōn habēmus." Tūm Plīnius amīcō dixit: "Hīc lūdum habēre dēbētis. Nōn liberōs habeo sed tertiam partem<sup>3</sup> pecūniæ quam dabitis parātus sum dare."

<sup>1</sup> From nāscor.

<sup>2</sup> From dicō.

<sup>3</sup> Acc.

## LESSON XLVI

### FOURTH CONJUGATION: REVIEW OF PRINCIPAL PARTS. NUMERALS

269.

#### Vocabulary

|   |              |
|---|--------------|
| adhi'beō, -ē're, -hi'buī, -hi'bitus, <i>apply, employ, summon</i> | [habeō]      |
| antecē'dō, -ere, -ces'sī, -ces'sus, <i>go before, precede</i>     | [cēdō]       |
| crē'ber, -bra, -brum, <i>frequent, close together</i>             |              |
| Gallus, -ī, m., <i>a Gaul (an inhabitant of Gallia)</i>           |              |
| relin'quō, -ere, -lī'quī, -līc'tus, <i>leave behind, abandon</i>  | (relinquish) |
| stō, -ā're, ste'tī, sta'tus, <i>stand</i>                         | (station)    |
| trādū'cō, -ere, -dū'xī, -duc'tus, <i>lead across</i>              | [dūcō]       |
| trāspor'tō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, <i>carry over, transport</i>    | [portō]      |

270.

#### The Latin Influence upon English

*Latin words have kept coming into English continuously from the beginning of the language down to the present moment.* Julius Caesar twice visited the island of Britain with his army and fought with the native Celts, as he relates in his book called the "Gallic War." But the Romans did not conquer the island until a century later. During the first four centuries of our era the Romans ruled Britain, and the towns at least became thoroughly Roman. Though they then abandoned it, they left a number of Latin words in the speech of the native population. Some of these words were afterwards adopted by the Angles and Saxons when they invaded the island nearly fifteen hundred years ago and gave their name (*Angle-land, Eng-land*) and language to the island. Their language was a form of German, for they came from northern Germany. Even there they had taken some Latin words into their language. So you see that one may say that Latin affected English even before English existed as a separate language.

As the Romans in Britain found it necessary to build many military camps, which developed into towns, the word **castra** is to be found in a number of town names, many of which have been used in our country also. So *Chester* (Pa.), *Ro-chester* (N. Y.), *Man-chester* (N. H.), *Wor-cester* (Mass.), *Glou-cester* (Mass.), *Lan-caster* (Pa.). What other names with these endings can you give?



FIG. 49. THE ROMAN WALL IN BRITAIN

The Romans left many traces of their occupation of Britain. The wall is one of the most important.

### 271. Fourth Conjugation : Review of Principal Parts

Memorize the principal parts of the following verbs, which have occurred in previous lessons :

|          |           |         |           |
|----------|-----------|---------|-----------|
| audiō    | audire    | audīvī  | audītus   |
| veniō    | venīre    | vēnī    | ventus    |
| conveniō | convenīre | convēnī | conventus |
| inveniō  | invenīre  | invēnī  | inventus  |



## 272. Numerals : How Lucius Learned to Count

Ūnus<sup>1</sup> puer et ūnus puer sunt duo puerī; duo librī et ūnus liber sunt trēs librī; duo equī et duo equī sunt quattuor equī; trēs carrī et duo carrī sunt quīnque carrī; quattuor oppida et duo oppida sunt sex oppida; sex dominī et ūnus dominus sunt septem dominī; quīnque nautae et trēs nautae sunt octō nautae; septem agrī et duo agrī sunt novem agrī; sex puellae et quattuor puellae sunt decem puellae.



FIG. 50. PUER RŌMĀNUS

Summary: ūnus, duo, trēs, quattuor, quīnque, sex, septem, octō, novem, decem.

## 273.

## Exercises

*Oral.* 1. Multum frūmentum in Eurōpam trānsportāvimus. 2. Nūntium mīsimus ad Marium, quī cum auxiliis antecesserat. 3. Ob equōs et carrōs crēbrōs in viā stāre nōn possumus. 4. Ubi pecūnia quam amiserās inventa est? 5. Nōne magnam diligentiam in amīcōrum periculīs adhibēre debēmus? 6. Gallī trāns agrōs in silvam cōpiās trādūxērunt. 7. Ob quās causās colōnī agrōs reliquērunt?

*Written.* 1. How did you hear about your friend's injury? 2. Marius ordered our forces to be led-across. 3. We ought to employ diligence and to labor with eagerness. 4. Why do you stand in the middle (of the) street?

---

<sup>1</sup> One.



## LESSON XLVII

### PARTICIPLES USED AS CLAUSES

#### 274.

#### Vocabulary

|  |                |
|--|----------------|
| addū'cō, -ere, -dū'xī, -duc'tus, <i>lead to, influence</i>       | [dūcō]         |
| cōn'sulō, -ere, -su'luī, -sul'tus, <i>consult (with acc.)</i>    | (consultation) |
| fi'lia, -ae, f., <i>daughter</i>                                 | [fīlius]       |
| fu'ga, -ae, f., <i>flight; in fu'gam da're, to put to flight</i> | [fugiō]        |
| nōn iam, adv., <i>no longer</i>                                  |                |
| prōvi'deō, -ē're, -vī'dī, -vī'sus, <i>foresee, provide</i>       | [videō]        |
| ti'midus, -a, -um, <i>fearful, afraid</i>                        | (timidity)     |

#### 275. The Latin Influence upon English (Cont.)

In the preceding lesson we saw that a number of Latin words came into English as a result of the Roman occupation of Britain. Other examples are *wall* (from **vāllum**), together with place names like *Walton* (*Wall-town*), *port* (from **portus**, *harbor*), together with place names like *Portsmouth*, *street* (from **strāta**), *Lin-coln* (from **colōnia**, *colony*); cf. *Cologne*, the name of a city in Germany, which was an ancient Roman colony.

A century and a half after the Angles and Saxons settled in England, Pope Gregory sent a number of missionaries, including the famous Augustine, to convert the island to Christianity. As the missionaries spoke Latin, they introduced a number of Latin words into English, especially words dealing with the Church, *e.g.* *temple* (**templum**), *disciple* (**discipulus**), *bishop* (**episcopus**).

#### 276.

#### Participles Used as Clauses

The participle, although sparingly used in English, is exceedingly common in Latin. It often serves as a *one-word substitute* for a subordinate clause, introduced in English by *who*, *etc.*, *when* or *after*, *since* or *because*, *although*, and *if*.

The meaning of the Latin sentence as a whole will always determine the precise meaning of the participle. Make it a rule to translate the participle *literally* before attempting to expand it into a clause. Note the various translations in the following:

- Relative* 1. *Oppida capta vīdī, I saw the towns which had been captured* (lit., *the captured towns*).
- Temporal* 2. *Convocātī ad proelium dūcentur, After they have been called together, they will be led to battle* (lit., *having been called together*).
- Causal* 3. *Territī nōn prōcessērunt, Because they were terrified, they did not advance* (lit., *having been terrified*).
- Adversative* 4. *Territī nōn cessērunt, Though they were terrified, they did not yield.*
- Conditional* 5. *Territī cēdent, If terrified, they will yield.*

Observe that the *perfect* participle denotes time *before* that of the leading verb.

## 277.

## Exercises

*Oral.* 1. *Malus puer, ab amicīs monitus, verbīs addūcī nōn iam potest.* 2. *Filia mea est timida, quod multa pericula semper prōvidet.* 3. *Monitī amicōs dē periculō cōsulere nōn poterāmus.* 4. *Parātī ante bellum Germānī ā Sociis in fugam datī sunt.* 5. *Germānī multa oppida occupāta reliquērunt.* 6. *Arma, ā Germānīs relicta in multīs oppidīs, ā nostrīs inventa sunt.* 7. *Periculum prōvisum nostrōs nōn terruit.*

*Written.* 1. I saw many arms that had been captured<sup>1</sup> by our (men). 2. The boys read the book because they had been influenced by the teacher's words. 3. We have given help to the sailors abandoned on the island. 4. I have read the letter written by my son. 5. The Gauls captured the town although it was defended by the Germans.

---

<sup>1</sup> Express in two ways.

## LESSON XLVIII

### REVIEW

#### 278. General Review of Principal Parts

1. Give the four parts of the following verbs: **mittō**, **cēdō**, **dūcō**.

(a) Form three compounds from each of the above verbs and give their principal parts.

2. Give the four parts of the following: **agō**, **capiō**, **veniō**, **faciō**, **pōnō**.

(a) Form one compound from each of the above verbs and give its principal parts.

3. Give in Latin the principal parts of the following verbs: *defend*, *flee*, *have*, *be*, *see*, *remain*, *teach*, *increase*, *frighten*, *learn*.

279. 1. Give in English the principal parts and a synopsis of *be* and *have* in the 1st plural.

2. Give a synopsis of **audiō** in the act. 3rd plur.; **capiō** in the pass. 1st plur.; **moveō** in the act. 2nd sing.; **agō** in the pass. 3rd sing.

280. Decline **quae nātūra**, **modus vester**, **quod rēgnum**, **signum parātum**, **dominus monitus**.

#### 281. Perception Device for Learning the Verb (*To the teacher*)

This device is intended to fix the general scheme of the Latin verb as represented in the first and second conjugations.

Select three pieces of white cardboard 10×6 in. and print upon each in large letters one of the three stems of some regular verb. Next cut four pieces of cardboard 4×6 in., upon each of which place one of the four tense signs (**bā**, **bi**,<sup>1</sup> **erā**, **eri**). Cut six cards of the same size for each of

---

<sup>1</sup> The future sign **-ē-** of the 3rd and 4th conjugations should be placed upon the reverse side. In like manner, the subjunctive signs may be placed later on the back of the other tense-sign cards, in order to save duplication.

the active personal endings; the reverse side should be used for the corresponding passive endings. Similar cards should be prepared for the first three tenses of **sum**, used in forming the perfect system in the passive. After the four parts of the given verb have been written upon the blackboard and the three stems plainly underscored, proceed to build verb forms in the various tenses by holding up before the class a set of cards, as follows:

|      |    |      |
|------|----|------|
| MOVĒ | BA | NTUR |
|------|----|------|

Modifications in the present and imperfect tenses of the third and fourth conjugations (and elsewhere), due to the "connecting" vowel, must be explained by the teacher, for they can not be illustrated conveniently.

Drill on verb forms must be incessant. Prompt recognition of tense voice, and mood can be secured by having the student *translate* promiscuous verb forms selected from a large group written on the blackboard, representing both voices and every tense.

## 282.

## Conversation : Counting

(The teacher assigns a number — "Ūnus," "Duo," "Trēs," etc. to each of ten pupils. The following questions and others like them should be answered by the pupil whose number furnishes the correct answer.)

**M.** Quot (*how many*) sunt duo et quattuor? **D.** "Sex."  
Duo et quattuor sunt sex.

**M.** Quot sunt quattuor et quīque? **D.** "Novem."  
Quattuor et quīque sunt novem.

Etc.

Etc.

**Note.**—A competitive game can be made by having two sets of ten (or less) and scoring one for the side whose representative answers first.

## 283.

## English Word Study

Find and use in sentences as many English derivatives as possible from **vocō**, **videō**, **mittō**, and **faciō**. Enter the derivatives in your notebook, using a separate page for each Latin word.

284. THE STORY OF LUCIUS (*Cont.*)

## Circus

Dē “lūdō” in quō magister docēbat lēgistis. Sed erat etiam “lūdus”<sup>1</sup> in quō ōtium agēbātur; nam puerī Rōmānī nōn semper labōrābant sed etiam lūdēbant. Dictum est: “Puerī puerī erunt.”

## “THE PARADE’S COMING”

Fēriae erant. Lūcius, amīcus noster parvus, ad lūdōs pūblicōs in Circō factōs ā servō ductus est. Multī ad Circum

conveniēbant; nam populus lūdōs amābat. Nōn paucī ante aurōram vēnerant. Lūcius et servus loca commoda invēnērunt et exspectāvērunt. Sed quid audiunt? “Pompa venit! Pompa venit!” Pompa per Forum et Sacram Viam ad Circum prōcesserat et nunc per portam in Circum prōcēdēbat. In pompā fuērunt

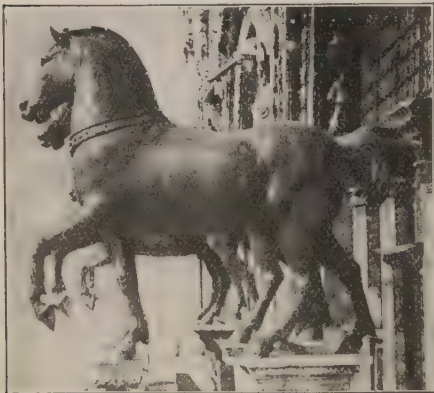


FIG. 51. Equī

These magnificent bronze horses, made in Roman times, now stand over the entrance to the church of St. Mark's, Venice. During the World War they were taken down and carefully protected against airplane raids.

deōrum fōrmāe, virī, puerī, equī, quadrigae,<sup>2</sup> aurigae.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> See Vocabulary.

<sup>2</sup> Quattuor equī quī carrum trahunt “quadrigae” appellantur.

<sup>3</sup> “Aurigae” sunt virī quī quadrigas agunt.

## THE CHARIOT RACE: "THEY'RE OFF!"

Pompa per Circum ducta est; Lūcius cum studiō expectāvit. Tum sex quadrīgae, ad portam redāctae, signum expectāvērunt. Signum datum est et equī ā portā missi sunt.

Inter aurīgās fuit Pūblius, quī magnam fāmam ob multās victōriās habuit. Erat amīcus familiae Lūcī nostrī, et Lūcius multa dē Circō ā Pūbliō cognōverat. Nunc Lūcius cum reliquīs Pūblium magnō studiō spectābat.

## PUBLIUS HANDICAPPED AT THE START

Sed Fortūna nōn bona fuit. Pūblius habuit ūnum equum quī erat novus et tardus; reliquae quadrīgae antecessērunt. Lūcius magnā cūrā ob malam fortūnam amīcī affectus est. Sed victōria nōn āmissa erat; nam septem spatia erant.

## TWO CHARIOTS OUT OF THE RACE

In mediō Circō erat longa spīna. Terminī spīnae "mētae" appellātī sunt. Magnum erat perīculum aurīgārū ad mētās. Itaque in primo spatiō nec primus nec secundus aurīga quadrīgās ā mētīs regere potuit. Ēiectī<sup>1</sup> per (*over*) terram equīs trāctī sunt et iniuriās accēpērunt. Servi virōs ad spīnam portāvērunt et auxilium dedērunt.

## PUBLIUS STILL LAST

Nunc erant quattuor quadrīgae. Sex spatia restābant, sed Pūblius antecēdere nōn poterat. Quīnque, quattuor spatia restābant. Pūblius ultimus erat. Duo spatia restābant; populus cōnsilium multum Pūbliō dabat sed nōn

---

<sup>1</sup> From ēiciō.





FIG. 52. MAGNUM ERAT PERICULUM AURIGARUM AD METAS



audiēbātur. Pūblius magnā cūrā equōs regēbat et etiam retinēbat, sed populus nōn cognōverat. Ūnum spatium restābat; Lūcius lacrimās retinēre nōn potuit. Fortūna inimīca erat.

“AND THE LAST SHALL BE FIRST!”

Sed quid vidēmus? Pūblius antecēdit! Nōn iam equōs retinet sed incitat. Ūnus equus, “Parātus” appellātus (nam semper parātus erat), integer fuit et properāre incipit. Nōn iam Pūblius erat ultimus; iam secundum locum tenet. Ūnus aurīga ante Pūblium restat. Aequi sunt — deī sunt boni! — prīmus ad mētā ultimam Pūblius venit et praemia victōriae accipit! Et Lūcius — quid faciēbat? “Iō! Iō! Pūblius! Parātus! Clāra victōria!” erant Lūci verba.



FIG. 53. PŪBLIUS ET PARĀTUS

From an ancient mosaic floor, made of bits of colored stone.

Nōnne magnum erat puerum Rōmānum esse? Sed etiam nunc in circō quadrigās vidēre potestis; nam circum pom-pamque ā Rōmānis accēpimus.

## LESSON XLIX

### THIRD DECLENSION: MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS

285.

#### Vocabulary

|  |                 |
|--|-----------------|
| <i>dux, du'cis, m., leader, general</i>                            | [ <i>dūcō</i> ] |
| <i>ho'mō, ho'minis, m., man, human being</i>                       | (homicide)      |
| <i>lēx, lē'gis, f., law</i>  | (legal)         |
| <i>mī'les, mī'litis, m., soldier</i>                               | (military)      |
| <i>pāx, pā'cis, f., peace</i>                                      | (pacifist)      |
| <i>pre'mō, -ere, pres'si, pres'sus, press, press hard, oppress</i> | (pressure)      |
| <i>sa'lūs, salū'tis, f., health, safety</i>                        | (salutary)      |

286.

#### Third Declension : Masculine and Feminine Nouns

The genitive singular of nouns of the **third declension** ends in **-is**; the base is obtained by dropping this ending. All three genders are found among nouns of the third declension, and no general rule can be given. The gender, as well as the nominative and genitive singular, must therefore be learned from the vocabulary.<sup>1</sup> Masculine and feminine nouns are declined alike, as follows :

| ENDINGS                        |       | miles, soldier (base, milit-) lēx, law (base, lēg-) |            |
|--------------------------------|-------|---|------------|
| SING.                          | PLUR. | SING.   | PLUR.      |
| <i>Nom.</i> — <sup>1</sup> -ēs |       | mī'les  | mī'litēs   |
| <i>Gen.</i> -is                | -um   | mī'litis  | mī'litum   |
| <i>Dat.</i> -ī                 | -ibus | mī'litī   | mī'litibus |
| <i>Acc.</i> -em                | -ēs   | mī'litem  | mī'litēs   |
| <i>Abl.</i> -e                 | -ibus | mī'lite   | mī'litibus |

a. Observe that the dative and ablative plural are alike; this is true of all declensions. The nominative and accusative plural also are alike in the third declension.

---

<sup>1</sup> The ending of the nominative singular varies. When not omitted, it is usually **-s** or **-x**.

287. Drill.—Decline *dux bonus, homō magnus, pāx aequa, salūs nostra*.

288.

### Exercises

*Oral.* 1. Hominem nunc exspectō cui quattuor librōs mandāvī. 2. Dux milītēs ēvocātōs ad pugnam per plāna loca prōdūxit. 3. Ob vigiliam praesidī, equī nōn removērī poterant. 4. Magna est glōria milītum quī bellō pressī nōn cessērunt sed firmō animō prō causā sacrā pugnāvērunt. 5. Salūs patriae nostrae in armīs milītum nostrōrum nōn iam pōnētur, quod pācem aequam effēcimus. 6. Bellō pācem et ōtium et salūtem obtinuimus. 7. Ibi potest valēre populus, ubi lēgēs valent.

*Written.* 1. Many books sent by boys and girls were received by the soldiers in the camps. 2. Why do you not approach (*ad*) the man? 3. "Safety first!" is a good motto. 4. The general ordered the soldiers to be called-together. 5. Why is he absent? He ought to set an example and be present.

289.

### Latin Phrases in English

*pāx in bellō, peace in (the midst of) war.*

*Dux fēmina factī, A woman (was) leader in (of) the deed.*

*novus homō, a new man (in politics); hence, an upstart.*

*lēs scripta, the written law.*

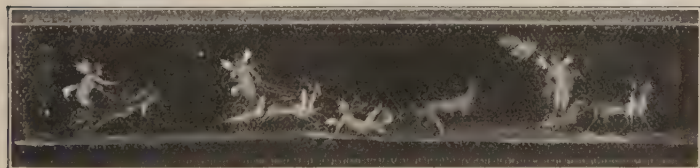


FIG. 54. CUPIDS IN A CHARIOT RACE

Deer are used instead of horses. The winner holds the prize, a palm branch. From a Pompeian wall painting (cf. Fig. 2).

## LESSON L

### ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

#### 290.

#### Vocabulary

|  |   |           |
|--|---|-----------|
| <b>pēs</b> , <b>pe'dis</b> , m., <i>foot</i> ;   | <b>pe'dibus</b> , <i>on foot, afoot</i> | (pedal)   |
| <b>expe'diō</b> , -ī're, -pedī'vī, -pedī'tus, (lit., <i>make the foot free</i> ),<br><i>set free</i> |   |           |
| <b>impedimen'tum</b> , -ī, n., <i>hindrance</i> ;  | plur., <i>baggage</i>                   |           |
| <b>impe'diō</b> , -ī're, -pedī'vī, -pedī'tus, (lit., <i>entangle the feet</i> ),<br><i>hinder</i>    |   |           |
| <b>rēx</b> , <b>rē'gis</b> , m., <i>king</i>   |   | (regal)   |
| <b>ver'tō</b> , -ere, <b>ver'ti</b> , <b>ver'sus</b> , <i>turn</i>                                   |   | (version) |

#### 291.

#### Latin and English Word Studies

Latin words should not be memorized individually but in groups — by *families*, so to speak. This is much easier, much more useful, and much more interesting. For example, there is the word **pēs**, the father of its family. From it are derived many other words in Latin and in English. **Im-**



FIG. 55. ROMAN SCISSORS

**pediō** means to *entangle the feet*. An “impediment” is a *tangle*, something in the way. Transportation is still a big problem with an army; it is no wonder that the Romans, without railroads or motor trucks, called the bag-

gage train of the army **impedimenta**. **Ex-pediō** means to get the *foot out* of the tangle; therefore in English an “expedient” is a means of solving a difficulty. To “expedite” matters is to hurry them along by removing obstacles in the way.

You have already become acquainted with several other “families” of words (173). Other words which should be grouped together are **regō**, **rēgnum**, and **rēx**; **dō** and **dōnō**; **dūcō** and **dux**; **ager** and **agricola**; **cōsulō** and **cōnsilium**.

## 292. Ablative Absolute: The Participle Used Independently with a Noun

(a) In English, we occasionally say, *This meeting with your approval, I shall act accordingly*. Inasmuch as such phrases are used loosely and have no direct connection with either the subject or the predicate of the sentence, they are said to be in the **nominative absolute**, i.e. they are *absolutely free* in a grammatical sense from the rest of the sentence.

In Latin, this loose construction is very common, with this difference: the *ablative* is used instead of the nominative. This independent use of the participial phrase is known as the **ablative absolute**. The perfect participle is most frequently used in this construction.<sup>1</sup> Translate the participle *literally* before attempting to expand it into a subordinate clause of *time, cause, condition*, etc. (see 276).

1. *Servō accūsātō* (lit., *the slave having been accused*) *dominus discessit*, *After accusing the slave, the master departed*.

2. *Litterīs nōn missīs* (lit., *a letter not having been sent*) *puer pecūniam nōn accēpit*, *Because he did not send a letter, the boy did not receive the money*.

3. *Oppidīs nostrīs captīs* (lit., *our towns captured*) *bellum gerēmus*, *If our towns are captured, we shall wage war*.

(b) In English, there is an active and a passive past participle: *having sent* (act.), *sent* or *having been sent* (pass.). In Latin, there is only a passive perfect participle. If, therefore, in English the active past participle is used with an object, the phrase must be recast so as to become passive in the same tense before it is translated into Latin:

|          |   |
|----------|---|
| English: | <i>having given the signal</i> (active)       |
|          | <i>the signal having been given</i> (passive) |
| Latin:   | <i>signō datō</i> .                           |

---

<sup>1</sup> Occasionally a noun, adjective, or present participle (to be studied later) is used.

**Caution.** — The ablative absolute can not be used when the noun or pronoun with which the participle agrees forms any part of the main sentence (subject or predicate). Compare the following sentence with those above (292, *a*) and note that the ablative absolute construction can not be used because the participle in this case must agree with the subject :

*Servus accūsātus territus est, The slave, having been accused, was terrified.*

**293. Rule.** — *A noun in the ablative case used with a participle, adjective, or other noun and having no grammatical connection with the subject or the predicate is called an ablative absolute.*

## 294.

## Exercises

*Oral.* 1. Dux Gallōrum, signō datō, cōpiās proelium committere iussit. 2. Captivī, trāctī ad pedēs rēgis, pācem petēbant. 3. Duce captō, nostrī pācem nōn petēbant. 4. Impedimentis in oppidō relictis, militēs salūtem fugā iam petiverant. 5. Hominēs, praedā armisque impeditī, properāre nōn poterant. 6. Rōmānī, castris mūnitīs, Gallōs in fugam vertērunt. 7. Castris positīs, Gallī auxilia exspectāvērunt. 8. Expedītī ex periculō Deō grātiam habēre dēbēmus.

*Written.* 1. Although called a friend, Marcus was my enemy. 2. By fortifying five towns the Gauls were able to hinder the king's soldiers. 3. Hindered by bad roads, we have not been able to come on foot. 4. After sending a messenger, the king came to the town with a few friends. 5. Though the signal had been given, the men did not advance. 6. If the town is captured, the Gauls will make peace or seek safety by flight.

## LESSON LI

### THIRD DECLENSION: NEUTER NOUNS

295.

#### Vocabulary

|  |               |
|--|---------------|
| ca'put, ca'pitis, n., <i>head</i>      | (capital)     |
| cor'pus, cor'poris, n., <i>body</i>    | (corporation) |
| flū'men, flū'minis, n., <i>river</i>   | (fluid)       |
| iūs, iū'ris, n., <i>right, justice</i> | (jury)        |
| nō'men, nō'minis, n., <i>name</i>      | (nominate)    |

296.

#### Third Declension : Neuter Nouns

| ENDINGS     |          |        | corpus, body (base, corpōr-) |             |
|-------------|----------|--------|------------------------------|-------------|
|             | SINGULAR | PLURAL | SINGULAR                     | PLURAL      |
| <i>Nom.</i> | —        | -a     | cor'pus                      | cor'pora    |
| <i>Gen.</i> | -is      | -um    | cor'poris                    | cor'porum   |
| <i>Dat.</i> | -ī       | -ibus  | cor'porī                     | corpo'ribus |
| <i>Acc.</i> | —        | -a     | cor'pus                      | cor'pora    |
| <i>Abl.</i> | -e       | -ibus  | cor'pore                     | corpo'ribus |

Observe that the nominative and accusative singular of neuter nouns are alike, and that the nominative and accusative plural both end in -a.

297. Drill. — Decline *nōmen clārum, homō bonus, flūmen longum*.

298.

#### Exercises

*Oral.* 1. Dominō vīsō, servus malus fūgit. 2. Ob impedimenta multōs militēs ad flūmen reliquimus. 3. Corporibus nostrīs patriam dēfendēmus. 4. Litterae quās filia mea scripsit nec caput nec pedem habent. 5. Iūs et lēgēs bonōs hominēs nōn impediunt sed malōs terrent.



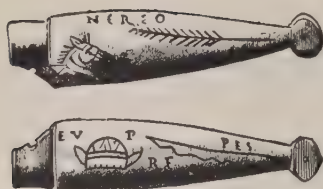


FIG. 56. HANDLE OF A POCKET KNIFE

On one side is the name of a race horse; on the other, that of a driver.

have large bodies but small heads. 4. The body of a man was found in the river by soldiers.

6. Quae nōmina flūminum Galliae cognōvistis? 7. Iūra liberōrum populōrum America semper dēfendet. 8. Germānī, pressī ā multīs Gallīs, fugient.

*Written.* 1. The river which you see is deep. 2. The men were deeply-moved by the distinguished leader's words. 3. Horses

## 299. English Word Studies

Many English words preserve the original Latin forms of the third declension, either in the singular or in the singular and plural. Examples of the masculine and feminine types are :

| SINGULAR | PLURAL                   | SINGULAR | PLURAL                          |
|----------|--------------------------|----------|---------------------------------|
| apex     | apexes or apices         | index    | indexes or indices <sup>1</sup> |
| appendix | appendixes or appendices | vertex   | vertexes or vertices            |
| calyx    | calyxes or calyces       |          |                                 |

Nouns with their plurals in **-s** are **consul**, **ratio**, and a large number of nouns in **-or** : **actor**, **doctor**, **factor**, **labor**, **victor**, etc.

Examples of neuter nouns are :

| SINGULAR | PLURAL                          | PLURAL                  |
|----------|---------------------------------|-------------------------|
| genus    | genera                          | viscera (singular rare) |
| stamen   | stamina or stamens <sup>1</sup> |                         |

Nouns with plurals in **-s** are : **omen**, **specimen**, etc.

The genitive case is preserved in **jurisdiction**, **jurisprudence**, **legislator**.

<sup>1</sup> With difference of meaning.

## LESSON LII

### SUMMARY OF ABLATIVE USES

300.

#### Vocabulary

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| auc'tor, auctō'ris, m., <i>maker, author</i>   | (authorize)  |
| clau'dō, -ere, clau'sī, clau'sus, <i>close</i> | (clause)     |
| ōr'dō, ōr'dinis, m., <i>order, rank</i>        | (ordinary)   |
| tem'pus, tem'poris, n., <i>time</i>            | (temporal)   |
| vul'nus, vul'neris, n., <i>wound</i>           | (vulnerable) |

301.

#### Latin Phrases in English

Tempus fugit, *Time flies.*

per capita, *by heads or individuals.*

prō tem. (prō tempore), *for the time, temporarily.*

Fāta viam invenient, *The Fates will find a way.*

dē jūre, *according to right, as a dē jūre government; cf. dē factō*  
(267).

302.

#### Summary of Ablative Uses

The uses of the ablative may be grouped under three heads:

I. The **true** or "**from**" **ablative** (**ab**, *from*, and **lātus**, *carried*), used with the prepositions **ab**, **dē**, or **ex** — if any preposition is used. The ablative of agent (with **ab**) belongs here.

II. The **associative** or "**with**" **ablative**, used with the preposition **cum** — if any preposition is used. The ablatives of means, accompaniment, and manner belong here.

III. The **place** or "**in**" **ablative**, used with the prepositions **in** or **sub** — if any preposition is used.

Every ablative construction may be put into one of these groups. Sometimes the use is literal, as, *I am going with you.* Sometimes it is figurative, as, *I shall buy a book with the money.*

## 303.

## Exercises

*Oral.* 1. Auctōris nōmen fāmam oppidī augēbit in quō habitat. 2. Studiō et diligentīā primum locum obtinēbis. 3. Nōn iam impeditī vulneribus properāre poterimus. 4. Pāce factā ōrdō in Eurōpā nōn reductus est. 5. Ob tempus annī frūmentum trānsportāre nōn poterāmus. 6. Rēx, victoriā Gallōrum territus, cōpiās trāns flūmen trādūxit. 7. Librō etiam clausō, auctōris verba memoriā tenēre possum.

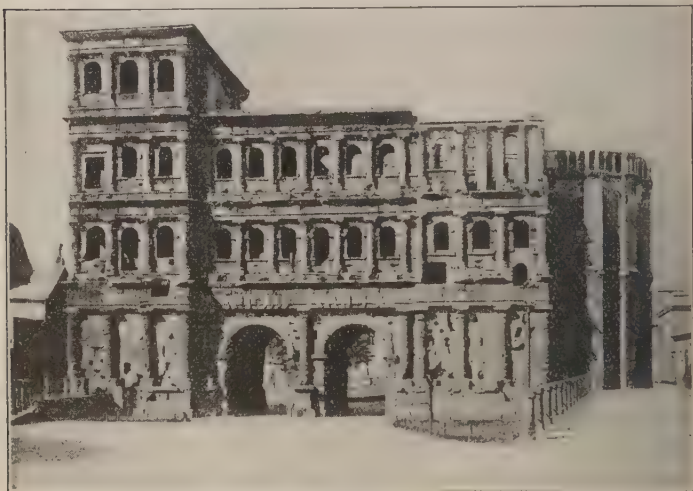


FIG. 57. PORTA NIGRA IN TRIER, GERMANY

This magnificent "black gate" was built by the Romans.

*Written.* 1. I know the author whose books you have read. 2. (There) were many wounds on the sailor's body. 3. The boys, having been warned by the teacher, will depart one at a time in order. 4. Since the river is closed, grain can no longer be transported. 5. The author had earned fame by (his) many books.

## LESSON LIII

### THIRD DECLENSION: I-STEM NOUNS (Genitive Plural in *-ium*) OF ALL GENDERS

304.

#### Vocabulary

|   |           |
|---|-----------|
| * <i>cī'vis, cī'vis</i> , <sup>1</sup> m., <i>citizen</i>                 | (civic)   |
| * <i>hos'tis, hos'tis</i> , m., <i>enemy</i> , <sup>2</sup> usually plur. | (hostile) |
| * <i>ma're, ma'ris</i> , n., <i>sea</i>                                   | (marine)  |
| * <i>mōns, mon'tis</i> , m., <i>mountain</i>                              | (mount)   |
| * <i>nā'vis, nā'vis</i> , <sup>3</sup> f., <i>ship</i>                    | (navy)    |



FIG. 58. NĀVĒS IN MARĪ SUNT  
(From "Julius Caesar.")

<sup>1</sup> Nouns marked with an asterisk (\*) are *i*-stem nouns.

<sup>2</sup> *National enemy*, differing from *inimīcus*, *personal enemy*.

<sup>3</sup> The ablative singular ends in *-ī*.

### 305. Third Declension : I-stem Nouns

The important group of nouns which have **-ium** instead of **-um** in the genitive plural are called **i-stem nouns**. In addition, neuters ending in **-e**, **-al**, and **-ar** have **-ī** instead of **-e** in the ablative singular, and **-ia** in the nominative and accusative plural. The classes of i-stem nouns are:

#### I. *Masculines and Feminines*

1. Nouns ending in **-is** having no more syllables in the genitive than in the nominative: **cīvis**.
2. Nouns of one syllable whose base ends in two consonants: **pars** (gen. **part-is**), **nox** (gen. **noct-is**).

#### II. *Neuters*

3. Nouns ending in **-e**, **-al**, **-ar**: **mare**, **animal**, **calcar**.

| cīvis, citizen (base, cīv-) |        |                     | mare, sea (base, mar-) |          |
|-----------------------------|--------|---------------------|------------------------|----------|
| Nom.                        | cī'vis | cī'vēs              | ma're                  | ma'ria   |
| Gen.                        | cī'vis | cī'vium             | ma'ris                 | ma'rium  |
| Dat.                        | cī'vī  | cī'vibus            | ma'rī                  | ma'ribus |
| Acc.                        | cī'vem | cī'vēs <sup>1</sup> | ma're                  | ma'ria   |
| Abl.                        | cī've  | cī'vibus            | ma'rī                  | ma'ribus |

**306. Drill.** — Decline **nāvis bona**, **mōns altus**, **mare pulchrum**.

### 307. Exercises

*Oral.* 1. Parvā nāvī colōnī trāns mare ad Americam migrāvērunt. 2. Ob numerum hostium quī in montibus erant Gallī in castrīs remānsērunt. 3. Bonī cīvēs officia pūblica suscipere dēbent. 4. Altōs montēs et flūmina alta in Eurōpā vidī. 5. Multōs librōs, scrīptōs ā clārīs auctōribus, liberī legunt. 6. Nāvibus hostium captīs, trāns mare frūmentum trānsportāre ad Sociōs nostrōs poterāmus. 7. Lūcius cīvēs frūmentum comparāre iussit.

<sup>1</sup> Occasionally **-is** is preferred to **-ēs** in the accusative plural of nouns of this type.

*Written.* 1. I saw a large number of ships on the sea. 2. If <sup>1</sup> the sea is closed, the enemy's ships will not be able to transport reinforcements. 3. I have ordered the citizens to close the gates of the town. 4. The enemy were seen on the mountain by our men.

### 308. English Word Studies

Many Latin *i*-stem nouns ending in *-is* are preserved in their original form in English. The original plural in *-es* is pronounced like "ease":

|       |       |
|-------|-------|
| axis  | axes  |
| basis | bases |
| finis | _____ |

Distinguish *axes* from *axes* (plural of *ax*), *bases* from *bases* (plural of *base*). *Finis* has no plural in English.

Neuter *i*-stems in English (with plurals in *-s*) are *animal*, *exemplar*, *tribunal*.

### 309. ROMULUS AND REMUS

Silvius Proca, rēx Albānōrum, Numitōrem et Amūlium filiōs habuit. Numitōrī rēgnum reliquit, sed Amūlius, pulsō <sup>2</sup> Numitōre, rēxit. Rhēa Silvia, filia Numitōris, geminōs (*twin*) filiōs, Rōmulum et Remum, habuit. Amūlius puerōs in Tiberī flūmine pōnī iussit. Sed aqua geminōs in siccō (*on dry ground*) reliquit. Lupa accessit et puerōs aluit. Postea (*afterwards*) Faustulus, pāstor rēgis, puerōs invēnit et ēducāvit. Post multōs annōs Rōmulō et Remō dixit: "Numitor est avus vester." Adductī pāstoris verbīs, geminī Amūlium interfēcērunt et Numitōrī avō rēgnum dedērunt. Postea oppidum mūnīvērunt in locō in quō ēducātī erant, quod dē nōmine Rōmulī Rōmam appellāvērunt.

<sup>1</sup> Use abl. abs.

<sup>2</sup> From pellō.





© International

FIG. 59. ROME FROM AN AIRPLANE

The Colosseum (Fig. 41) in the foreground; beyond it the Forum (Figs. 32, 34, 36).



## LESSON LIV

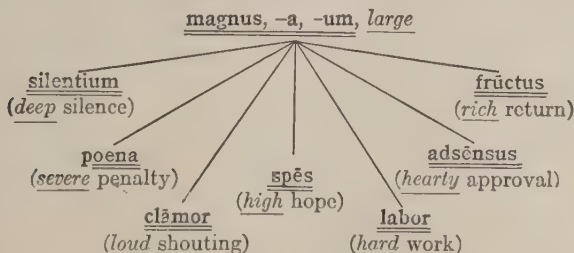
### CHOICE OF WORDS

#### 310. Vocabulary

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| * <i>fi'nis, fi'nis, m., end, limit; plur., borders, territory</i>              | (final)     |
| <i>i'ter, iti'neris, n., journey, road, march</i>                               | (itinerary) |
| <i>post</i> , prep. with acc., <i>behind</i> (of place); <i>after</i> (of time) |             |
| <i>post'eā</i> , adv., <i>afterwards</i>  |             |
| <i>ten'dō, -ere, tetē'dī, ten'tus</i> , <i>stretch</i>                          | (tendon)    |

#### 311. The Right Word in the Right Place

We have observed from a study of *agō* (229) that a Latin word may have many shades of meaning, which are suggested by the context. In translating, therefore, do not confine yourself to the "vocabulary" meaning of the word but select the particular meaning demanded by English usage. Observe the varying translation of *magnus, -a, -um* when used with the following nouns:



**Exercise.** — (a) Combine *magnus, -a, -um* with each of the following nouns already studied and translate freely and naturally: *periculum, studium, cōpiae, pretium*.

(b) How does *altus, -a, -um* differ when applied to rivers and mountains?

(c) Translate *puella pulchra* and *homō pulcher*.

### 312. Gender of Third Declension Nouns

1. Nouns ending in **-or** are almost all masculine : **auctor, labor.**
2. Nouns ending in **-dō** and **-gō** are feminine : **magnitūdō, imāgō.**
3. Nouns ending in **-tās** and **-tūs** are feminine : **cīvitās, virtūs.**

### 313. Exercises

*Oral.* 1. Flūmina Italiae ex montibus ad mare tendunt.  
 2. Aut viam inveniam aut faciam. 3. Post castra nostra erat mōns altus, in quō paucī militēs hostium vidēbantur.  
 4. Poteruntne hostēs, montibus occupātis, posteā iter facere per finēs nostrōs? 5. Nōne grātum erat vidēre militēs nostrōs post finem bellī? 6. Dēbēmusne, pāce factā, numerum nostrōrum militum et nāvium augēre?

*Written.* 1. The enemy were afterwards put to flight by the Romans. 2. After a long journey my friend is approaching (**ad**) the end of life. 3. Our soldiers were not frightened by the dangers of the journey. 4. The road stretches through the mountains to the territory of the Gauls.

### 314. English Word Studies

*a.* The suffix **-tās** is usually found in nouns formed from adjectives and indicates condition. Its English form is **-ty**, which is to be carefully distinguished from **-y** (201).

What must be the Latin words from which are derived *commodity, integrity, liberty, publicity, timidity, variety*? Note that the letter preceding the ending is usually **i**.

#### *b.* Latin Phrases in English

**ad fin.** (**ad finem**), *near the end* (of the page).

**P.S.** (**post scriptum**), *written after* (at the end of a letter).

## LESSON LV

### THIRD DECLENSION : ADJECTIVES

#### 315.

#### Vocabulary

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| cī'vitās, cīvītā'tis, f., citizenship, state | [cīvis]      |
| fa'cilis, fa'cile, (lit., "do-able"), easy   | [faciō]      |
| for'tis, for'te, strong, brave               | (fort)       |
| liber'tās, libertā'tis, f., freedom          | [liber]      |
| om'nis, om'ne, all, every                    | (omniscient) |
| pār, gen., pa'ris, equal (with dat.)         | (parity)     |

#### 316.

#### Adjectives of the Third Declension

The adjectives thus far studied, such as **magnus**, **-a**, **-um** and **sacer**, **-cra**, **-crum**, have been declined like nouns of the first and second declensions. Many adjectives, however, are declined like **i**-stem nouns and are therefore called **adjectives of the third declension**. With the exception of one important class, which will be studied later, practically all adjectives of the third declension are **i**-stems. They are divided into classes according to the number of forms which are used in the nominative singular to denote gender, as follows:

1. **Two endings**<sup>1</sup> — masculine and feminine in **-is**, neuter in **-e**: **fortis**, **forte**.
2. **One ending** — one form for all genders: **pār**.

Adjectives of the third declension have **-ī** in the ablative singular, **-ium** in the genitive plural, and **-ia** in the neuter nominative and accusative plural. Note particularly that the ablative singular, unlike that of most **i**-stem nouns, ends in **-ī**.

---

<sup>1</sup> A few adjectives in **-er** have *three endings* in the nominative singular, one for each gender: **celer**, **celeris**, **celere**.

|             | M. AND F.            | N.        |  | M. AND F.           | N.       |
|-------------|----------------------|-----------|--|---------------------|----------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | for'tis              | for'te    |  | pār                 | pār      |
| <i>Gen.</i> | for'tis              | for'tis   |  | pa'ris              | pa'ris   |
| <i>Dat.</i> | for'tī               | for'tī    |  | pa'rī               | pa'rī    |
| <i>Acc.</i> | for'tem              | for'te    |  | pa'rem              | pār      |
| <i>Abl.</i> | for'tī               | for'tī    |  | pa'rī               | pa'rī    |
| <i>Nom.</i> | for'tēs              | for'tia   |  | pa'rēs              | pa'ria   |
| <i>Gen.</i> | for'tium             | for'tium  |  | pa'rium             | pa'rium  |
| <i>Dat.</i> | for'tibus            | for'tibus |  | pa'ribus            | pa'ribus |
| <i>Acc.</i> | for'tēs <sup>1</sup> | for'tia   |  | pa'rēs <sup>1</sup> | pa'ria   |
| <i>Abl.</i> | for'tibus            | for'tibus |  | pa'ribus            | pa'ribus |

**317. Drill.** — Decline *civitas pār, puer fortis, iter facile, oppidum omne*.

### 318.

### Exercises

*Oral.* 1. Vir fortibus factis civitatem obtinuit. 2. Post bellum libertas omnibus captivis data est. 3. Novistine nomen hominis quem in navi vidimus? 4. Terminus agrorum nostrorum est via longa et pulchra. 5. In nostra patria omnes cives sunt liberi et pares. 6. Facili itinere invento, dux fortis omnes copias de montibus ducere maturavit.

*Written.* 1. All free men love liberty and peace. 2. Nature has given men many beautiful (things). 3. We shall defend the freedom of our country on the sea. 4. We ought not to undertake a long journey now, because the time of the year is not suitable. 5. After pitching camp, the Romans led-forth fresh troops to battle.

<sup>1</sup> Occasionally -is is preferred to -es (305, footnote 1).

## 319.

## English Word Studies

A number of English nouns and adjectives preserve the nominative singular and a few, the nominative plural of Latin adjectives of the third declension : **par**, **pauper**, **simplex**, **duplex**, etc.; **September**, etc.; **amanuensis**. Neuter forms occur in **simile**, **facsimile**, **insignia** (singular rare), **regalia**

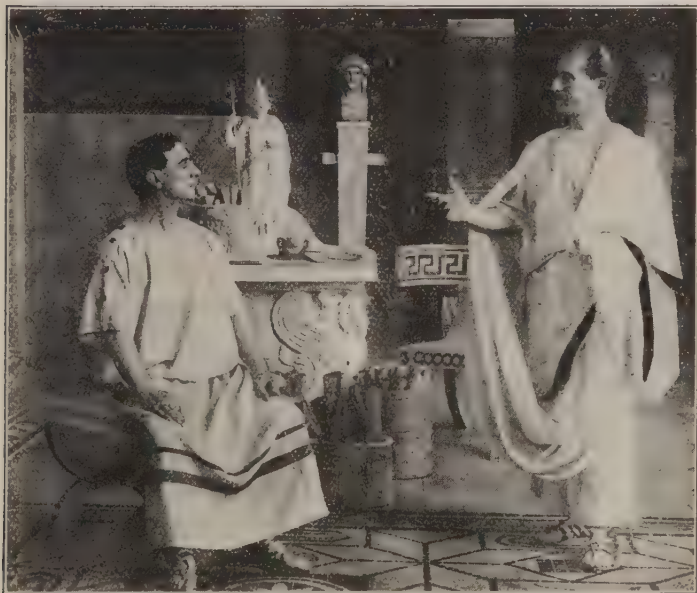


FIG. 60. A ROMAN HOUSE

Note the chairs, table, boxes of manuscript rolls (*librī*), and statuary.  
(From "Julius Caesar.")

(singular rare), **forte** (singular only). The dative plural is preserved in **omnibus** (a vehicle *for all*) and the ablative singular in **velocipede** (a vehicle *with swift foot*). Note that this word shows that in the third declension most *adjectives* have **-ī** in the ablative, while most *nouns* have **-e**.

## LESSON LVI

### ABLATIVE OF RESPECT

320.

#### Vocabulary

|  |                        |
|--|------------------------|
| auctō'ritās, auctōritā'tis, f., <i>authority, influence</i>            | [ <i>auctor</i> ]      |
| ce'ler, ce'leris, ce'lere, <i>swift</i>                                | ( <i>celerity</i> )    |
| cele'ritās, celeritā'tis, f., <i>swiftness</i>                         |                        |
| cōnfr'mō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, <i>make firm, encourage, establish</i> | [ <i>firmus</i> ]      |
| pel'lō, -ere, pe'pulī, pul'sus, <i>drive, defeat</i>                   | ( <i>repulsive</i> )   |
| su'perō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, <i>overcome, excel</i>                  | ( <i>insuperable</i> ) |

321.

#### Latin Phrases in English

Dominus prōvidēbit, *The Lord will provide.*

ex tempore, *without preparation* (lit., *according to the time*).

in omnia parātus, *prepared for all things.*

Fortēs Fortūna adiuvat, *Fortune aids the brave.*

Arma nōn servant modum, *Arms (war) do not preserve restraint.*

Vānitās vānitātum et omnia vānitās, *Vanity of vanities, and all (is) vanity* (from the Vulgate, or Latin translation of the Bible, *Ecclesiastes*, i, 2).

322.

#### Ablative of Respect

1. Equī et hominēs nōn sunt parēs celeritāte, *Horses and men are not equal in swiftness.*

2. Puer erat vir factis, *The boy was a man in deeds.*

3. Superāmur numerō, nōn animō, *We are surpassed in number, not in courage.*

Observe the following points:

(a) The ablative limits the application respectively of an adjective, a noun, and a verb.

(b) No preposition is used in Latin, though in English we use the preposition *in*.

323. Rule. — *The ablative of respect (or specification) tells in what respect something is true.*

324.

Exercises

*Oral.* 1. Puer erat celer pede sed studiis ab omnibus superābātur. 2. Militēs nostrī cum magnā celeritāte ad flūmen prōcessērunt. 3. Homō erat magnus auctōritāte. 4. Erāmus parēs hostibus neque militibus neque nāvibus. 5. Omnēs hostēs ē nostrīs finibus pellēmus. 6. Pāx et amīcitia cum finitimīs cīvitātibus ā Rōmānīs cōfirmātae sunt. 7. Colōnī ex patriā migrant et in variīs terrīs cīvitātem petunt.

*Written.* 1. We can not all be swift of foot. 2. He was king in name, but he had not the authority of a king. 3. Does a horse excel a boy in swiftness? 4. Inasmuch as we have been carefully taught, we ought to remember new words. 5. (Now that) peace has been established,<sup>1</sup> free citizens will maintain the freedom of the state.



FIG. 61. FORUM OF TRAJAN, ROME, AS IT WAS

<sup>1</sup> See 292.



## LESSON LVII

### REVIEW

#### 325. Review of the Third Declension

(1) Decline **dux fortis, libertās nostra, omnis miles, rēx magnus, nāvis pulchra.**

(2) Give the following in Latin :

- (a) *small authority* in the nom., sing. and plur.
- (b) *an easy journey* in the gen., sing. and plur.
- (c) *a good citizen* in the dat., sing. and plur.
- (d) *a brave enemy* in the acc., sing. and plur.
- (e) *the deep sea* in the abl., sing. and plur.

(3) Review the **classes of i-stem nouns**, with one example of each, giving (a) genitive singular, (b) ablative singular, (c) genitive plural, (d) accusative plural.

#### 326. Review of Verbs

Give the synopsis of **impediō**, 3rd plur., act. ; **premō**, 1st plur., pass. ; **superō**, 3rd sing., act. ; **videō**, 2nd plur., pass. ; **fugiō**, 2nd sing., act.

#### 327. How to Learn Words

**Repetition** is the first law of memory, or, as the Romans said, **Repetitiō est māter studiōrum**. New words must be repeated often enough to fix them in your mind for future use. You will find the following device helpful :

After studying the new vocabulary, noting carefully the genitive singular and gender of every noun, the principal parts of each verb, etc., close the book and write on a narrow slip of paper the English meanings (not the Latin) of as many of the Latin words as you can recall. Then open your book and check up your list, filling in any blanks. Close the book again and, on the other side of the slip, write the full Latin form of each English word, and afterwards check mistakes by referring to the book. Close the book once more.

With the slip in your hand, give the English meanings from the Latin list. After mastering the Latin words so that you do not need to turn the slip for the meaning of a single word, take the English side and proceed in the same way until you can give the Latin for every English word, without turning the paper. Another way is to write a Latin word on one side of a slip of paper or a small card and the English meaning on the other side.

**Association** is the second law of memory. In order to make use of this important principle in mastering new words, try at once to give an English derivative for every new Latin word.<sup>1</sup> Whenever possible, recall the *primitive* or simple word from which the new word has been formed; e.g. *amīcus*, *inimīcus*, *amīcitia* — all from *amō*, *I love*.

### 328.

#### Vocabulary Review

(a) Give the nominative, genitive, gender, and meaning of the Latin noun suggested by each of the following: *civil*, *finish*, *submarine*, *navigate*, *author*, *corpulent*, *legislate*, *nominal*, *decapitate*.

(b) Give the principal parts and meaning of the Latin verb suggested by each of the following: *expedite*, *press*, *verse*, *attention*, *repellent*.

(c) Give the nominative forms and meaning of the Latin adjective suggested by each of the following: *omnipresent*, *celerity*, *facilitate*, *disparity*, *fortitude*.

### 329.

#### English Word Studies

Find and use in sentences as many English derivatives as possible from *parō*, *teneō*, *agō*, and *scribō*.

Enter the derivatives in your notebook, using a separate page for each Latin word.

---

<sup>1</sup> Classes using the *vocabulary notebook* method will find nothing new in this suggestion.

330. THE STORY OF LUCIUS (*Cont.*)

## Deī

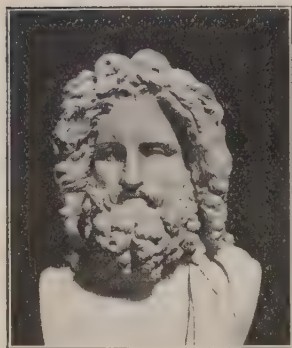


FIG. 62. IUPPITER

Rōmānī multōs deōs habuērunt. Deōs in omnibus locis vīdērunt — in terrā, in agrīs, in frūmentō, in montibus, in silvīs, in undīs maris, in aquā flūminum, in omnī nātūrā. Erant magnī deī et parvī deī, deī deaeque. Inter magnōs deōs prīmus erat Iuppiter, rēx deōrum hominumque, quī in caelō habitābat et fulmine malōs terrēbat. Iūnō erat uxor Iovis<sup>1</sup> et rēgīna deōrum. Venus erat pulchra dea amōris.

Mārs, deus bellī, arma pugnāsque amābat. Mercurius erat celer nūntius deōrum. Neptūnus erat deus maris, quī equōs in undīs regēbat. Reliquī magnī deī erant Cerēs, dea frūmentī, Minerva, dea sapientiae, Diāna, dea silvārum, Vulcānus, deus ignis, Apollō, deus ōrāculōrum, Bacchus, deus vīnī.

## STRANGE GODS

Lūcius noster nōmina omnium magnōrum et multōrum parvōrum deōrum cognōverat — quod nōn facile erat; nam magnus erat numerus deōrum deārumque. Etiam “terminus agrōrum” deus erat. Concordiam, Victōriam, Salūtem, Pācem, For-



FIG. 63. VENUS

<sup>1</sup> Gen. sing. of *Iuppiter*.

tūnam Rōmānī deās vocāvērunt, quod sacrae erant et ā Rōmānīs amābantur. Etiam pecūnia ā Rōmānīs amābātur, sed tamen (ut scrībīt auctor Rōmānus, Iuvenālis) nōn dea fuit neque in templō habitāvit.

### GODS OF THE HOME

Erant etiam deī familiae, primī quōs Lūcius cognōverat. Lār erat deus quī familiam cōservābat. Penātēs erant deī quī cibum servābant. Vesta erat dea focī, in quō cibus parābātur. Ad focum erant parvae fōrmae deōrum. Ibi, omnibus liberīs convocātis, pater Lūcī deīs grātiās agēbat et cibum dōnābat. Quondam nōn multus cibus erat, sed tamen pater deīs dōnābat. Lūcius ā patre petit: "Cūr cibus deīs datur? Nōn multum habēmus." Pater respondit: "Cibō datō, deī hominibus magna praemia et longam vītā dabunt."



FIG. 64. AN ALTAR

Relief depicts the sacrifice of an ox (cf. Fig. 66).

## LESSON LVIII

### THE DEMONSTRATIVES *HIC* AND *ILLE*

**ELEMENTARY GRAMMAR:** Review *Demonstrative pronouns and adjectives*, 615, d.

#### 331. Vocabulary

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| <b>cur'rō</b> , -ere, cucur'rī, cur'sus, <i>run</i>     | (current)   |
| <b>mā'ter</b> , mā'tris, f., <i>mother</i>              | (maternal)  |
| <b>pa'ter</b> , pa'tris, m., <i>father</i>              | (paternal)  |
| <b>prae'ceps</b> , praeci'pitis, <i>headlong, steep</i> | (precipice) |

#### 332. English Word Study: Importance of the Third Declension

The third declension is very important in Latin on account of the number of words which belong to it. Hence more English words are derived from nouns and adjectives of this declension than from any other declension. The English word is usually derived from the base, and not from the nominative. It is therefore doubly important to memorize the genitive, from which the base is obtained. It would be difficult to see that *itinerary* is derived from *iter* if one did not know that the genitive is *itineris*. Examine the words of the third declension studied thus far, and see how many have derivatives from the base. Note the help given for English spelling: *temporal*, *corporeal*, *military*, *maritime*, *nominal*, etc.

On the other hand, the English derivative will help you determine the genitive. In the following list of words, a derivative is placed after each; give the genitive: **religiō** (*religion*), **sermō** (*sermon*), **latus** (*lateral*), **rādix** (*radical*), **orīgō** (*original*), **ēruptiō** (*eruption*), **cūstōs** (*custody*), **dēns** (*dental*), **mōs** (*moral*).

333. The Demonstratives *Hic* and *Ille*

In English, *this* and *that* are used to point out persons or objects and are therefore called **demonstratives**. They may be used as adjectives or pronouns; as, *This man did not write that*.

In Latin, **hic** means *this* (*near* the speaker in place or thought), while **ille** means *that* (*more distant* from the speaker). From such expressions as *this man*, *that woman*, etc., the demonstrative adjectives **hic** and **ille** came to be used as substitutes for a third person pronoun *he*, *she*, *it*. The personal pronoun, however, is usually not required in Latin.

| hic, this |        |        |        |        |        |        |
|-----------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| SINGULAR  |        |        |        | PLURAL |        |        |
| Nom.      | hic    | haec   | hoc    | hī     | hae    | haec   |
| Gen.      | hu'ius | hu'ius | hu'ius | hō'rum | hā'rum | hō'rum |
| Dat.      | huic   | huic   | huic   | hīs    | hīs    | hīs    |
| Acc.      | hunc   | hanc   | hoc    | hōs    | hās    | haec   |
| Abl.      | hōc    | hāc    | hōc    | hīs    | hīs    | hīs    |

| ille, that |         |         |         |          |          |          |
|------------|---------|---------|---------|----------|----------|----------|
| SINGULAR   |         |         |         | PLURAL   |          |          |
| Nom.       | il'le   | il'la   | il'lud  | il'li    | il'lae   | il'la    |
| Gen.       | illi'us | illi'us | illi'us | illō'rum | illā'rum | illō'rum |
| Dat.       | il'li   | il'li   | il'li   | il'lis   | il'lis   | il'lis   |
| Acc.       | il'lum  | il'lam  | il'lud  | il'lōs   | il'lās   | il'la    |
| Abl.       | il'lō   | il'lā   | il'lō   | il'lis   | il'lis   | il'lis   |

Observe that both **hic** and **ille** in the plural are declined regularly, like **bonus**, **-a**, **-um**, with the exception of the nominative and accusative plural neuter of **hic** (**haec**). Note that **hic** and **ille** resemble **quī** in the genitive singular.



## 334.

## Position of Demonstratives

Demonstrative adjectives regularly precede their nouns in Latin and English: *this boy, hic puer*; *that girl, illa puella*. Therefore, when *that* precedes its noun, it is a demonstrative adjective (*ille*); when it follows, it is a relative pronoun (*quī*), equivalent to *who* or *which*: *The man that I saw was famous, Vir quem (not illum) vīdī clārus erat*.

## 335.

## Exercises



FIG. 65. MERCURIUS

As messenger of the gods Mercury sometimes became weary in spite of his winged feet.

*Oral.* 1. Haec est mea patria; nam cīvis Americānus sum. 2. Hī hominēs sunt patris meī amīcī; illī sunt inimīcī. 3. Hunc cognōvī sed illum ante hoc tempus nōn vīdī. 4. Ille erat dux ducum. 5. Praeceptum illum virum cucurrī, quod illum nōn vīdī. 6. Māter mea huic hominī magnam grātiā habet, quod hic patrem meum ex undīs servāvit.

*Written.* 1. I am expecting my father and my mother. 2. This is my money; that is yours. 3. This boy excels that (one) in (his) studies. 4. This road is steep; that is easy. 5. Our soldiers defeated the enemy's forces by capturing that town.



## LESSON LIX

### ABLATIVE OF TIME WHEN

336.

#### Vocabulary

aes'tās, aestā'tis, f., *summer*

cor, cor'dis, n., *heart*

(cordial)

hi'ems, hi'emis, f., *winter*

ni'hil (indeclinable), *nothing*

(nihilist)

ti'meō, -ē're, ti'muī, —, *fear, be afraid*

(timid)

337.

#### Latin Phrases in English

**Alma Māter**, *fostering mother*, applied to an educational institution.

**A.D. (annō Domini)**, *in the year of our Lord*.

**aut Caesar aut nihil**, *either Caesar or nothing*.

**iūstitia omnibus**, *justice for all* (motto of the District of Columbia).

**Pater Noster**, *Our Father*, i.e. the Lord's Prayer, which begins with these words.

**primus inter parēs**, *first among his equals*.

**Stābat Māter**, *The mother was standing* — a 13th century Latin hymn which begins with these words.

338.

#### Ablative of Time When

In English, adverbial phrases with or without the prepositions *in*, *on*, etc. are used to express time: *last summer*, *in winter*.

In Latin, time when is expressed by the ablative *without a preposition*.

1. **Illō annō hostēs nōn timuimus**, *That year we did not fear the enemy*.

2. **Aestāte agrī sunt pulchrī**, *In summer the fields are beautiful*.

**Note.** — Compare with the ablative of place where (75, a). Observe that when *at*, *in*, or *on* denotes *time* instead of *place*, no preposition is used in Latin.

## 339.

## Exercises

*Oral.* 1. Prō Deō et patriā! Haec clāra verba corda virōrum semper incitāvērunt. 2. Hōc annō nihil timēmus, quod cōpiam frūmentī habēmus. 3. Cūr cīvitas huic cīvī pecūniam dedit? Quod patriam annō Belli Magnī servāvit. 4. Oppidō occupātō, militēs nostrī, paucī numerō sed corde fortēs, auxilia expectābant. 5. Hic puer et aestāte et hieme labōrat, quod pater māterque pecūniam nōn habent. 6. Omnēs servī, libertāte obtentā, ad flūmen cum magnā celeritāte fūgērunt.

*Written.* 1. Good citizens fear God and love (their) country. 2. If<sup>1</sup> Marcus is our leader, we shall not be defeated by the enemy this winter. 3. In summer the fields are beautiful. 4. In a few years America will have many ships on every sea.

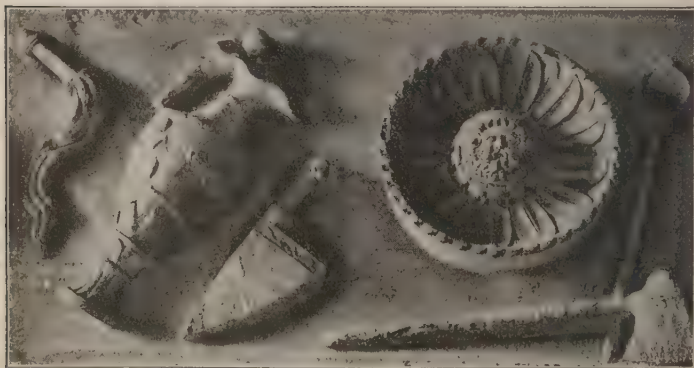


FIG. 66. SACRIFICIAL UTENSILS

Torch, pitcher, knife, saucer, ladle, ax (cf. Fig. 64).

<sup>1</sup> Use abl. abs.

## LESSON LX

### THE DEMONSTRATIVE *IS*

340.

#### Vocabulary

|  |               |
|--|---------------|
| <b>commū'nis</b> , -e, <i>common</i>   | (communistic) |
| <b>dum</b> , conj., <i>while</i>   |               |
| <b>incer'tus</b> , -a, -um, <i>uncertain</i>   | [cernō]       |
| * <b>pars</b> , par'tis, f., <i>part</i>   | (partition)   |
| <b>remit'tō</b> , -ere, remī'sī, remis'sus, (lit., <i>let back</i> ), <i>relax</i> ,<br><i>send back</i> | [mittō]       |
| <b>spē'rō</b> , -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, <i>hope (for)</i>  | (despair)     |
| <b>spī'rō</b> , -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, <i>breathe</i>   | (inspiration) |

341.

#### The Demonstrative *Is*

| is, this, that; he, she, it |       |       |       |             |             |             |
|-----------------------------|-------|-------|-------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| SINGULAR                    |       |       |       | PLURAL      |             |             |
| <i>Nom.</i>                 | is    | e'a   | id    | e'ī (i'ī)   | e'ae        | e'a         |
| <i>Gen.</i>                 | e'ius | e'ius | e'ius | eō'rum      | eā'rum      | eō'rum      |
| <i>Dat.</i>                 | e'ī   | e'ī   | e'ī   | e'īs (i'īs) | e'īs (i'īs) | e'īs (i'īs) |
| <i>Acc.</i>                 | e'um  | e'am  | id    | e'ōs        | e'ās        | e'a         |
| <i>Abl.</i>                 | e'ō   | e'ā   | e'ō   | e'īs (i'īs) | e'īs (i'īs) | e'īs (i'īs) |

**342. How *Is* Is Used.** — Instead of pointing, in a forceful way, to a definite person or thing, as **hic** and **ille** do, **is** usually refers to somebody or something just mentioned. When used without a noun, it is commonly translated as a personal pronoun, *he*, *she*, or *it*; accordingly, the genitive **eius** may be translated *his*, *her*, *its*, while **eōrum** (m. and n.) and **eārum** (f.) mean *their*. **Is** often serves as the antecedent of a relative clause; as, **Is quī videt probat**, *He who sees approves*.

## 343.

## Exercises

*Oral.* 1. Dum spīrō spērō. 2. Commūne periculum concordiam facit. 3. Certa āmittimus dum incerta petimus. 4. Is cui librōs dedī eōs nōn remisit. 5. Magna pars eius viae ā Rōmānīs mūnīta est. 6. Puellās et eārum mātrem in oppidō vīdī. 7. Hostibus pulsīs, vigiliam nostram nōn remittēmus. 8. Eī puerī quōs aestāte vīdimus erant eius discipulī.

*Written.* 1. This man is my teacher; that man is her father. 2. We saw him and his mother on the street. 3. To whom have you given a part of the money and booty? 4. We shall see her and her father this summer.

## 344. English Word Studies : The Names of the Months

In early Roman times the year began March 1, and February was the last month. We still use the ancient Roman names of the months. **March** was named after Mars. **April** was the *opening* month (*aperiō*), when the earth seems to open up. **May** is the month when things become *bigger* (*maior*). **June** is Juno's month. **July** was originally called **Quintilis**, the *fifth* month, but was renamed in honor of Julius Caesar when he had the calendar reformed. Similarly **August** was originally **Sextilis**, the *sixth* month, but was renamed after the Emperor Augustus. **September** was originally the *seventh* month and kept its name even after it later became the ninth; similarly, **October**, **November**, **December**. **January** was named after **Janus**, the god of beginnings. **February** was the time of purification (*fēbrua*), like the Christian Lent.

## VICTŌRIA MĀTRIS

## Persōnae

Gāia, Rōmāna

Pyrrhus, rēx Graecōrum

Mārcus, parvus fīlius Gāiae

Militēs Graeci

LOCUS: in castris relictis in Campāniā. TEMPUS: annō CCLXXV ante Christum.

Gāia. Iuppiter, tē (*thee*) vocāmus! Nōbīs (*to us*) et Rōmae auxilium dare potes!

Mārcus. Māter! Quid dīcis? Cūr pater nōn venit?

Gāia. Pater longē abest. Nōn veniet.

Mār. Sed cūr nōn cum patre sumus?

Gāia. Cum duce Dentātō pugnat — magnum est perīculum Rōmae nostrae! Graeci nunc per Campāniam veniunt!

Mār. Per Campāniam?

Gāia. Sed ad haec castra relieta fūgimus. In hōc locō nōs (*us*) nōn invenient.

Mār. Nōn timeō. Cum Graecīs pugnābō!

Gāia. Mātrēs et puerī patriae auxilium dare nōn possunt; pugnāre est virōrum officium.

Mār. Vir sum! Possum pugnāre! Nōnne vidēs? (*Gladium relictum capit.*)

Gāia. Āh, meus puer erit fortis miles! — sed quid est? Pedēs equōrum audiō.

Vōx Militis Graeci. Castra relictata sunt; nēmo adest!

Mār. Cūr territa es, māter? Cūr mē tenēs?

Gāia. Graeci sunt! Iuppiter, tē vocāmus! (*Per portam veniunt Pyrrhus et militēs Graeci.*)

Pyrrhus. Ho! Quis adest?

Miles Graecus. Puer et eius māter!

Gāia. Cūr ad hunc locum vēnistis, Graeci? Haec terra, haec castra sunt Rōmāna!

Miles. Sunt Rōmāna — sed erunt Graeca!

Mār. Nōn erunt Graeca! Viri Rōmāni sunt fortēs!

**Pyr.** O-ho! Etiam puer fortis esse videtur. Fortem puerum petō. Potesne litterās ad castra Graecōrum portāre?

**Gāia.** Nōn portābit; Rōmānus est!

**Pyr.** Nōnne omnēs viās cognōvistī, puer? Vidēsne hanc pecūniam? Tua erit —

**Gāia.** Graeci pecūniam capiunt et patriam relinquunt; nōs sumus Rōmānī!

**Pyr.** Pyrrhus sum, rēx Graecōrum. Hunc puerum interficere possum. Properāre debemus. Puer litterās portābit. (*Militēs ad Gāiam et Mārcum accēdunt. Gāia gladium relīctum capit et tenet, sed Pyrrhus eum nōn videt.*)

**Gāia.** Meus filius servus Graecōrum nōn erit!

**Miles.** Quid faciētis? Fugere nōn potestis, pugnāre nōn potestis!

**Gāia.** Sed hoc facere possum — prō patriā meā!

**Mār.** Māter! (*Gāia gladiō Mārcum interficit, tum sē (herself).*)

**Militēs.** Oh! (*Pyrrhus Gāiam et Mārcum spectat.*)

**Pyr.** Ita mātres Rōmānae pugnant! Quid virī facient?

(*Exeunt tardē*)



FIG. 67. A COIN OF CAESAR

On the left, the head of Venus; on the right, Aeneas carrying his father, Anchises, and the image of Athena (Minerva) from Troy.

## LESSON LXI

### THE DEMONSTRATIVE *ĪDEM*

346.

#### Vocabulary

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| expug'nō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, (lit., <i>fight it out</i> ), capture by assault | [pugnō]      |
| ge'nus, ge'neris, n., birth, race, kind  | (generation) |
| interci'piō, -ere, -cē'pī, -cep'tus, intercept                                   | [capiō]      |
| nō'bilis, -e, (lit., "know-able"), distinguished, noble                          | [nōscō]      |
| suppli'cium, -ī, n., punishment  | [plicō]      |

347.

#### Latin Phrases in English

i.e. (*id est*), *that is*.

id. (*idem*), *the same* (i.e. as mentioned above).

ibid. (*ibidem*), *in the same place*.

semper *idem*, *always the same*.

348.

#### The Demonstrative *Īdem*

The demonstrative *īdem* is a compound of *is* and *-dem*, with slight changes for ease of pronunciation:

| <i>īdem</i> , same |                                  |                                  |                                  |
|--------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| SINGULAR           |                                  |                                  |                                  |
| <i>Nom.</i>        | <i>ī'dem</i>                     | <i>e'ādem</i>                    | <i>ī'dem</i>                     |
| <i>Gen.</i>        | <i>eius'dem</i>                  | <i>eius'dem</i>                  | <i>eius'dem</i>                  |
| <i>Dat.</i>        | <i>eī'dem</i>                    | <i>eī'dem</i>                    | <i>eī'dem</i>                    |
| <i>Acc.</i>        | <i>eun'dem</i>                   | <i>ean'dem</i>                   | <i>ī'dem</i>                     |
| <i>Abl.</i>        | <i>eō'dem</i>                    | <i>eā'dem</i>                    | <i>eō'dem</i>                    |
| PLURAL             |                                  |                                  |                                  |
| <i>Nom.</i>        | <i>eī'dem</i> ( <i>ī'dem</i> )   | <i>eae'dem</i>                   | <i>e'ādem</i>                    |
| <i>Gen.</i>        | <i>eōrun'dem</i>                 | <i>eārun'dem</i>                 | <i>eōrun'dem</i>                 |
| <i>Dat.</i>        | <i>eīs'dem</i> ( <i>īs'dem</i> ) | <i>eīs'dem</i> ( <i>īs'dem</i> ) | <i>eīs'dem</i> ( <i>īs'dem</i> ) |
| <i>Acc.</i>        | <i>eōs'dem</i>                   | <i>eās'dem</i>                   | <i>e'ādem</i>                    |
| <i>Abl.</i>        | <i>eīs'dem</i> ( <i>īs'dem</i> ) | <i>eīs'dem</i> ( <i>īs'dem</i> ) | <i>eīs'dem</i> ( <i>īs'dem</i> ) |



## 349.

## Exercises

*Oral.* 1. Eōdem annō libertās servīs data est. 2. Īdem dux eum ad supplicium trahī iussit. 3. Dum omnia timēmus, victōriam spērāre nōn possumus. 4. Is eōdem tempore bellum in finibus Germānōrum gerēbat. 5. Omnēs hominēs liberī parēsque esse dēbent, quod omnēs eundem Deum habent. 6. Hic homō nōbili genere et auctōritāte sed nōn magnīs factīs antecēdit. 7. Oppidō expugnātō, Caesaris cōpiae impedimenta hostium intercēpērunt. 8. Temporibus magnī periculī quem aut quid timēbimus? Dominus prōvidēbit.

*Written.* 1. His punishment terrified the rest. 2. Their towns were taken-by-assault. 3. He will not send back the same book. 4. When I heard that, I was no longer afraid. 5. I shall not see the same boys this summer.

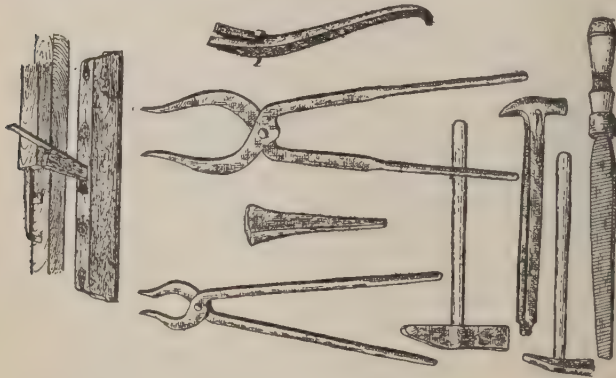


FIG. 68. ROMAN TOOLS

These tools, and many others exactly like ours, were found in a Roman fort in Germany.

## LESSON LXII

### THE INTENSIVE *IPSE*

#### 350.

#### Vocabulary

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| co'lō, -ere, co'lūi, cul'tus, till, dwell in, worship | (cultivate) |
| frā'ter, frā'tris, m., brother                        | (fraternal) |
| se'deō, -ē're, sē'di, ses'sus, sit                    | (session)   |
| so'ror, sorō'ris, f., sister                          | (sorority)  |

#### 351.

#### English Word Studies : Spelling

Latin words are often very helpful in fixing the spelling of English words. In this lesson we shall consider words in which a double consonant occurs.

If the Latin word has a double consonant, it is usually preserved in English, except at the end of a word : *terrestrial*, but *inter* (from *terra*) ; *carriage*, but *car* (*carrus*) ; *rebelled*, but *rebel* (*bellum*) ; *deterred*, but *deter* (*dēterreō*) ; *remitted*, but *remit* (*remittō*). *Letter* has two *t*'s and *literature* only one in the root of the word because the spelling of Latin *littera* varied.

#### 352.

#### The Intensive in English and Latin

In English, compound pronouns are formed by joining *self* to *my*, *your*, *him*, *her*, *it*, and the plural *selves* to *our*, *your*, *them*. These compounds may be used in an intensive or emphatic sense ; as, *I saw the man myself*.

In Latin, the pronoun *ipse* is a compound of *is* (341) and the intensive particle *-pse*, and therefore has purely intensive force : *Ipse hominem vidī*, *I saw the man myself*. Note that *ipse* may be used alone in the nominative to emphasize an omitted subject. It is declined like *ille*, except in the neuter nominative and accusative singular.

| ipse, self |          |         |         |          |          |          |
|------------|----------|---------|---------|----------|----------|----------|
|            | SINGULAR |         |         |          | PLURAL   |          |
| Nom.       | ip'se    | ip'sa   | ip'sum  | ip'sī    | ip'sae   | ip'sa    |
| Gen.       | ipsī'us  | ipsī'us | ipsī'us | ipsō'rum | ipsā'rum | ipsō'rum |
| Dat.       | ip'sī    | ip'sī   | ip'sī   | ip'sīs   | ip'sīs   | ip'sīs   |
| Acc.       | ip'sum   | ip'sam  | ip'sum  | ip'sōs   | ip'sās   | ip'sa    |
| Abl.       | ip'sō    | ip'sā   | ip'sō   | ip'sīs   | ip'sīs   | ip'sīs   |

## 353.

## Exercises

*Oral.* 1. Nōne idem ipsī vidistis? 2. Frātrēs et sorōrēs eiusdem familiae paria iūra habēre dēbent. 3. Quis est puer quī cum meā sorōre sedet? 4. Eō tempore ducem ipsum cum omnibus eius cōpiīs vīdī. 5. Quae officia soror tua ipsa suscipiet? 6. Colōnī agrōs in novā terrā colunt et ibi remanent. 7. Ille homō "agricola" appellātur quod agrōs colit. 8. Rōmānī deōs multōs habēbant quō colēbant.

*Written.* 1. These (men) are standing; those are sitting. 2. The same winter they saw and heard him themselves. 3. These letters were written by the king himself. 4. We ourselves shall get much money together in a few years. 5. My brother was in that battle.



FIG. 69. CUPIDS PLAYING HIDE AND SEEK

From an ancient wall painting.

## 354.

HORATIUS AT THE BRIDGE<sup>1</sup>

Tarquiniī,<sup>2</sup> ā Rōmānīs pulsī, ā Porsenā, rēge Etrūscōrum, auxilium petīvērunt. Itaque Porsena cum magnīs cōpiīs (to) Rōmam vēnit. Rōmānī territī sunt, quod magna erat potestās Etrūscōrum magnumque Porsenae nōmen. Rōmānī ex agrīs in oppidum migrant; oppidum ipsum praesidiīs dēfendunt. Pars urbis mūrīs, pars Tiberī flūmine mūnita est. Pōns sublicius (*made of piles*) iter hostibus dabat, sed ēgregius vir prohibuit, Horātius Coclēs, illō cognōmine appellātus quod in proeliō oculum āmiserat. Is, extrēmā pontis parte occupātā, cōpiās hostium sōlus sustinuit et Rōmānōs quī fugiēbant pontem rumpere iussit. Ipsa audācia hostēs terruit. Ponte ruptō,<sup>3</sup> armātus in Tiberim dēsiluit et per multa tēla incolumis (*unharmēd*) ad Rōmānōs trānāvīt. Grāta ob factum clārum eius cīvītās fuit. Multī agrī eī datī sunt et statua eius in Comitīō posita est.



FIG. 70. PŌNS MULVIUS

This bridge, built in 109 B.C., is just north of Rome, across the Tiber. The four central arches are ancient. A number of ancient bridges are in use throughout the lands of the old Roman Empire.

<sup>1</sup> Read Macaulay's *Lays of Ancient Rome*, "Horatius," 26-67. <sup>2</sup> The Etruscan kings who ruled Rome in the sixth century, B.C. <sup>3</sup> Cf. *rumpō*.

## LESSON LXIII

### DECLENSION OF IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

**355.** A small but important group of adjectives of the first and second declensions resembles **ipse** in having **-ius** in the genitive and **-ī** in the dative singular of all genders. In other cases they are declined regularly, like **magnus**, **-a**, **-um** :

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| <b>a'lius</b> , <b>a'lia</b> , <b>a'liud</b> , <sup>1</sup> <i>other, another</i>              | (alias)     |
| (a'lius . . . a'lius, <i>one . . . another</i> ; a'liū . . . a'lii, <i>some . . . others</i> ) |             |
| <b>al'ter</b> , <b>al'tera</b> , <b>al'terum</b> , <sup>2</sup> <i>the other (of two)</i>      | (alternate) |
| (al'ter . . . al'ter, <i>the one . . . the other</i> )   |             |
| <b>neu'ter</b> , <b>neu'tra</b> , <b>neu'trum</b> , <i>neither (of two)</i>                    | (neutral)   |
| <b>nū'lus</b> , <b>nū'lā</b> , <b>nū'lum</b> , <i>no, none</i>                                 | (nullify)   |
| <b>sō'lus</b> , <b>sō'lā</b> , <b>sō'lum</b> , <i>alone, sole, only</i>                        | (solitary)  |
| <b>tō'tus</b> , <b>tō'ta</b> , <b>tō'tum</b> , <i>whole</i>                                    | (total)     |
| <b>ū'lus</b> , <b>ū'lā</b> , <b>ū'lum</b> , <i>any</i>   |             |
| <b>ū'nus</b> , <b>ū'nā</b> , <b>ū'num</b> , <sup>3</sup> <i>one</i>                            | (unit)      |

**a. Note.** — Like **hic**, **ille**, and **is**, these adjectives are emphatic and accordingly precede their nouns.

**b. Decline** each as follows :

| SINGULAR    |                |                |                | PLURAL    |
|-------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|-----------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | <b>tō'tus</b>  | <b>tō'ta</b>   | <b>tō'tum</b>  | (regular) |
| <i>Gen.</i> | <b>tōtī'us</b> | <b>tōtī'us</b> | <b>tōtī'us</b> |           |
| <i>Dat.</i> | <b>tō'tī</b>   | <b>tō'tī</b>   | <b>tō'tī</b>   |           |
| <i>Acc.</i> | <b>tō'tum</b>  | <b>tō'tam</b>  | <b>tō'tum</b>  |           |
| <i>Abl.</i> | <b>tō'tō</b>   | <b>tō'tā</b>   | <b>tō'tō</b>   |           |

**356. Drill.** — Decline in the singular **alius frāter**, **neutra soror**, and **tōtum oppidum**.

<sup>1</sup> Note that the neuter nominative and accusative singular ends in **-d**, not **-m**.

<sup>2</sup> The genitive singular of **alter** ends in **-ius**.

<sup>3</sup> **Uter**, *which (of two)*, and **uterque**, *each, both*, are likewise irregular and belong to this group but are comparatively unimportant.







FIG. 71. A ROMAN LADY IN HER GARDEN

## 357.

## Exercises

*Oral.* 1. Hostēs agrōs oppidaque tōtius insulae vāstāvērunt. 2. Rēx neutrī filiō rēgnum committet. 3. Is homō ipse ab aliīs accūsātus est sed ab aliīs dēfēsus est. 4. Cōnsilia alterius ducis nōn erant grāta alterī. 5. Tōtum praesidium ex oppidō remōtum ad mare prōcēdere mātūrat. 6. Omnēs amīcī eius iam discessērunt et is sōlus nunc manet. 7. Accēpistīne ipse ūlla praemia prō meritīs tuīs? (See 168.) Nulla accēpī neque ūlla exspectō.

*Written.* 1. To one sister I shall give money, to the other this book. 2. My brother and father spent part of that same summer alone in the woods. 3. Have you seen my mother and sister? I have seen neither. 4. In the summer the farmer tills the fields, but what does he do in winter? 5. We have already dispatched reinforcements, but there is no danger now.

## 358.

## English Word Studies : Spelling

Many prefixes bring about the doubling of consonants by assimilation. The most important are **ad-**, **con-**, **in-**, **ob-**, **ex-**, and **sub-**. If you will analyze the English word, you can often tell whether the consonant is to be doubled: **con-** and **modus** form **commodus**; prefix **ad-** and you get the English derivative *ac-com-modate* with two *c*'s and two *m*'s. Similarly *commend* has two *m*'s; *re-com-mend* has two *m*'s but only one *c* because **re-** is never assimilated. Other examples of doubling through assimilation are *im-material*, *ac-celerate*, *suf-ficient*, *ef-ficient* (but *de-ficient*, for **dē-** is not assimilated).

## A Latin Pun

**Equus in stabulō est sed nōn ēst**, The horse *is* in the stable but does not *eat* (**est** means *is*; **ēst** means *eat*).

## LESSON LXIV

### THE PARTICIPLE: PRESENT AND FUTURE ACTIVE

ELEMENTARY GRAMMAR: Review *Participles*, 635.

359.

#### Vocabulary

|   |                  |
|---|------------------|
| aliē'nus, -a, -um, <i>another's, unfavorable</i>                | [ <i>alius</i> ] |
| conten'dō, -ere, -ten'dī, -ten'tus, <i>struggle, hasten</i>     | [ <i>tendō</i> ] |
| expel'lō, -ere, ex'pulī, -pul'sus, <i>drive out</i>             | [ <i>pellō</i> ] |
| gra'vis, -e, <i>heavy, serious, severe</i>                      | (gravitation)    |
| op'primō, -ere, -pres'sī, -pres'sus, <i>overwhelm, surprise</i> | [ <i>premō</i> ] |
| ro'gō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, <i>ask</i>                         | (interrogative)  |
| vōx, vō'cis, f., <i>voice, remark</i>                           | [ <i>vocō</i> ]  |

360.

#### Latin Phrases in English

Homō prōpōnit, sed Deus dispōnit, *Man proposes, but God disposes.*

ipsō factō, *by the fact itself, thereby.*

Vōx populī vōx Deī, *The voice of the people (is) the voice of God.*

ūnā vōce, *with one voice, unanimously.*

361.

#### Present Participle

In English, the **present participle** has both an active and a passive form: (a) *I have a brother **fighting** in France;* (b) *The battle now **being fought** will be decisive.* In both examples the present participle *modifies a noun.* It is likewise used in making the progressive verb form: *My brother **is fighting**.* Here "fighting" does not modify the noun but is a part of the verb and denotes progressive action (see 20, b).

In Latin, the **present participle** has only the active form. It is used to modify nouns or pronouns and never combines with the verb **sum** to form verb phrases. *My brother is fighting* becomes in Latin simply **frāter meus pugnāt**. The present participle, like the present infinitive, represents an act *as taking place at the time indicated by the main verb.*

**362. Formation and Declension.**—The present participle of the four conjugations is formed by adding **-ns** to the present stem. It is declined like a third declension adjective of one ending (316), with the base ending in **-nt-**, as follows :

|             | M. AND F.   | N.      | M. AND F.     | N.        |
|-------------|-------------|---------|---------------|-----------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | pa'rāns     | pa'rāns | paran'tēs     | paran'tia |
| <i>Gen.</i> | paran'tis   |         | paran'tium    |           |
| <i>Dat.</i> | paran'tī    |         | paran'tibus   |           |
| <i>Acc.</i> | paran'tem   | pa'rāns | paran'tēs(īs) | paran'tia |
| <i>Abl.</i> | paran'te(ī) |         | paran'tibus   |           |

**Note.**—(a) The ablative singular ending is regularly **-e**, but **-ī** is used instead whenever the participle is used simply as an adjective. (b) In verbs of the fourth conjugation, and **-iō** verbs of the third, **-ie-** appears throughout, forming the base **-ient-**, as **audiēns**, **audientis**; **capiēns**, **cipientis**. (c) **Sum** has no present participle; that of **possum** is **potēns**.

### 363. Future Active Participle

Latin, unlike English, has a **future active participle**. This is formed by dropping the **-us** of the perfect participle and adding **-ūrus**, **-a**, **-um** : **parātūrus**, **-a**, **-um**, *about to prepare, going to prepare*; **futūrus**, **-a**, **-um**, *going to be*. It is declined like **magnus**, **-a**, **-um**.

**364. Drill.**—Form and translate the participles of **rogō**, **opprimō**, and **expellō** in the present and future active.

### 365. Exercises

*Oral.* 1. Cūr in hōc locō mānsūrus es? 2. Vōcēs amīcōrum rogantium auxilium audītae sunt. 3. Paucīs annīs nullōs milītēs per viās nostrās iter facientēs vidēbimus. 4. Rōmānīs prōcēdentibus, hostēs fūgērunt. 5. Multī milītēs pugnāntēs captī sunt. 6. Vulneribus gravibus

acceptīs, nostrī ē castrīs hostēs expulērunt. 7. Oppressi in aliēnō locō, hostēs cum equīs impedimentisque ad montēs contentūrī sunt.

*(Instead of clauses, use participles wherever possible.)*

*Written.* 1. The number of (those) approaching is not large. 2. The weapons given to the other soldier are heavy but not long. 3. He was accused (while) defending the public cause. 4. Hearing many voices, the children were frightened. 5. He folded the letter which he had written and sent (it) to (his) friend.



FIG. 72. A STREET CORNER IN POMPEII

Notice the fountain, the stepping stones for use in wet weather, and the ruts in the pavement.

## LESSON LXV

### THE PERFECT ACTIVE INFINITIVE

366.

#### Vocabulary

|   |              |
|---|--------------|
| cōnscrī'bō, -ere, -scrīp'sī, -scrīp'tus, <i>enlist, enroll</i>                              | [scrībō]     |
| cōnsis'tō, -ere, cōn'stiti, cōn'stitus, <i>stand still, stop</i>                            | [stō]        |
| dī'cō, -ere, dī'xī, dic'tus, <i>say, tell</i>   | (diction)    |
| ia'ciō, -ere, iē'cī, iac'tus, <i>throw, cast, hurl</i>                                      | (projectile) |
| levis, -e, <i>light (in weight)</i>   | (levity)     |
| osten'dō, -ere, -ten'dī, -ten'tus, ( <i>stretch out</i> ), <i>show, display</i>             | [tendō]      |
| prohi'beō, -ē're, -hi'buī, -hi'bitus, <i>prevent, keep from</i>                             | [habeō]      |
| * vīs, —, <sup>1</sup> f., <i>force, violence</i> ; plur., vī'rēs, vī'rium, <i>strength</i> | (vim)        |

367.

#### Latin and English Word Studies

The suffix **-or**, when added to the participial stem, indicates the doer of an action: **monitor** (*one who warns*), **scriptor** (*one who writes*), **inventor** (*one who finds*). It is used in English in the same way.

When the suffix **-or** is added to the present base of a verb, it usually indicates a state of being or condition: **timor**, **amor**, **terror**. It is used in English.

**Exercise.** — Find five English words which are formed by adding the suffix **-or** to the stems of verbs that you have studied.

368.

#### Perfect Active Infinitive

The **perfect active infinitive** is formed by adding **-isse** to the perfect stem: **parāvisse**, *to have prepared*; **habuisse**, etc.

**369. Review** infinitive used as subject and object, see 106, 107; infinitive with subject in the accusative as in English, see 204.

---

<sup>1</sup> Genitive and dative singular rarely found (see 645).



## 370.

## Exercises

*Oral.* 1. Prohibere vim et pacem conservare est nobile. 2. Omnibus bonum exemplum ostendere debemus. 3. Militēs consistentēs arma levia cum magnā vī iēcisse dicuntur. 4. Caesar captīvōs coactōs conscribī iubēbit. 5. Rēgis filia librum scripsisse dicitur. 6. Rōmānī paucās nāvēs ad Galliam mīsisse dicuntur. 7. Dux iussit cōpiās cum magnā celeritāte ad oppidum prōcēdere et ibi cōsistere.

*Written.* 1. The king is said to have fortified the town. 2. We can not breathe under water. 3. Are you preparing to come with your father and mother? 4. Those men are said to have sailed to a strange land. 5. For these reasons we ought to lead the men out of camp with great speed.

## 371. CINCINNATUS, THE PLOWMAN-DICTATOR

Hostēs Minucium, ducem Rōmānum, et cōpiās eius premēbant. Ubi id Rōmānīs nūntiātum est, parāvērunt Cincinnātum dictātōrem facere, quod is sōlus cīvitātem ē periculō servāre poterat. Ille trāns Tiberim eō tempore parvum agrum colēbat. Nūntiī missī eum in agrō labōrantem invēnērunt. Salūte (*greeting*) datā acceptāque, Cincinnātus togam parāre uxōrem iussit; nam nōn oportēbat (*it was fitting*) sine togā nūntiōs audire.

Nūntiī eum dictātōrem appellant et dicunt: "Cōpia nostrae ab hostibus premuntur et cīvēs nostrī timent." Itaque Cincinnātus prōcessit et, Minuciō servātō, hostēs sub iugum (*under the yoke*<sup>1</sup>) mīsit. Triumphāns cōpiās redūxit. Ductī sunt ante eum ducēs hostium, capta arma ostenta sunt; post eum militēs vērunt praedam portantēs. Et haec omnia Cincinnātus magnā celeritāte gessit: dictātūrā in (*for*) sex mēnsēs acceptā, sextō decimō diē (*day*) ad agrōs discessit, nōn iam dictātor sed triumphāns agricola.

<sup>1</sup> I.e. an arch of spears. This act signified unconditional surrender.

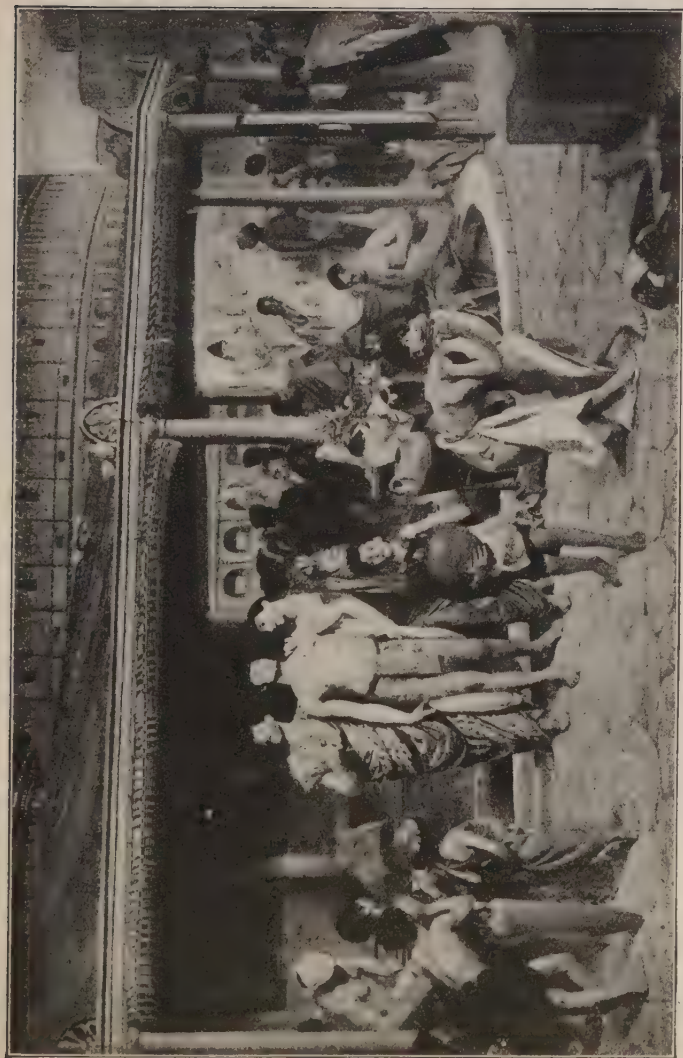


FIG. 73. THE FOUNTAIN NEAR THE COLOSSEUM, AS IT WAS

## LESSON LXVI

### PERFECT PASSIVE AND FUTURE ACTIVE INFINITIVE. INDIRECT STATEMENT

#### 372.

#### Vocabulary

|   |              |
|---|--------------|
| iūs'tus, -a, -um, <i>just</i>                     | [iūs]        |
| la'bor, labō'ris, m., <i>work, trouble</i>        | [labōrō]     |
| mū'nus, mū'neris, n., <i>duty, service, gift</i>  | (munificent) |
| pu'tō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, <i>think</i>         | (reputation) |
| sci'ō, scī're, scī'vī, scī'tus, <i>know</i>       | (science)    |
| secun'dus, -a, -um, <i>second</i>                 | (secondary)  |
| sol'vō, -ere, sol'vī, solū'tus, <i>loose, pay</i> | (solution)   |
| spa'tium, -ī, n., <i>space, time, distance</i>    | (spacious)   |

#### 373.

#### English Word Study: Spelling

The base of the Latin present participle is **-ant, -ent, or -ient**, according to the conjugation (362). This is used as a suffix in English, with the same meaning as the participial ending *-ing*.

A common mistake in the spelling of English words is due to the confusion of **-ant** and **-ent**. Reference to the Latin partly solves the difficulty:

(a) All English words derived from the first conjugation follow the Latin spelling with an **-a-**: *expectant, emigrant*.

(b) All adjectives and most nouns derived from the other conjugations follow the Latin spelling with an **-e-**: *continent, regent, agent, efficient*.

(c) But some nouns have an **-a-**: *tenant, defendant*.

**Exercise.** — Give eight English words with suffix **-ant** or **-ent** derived from Latin words previously studied.

#### 374. Perfect Passive and Future Active Infinitive

a. The **perfect passive infinitive** is a compound tense, formed by using the perfect participle with the present

infinitive **esse**: **parātus**, -a, -um **esse**, *to have been prepared*; **habitus**, -a, -um **esse**, etc. (cf. perfect passive indicative: **parātus sum**).

b. The **future active infinitive** is a compound tense, formed by using the future active participle with the present infinitive **esse**: **parātūrus**, -a, -um **esse**, *to be going to prepare*; **habitūrus**, -a, -um **esse**, etc.

There was no future passive infinitive in common use in Latin.

c. **Learn** the infinitives, **active** and **passive**, of the model verbs (660-664) and **sum** (666).

**375. Drill.** — Form and translate the infinitives, active and passive, of **iaciō**, **ostendō**, and **prohibeō**.

### 376. Infinitive with Verbs of Saying, etc.

In English, we use a “that” clause after verbs of *saying, thinking, knowing, hearing*, and the like: *He says (that<sup>1</sup>) the boys are coming.* But sometimes we use the infinitive: *The boys are said to be coming; I know him to be a good man; I heard him say this.*

In Latin, the infinitive is *always* used after such words: **Dīcit puerōs venīre**. Note that **puerōs** is in the accusative because it is the subject of an infinitive (205). The word *that* is not translated.

### 377. Direct and Indirect Statement

1. **Dīcit**, “**Puerī veniunt**,” *He says, “The boys are coming.”*
2. **Dīcit puerōs venīre**, *He says that the boys are coming.*

In the first sentence the exact words of the speaker are given, as shown by the use of quotation marks. Such a sentence is called a **direct statement**. In the second sentence

---

<sup>1</sup> *That* is occasionally omitted.

the exact words are not given. Such a sentence is called an **indirect statement**.

**378. Rule.** — *Statements that convey indirectly the thoughts or words of another, used as the objects of verbs of **saying, thinking, knowing, hearing, perceiving**, or the like, require subjects in the accusative and verbs in the infinitive.*

**379. Who or Whom?** — Explain how a knowledge of indirect statement in Latin will enable one to use *who* and *whom* correctly, as follows: (a) *A man **who**, I believe, is honest;* (b) *A man **whom** I believe to be honest.*

### 380.

### Exercises

*Oral.* 1. Dicunt, "Civis iustus libertatem amat." 2. Civis iustus libertatem amare dicitur. 3. Dicunt civem iustum libertatem amare. 4. Putamus nostra munera futura esse levia. 5. Scimus in spatio vite esse curas et labores. 6. Ille homo erit primus aut secundus ordine. 7. Putasne hunc hominem pecuniam debitam solvisse aut soluturum esse? 8. Puto pecuniam ab illo non solutam esse.

*Written.* 1. Galba said, "My father is a soldier." 2. We all know that his father is brave. 3. I hear that Galba's brother was a sailor and was not terrified by the sea. 4. I think that Galba himself will be a soldier. 5. He himself said, "I am going to be a soldier, for my father is a soldier."



FIG. 74. PUERI LUDUNT

## LESSON LXVII

### INDIRECT STATEMENT (*Cont.*)

#### 381.

#### Vocabulary

|   |                  |
|---|------------------|
| <b>ā'cer, ā'cris, ā'cre,</b> <sup>1</sup> <i>sharp, keen</i>                      | (acid)           |
| <b>clā'mō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus,</b> <i>cry out, shout</i>                        | (clamor)         |
| <b>hae'reō, -ē're, hae'sī, hae'sus,</b> <i>stick</i>                              | (adhesive)       |
| <b>in'stō, -ā're, in'stiti, —, press on, threaten</b>                             | [ <i>stō</i> ]   |
| <b>perve'niō, -ī're, -vē'nī, -ven'tus,</b> ( <i>come through</i> ), <i>arrive</i> | [ <i>veniō</i> ] |
| <b>sen'tiō, -ī're, sēn'sī, sēn'sus,</b> <i>feel, realize</i>                      | (sense)          |
| <b>sī, conj., if</b>  |                  |
| <b>tan'gō, -ere, te'tigī, tāt'tus,</b> <i>touch</i>                               | (tangent)        |

#### 382.

#### English Word Studies

By addition of the suffix **-ia** (201) to the base of the present participle, a suffix **-antia** or **-entia** is formed which becomes **-ance, -ence, -ancy, or -ency** in English (cf. the change of **-tia** to **-ce**, 207): **scientia, science**. The difficulty in spelling is again removed by reference to the Latin (cf. 373).

**Exercise.** — Give eight English nouns with this suffix derived from Latin words previously studied.

#### 383. How Indicative and Infinitive Differ in Tense

1. *It was thought that he was present.*
2. *He was thought to be present.*

In the first sentence, the verb in the subordinate clause is in the past indicative. In the second sentence, the infinitive *to be* refers to the same time but is in the present tense. The tenses of the **indicative** are determined by their *relation to present time*, but the tenses of the **infinitive** are determined by their *relation to the verbs on which they depend*. This is true in Latin as in English and should be remembered in translating a Latin infinitive into an English "that" clause.

---

<sup>1</sup> Cf. 316, footnote 1.





*Written.* 1. Who said that America would not fight?  
2. The boy thought that (his) father had been saved by a sailor. 3. My mother wrote that the islands were beautiful.  
4. We can prove that our cause is just. 5. The general says that the soldiers were brave and keen.



FIG. 75. CAESAR AT THE RUBICON

The Rubicon river in northeastern Italy was the southern boundary of the province over which Caesar had been given military control. His decision to cross it with his army (49 B.C.) was in defiance of the Senate and meant civil war. (From "Julius Caesar.")

## LESSON LXVIII

### REVIEW

#### 387. Review of Participles

We have seen that the Latin participle furnishes a convenient means for conveying various ideas expressed by dependent clauses in English. Review 276.

#### 388. Noun and Adjective Review

(a) Decline *haec pars, idem supplicium, pater ipse, ea aestās, hoc genus, nūlla vōx, sōlus frāter*.

(b) Give the genitive and dative singular of *nūllus pater, ūlla māter, altera soror, solum flūmen, neutrum iter*.

#### 389. Verb Review

(a) Give a synopsis of *timeō* in the 3rd plural active; of *remittō* in the 3rd singular passive.

(b) Form the participles, active and passive, of *dīcō, iaciō, sciō, and rogō*.

(c) Form the infinitives, active and passive, of *sentiō, intercipiō, currō, and expugnō*.

(d) Conjugate *sum* and *possum*.

#### 390. Vocabulary Review

(a) Give the nominative, genitive, gender, and meaning of the Latin nouns suggested by the derivatives: *cordial, partial, generation, fraternity, sorority, vocal, maternal*.

(b) Give the principal parts of the Latin verbs suggested by the derivatives: *sedentary, cursive, remiss, inspiration, cult, expulsive, oppressive, diction, ostensible, prohibit*.

#### 391. Vocabulary Matches (To the teacher)

Latin word contests, especially between two divisions of the same class, excite keen rivalry and lead to a ready mastery of words. After every member of the class has faithfully prepared all the vocabularies of a given

number of lessons, have two leaders choose sides, as in an old-fashioned spelling bee. The teacher dictates the English word, and the students in turn give the Latin word in full (*i.e.* principal parts, if a verb; genitive singular and gender, if a noun). When a student misses a word or one of its parts, he takes his seat. Much interest is added if a descriptive name is given to the contesting sides, such as "Altī vs. Brevēs," "Puerī vs. Puellās," etc.

### 392. English Word Studies: A Review

Find and use in sentences as many English derivatives as possible from **dīcō**, **putō**, **iaciō**, **audiō**, and **sedeō**.

Enter the derivatives in your notebook, using a separate page for each Latin word.

### 393. THE STORY OF LUCIUS (*Cont.*)

#### Virginēs Vestālēs

Etiam cīvītās focum Vestae habuit. Templum Vestae in Forō Rōmānō stābat. Ibi sex puellae, Virginēs Vestālēs appellātae, ignem sacrum Vestae semper servābant. Magna erat glōria Vestālium et maximē ā populō Rōmānō amābantur. Eīs in viīs vīsīs, omnēs dē viā dēcessērunt. Facile erat eās cognōscere, quod omnēs semper candidās vestēs gessērunt neque ūlla alia fēmina vestēs eiusdem generis gessit. In Circō loca ēgregia eīs dabantur. Sed dūrum fuit supplicium Vestālis quae mala fuit: ea vīva sub terrā posita est.



FIG. 76. VESTĀLIS

The costume suggests one reason why the Vestals have been called the first nuns.



FIG. 77. THE CHIEF VESTAL PASSES

*Omnēs dē viā dēcessērunt.*

### EXACTING DUTIES

Iūlia, soror Lūcī, Vestālīs erat et multa dē vitā Vestālium nārrābat. Cum reliquīs Vestālibus in Ātriō Vestae ad templum habitāvit sed saepe patrem et mātrem et frātrēs vidēbat. Dixit vitam Vestālium fēlicem esse sed labōrem nōn facilem esse: eās omnia magnā cūrā diligentiāque facere dēbēre. Dixit Vestālēs ligna in focō eōdem modō semper pōnere et omnia certīs temporibus facere. Itaque spatium disciplīnae longum erat. Puellae sex annōrum, ā patribus mātribusque Vestae datae, prīmōs decem annōs discipulae ēgērunt, tūm decem annōs in officiīs ēgērunt et postea parvās puellās docuērunt. Post trīgintā annōs libertās eis data est et eae ad amīcōs familiāsque redīre<sup>1</sup> potuērunt, sed multae in Ātriō Vestae permānsērunt. Sex sōlae Vestālēs in Ātriō ūnō tempore habitāvērunt.

<sup>1</sup> Infinitive of *red-eō*, *go back*.

## MISFORTUNE

Quondam Iūlia, aquam sacram dē fonte portāns, vīdit aliam Vestālem ante portam sedentem flentemque et ad eam cucurrit. Causā doloris petītā, audīvit alteram sīvisse<sup>1</sup> ignem sacrum exstinguī; vigiliā cōfecta, somnō oppressa erat. Iūlia, malā fortunā amīcae permōta, tamen illi nūllum cōsiliū dare potuit. Itaque illa pontifici omnia nārrāvit et hic eam verberāvit — nihil aliud facere potuit, quod ita lēgēs iussērunt.



FIG. 78. VESTĀLIS SOMNŌ OPPRESSA  
EST

## RIGHT OR WRONG

Hōc audītō, Lūcius dīxit illam nōn merēre ob lassitūdinem poenā affici et ōtium habēre dēbēre, sed eius soror, Iūlia, aliam sententiam habuit: “Etiam amīca mea ipsa quae verberāta est sentit supplicium aequum fuisse. Mūnera nostra gravia sunt. Sī diligentiam nōn adhibēbimus, salūs cīvitātis in periculō erit. Itaque poena negligentiae gravis esse dēbet. Sī ignem exstinguī sinam (quod spērō numquam futūrum esse) gravī poenā affici dēbēbō.”

<sup>1</sup> From *sinō*.



## LESSON LXIX

### THE IRREGULAR VERB *FERŌ*

394.

#### Vocabulary

|  |                           |
|--|---------------------------|
| <i>cōnfi'ciō, -ere, -fē'cī, -fec'tus, (do thoroughly), complete, exhaust (cf. "do up")</i> | [ <i>faciō</i> ]          |
| <i>fe'rō, fer're, tu'lī, lā'tus, bear, carry, bring (with ad or in and acc.) (ferry)</i>   |                           |
| <i>cōn'ferō, cōnfer're, con'tulī, collā'tus, bring together, collect</i>                   |                           |
| <i>dē'ferō, dēfer're, dē'tulī, dēlā'tus, carry away, refer, offer</i>                      |                           |
| <i>re'ferō, refer're, ret'tulī, relā'tus, bring back, report, give back</i>                |                           |
| <i>interfi'ciō, -ere, -fē'cī, -fec'tus, kill (cf. "done for")</i>                          | [ <i>faciō</i> ]          |
| <i>o'pus, o'peris, n., work</i>  | (operate)                 |
| <i>prin'ceps, prin'cipis, m., first man, chief, leader</i>                                 | [ <i>primus + capiō</i> ] |

395.

#### Conjugation of *Ferō*

The indicative of *ferō* is irregular in the present tense only; in all other tenses it is conjugated like a verb of the third conjugation. The present active infinitive *ferre* is contracted from *ferere*, while the passive (*ferri*) is formed by changing final *-e* to *-ī*, as in other verbs. Give all forms of the indicative, together with the participles and infinitives (see 668).

| PRESENT INDICATIVE |                 |                |                  |
|--------------------|-----------------|----------------|------------------|
| ACTIVE             |                 | PASSIVE        |                  |
| <i>fe'rō</i>       | <i>fe'rimus</i> | <i>fe'ror</i>  | <i>fe'rimur</i>  |
| <i>fers</i>        | <i>fer'tis</i>  | <i>fer'ris</i> | <i>feri'mini</i> |
| <i>fert</i>        | <i>fe'runt</i>  | <i>fer'tur</i> | <i>ferun'tur</i> |

396.

#### Exercises

*Oral.* 1. Cūr frāter tuus librum nōn refert quem ei dedī? 2. Puerī, opere cōnfecō, praemia quae meruerant accēperunt et dīmissī sunt. 3. Socii nostrī in magnō perī.

culō erant, quod America eō tempore auxilium ferre nōn poterat. 4. Nostri, hostibus expulsīs, in ūnum locum impedimenta cōferēbant. 5. Miles dīxit verba nūntī ad prīncipem dēlāta esse. 6. Alii ad oppidum prōcēdere mātūrāvērunt, aliī pignantēs interfectī sunt. 7. Captivī, vulneribus gravibus cōfectī, arma ferre nōn potuērunt.

*Written.* 1. It was said that the enemy's plans were being reported to the Romans. 2. The rest were killed (while) bringing water to the men. 3. Do you know the names of any parts of the body? 4. The Romans thought that the mind was not in the head but in the heart. 5. We heard that the boys and girls had collected books and had sent them to the soldiers.

### 397. Phrases and Quotations

*inter alia, among other things.*

*magnum opus, a great piece of work (as a book or painting).*

*Iacta ālea est, The die is cast, i.e. the decision is made (Caesar at the Rubicon river; cf. Fig. 75).*

*Timeō Danaōs et dōna ferentēs, I fear the Greeks even when they bring gifts (Virgil).*

*in locō parentis, in place of a parent.*

*obiter dictum, (something) said by the way (ob iter).*



FIG. 79. SCENE IN AN INN

This ancient picture shows, on the left, two men quarreling over a game; on the right, the innkeeper telling them to do their quarreling outdoors.

## LESSON LXX

### COMPARISON OF REGULAR ADJECTIVES. DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

398.

#### Vocabulary

|   |               |
|---|---------------|
| condi'ciō, condi'ciō'nis, f., <i>condition, terms</i>                               | (conditional) |
| li'gō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, <i>tie, bind</i>                                       | (ligament)    |
| quam, conj., <i>than</i>  |               |
| ra'piō, -ere, ra'puī, rap'tus, <i>seize, carry off</i>                              | (rapture)     |
| respon'deō, -ē're, respon'dī, respōn'sus, <i>answer</i>                             | (response)    |
| sta'tuō, -ere, sta'tuī, statū'tus, <i>(make stand), place, establish, determine</i> | [stō]         |
| ū'tilis, -e, <i>useful</i>  | (utility)     |
| vin'cō, -ere, vī'cī, vic'tus, <i>conquer</i>  | (invincible)  |

399.

#### Comparison of Adjectives

Adjectives are inflected to show degree. This is called **comparison**. There are three degrees: **positive**, **comparative**, **superlative**. The positive is the simple form of the adjective, the others indicate a greater degree.

In English, the comparative is formed by adding **-er** (-**r**) to the positive: *high-er*, *brave-r*. The superlative is formed by adding **-est** (-**st**) to the positive: *high-est*, *brave-st*. But adjectives of more than one syllable are often compared by the use of *more* and *most*: *more skillful*, *most skillful*.

In Latin, adjectives regularly add to the base of the positive the endings **-ior** (m. and f.), **-ius** (n.), to form the comparative, and **-issimus**, **-a**, **-um** to form the superlative:

| POSITIVE                                   | COMPARATIVE                     | SUPERLATIVE                             |
|--|---------------------------------|---|
| altus, -a, -um, <i>high</i><br>(base alt-) | altior, altius, <i>higher</i>   | altissimus, -a, -um,<br><i>highest</i>  |
| fortis, -e, <i>brave</i><br>(base fort-)   | fortior, fortius, <i>braver</i> | fortissimus, -a, -um,<br><i>bravest</i> |

a. **Hints for translating.** — The comparative may often be translated *more, too, rather*; the superlative, *most, very, exceedingly*.

#### 400. Declension of the Comparative

Adjectives are declined as follows in the comparative:

|             | M. AND F. | N.        | M. AND F.   | N.          |
|-------------|-----------|-----------|-------------|-------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | al'tior   | al'tius   | altiō'rēs   | altiō'ra    |
| <i>Gen.</i> | altiō'ris | altiō'ris | altiō'rum   | altiō'rum   |
| <i>Dat.</i> | altiō'rī  | altiō'rī  | altiō'ribus | altiō'ribus |
| <i>Acc.</i> | altiō'rem | al'tius   | altiō'rēs   | altiō'ra    |
| <i>Abl.</i> | altiō're  | altiō're  | altiō'ribus | altiō'ribus |

Observe that, while comparatives are declined like adjectives of the third declension, they do not have *-ī* in the abl. sing., *-ium* in the gen. plur., or *-ia* in the nom. and acc. plur. neuter.

**401. Drill.** — (a) Compare *grātus, -a, -um*; *nōbilis, -e*; *clārus, -a, -um*; *levis, -e*; *longus, -a, -um*. (b) Decline *novus, -a, -um* in the comparative.

**402. Remember** that in Latin the same case is used after *quam* as before it, but in English the nominative is often used after *than*: *Fortiōrem virum quam illum nōn vīdī, A braver man than he I have not seen.*

#### 403. Exercises

*Oral.* 1. Captīvus, nōn ligātus, arma rapuit et fūgit. 2. Quid est ūtilius et nōbilius quam prō patriā pugnāre? 3. Novissimum librum, ab eōdem auctōre scriptum, ad frātre meum mittere statuī. 4. Gallī vīribus corporis Rōmānōs superābant sed nōn erant fortiōrēs virī. 5. Hominem dē viis rogāvī; respondit hanc esse plāniōrem quam illam. 6. Ostendimus duo itinera per Galliam — alterum facile, alterum longius et incertius. 7. Condiōnēs pācis dūrissimae et gravissimae ab hostibus victis semper esse habentur. 8. Quid fers? Nihil.

*Written.* 1. Why are not the rivers of Italy very long? 2. Even more severe peace-terms<sup>1</sup> will be determined (upon) than these. 3. I know that that river is swift and very deep. 4. Nothing is more useful than water. 5. Peace has nobler and truer victories than war.

## 404.

## English Word Studies

It is important to distinguish different words from the same stem. "Plain" and "plane" both come from *plānus*, *level*. A "plain" is a *level* field; a "plain" person is not above the average *level* in appearance, etc. A "plane" is a *level* surface (hence "plane" geometry); it is also a tool which makes surfaces *level*. "Plane" is therefore used in a more literal, "plain," in a less literal sense.

A "corpse" is a dead *body* (from *corpus*); a "corps" (pronounced "core") is a *body* of men forming part of an army. The former is literal, the latter, figurative. A "corporation" is a *body* of men united for commercial or other purposes. A "corpuscle" is a little *body* in the blood. "Corporal" punishment is punishment inflicted upon the *body*, *i.e.* a whipping. Anything "corporeal" has a *body*, *i.e.* it is not imaginary. Similarly, a "principal" is the *leading* person in a school; a "principle" is a *leading* rule.

## A Punning Epitaph

It is said that on the tombstone of a certain Roman lady, Victoria, who outlived her "man," one may read this triumphant statement:

VICTŌRIA VIRUM VĪCIT

---

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Oral 7.



FIG. 80. THE PERISTYLE OF A ROMAN HOUSE. (From "Julius Caesar.")

## LESSON LXXI

### FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF REGULAR ADVERBS

405.

#### Vocabulary

|  |                  |
|--|------------------|
| ap'tus, -a, -um, <i>fit, suitable</i>                              | (adapt)          |
| * gēns, gen'tis, f., <i>tribe, people, nation</i>                  | [genus]          |
| in'struō, -ere, -strū'xī, -strūc'tus, <i>arrange, provide</i>      | [struō, arrange] |
| iū'dicō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, <i>judge, decide</i>                | (judicial)       |
| nē'mō, dat. nē'minī, acc. nē'minem (no other forms), <i>no one</i> | [homō]           |
| ōrā'tiō, ōrātiō'nis, f., <i>speech</i>                             | (orator)         |
| re'giō, regiō'nis, f., <i>district, region</i>                     | [regō]           |
| repel'lō, -ere, rep'pulī, repul'sus, <i>drive back, repulse</i>    | [pellō]          |

#### 406. English Word Study: The Suffix -iō

In Latin, the suffix -iō is added to verb stems, usually to the participial stem. As this generally ends in -t or -s, words of this origin generally end in -tiō or -siō. The suffix indicates an act or the state which results from an act: ōrātiō is the act of speaking, or the result, *i.e.* a speech. Nouns with this suffix have -iōnis in the genitive. Accordingly, the base ends in -n. Hence the English form of the suffix, which is very common, is -ion (-tion, -sion): *region, oration, session*. It often has the force of the suffix -ing.

**Exercise.** — Give and define ten English words with the suffix -ion derived from Latin verbs which you have studied.

407.

#### Formation of Adverbs

In English, adverbs are commonly formed from adjectives by adding the suffix -ly; as, adj., *high*, adv., *highly*; adj., *brave*, adv., *bravely*.

In Latin, adverbs are likewise formed from adjectives. Like adverbs in English, they can be compared but not declined.



(a) Adverbs are formed from adjectives of the first and second declensions, as a rule, by adding *-ē* to the base: adj., *altus*, adv., *altē*; adj., *liber*, adv., *liberē*.

(b) Adverbs are formed from adjectives of the third declension, as a rule, by adding *-iter* to the base; as, adj., *fortis*, adv., *fortiter*; adj., *ācer*, adv., *ācriter*.

**408.** The comparison of adverbs is similar to that of adjectives:

| POSITIVE  | COMPARATIVE | SUPERLATIVE |
|-----------|-------------|-------------|
| al'tē     | al'tius     | altis'simē  |
| for'titer | for'tius    | fortis'simē |

**Note** that the comparative adverb has the same form as the neuter accusative singular of the comparative adjective.

**409. Drill.** — Form and compare adverbs from the following adjectives already studied:

*longus, ūtilis, clārus, levis, firmus, gravis, vērus*

#### 410. Exercises

*Oral.* 1. Sciō hoc flūmen esse longius quam illud. 2. Gentēs Galliae celerius vincī poterant, quod nātūrā locī continēbantur. 3. Nostrī fortissimē pugnāvērunt sed ab hostibus repulsī sunt. 4. Pater meus omnia iūstē et celeriter iūdicat; nam nēmō est iūstior quam ille. 5. Hī militēs, ē castrīs ēductī, ad proelium ā duce instruuntur. 6. Cūr hae gentēs aliās regiōnēs partēsque Galliae perpetuē petunt? 7. Puerī magistrō librum dedērunt et ille ōrātiōne aptā respondit.

*Written.* 1. We certainly hope that peace has been established among all nations. 2. We shall drive the enemy back, because our men fight more bravely. 3. No one approves a very long speech. 4. The battle was sharply fought, but few men received severe wounds.

## LESSON LXXII

### COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES ENDING IN *-ER* AND *-LIS*. DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

#### 411. Vocabulary

|   |                    |
|---|--------------------|
| ca'dō, -ere, ce'cidī, cā'sus, <i>fall</i>                             | (casualty)         |
| ac'cidō, -ere, ac'cidī, —, <i>fall to, befall, happen</i> (with dat.) |                    |
| diff'cilis, -e, <i>difficult</i>                                      | [ <i>facilis</i> ] |
| ex'plicō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, <i>unfold, spread out, explain</i>    | [ <i>plicō</i> ]   |
| hu'milis, -e, <i>low, humble</i>                                      | (humility)         |
| pro'prius, -a, -um, <i>one's own, fitting</i>                         | (propriety)        |
| si'milis, -e, <i>like</i>   | (similarity)       |
| disi'milis, -e, <i>unlike</i>   |                    |

#### 412. Comparison of *-er* Adjectives

All adjectives ending in *-er* form the superlative by adding *-rimus*, *-a*, *-um* to the nominative singular masculine of the positive :

| POSITIVE                      | COMPARATIVE          | SUPERLATIVE           |
|-------------------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|
| crē'ber, crē'bra,<br>crē'brum | crē'brior, crē'brius | crēber'rimus, -a, -um |
| lī'ber, lī'bera,<br>lī'berum  | lībe'rior, lībe'rius | līber'rimus, -a, -um  |
| ā'cer, ā'cris, ā'cre          | ā'crior, ā'crius     | ācer'rimus, -a, -um   |

Note. — The corresponding adverbs end in *-ē* : crēberrimē.

413. Drill. — Compare *sacer*, *celer*, *pulcher*, *firmus*, *altus*.

#### 414. Five Adjectives with Superlative in *-limus*

The superlative of five adjectives ending in *-lis* is formed by adding *-limus*, *-a*, *-um* to the base of the positive :

|                 |                            |                         |
|-----------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| fa'cilis, -e    | faci'lior, faci'lius       | facil'limus, -a, -um    |
| diffi'cilis, -e | diffici'lior, diffici'lius | difficil'limus, -a, -um |
| si'milis, -e    | simi'lior, simi'lius       | simil'limus, -a, -um    |
| dissi'milis, -e | dissimi'lior, dissimi'lius | dissimil'limus, -a, -um |
| hu'milis, -e    | humi'lior, humi'lius       | humil'limus, -a, -um    |

**Note.** — Other -lis adjectives, such as nōbilis, -e, ūtilis, -e, etc. form the superlative regularly — *i.e.* by adding -issimus, -a, -um to the base of the positive: nōbil-is'simus, -a, -um.

The corresponding adverbs end in -ē: facillimē.

#### 415. Dative with Adjectives

1. Hic liber est similis illi, *This book is similar to that.*

2. Ille homō est frātrī meō inimicus, *That man is unfriendly to my brother.*

**Observe** that the dative is often used with Latin adjectives whose English equivalents are followed by *to* (593, 2).

#### 416. Exercises

*Oral.* 1. Nihil est ūtilius quam bonus liber; nam est nōbilissimus amīcōrum, semper firmus et vērus. 2. Humilis homō nec altē cadere nec graviter potest. 3. Rōmānōrum deī dissimillimī nostrō Deō erant. 4. Hic equus similior meō est quam ille. 5. Cūr capis id quod nōn tuum proprium est? 6. Milītēs iussī sunt explicāre ōrdinēs, sed id erat difficillimum ob parvum spatium. 7. Quid sorōrī tuae accidit? Cūr nōn vēnit cum reliquīs?



FIG. 81. PUELLA RŌMĀNA

*Written.* 1. Not all the neighboring nations were friendly to the Romans. 2. The teacher in a very beautiful speech unfolded the life of Caesar. 3. As our men approached, the enemy fought more bravely. 4. The places in which our soldiers fell are the most sacred in Gaul. 5. This region is fit for (to) some men, but not for others.

## 417.

## Legal Phrases in English

Lawyers use so many Latin phrases daily that they must be familiar with Latin. A few such phrases are:

*subpoenā*, a summons to court *under penalty* for failure to attend.

*ex post factō*, *resulting after the fact*; e.g. a law which makes punishable acts committed before its passage.

*in fōrmā pauperis*, *in the form (or manner) of a poor man*; to sue as a poor man and so avoid the costs of the suit.

*in propriā persōnā*, *in one's own person* (not through someone else).

**Exercise.**—Look through the court records and legal items in the newspapers for other Latin phrases.

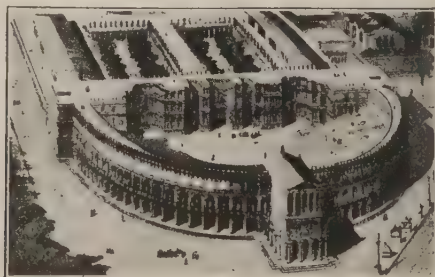


FIG. 82. THEATER OF POMPEY, ROME

As some of the Romans had a prejudice against theaters, Pompey built a temple of Venus and a theater together, so arranged that the seats of the theater served as steps leading to the temple. Both have now disappeared.

## LESSON LXXIII

### COMPARISON OF IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS

#### 418. Vocabulary

|   |               |
|---|---------------|
| extrē'mus, -a, -um, <i>farthest, last, end of</i>                         | (extremist)   |
| infē'rior, infē'rius, <i>lower</i>  | (inferiority) |
| pro'ximus, -a, -um, <i>nearest, next</i> (with dat.)                      | (proximity)   |
| sum'mus, -a, -um, <i>highest, top of</i>                                  | (summit)      |
| ulte'rior, ulte'rius, <i>farther</i> ; ul'timus, -a, -um, <i>farthest</i> | (ultimate)    |

#### 419. Irregular Adjectives Compared

In English, certain adjectives in common use are compared irregularly, such as *good, better, best*; *bad, worse, worst*.

In Latin, the following adjectives, among others, are compared irregularly and should be memorized:

| POSITIVE                            | COMPARATIVE                             | SUPERLATIVE                             |
|-------------------------------------|---|---|
| bonus, -a, -um<br>( <i>good</i> )   | melior, melius<br>( <i>better</i> )     | optimus, -a, -um<br>( <i>best</i> )     |
| malus, -a, -um<br>( <i>bad</i> )    | peior, peius<br>( <i>worse</i> )        | pessimus, -a, -um<br>( <i>worst</i> )   |
| magnus, -a, -um<br>( <i>large</i> ) | maior, maius<br>( <i>larger</i> )       | maximus, -a, -um<br>( <i>largest</i> )  |
| parvus, -a, -um<br>( <i>small</i> ) | minor, minus<br>( <i>smaller</i> )      | minimus, -a, -um<br>( <i>smallest</i> ) |
| multus, -a, -um<br>( <i>much</i> )  | —, plūs <sup>1</sup><br>( <i>more</i> ) | plūrimus, -a, -um<br>( <i>most</i> )    |

**Exercise.** — Find English derivatives of the above words.

#### 420. Irregular Adverbs Compared

Adverbs formed from the above adjectives are compared, in general, according to the rule (407); irregularities not explained by reference to the corresponding adjective forms are underscored and should be noted carefully:

---

<sup>1</sup> Gen. plūris; there is no masculine and feminine singular, and no dative in any gender; the plural is plūrēs, plūra, gen., plūrium, etc. See 651.

| POSITIVE                      | COMPARATIVE                     | SUPERLATIVE                     |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <b>bēnē</b> ( <i>well</i> )   | <b>melius</b> ( <i>better</i> ) | <b>optimē</b> ( <i>best</i> )   |
| <b>malē</b> ( <i>badly</i> )  | <b>peius</b> ( <i>worse</i> )   | <b>pessimē</b> ( <i>worst</i> ) |
| —                             | <b>magis</b> ( <i>more</i> )    | <b>maximē</b> ( <i>most</i> )   |
| —                             | <b>minus</b> ( <i>less</i> )    | <b>minimē</b> ( <i>least</i> )  |
| <b>multum</b> ( <i>much</i> ) | <b>plūs</b> ( <i>more</i> )     | <b>plūrimum</b> ( <i>most</i> ) |

**Note.**—Certain other irregular adjectives and adverbs occur less frequently in the comparative and superlative forms and have accordingly been omitted from the list to be memorized. A few will be introduced as vocabulary words in the form in which they most frequently occur.

**421. Extrēmus and Summus.**—In English, it is necessary to employ nouns to translate adjectives like **extrēmus** and **summus**: **in extrēmā ōrātiōne**, *at the end of the speech*; **summus mōns**, *top of the mountain* (cf. **reliquī militēs**, *rest of the soldiers*; **in mediō flūmine**, *in the middle of the river*). When thus used the adjective commonly precedes its noun.

## 422.

## Exercises

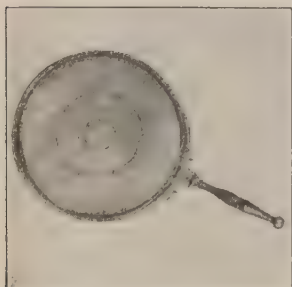


FIG. 83. A ROMAN MIRROR

Mirrors were made of silver and other polished metals.

**Oral.** 1. Nōne spērās proximam hiemem nōn futūram esse dūriōrem quam hanc? 2. Optimī cīvēs patriam semper fortissimē dēfendent. 3. Pessimī hominēs in ultimās regiōnēs mitti dēbent. 4. Rōmānī ad inferiōrem partem flūminis ab extrēmīs Galliae finibus iter facient. 5. Summus mōns ā nostrīs facillimē occupātus est. 6. Hostēs magis territī sunt quod Rōmānōs cum maximā celeritātē ad castra prōcessūrōs esse putāvērunt. 7. Rōmānī cum maiōre salūte pugnābant quod plūrimī eōrum meliōra arma quam Gallī habēbant.

*Written.* 1. He said that boys and girls ought to read the best books. 2. Can a horse run more swiftly than a man? 3. We shall do this very quickly and well. 4. Our men fought more bravely than the enemy. 5. The smallest boy is not always the worst.

### 423. English Word Studies

A number of English words preserve the forms of the comparative and superlative of Latin irregular adjectives: *major* (cf. *mayor*), *maximum*, *minor*, *minus*, *minimum*, *plus*, *nonplus*, *inferior*, *superior*, *ulterior*, *prior*, *anterior*, *posterior*, *interior*, *exterior*, *junior*, *senior*.

### 424. A "PYRRHIC VICTORY"

Pyrrhus, rēx Epīrī, ā Tarentīnīs in Italiam vocātus est, quī eō tempore cum Rōmānīs pugnābant. Is ad Italiam vēnit et elephantōrum auxiliō vīcit, quod Rōmānī elephantōs nōn antea vīsōs timuērunt. Sed multī Pyrrhī militēs interfectī sunt. Pyrrhus, ubi omnia corpora Rōmānōrum interfectōrum vulnera in fronte habere vīdit, haec verba fēcīt: "Cum tālibus (*such*) militibus tōtum orbem (*earth*) vincere possum!" Amīcīs dē victōriā agentibus dīxit: "Sī iterum eōdem modō vīcerō, nullōs militēs in Ēpīrum redūcam."



FIG. 84. PYRRHUS



## LESSON LXXIV

### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD: PRESENT TENSE OF THE SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

#### 425.

#### Vocabulary

|  |                             |
|--|-----------------------------|
| crūdē'lis, -e, <i>cruel</i>  | (cruelty)                   |
| dam'nō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, <i>condemn</i>                       | (condemnation)              |
| exstin'guō, -ere, -stin'xī, -stīnc'tus, <i>extinguish, destroy</i> | { <i>stinguō, put out</i> } |
| fal'lō, -ere, fefel'li, fal'sus, <i>deceive</i>                    | (fallacy)                   |
| lū'men, lū'minis, n., <i>light</i>                                 | (luminous)                  |
| nē, conj., <i>not, that not, lest</i> (with subjunctive)           |                             |
| prehen'dō, -ere, -hen'dī, -hēn'sus, <i>grasp, take hold of</i>     | (comprehension)             |
| tri'buō, -ere, tri'buī, tribū'tus, <i>bestow, grant</i>            | (contribute)                |

#### 426.

#### Use of the Subjunctive

Thus far every sentence in this book has either stated a fact or asked a question, and the indicative mood has been used. We shall now study sentences which do not state facts but have **modal** force. In English, various auxiliaries, such as *let, may, might, should*, are used to express this force, just as other auxiliaries are used to indicate tense. Yet occasionally we use a separate verb form, called the **subjunctive**; e.g. we may say, *If this **be** true* (subjunctive), or *If this **should be** true* (auxiliary). At one time English had a complete set of subjunctive forms, but the subjunctive is now little used. We still prefer, however, to say, *If this **were** (subjunctive) true, my friend would not come here any more*, instead of *If this **was** (indicative) true, my friend would not come here any more*.

In Latin, the subjunctive is freely used to express modal ideas and even, under certain conditions, to state facts. It is differentiated from the indicative by its signs, which are added to the various stems.

## 427.

## Present Tense

The mood sign of the **present subjunctive** in the second, third, and fourth conjugations is **-ā-**. This is added directly to the present stem, with the resultant loss of the short stem vowel (ĕ) of the third conjugation and the shortening of the long stem vowels of the second and fourth.<sup>1</sup> The subjunctive has the same personal endings as the indicative. Learn the present subjunctive of the following model verbs:

| ACTIVE                       |   | PASSIVE  |            |
|------------------------------|---|--|------------|
| ha'be <b>am</b> <sup>2</sup> | habeā'mus   | ha'be <b>ar</b>  | habeā'mur  |
| ha'be <b>ās</b>              | habeā'tis   | habeā'ris  | habeā'minī |
| ha'be <b>at</b>              | ha'beant  | habeā'tur  | habean'tur |
| pōn-                         | <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">ACTIVE</div><br/> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">-am, -ās, -at; -ā'mus, -ā'tis, -ant</div> </div> | <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">PASSIVE</div><br/> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">-ar, -ā'ris, -ā'tur; -ā'mur, -ā'minī, -an'tur</div> </div> |            |
| capi-                        |   |  |            |
| mūni-                        |   |  |            |

**Note.** — The verb **ferō** (395) is regular in the subjunctive.

**428. Drill.** — Form the present subjunctive, active and passive, of **teneō**, **agō**, **ferō**, **efficiō**, and **sentiō**.

## 429.

## Volitive Subjunctive

**Patriam dēfendimus**, *We are defending the country.*

**Patriam dēfendāmus**, *Let us defend the country.*

**Patriam nōn dēfendit**, *He is not defending the country.*

**Patriam nē dēfendat**, *Let him not defend the country.*

**Observe** (a) that we translate the subjunctive by *let*; (b) that the mood idea is that of *will*, hence called **volitive** (Latin **volō**, *I will*); (c) that the negative is **nē**.

<sup>1</sup> A vowel before another vowel is short (608).

<sup>2</sup> The translation of subjunctive forms varies with the use and must be determined by the context.

## 430.

## Exercises

*Orāl.* 1. Lūmen exstinguāmus et excēdāmus. 2. Audi-  
ātur etiam altera pars. 3. Semper optimōs ūtilissimōsque  
librōs retineāmus. 4. Ubi nunc crūdēlissimus rēx, ab  
omnibus populis damnātus, habitat? 5. Hic homō, ā  
vigiliīs prehēnsus, ad supplicium quod meret rapiātur.  
6. Mūnera pessimīs hominibus nē tribuāmus. 7. Sī pecū-  
niam meam neutrī illōrum hominum mandābō, nōn fallar.

*Written.* 1. Let us not be deceived by the opinions of  
others. 2. Why don't you go-away? Why do you stick  
in the same place? 3. Let the condemned men be sent  
across the sea. 4. Let us realize that men of all kinds live  
on this earth. 5. After spending nine years in leisure,  
you ought to think more about your duties.

## 431.

## Phrases and Quotations

nē plūs ultrā, *nothing more beyond* (i.e. *nothing finer*).

Stet, *Let it stand* (printers' term).

In hōc signō vincēs, *In this sign you will conquer* (motto of the first  
Christian emperor, Constantine).

Labor omnia vincit, *Work overcomes everything* (Virgil).

ad maiōrem Deī glōriam, *to the greater glory of God*.

Spērō meliōra, *I hope for better things*.

ē plūribus ūnum, *one from many* (find this on a U. S. coin).



FIG. 85. A COIN OF THE EMPEROR AUGUSTUS (27 B.C.-14 A.D.)

## LESSON LXXV

### PURPOSE CLAUSES WITH *UT* AND *NĒ*

#### 432. Vocabulary

|   |                      |
|---|----------------------|
| aes'timō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, <i>estimate, value</i> (in money) | [aes, bronze, money] |
| *ars, ar'tis, f., <i>skill, art</i>                               | (artistic)           |
| cōnspi'ciō, -ere, -spe'xī, -spec'tus, <i>catch sight of, see</i>  | [speciō, look]       |
| e'mō, -ere, ē'mī, ĕmp'tus, <i>get, buy</i>                        |                      |
| red'imō, -ere, redē'mī, redēmp'tus, <i>buy back, ransom</i>       | (redemption)         |
| flu'ō, -ere, flū'xī, flū'xus, <i>flow</i>                         | (fluency)            |
| in'cidō, -ere, in'cidī, —, <i>fall into or upon, happen</i>       | [cadō]               |
| pen'dō, -ere, pepen'dī, pēn'sus, <i>hang, weigh, pay</i>          | (pendant)            |
| ut, conj., <i>in order that, that, so that</i>                    |                      |

#### 433. Purpose Clauses

Venimus ut videāmus, *We come that we may see, or We come to see.*  
 Fugit nē videātur, *He flees that he may not be seen.*

Observe that (a) the subordinate verbs **videāmus** and **videātur** express the purpose of the preceding acts;

(b) the conjunction **ut** introduces the positive clause and **nē** the negative;

(c) in *English* the more common way of expressing purpose is by use of the *infinitive*, which is *never* so used in *Latin* prose writers.

**434. Rule.** — *The subjunctive is used in a subordinate clause with ut (negative nē) to express the purpose of the act in the principal clause.*

#### 435. Exercises

*Oral.* 1. Hunc ūtilissimum librum emam ut semper teneam. 2. Magister docuit libertātem esse mātrem artium omnium. 3. Crūdēlī dominō magnam pecūniam pendam ut hunc humilem servum redimam. 4. Reliquī milītēs ācrius pugnāvērunt quod nostrās cōpiās in summō

monte cōspexerant. 5. Hunc equum minōre pecūniā ēmī quam aestimāveram. 6. Hoc nunc facimus nē ab aliīs postea impediāmur. 7. Per illam terram fluunt decem flūmina quae in mare incidunt.

(Caution. — *Think of the meaning of every infinitive before you translate.*)

*Written.* 1. He will send money to pay for (**prō**) the books. 2. Do you think it is better to be thrown into the river than to fall-in? 3. He labors swiftly and with much skill to complete the work. 4. We ought to come-together and consult that we may not be surprised by the enemy. 5. From the-top-of the mountain I caught-sight-of a very beautiful river, which flowed into the sea.

#### 436. Latin Abbreviations Used in English

*etc., et cētera, and the rest, and so forth.*

*et al., et alii, and others; or et alibi, and elsewhere.*

*s. v., sub vōce, under the word (e.g. "Look s. v. . . . in the dictionary").*

*ult., ultimō mēse, last month (e.g. "the 26th ult.").*

*prox., proximō mēse, next month.*



FIG. 86. CAST OF A SLAVE AT POMPEII

The slave was guarding his master's treasures when suffocated by the ashes (cf. Fig. 18). As the body decayed the ashes formed a perfect mold which the excavators filled with plaster.

## LESSON LXXVI

### SUBJUNCTIVE: PRESENT TENSE OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION AND OF *SUM*. TENSE SEQUENCE

#### 437. Vocabulary

|   |                          |
|---|--------------------------|
| a'lō, -ere, a'lui, a'litus, <i>feed, nourish</i>                            | [ <i>altus</i> ]         |
| ascen'dō, -ere, ascen'di, ascēn'sus, <i>climb up, ascend</i>                | [ <i>scandō, climb</i> ] |
| com'pleō, -ē're, -plē'vī, -plē'tus, <i>fill up</i>                          | [ <i>pleō, fill</i> ]    |
| cōnsti'tuō, -ere, -sti'tui, -stitū'tus, <i>set up, establish, determine</i> | [ <i>statuō</i> ]        |
| intel'legō, -ere, -lē'xī, -lēc'tus, <i>understand</i>                       | (intellect)              |
| potes'tās, potestā'tis, f., <i>power, authority, chance</i>                 | [ <i>possum</i> ]        |
| *tes'tis, tes'tis, m., <i>witness</i>                                       | (testify)                |
| vol'vō, -ere, vol'vī, volū'tus, <i>roll</i>                                 | (revolution)             |

#### 438. Present Subjunctive: First Conjugation

The mood sign of the present subjunctive in the first conjugation is *-ē-*, not *-ā-* as in the other conjugations. It could not be *-ā-* because there would be no difference in form between indicative and subjunctive.

| ACTIVE |          | PASSIVE  |           |
|--------|----------|----------|-----------|
| pa'rem | parē'mus | pa'rer   | parē'mur  |
| pa'rēs | parē'tis | parē'ris | parē'mini |
| pa'ret | pa'rent  | parē'tur | paren'tur |

439. Drill. — Give the present subjunctive, active and passive, of *spectō, rogō, timeō, volvō, iudicō, sciō, ferō*.

#### 440. Present Subjunctive of *Sum*

|     |        |
|-----|--------|
| sim | sī'mus |
| sīs | sī'tis |
| sit | sint   |

a. Drill. — Give the present subjunctive of *possum*.



### 441. Tense Sequence (Harmony)

We have learned that the tense of a participle or an infinitive in English and Latin is determined by its time relation to the leading verb (361, 384). How the infinitive and indicative differ in tense has been shown in 383. In English and Latin, the subordinate verbs in the indicative and subjunctive shift their tenses to match those of the main verb. Study the following examples:

- |     |  |
|-----|--|
|     | 1. <i>He is said to be at home.</i>              |
|     | 2. <i>He was said to be at home.</i>             |
| But | 1. <i>They say that he is at home.</i>           |
|     | 2. <i>They said that he was at home.</i>         |
|     | 1. <i>He { studies } that he may learn.</i>      |
|     | 2. <i>He { will study } that he might learn.</i> |
|     | 2. <i>He studied that he might learn.</i>        |

### 442. Exercises

*Oral.* 1. Hacc omnia explicābimus ut omnēs intelligātis et parātī sītis. 2. (Is) multōs timēre dēbet quem multī timent. 3. Convenimus ut testēs adhibeāmus et dē factīs pessimī hominis iūdicēmus. 4. Permōtī potestāte auctōritāteque testis, minimā poenā pessimum hominem affēcērunt. 5. Maximās nāvēs frūmentō complent ut id in Eurōpam trānsportent, ubi multī populī eō alentur. 6. Miles, vulnere acceptō, pedēs regere nōn potuit et praeceps in mare volūtus est.<sup>1</sup> 7. Ducēs convocātī dē periculō cōsulunt et nāvēs ascendere<sup>2</sup> cōstituunt nē ab hostibus intercipientur.

*Written.* 1. I am sending him to find my brother.  
2. We fight bravely so-as-not-to be conquered by the enemy.

<sup>1</sup> *Tumbled.*

<sup>2</sup> What is the English idiom?

3. We shall come to look-at your new wagon. 4. We shall fill the wagon with grain to feed the horses. 5. If you will stop in the middle (of the) street, I shall climb into the wagon.



FIG. 87. PUERI ET PUELLAE LŪDUNT

On the left is a game of marbles — with apples for marbles. More often nuts were used. On the right is a game of handball.

#### 443.

#### English Word Studies

In two earlier lessons (126, 128) we saw how many English words are simply the base of a Latin noun, adjective, or verb, or the base plus silent *-e*. A great many such words are derived from the Latin words in this book. A few are *par*, *facile*, *prime*, *just*, *cede*, *part*. In the case of verbs, the base of the present indicative, present participle, or perfect participle, or of all three, may furnish an English word: *convene*, *convenient*, *convent*; *remove*, *remote*; *refer*, *relate*.

As previously noted, there are sometimes changes in the base, *e.g.* the dropping of one of two final consonants, as in *remit*, *expel*, and particularly the addition of a vowel to the main vowel of the word, as in the following (the added vowel is underscored): *peace*, *mount*, *reign*, *remain*. *Contain*, *retain*, etc. are from the compounds of *teneō*. The compounds of *cede* are spelled in the same way as the simple verb (*accede*, *precede*, *concede*, *recede*, *intercede*, *secede*), except *proceed*, *succeed*, and *exceed*.

**Exercise.** — Find fifteen more words illustrating the above principles.

## LESSON LXXVII

SUBJUNCTIVE: IMPERFECT OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS,  
SUM, POSSUM, AND FERŌ. SEQUENCE IN PURPOSE CLAUSES

### 444. Vocabulary

|  |                |
|--|----------------|
| af'ferō, affer're, at'tulī, allā'tus, <i>bring (to or against), report</i>             | [ferō]         |
| benefi'cium, -ī, n., <i>kindness</i>   | [bene + faciō] |
| con'trahō, -ere, -trā'xī, -trāc'tus, <i>draw or bring together,</i><br><i>contract</i> | [trahō]        |
| crī'men, crī'minis, n., <i>charge</i>  | [cernō]        |
| dēpō'nō, -ere, -pō'suī, -pō'situs, <i>put or lay aside</i>                             | [pōnō]         |
| fun'dō, -ere, fū'dī, fū'sus, <i>pour, rout, scatter</i>                                | (confusion)    |
| īsig'nis, -e, <i>remarkable, notable</i>   | [signum]       |
| vir'tūs, virtū'tis, f., <i>manliness, courage</i>                                      | [vir]          |

### 445. Word Formation

Certain Latin suffixes had such broad or weakened meanings that their chief value consisted in furnishing means for forming new words. It is helpful to be familiar with them so as to be able to recognize the roots to which they are attached. They have no further value in English. Examples are :

-men: lū-men, flū-men (fluō). nō-men (nōscō), volū-men (volvō),  
ag-men (agō)  
-ium: iūdic-ium, cōnsil-ium (cōsulō), benefic-ium  
-tūs: vir-tūs

### 446. Imperfect Subjunctive

The imperfect subjunctive of verbs of all conjugations, regular and irregular, may be readily obtained by adding the personal endings to the present active infinitive, as follows:

## ACTIVE

## PASSIVE

parā'rem    parārē'mus

parā'rer    parārē'mur

parā'rēs    parārē'tis

parārē'ris    parārē'minī

parā'ret    parā'rent

parārē'tur    parāren'tur

Similarly habērem, habērer; pōnerem, pōnerer; caperem, caperer; mūnīrem, mūnīrer; essem; possem; ferrem, ferrer.

## 447. Tense Sequence (Harmony) in Purpose Clauses

There are no future tenses in the subjunctive. To remedy this defect, the present and imperfect tenses, in addition to their regular uses, have a future force. In dependent purpose clauses the *present* subjunctive is used when the main verb is *present* or *future*; the *imperfect* subjunctive is used when the main verb is *past* (i.e. imperfect, perfect, or past perfect); e.g.

1. Venīmus ut videāmus, *We come that we may see.*
2. Vēnimus ut viderēmus, *We came that we might see.*

## 448.

## Exercises

*Oral.* 1. Vēra potestās sōlā virtūte emitur. 2. Omnēs nāvēs ē finitimīs regiōnibus in ūnum locum coāctae contrāctaeque sunt ut parātae essent. 3. Quō modō poterimus dēpōnere memoriā illius crūdēlis bellī? 4. Hoc crīmen in (*against*) amīcum vestrum allātum est ut poenam prō malīs factis penderet. 5. Ubi nūntiātum est ēgregium auctōrem pervēnisse, labōrem intermīsimus ut ōrātiōnem eius audīrēmus. 6. Fundere aquam in flūmen nōn ūtilius est quam portāre māteriam in silvam. 7. Multa insignia beneficia ab eōdem amīcō accēpī, sed nūllum maius est quam hoc ultimum. 8. Frātrī meō pecūniam mīsī ut librōs novōs emere posset. 9. Ob maximā virtūtem et insignem artem hic vir plūrima praemia accēpit.

*Written.* 1. After the enemy had been routed, the general led his soldiers back to camp. 2. After a severe winter we can expect a similar summer. 3. We sent a messenger to intercept our friend and to show him the way. 4. What is more pleasing than to lay-aside cares? 5. The leaders of many nations assembled to prevent war and enforce (*cōfirmō*) peace.

## 449.

## PYRRHUS AND FABRICIUS

Lēgātī Rōmānī ad Pyrrhum missī sunt ut captīvōs redimerent et ab eō bene acceptī sunt. Ūnus ex lēgātīs Rōmānōrum, Fabricius, Pyrrhō maximē grātus erat. Eī Pyrrhus sēcrētō dīxit: “Cūr nōn in Ēpīrō manēs? Quārtam rēgnī meī partem tibi (*to you*) dabō.” Sed contemptus<sup>1</sup> est ā Fabriciō. Proximō annō Fabricius missus est ut cum Pyrrhō pugnāret. Medicus rēgis nocte ad eum vēnit et prōmīsit sē (*he*) prō praemiō Pyrrhum interfectūrum esse. Fabricius iussit hunc ligātum reducī ad dominum et Pyrrhō omnia dīcī. Tum rēx maximē mōtus dīxit: “Ille est Fabricius, quī nōn facilius ab honestāte quam sōl ā cursū suō āvertī potest!”



FIG. 88. A SHOP IN POMPEII AS IT IS

<sup>1</sup> Cf. *contemnō*.

## LESSON LXXVIII

### PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS. POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES

**ELEMENTARY GRAMMAR:** Review *Personal pronouns*, **615, a**; *Possessive adjectives*, **616, b, 3**.

450.

#### Vocabulary

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| cae'dō, -ere, cecī'dī, cae'sus, <i>cut, kill</i>                       | (incision)   |
| con'trā, adv. and prep. with acc., <i>against</i>                      |              |
| crē'dō, -ere, crē'didī, crē'ditus, <i>believe, intrust</i> (with dat.) | (credit)     |
| cre'ō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, <i>create, elect</i>                      | (creative)   |
| gubernā'tor, gubernātō'ris, m., <i>pilot, governor</i>                 | (government) |
| prae, prep. with abl., <i>before, in front of</i>                      |              |
| sū'mō, -ere, sūmp'sī, sūmp'tus, <i>take, assume</i>                    | (assumption) |
| tem'perō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, <i>regulate, refrain</i> (from)        |              |
| (with ab)  | (temperance) |



FIG. 89. A SHOP IN POMPEII AS IT WAS

Like Fig. 88, this shows a place for the sale of food and drink.



### 451. How Personal Pronouns Are Used

In English, personal pronouns are used to indicate the person of the verb: *I* am, *you* are. In Latin, as we have seen (20), personal endings perform this function. When, however, emphasis or sharp contrast in subjects is desired, the Latin employs the personal pronouns **ego** (*I*) and **tū** (*you*). We have already seen that **is**, **ea**, **id** serves as the personal pronoun of the third person (*he, she, it*). Review **is** (341) and memorize the declensions of **ego** and **tū**:

|      | SINGULAR                                | PLURAL                                      |
|------|---|---|
| Nom. | <b>e'go</b> , <i>I</i>                  | <b>nōs</b> , <i>we</i>                      |
| Gen. | <b>me'i</b> , <i>of me</i>              | <b>nos'trum</b> , <i>of us</i>              |
| Dat. | <b>mi'hi</b> , <i>to (for) me</i>       | <b>nō'bīs</b> , <i>to (for) us</i>          |
| Acc. | <b>mē</b> , <i>me</i>                   | <b>nōs</b> , <i>us</i>                      |
| Abl. | <b>mē</b> , <i>with (from, etc.) me</i> | <b>nō'bīs</b> , <i>with (from, etc.) us</i> |

|      | SINGULAR                                 | PLURAL                                       |
|------|--|--|
| Nom. | <b>tū</b> , <i>you</i>                   | <b>vōs</b> , <i>you</i>                      |
| Gen. | <b>tu'i</b> , <i>of you</i>              | <b>ves'trum</b> , <i>of you</i>              |
| Dat. | <b>ti'bi</b> , <i>to (for) you</i>       | <b>vō'bīs</b> , <i>to (for) you</i>          |
| Acc. | <b>tē</b> , <i>you</i>                   | <b>vōs</b> , <i>you</i>                      |
| Abl. | <b>tē</b> , <i>with (from, etc.) you</i> | <b>vō'bīs</b> , <i>with (from, etc.) you</i> |

### 452. Reflexive Pronouns

In English, the pronouns *myself*, *ourselves*, etc. may be used in apposition with a noun or pronoun for emphasis, like Latin **ipse** (352): **I saw him *myself*, *Ipse eum vidī***. They are also used alone as objects of verbs or of prepositions to refer to the subject of the verb; they are then called **reflexive pronouns**: ***I saw myself***.

In Latin, the personal pronouns of the first and second persons may be used reflexively, but in the third person

Latin has a special reflexive pronoun, **suī**, declined alike in the singular and plural:

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Gen. <b>su'ī</b> ,                                | <i>of himself, herself, itself, themselves</i> |
| Dat. <b>si'bi</b> ,                               | <i>to " " " "</i>                              |
| Acc. <b>sē (sē'sē)</b> ,                          | <i>" " " "</i>                                 |
| Abl. <b>sē (sē'sē)</b> , <i>with (from, etc.)</i> | <i>" " " "</i>                                 |

Query. — Why is **suī** without a nominative?

#### 453. How Reflexive Pronouns Are Used

|  |  |
|--|--|
| (ego) <b>mē rogō</b> , <i>I ask myself</i>     | (nōs) <b>nōs rogāmus</b> , <i>we ask ourselves</i>   |
| (tū) <b>tē rogās</b> , <i>you ask yourself</i> | (vōs) <b>vōs rogātis</b> , <i>you ask yourselves</i> |
| (is) <b>sē rogat</b> , <i>he asks himself</i>  | (eī) <b>sē rogant</b> , <i>they ask themselves</i>   |

454. Drill. — Give a synopsis with the reflexive of **damnō**, 1st sing. ; **fallō**, 2nd plur. ; **caedō**, 3rd sing.

#### 455. Possessive Adjectives

From the base of **ego** (**me-**), **nōs** (**nostr-**), **tū** (**tu-**), and **vōs** (**vestr-**), the possessive adjectives **meus**, **noster**, **tuus**, and **vester** are derived.

In place of a possessive adjective of the third person, the genitives of **is** (**eius** and **eōrum**) are used, as we have seen (342).

From **suī** we get the reflexive adjective **suus**, **-a**, **-um**, *his own*, etc., which *always refers to the subject of the verb*.

The possessive adjectives follow the noun except when emphatic.

Caution. — Never use the genitives **meī**, **tuī**, **nostrum**, **vestrum**, and **suī** to show possession; use the corresponding possessive adjectives **meus**, **tuus**, **noster**, **vester**, and **suus**.

Query. — What is the difference between **tuus** and **vester**?

**456. Rapid-fire Drill.** — *Translate:* my books, your books, his books; to our book, to your book, to their book; with his own book, with my book, with her book.

**457.****Exercises**

*Oral.* 1. Captīvus sē suaque omnia mihi crēdidit. 2. Militēs quī prae sē equōs agēbant, hostibus vīsīs, cōnstitērunt. 3. Gubernātor, sedēns in nāvī, eius celeritātem temperat et postea eam ad terram vertet. 4. Crēditisne Deum mare terramque prō sē aut prō nōbīs creāvisse? 5. Videō tē eum cecīdisse; quō modō hoc fēcistī? 6. Arma sūmpsimus ut nōs dēfenderēmus contrā crūdēlissimōs hostēs. 7. Ego, quī sum puer, sum fortior quam tū, quae es puella; sed tū pulchrior es quam ego.

*Written.* 1. Do you believe that either he or I took your money? 2. If he kills (*future*) himself, I shall throw myself into the river. 3. I know that he has four brothers because I saw them myself. 4. If you will refrain from injury, we also shall abandon our hostile plans. 5. The general himself sent the prisoners before him one-by-one to prevent danger.

**458.****Latin Phrases in English**

**alter ego.** "another I," a second self, a dear friend.

**inter nōs,** between us.

**Et tū, Brūte, You too, Brutus!** (said by Caesar on receiving the death-blow from his friend, Brutus).

**Tē Deum,** Thee, God (*we praise*); the name of a hymn.

**Pāx vōbiscum,** Peace (*be*) with you!

**per sē,** by itself.

**sui generis,** of its own kind, i.e. unique.



FIG. 90. "ET TŪ, BRŪTE"  
Caesar's murder in the Senate, 44 B.C. (From "Julius Caesar.")

## LESSON LXXIX

### REVIEW

#### 459. Indirect Statement : General Review

1. The following verbs, already studied, are used to introduce indirect statements. Review their meanings and quote the rule (see 378) :

cōfirmō, iūdicō, nūntiō, putō, spērō ; memoriā teneō, respondeō, videō ; cognōscō, crēdō, dicō, intellegō, scribō ; audiō, inveniō, referō, sciō, sentiō.

#### Summary

##### *In Latin*

- (a) No conjunction is used.
- (b) The subject is in the accusative.
- (c) The verb is in the infinitive.

##### *In English*

- (a) "That" is regularly used.
- (b) The subject is in the nominative.
- (c) The verb is in the indicative.

#### 460. Noun and Adjective Review

1. Decline in the singular : nūlla ars ; tōta regiō ; ūnum beneficium ; alia potestās ; solum opus ; neuter socius.

2. Decline in the plural : ūtilior liber ; certius lūmen ; melior testis ; aptissima ōrātiō ; maxima gēns ; crūdēlissimus princeps.

**Remember** that all third declension adjectives are *i*-stems, *i.e.* they have *-ī* in the ablative singular, *-ia* in the neuter nominative and accusative plural, and *-ium* in the genitive plural. *The only exceptions are comparatives, none of which are i-stems.* Present participles are *i*-stems but have *-e* in the ablative singular when used as verbs, not adjectives.

#### 461. Rapid-fire Drill. — *Give in Latin :*

- (a) *more difficult* in the nom., sing. and plur.
- (b) *most beautiful* in the gen., sing. and plur.
- (c) *rather long* in the dat., sing. and plur.
- (d) *very remarkable* in the acc., sing. and plur.
- (e) *too cruel* in the abl., sing. and plur.

462.

## Verb Review

1. Conjugate **aestimō**, **respondeō**, **emō**, and **possum** in the present and imperfect subjunctive.

2. Give the principal parts of **cōficiō**, **intellegō**, **dēferō**, **cōstituō**, **contrahō**, **ascendō**, **fluō**, **repellō**, **pendō**, **dēfendō**, **exstinguō**.

463.

## Rapid-fire Drill

*a.* State **mood**, **tense**, and **voice**: **cōficiēmus**, **ferāmus**, **interficiunt**, **ligāns**, **respondēre**, **victus**, **raptūrus**, **iūdicārī**, **repellimur**, **cecidisse**, **plicābō**, **tribuēbant**, **volvunt**, **sūmpserat**, **creātus erit**, **dēpōnēminī**, **aestimāverō**, **flūxit**, **cōspicēris**, **ascendentur**.

*b.* Give in **Latin**: to cut, to have caught sight of, to be hung, to have been condemned, to be going to drive back, having been filled.

464.

## Vocabulary Review

Give the Latin words and their meanings, together with genitive and gender of nouns, principal parts of verbs, etc., suggested by the following English derivatives:

*accident, appropriate, artistic, complete, conditional, conference, conspicuous, credible, damnation, deposit, extinct, fallacious, gubernatorial, implicate, incisor, instructive, ligature, opera, prehensile, profuse, proximity, rapture, regional, redemptive, repulsive, revolve, tribute, victor, virtuous.*

465.

## English Word Studies

Find and use in sentences as many English derivatives as possible from **nāvigō**, **doceō**, **timeō**, **vincō**, **sūmō**.

Enter the derivatives in your notebook, using a separate page for each Latin word.



466. THE STORY OF LUCIUS (*Cont.*)**Caesaris Triumphus**

Quondam pater Lūcī ā Forō revertit et dixit triumphum Caesaris futūrum esse et posteā magnōs lūdōs. C.<sup>1</sup> Iūlius



FIG. 91. C. IŪLIUS CAESAR

Caesar tum erat maximus Rōmānōrum. Galliam, Alexandriam, Pontum, Āfricam vīcerat. Decem annōs in Galliā ēgerat et, multis gentibus pulsīs, illam terram in prōvinciam Rōmānam redēgerat. Pompeius, cum Caesare prō summā potestāte contendēns, in fugam datus erat. Tum Caesar in Aegyptum prōcesserat et, Ale-

xandrinīs fūsīs, Cleopātrae nōmen rēgīnae Aegyptiōrum dederat. In Asiā rēgem Pontī celeriter vīcerat et dē eius rēgnō nōtās illās litterās mīserat in quibus erant sōla verba, "Vēnī, vīdī, vīcī." Nunc futūrī erant quattuor triumphī, quod Caesar dē bellīs reverterat.

**WAITING**

Lūcius numquam triumphum vīderat et dē eō multa rogāvit. Pater eī dixit triumphum esse similem pompae in Circō habitae et Caesarem per Circum et Sacram Viam prōcessūrum esse et Capitōlium ascēnsūrum. Lūcius permōtus vix exspectāre poterat. Sed omnia ad eum quī exspectat veniunt; tempus triumphōrum aderat. Prīmus et insignissimus triumphus quem Caesar ēgit erat Gallicus. Pater Lūcī cognātus Caesaris erat et optima loca obtinuit. Ubi Caesar in Campō Mārtiō militēs instrūxit et ex praedā collātā eīs praemia tribuit, pompa tardē prōcēdere incipit.

---

<sup>1</sup> C. = Gāius.

“HERE THEY COME!”

Post longum tempus (ut Lūciō vīsum est) pompa aderat. Primī fuērunt cōsulēs et senātōrēs, post quōs vērērunt cornicinēs, quī Lūciō grātissimī fuērunt. Tum cōspexit titulōs<sup>1</sup> ducum oppidōrumque captōrum cum fōrmis exemplisque<sup>2</sup> oppidōrum. Dē nōminibus nōn nōtis multa rogāvit :



FIG. 92. TRIUMPHUS CAESARIS

Caesar sits on top of the float. Note the *titulī*. (From “Julius Caesar.”)

“Quī sunt Aquītānī? Quī sunt Belgae?” Pater respondit: “Gallia est omnis divīsa<sup>3</sup> in partēs trēs; quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī, tertiam eī quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae.” “Quī sunt Helvētīi?” “Helvētīi cōstituērunt per prōvinciam nostram iter facere ut maiōrēs finēs habērent, sed ā Caesare prohibītī sunt.” “Quis est Ariovistus?” “Ariovistus erat superbus crūdēlisque rēx Germānōrum, ā Caesare ex Galliā expulsus.” “Quī sunt

<sup>1</sup> *Placards* (with names of towns, etc.).

<sup>2</sup> *Models* (of wood, etc.).

<sup>3</sup> From *dividō*. Use derivative.

Germānī?" "Maxima pars Germānōrum trāns Rhēnum flūmen incolunt. Etiam trāns Rhēnum Caesar militēs suōs trādūxit ut cum eīs contenderet." "Quid est Britannia?" "Britannia est ultima īnsula, ā barbarīs culta, in quam Caesar cōpiās bis dūxit."

### HAIL! THE CONQUERING HERO COMES!

Posteā Lūcius cōspexit arma captōrum principum et principēs ipsōs ligātōs, inter quōs erat Vercingetorix. Nunc populus maximē clāmat. "Quis est ille?" rogat Lūcius. Pater respondet: "Ille est extrēmus dux Gallōrum, quī victōs Gallōs ad bellum permōvit. Pompā ad Capitōlium accēdente, interficiētur." Nunc clāmōrēs audiuntur: "Caesar adest! Caesar adest!" Currus imperātōris, quattuor equīs trāctus, cernitur. Caesar ipse togam pictam<sup>1</sup> gerit et scēptrum tenet. In currū<sup>2</sup> stat servus corōnam super Caesaris caput tenēns. Sed subitō omnēs terrentur: axe frāctō, Caesar paene ē currū ēicitur. Hic sōlus nōn commōtus est. Dum novum currum exspectat, Lūcium cōspicit et eum rogat: "Tū, quis es?" Lūcius respondet: "Ego sum Lūcius Iūlius, cognātus tuus. Miles erō et multās gentēs vincam." Caesar rīdēns eius caput tetigit et dixit: "Bene incipis. Putō tē imperātōrem futūrum esse." Pompa rūsus prōcēdit et nunc lēgātī et militēs Caesaris accēdunt, clāmantēs, "Iō triumphe,<sup>3</sup> Iō triumphe!" Etiam carmina canunt. Inter alia Lūcius intellegere potest haec:

"Ecce Caesar nunc triumphat quī subēgit Galliās." Itaque omnēs discēdunt, Lūciō clāmante, "Iō triumphe! Iō triumphe!"

<sup>1</sup> Embroidered (with gold).

<sup>2</sup> Abl.

<sup>3</sup> Exclamation: *Triumph!*

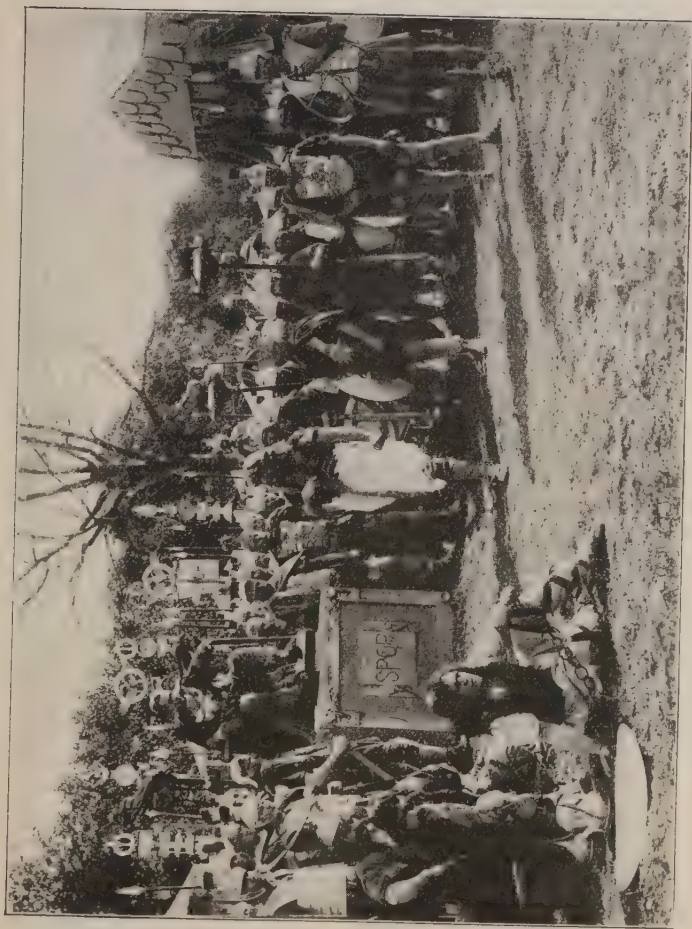


FIG. 93. CAESAR AND VERCINGETORIX. (From "Julius Caesar.")

## LESSON LXXX

### RESULT CLAUSES WITH *UT* AND *UT NŌN*

467.

#### Vocabulary

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| clā'mor, clāmō'ris, m., <i>shout</i>                                       | [clāmō]      |
| i'ta, adv., <i>so, in such a way, thus</i>                                 |              |
| * mors, mor'tis, f., <i>death</i>  | (mortal)     |
| perter'reō, -ē're, -ter'ruī, -ter'ritus, <i>frighten thoroughly, alarm</i> | [terreō]     |
| praemit'tō, -ere, -mī'sī, -mis'sus, <i>send ahead</i>                      | [mittō]      |
| tan'tus, -a, -um, <i>so great</i>  | (tantamount) |
| ti'mor, timō'ris, m., <i>fear</i>  | [timeō]      |
| trā'dō, -ere, trā'didī, trā'ditus, <i>give or hand over, deliver</i>       | [dō]         |

468.

#### Word Studies

**Prae**, when used as a prefix, has its literal meaning *before, in front of*: **praedicō**. In English it takes the form *pre-*, as *pre-pare, pre-fix*. **Contrā** likewise has its literal meaning when used as a prefix. In English it is found in the forms *contra-* and *counter-*, as *contra-dict, counter-act*.

Exercise. — Give ten other examples of each of these prefixes in English words.

The adverbs **bene** and **male** are used as prefixes in Latin and English, as in *bene-diction, male-factor*.

469.

#### Result Clauses

**Tantum est periculum ut pauci veniant**, *So great is the danger that few are coming*.

**Ita bene erant castra mūnita ut nōn capī possent**, *So well had the camp been fortified that it could not be taken*.

Observe that (a) the verbs of the subordinate clauses are in the subjunctive, and that they express the *result* of the state or act described in the main clause;

(b) the tense sequence, or harmony, is the same as in purpose clauses.



**470. Rule.** — *The result of the action of the principal verb is expressed by a subordinate clause with **ut** (negative **ut nōn**) and the subjunctive.*

#### 471. How Purpose and Result Clauses Differ

(a) Result clauses are usually anticipated by such words as **ita** and **tantus**, while purpose clauses are not.

(b) Negative result clauses are introduced by **ut nōn**, negative purpose clauses by **nē**.

(c) In English, result clauses require the indicative; purpose clauses employ the auxiliaries *may* and *might*.

**472. Verbal Signboards.** — Such words as **ita**, **tantus**, etc., used in main clauses to point to subordinate clauses of result, are like signboards, which seem to say, "Stop, Look, Think! A Result Clause Is Coming!"

#### 473. Exercises

*Oral.* 1. Ita agere debemus ut ab omnibus amemur. 2. Puer malus ita pedes suos tetendit ut puerum alterum tangeret. 3. Tantus erat timor populi ut putaret omnes homines esse suos hostes. 4. Hae litterae ita male a te scriptae erant ut eas legere non possemus. 5. Plurimi milites praemissi sunt ut clamoribus hostes perterrerent. 6. Timor mortis est peior quam mors ipsa. 7. Servus crudelis domino se tradidit ne a reliquis servis caederetur.

*Written.* 1. Our soldiers are so brave that they can not be conquered. 2. I sent a friend ahead to warn you about the danger. 3. So loud (great) were the shouts of the boys that we could not hear the famous man's speech. 4. The enemy's soldiers were so close-together that it was easy to kill them. 5. Fortune is so changing that we ought not to intrust everything to her.



## LESSON LXXXI

### ORDINAL NUMERALS. DECLENSION OF *DUO*, *TRĒS*, AND *MILLE*

474.

#### Vocabulary

|   |                  |
|---|------------------|
| cen'tum, indecl. adj., <i>hundred</i>                   | (centennial)     |
| fran'gō, -ere, frē'gī, frāc'tus, <i>break</i>           | (fraction)       |
| perfi'ciō, -ere, -fē'cī, -fec'tus, <i>finish</i>        | [ <i>faciō</i> ] |
| reser'vō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, <i>save up, reserve</i> | [ <i>servō</i> ] |

475.

#### Ordinal Numerals

We have already learned the **cardinal** numbers used in counting from 1-10 (272). To show order or succession other numbers, called **ordinals** (*first, second, etc.*), are used. The Latin ordinals are declined like **magnus**, -a, -um. Memorize the first ten ordinals as follows<sup>1</sup>:

|                                   |                                    |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| pri'mus, -a, -um, <i>first</i>    | sex'tus, -a, -um, <i>sixth</i>     |
| secun'dus, -a, -um, <i>second</i> | sep'timus, -a, -um, <i>seventh</i> |
| ter'tius, -a, -um, <i>third</i>   | octā'vus, -a, -um, <i>eighth</i>   |
| quār'tus, -a, -um, <i>fourth</i>  | nō'nus, -a, -um, <i>ninth</i>      |
| quīn'tus, -a, -um, <i>fifth</i>   | de'cimus, -a, -um, <i>tenth</i>    |

a. Drill. — Suggest and define one English derivative from as many ordinals as possible.

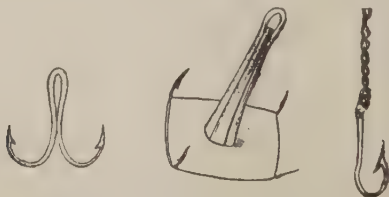


FIG. 94. ROMAN FISH HOOKS

<sup>1</sup> For complete list of cardinals and ordinals, see 653.

476. Declension of *Duo* and *Trēs*

The cardinal numbers from 4 to 100 are indeclinable. We have seen, however, that *ūnus*, -a, -um is declined like *tōtus* (355, b). *Duo*, two, and *trēs*, three, are declined as follows:

|             | M.      | F.      | N.      | M. AND F. | N.      |
|-------------|---------|---------|---------|-----------|---------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | du'o    | du'ae   | du'o    | trēs      | tri'a   |
| <i>Gen.</i> | duō'rum | duā'rum | duō'rum | tri'um    | tri'um  |
| <i>Dat.</i> | duō'bus | duā'bus | duō'bus | tri'bus   | tri'bus |
| <i>Acc.</i> | du'ōs   | du'ās   | du'o    | trēs      | tri'a   |
| <i>Abl.</i> | duō'bus | duā'bus | duō'bus | tri'bus   | tri'bus |

477. Declension and Use of *Mille*

*Mille*, when used to denote one thousand, is usually an indeclinable adjective (like *centum*): *mille hominēs*. When used of two or more thousands, it is a neuter plural i-stem noun (cf. *mare*, 305). The word used with the plural forms of *mille* must be in the genitive: *duo milia hominum* (lit., *two thousands of men*), *two thousand men*.

|             | SINGULAR | PLURAL   |
|-------------|----------|----------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | mīl'le   | mī'lia   |
| <i>Gen.</i> | mīl'le   | mī'lium  |
| <i>Dat.</i> | mīl'le   | mī'libus |
| <i>Acc.</i> | mīl'le   | mī'lia   |
| <i>Abl.</i> | mīl'le   | mī'libus |

## 478. Exercises

- Oral.* 1. Nāvī frāctā, omnēs certē interficientur.  
 2. Duōs bonōs librōs reservābō ut eōs hāc aestāte legam.  
 3. Sī plūrimī puerī aut absunt aut tardī sunt, disciplīnam accipere nōn possunt; certō tempore adesse dēbent.

4. Dux mille nautās et trēs firmās nāvēs cum tribus gubernātōribus praemisit ut hostēs interciperent. 5. Post septimam pugnam nōn iam vim hostium sustinēre poterāmus et eis nōs trādidimus. 6. Properābāmus condiціōnēs pācis prōpōnere, sed hostēs centum mīlia militum iam ēdūxerant. 7. Tertiō annō Belli Magnī mīlitēs ad sociōs nostrōs ita celeriter mittere incēpimus, ut ante finem quīntī annī bellum perficerētur.



FIG. 95. PUELLA

of these seven books is so great that I can not present them to you.

*Written.* 1. All the sailors were saved, although two ships were lost. 2. Anna was fourth in rank but her brother was tenth. 3. Our men finished the march, although pressed-hard by the enemy. 4. The boundaries of two nations extend to the lower part of this river. 5. The price

#### 479.

#### English Word Studies

Much difficulty is caused in English spelling by silent or weakly sounded letters. This difficulty is often solved by referring to the Latin original: *laboratory*, *repetition*, *library*, *separate*, *auxiliary*, *comparative*, *debt*, *complement*, *reign*, *receipt*. The Latin original often helps in other difficulties: *consensus*, *annuity*, *deficit*, *accelerate*.

**Exercise.** — Define the above words and give their Latin originals.

Much confusion is caused in English by the combinations *ei* and *ie*. It will be helpful to remember that the derivatives of compounds of *capiō* have *ei*, as *receive*.

## LESSON LXXXII

### ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT. WORDS OFTEN CONFUSED

480.

#### Vocabulary

|  |                    |
|--|--------------------|
| <i>ae'tās, aetā'tis, f., age, time of life</i>                         | (eternal)          |
| <i>attin'gō, -ere, at'tigī, attāc'tus, touch, reach</i>                | [ <i>tangō</i> ]   |
| <i>distri'buō, -ere, -tri'buī, -tribū'tus, distribute</i>              | [ <i>tribuō</i> ]  |
| <i>exer'ceō, -ē're, -er'cuī, -er'citus, occupy, train</i>              | (exercise)         |
| <i>exis'timō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, think, consider</i>                | [ <i>aestimō</i> ] |
| <i>in'colō, -ere, -co'luī, -cul'tus, dwell, inhabit</i>                | [ <i>colō</i> ]    |
| <i>iun'gō, -ere, iūn'xī, iūnc'tus, join to (with dat. indir. obj.)</i> | (junction)         |
| <i>strin'gō, -ere, strīn'xī, stric'tus, draw tight, graze</i>          | (strict)           |

481.

#### Accusative of Extent

*Duōs annōs remānsit, He remained two years.*

*Flūmen decem pedēs altum est, The river is ten feet deep.*

Observe that (a) *duōs annōs* answers the question, *How long?*

(b) *decem pedēs* answers the question, *How much?*

(c) both express *extent* by the accusative;

(d) the English and Latin constructions are identical and are not to be confused with the direct object.

**482. Rule.** — *Extent of time or space is expressed by the accusative.*

483.

#### Stop! Look! Think!

The following words, which have already been used, closely resemble one another in form or sound and must be carefully discriminated. For difference in meaning, see the Latin-English Vocabulary at the end of the book:

|                            |                             |                     |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------|
| <i>aetās, aestās</i>       | <i>gēns, genus</i>          | <i>ob, ab</i>       |
| <i>accēdō, accidō</i>      | <i>ibi, ubi</i>             | <i>pars, pār</i>    |
| <i>alius, alter, altus</i> | <i>liber, liber, liberi</i> | <i>pōnō, possum</i> |
| <i>caedō, cadō, cēdō</i>   | <i>nē, -ne</i>              | <i>vīs, vir</i>     |
| <i>cīvis, cīvītās</i>      |                             |                     |

## 484.

## Exercises

*Oral.* 1. Existimō hunc montem esse mille pedēs altum, illud flūmen duōs pedēs altum. 2. Pater pecūniam ita



FIG. 96. CATAPULT

Roman artillery consisted in part of catapults which shot arrows. The power was derived from twisted strands of rawhide. (From a model made by a high school boy.)

3. Virī quibuscum<sup>1</sup> contendēbāmus sēsē ita bene dēfendēbant ut eōs commovēre nōn possēmus. 4. Illī hominēs multōs annōs ita in artibus bellī sē exercuērunt<sup>2</sup> ut nunc plūrimum valeant. 5. Ille vir tantam aetātem attigit<sup>2</sup> ut nōn iam vīrēs habeat nec bene vidēre possit. 6. Nāvis, undīs redācta, insulam strīnxit sed ā gubernātōre in altam aquam versa est. 7. Mīlia

multa Germānōrum, quī trāns flūmen Rhēnum incoluerant, pāce factā, Rōmānis sēsē iūnxērunt.

*Written.* 1. My brother will arrive next year and remain with me the whole summer. 2. The letter had been folded with such great care that I did not unfold it. 3. The greater part of the winter we remain in town, but in summer we hasten to the fields. 4. Don't you think that the courage of these men is so great that they will not retreat? 5. Caesar waged war in Gaul for nine years in-such-a-way that all nations gave themselves up to him.

<sup>1</sup> Cum (*with*) becomes an enclitic (120) when used with relative, personal, and reflexive pronouns: **mēcum**, *with me*; **sēcum**, *with himself*.

<sup>2</sup> When the perfect tense has present perfect force (translated with *has* or *have*), it has the same sequence as the present.

485.

## Word Studies

The name *Caesar* has given us several interesting words. As Julius Caesar was the founder of the Roman Empire, his successors kept the name *Caesar* and it soon became a mere title, like *emperor*. Modern imitators of the Caesars adopted it, and as a result we have the words *Kaiser* and *Czar*. Many places were named *Caesarea* in honor of the Caesars. One was an island between France and England, in whose name, *Jersey*, it is not easy to recognize the original form. From *Jersey* we get the name of the garment and that of the state, *New Jersey*.

Many other ancient names have furnished us with interesting words. An "atlas" is so called because it usually has on its cover a picture of *Atlas* supporting the world on his shoulders. "Volcanoes" are named after *Vulcan*, god of fire; "martial" is derived from *Mars*, god of war.

**Exercise.** — Find other examples of English words derived from ancient names.



FIG. 97. ROMAN TEMPLE AT NÎMES, FRANCE

In its fine state of preservation it is a rival of the Greek temple at Paestum (cf. Fig. 6).



## LESSON LXXXIII

### INDIRECT QUESTIONS

#### 486. Vocabulary

|   |               |
|---|---------------|
| ex'igō, -ere, -ē'gī, -āc'tus, drive out, demand         | [agō]         |
| *frōns, fron'tis, f., forehead, front                   | (frontal)     |
| ho'nor, honō'ris, m., honor, office                     | (honest)      |
| interclū'dō, -ere, -clū'sī, -clū'sus, shut off, cut off | [claudō]      |
| occī'dō, -ere, -cī'dī, -cī'sus, kill                    | [caedō]       |
| quae'rō, -ere, quaesi'vī, quaesi'tus, seek, inquire     | (inquisitive) |
| quī'a, conj., because                                   |               |
| vo'veō, -ē're, vō'vī, vō'tus, vow, promise              | (devotion)    |

#### 487. Latin and English Word Formation

We have seen (134) that when a Latin word is compounded with a prefix, a short **a** or **e** is usually changed to short **i**. Similarly, **ae** is changed to long **ī**. From **aestimō** we have **existimō**; from **aequus**, **inīquus**; from **caedō**, **occīdō** (English *incision*, *decisive*, *concise*, etc.). The compounds of **caedō**, with long **ī**, must be carefully distinguished from the compounds of **cadō**, with short **i**.

**Au** is often changed to **ū** in compounds: **accūsō** is from **causa**; **interclūdō** and **exclūdō** are from **claudō** (English *recluse*, etc.).

**Exercise.** — Illustrate these rules by further examples of English derivatives of **caedō**, **quaerō**, **claudō**.

#### 488. Indirect Questions

An **indirect question** is a question *indirectly* quoted or expressed after some introductory verb, such as *ask*, *doubt*, *learn*, *know*, *tell*, *hear*, etc. Examine the following:

1. Quis est? *Who is he?*
2. Rogat quis sit, *He asks who he is.*

Observe that (a) sentence 1 is a simple, *direct* question, and that the Latin verb is in the indicative;

(b) sentence 2 is complex, containing the same question in *indirect* form, reduced to a subordinate clause, and that its verb in the Latin is in the *subjunctive*.

**489. Rule.** — *The verb in an indirect question is in the subjunctive.*

#### 490. How Indirect Questions and Statements Differ

In English, indirect statements are introduced by *that* (expressed or understood); indirect questions, by an interrogative word, such as *who*, *where*, etc.

In Latin, indirect statements are expressed by the infinitive without an introductory word; indirect questions, by the subjunctive with an introductory interrogative.

**491. Tenses.** — The tenses in the following exercises are determined by the rules for sequence, or harmony, explained in **441**, **447**.



FIG. 98. A ROMAN BABY

#### 492.

#### Exercises

*Oral.* 1. Cūr nōn ā magistrō quaeris quis summum honōrem mereat? 2. Rogāsne cūr paucī multōs amīcōs et reliquī nūllōs habeant? 3. Hic puer tibi mōnstrābit ubi amīcus tuus habitet; nam vidēō viam tibi nōn nōtam

esse. 4. Fāma est plūrimōs militēs, ā viā interclūsōs, sē expedīre nōn potuisse et occīsōs esse. 5. Ā nōbīs quaesīvit quō modō sub rēgnō crūdēlis hominis multōs annōs vītam sustinēre possēmus. 6. Vōvistis nōbīs octāvam partem praedae, sed nōs fefellistis. 7. Ē castrīs exāctī, nostrī oppressī sunt quia in fronte flūmine fuga interclūsa est.

*Written.* 1. I do not know who is coming. 2. He doesn't seem<sup>1</sup> to know who's who or what's what. 3. I didn't inquire who lived across the street. 4. We did not understand why he was demanding such-great honors. 5. We realized that we were being led-forth to battle, but fear was not in our hearts.

## 493.

## THE HERO REGULUS

Contrā Carthāginiēnsēs bellum<sup>2</sup> ā Rōmānīs susceptum est. Victī Carthāginiēnsēs pācem ā Rōmānīs petivērunt. Quam<sup>3</sup> Rēgulus, dux Rōmānōrum, dixit sē nōn datūrum esse nisi dūrissimīs condiciōnibus. Itaque Āfrī auxilium ā Lacedaemoniīs petivērunt. Tum Rōmānīs victīs Rēgulus captus est. Sed Carthāginiēnsēs aliīs proeliīs superātī, Rēgulum Rōmam<sup>4</sup> misērunt ut pācem ā Rōmānīs obtinēret et permūtatiōnem captivōrum faceret. Ille ductus in senātum Rōmānum dixit sē esse captivum, nōn iam Rōmānum. Itaque etiam uxōrem ā sē remōvit. Dixit Carthāginiēnsēs, frāctōs multis proeliīs, spem (*hope*) nūllam nisi in pāce habēre; nōn esse ūtile multa mīlia captivōrum propter sē ūnum, aetāte cōnfectum, reddī. Senātus verbis eius permōtus nōn pācem cum hostibus fēcīt. Itaque Rēgulus ad Āfricam nāvigāvit ubi ā Carthāginiēnsibus omnibus suppliciīs occīsus est.

<sup>1</sup> The passive of *videō*, *see*, may have the meaning "seem."

<sup>2</sup> First Punic or Carthaginian War, 264-241 B.C. These wars were for the supremacy of the ancient world. Carthage was in northern Africa.

<sup>3</sup> In Latin, a relative is often used at the beginning of a sentence to connect with the preceding sentence. In English, a demonstrative is used instead. <sup>4</sup> *To Rome.*



FIG. 99. A SCENE IN THE ROMAN SENATE

Note the purple-edged togas of the senators. (From "Julius Caesar.")

## LESSON LXXXIV

### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD: PERFECT AND PAST PERFECT TENSES OF ALL CONJUGATIONS. SEQUENCE

#### 494. Vocabulary

|   |                                      |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| <b>animadver'tō, -ere, -ver'tī, -ver'sus,</b> <i>turn the mind to, notice, punish</i> (with <b>in</b> and acc.) | [ <b>vertō</b> ]                     |
| <b>crēs'cō, -ere, crē'vī, crē'tus,</b> <i>grow, increase</i>  | (crescent)                           |
| <b>dē'serō, -ere, -se'ruī, -ser'tus,</b> <i>desert</i>  | [ <b>serō</b> , <i>weave, join</i> ] |
| <b>du'plex, du'plicis,</b> <i>twofold, double</i>   | [ <b>duo</b> + <b>plicō</b> ]        |
| <b>insti'tuō, -ere, -sti'tuī, -stitū'tus,</b> <i>establish, commence, train</i>                                 | [ <b>statuō</b> ]                    |
| <b>mātū'rus, -a, -um,</b> <i>ripe, early</i>  | [ <b>mātūrō</b> ]                    |
| <b>quan'tus, -a, -um,</b> <i>how great, (as great) as</i>   | (quantity)                           |
| <b>red'dō, -ere, red'didī, red'ditus,</b> <i>give back, deliver</i>   | [ <b>dō</b> ]                        |

#### 495. Subjunctive Perfect and Past Perfect

| PERFECT ACTIVE (tense sign <b>-erī-</b> )        |              | PAST PERFECT ACTIVE (tense sign <b>-issē-</b> )       |                |
|--|--------------|---|----------------|
| parā'verim                                       | parāverī'mus | parāvis'sem   | parāvissē'mus  |
| parā'veris                                       | parāverī'tis | parāvis'sēs   | parāvissē'tis  |
| parā'verit                                       | parā'verint  | parāvis'set   | parāvis'sent   |
| Similarly habuerim, posuerim, cēperim, mūniverim |              | Similarly habuissem, posuissem, cēpisssem, mūnivissem |                |
| PERFECT PASSIVE                                  |              | PAST PERFECT PASSIVE                                  |                |
| parā'tus, -a, -um                                | sim, etc. ;  | parā'tus, -a, -um                                     | es'sem, etc. ; |
| ha'bitus   | sim, etc. ;  | ha'bitus  | es'sem, etc. ; |
| po'situs   | sim, etc. ;  | po'situs  | es'sem, etc. ; |
| cap'tus  | sim, etc. ;  | cap'tus   | es'sem, etc. ; |
| mūnī'tus   | sim, etc.    | mūnī'tus  | es'sem, etc.   |
| (For full conjugation see 660-664.)              |              |   |                |

Observe that:

(a) The perfect active subjunctive is the same as the future perfect active indicative — with one exception. What is it? Note the difference, also, in the quantity of the *i* in the tense sign **-erī-**.

(b) The past perfect subjunctive active of any verb may be formed by adding the active personal endings to the perfect active infinitive, as **fuisse-m**, etc. (cf. the formation of the imperfect subjunctive by use of the present active infinitive, 446).

(c) The tenses of the passive are formed like the corresponding tenses in the indicative — by use of the proper tenses and moods of **sum**.

**496. Drill.**—Give the perfect and past perfect subjunctive of **sum**, **possum**, and **ferō**.

### 497. Distinction in Tense

The perfect subjunctive, like the perfect indicative, states an act as finished from the *present point of view*; while the past perfect subjunctive, like the past perfect indicative, represents an act as finished from the *past point of view*.

### 498. Summary of Sequence (Harmony)

(a) **Primary tenses** (referring to the present or future)

*Indicative:* Present, future, future perfect.

*Subjunctive:* Present, perfect.

(b) **Secondary tenses** (referring to the past)

*Indicative:* Imperfect, perfect,<sup>1</sup> past perfect.

*Subjunctive:* Imperfect, past perfect.

**499. Rule.**—*Primary tenses are followed by primary tenses, secondary by secondary.*

### 500. Exercises

*Oral.* 1. Cūr nōn mē rogās cūr in eum nōn animad-verterim? 2. Ab eō quaesivī quantum esset pretium frūmentī in aliīs oppidīs. 3. Respondit pretium frūmentī in aliīs oppidīs esse minus quam in hōc oppidō. 4. Duplex ōrdō vigiliārum prō castrīs positus est nē militēs timidī

<sup>1</sup>The perfect, even when translated with *has* or *have*, is generally regarded as secondary.



dēserere īnstituerent. 5. Puerī Rōmānī in librīs lēgērunt quō modō cīvitās sua glōriā crēvisset. 6. Nōnne amicus tuus dixit ob quam causam pecūniam nōn reddidisset?



FIG. 100. TUMBLERS

7. Ita mātūrae erant aestātēs in hīs locīs ut Caesar omnēs suōs militēs ēvocāre statueret.

*Written.* 1. I did not hear why he deserted us. 2. We did not notice who closed the gate. 3. It is difficult to realize now how-great the fear of the prisoners was. 4. He was asked why he had left his own country. 5. Don't you think that boys are trained best by hard work?

## 501.

## English Word Studies

A knowledge of the Latin root with its meaning will often help one use an English word correctly. You should not speak of an "endorsement" on the *front* of a document because **dorsum** means *back*. As **gravis** means *heavy, serious*, one may speak of an "aggravated" case of illness, but not of "aggravating" a person. To "effect" something is to *accomplish* it (**efficiō**, *do out or thoroughly, accomplish*). An "effect" is something *accomplished*, a *result*. To "affect" is to *do something to someone*, to *influence* in some way. Other words whose meaning is made clear by the prefix are **access**, **excess**; **accept**, **except**; **emigration**, **immigration**.

Distinguish also the following according to etymology: *causal*, *casual*; *quantity*, *number*; *vocation*, *avocation*.

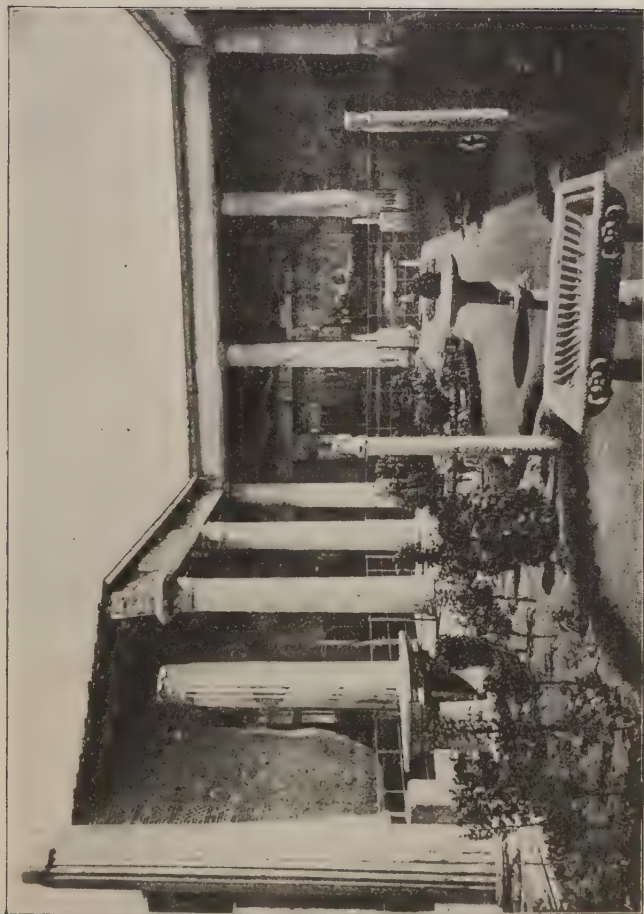


FIG. 101. A POMPEIAN GARDEN

## LESSON LXXXV

### DEPONENT VERBS

#### 502.

#### Vocabulary

|  |                      |
|--|----------------------|
| ar'bitror, arbitrā'rī, arbitrā'tus sum, <i>think, believe</i>                                    | (arbitration)        |
| expe'rior, experi'rī, exper'tus sum, <i>test, try, experience</i>                                | [ <i>periculum</i> ] |
| familiā'ris, -e, ( <i>belonging to the family</i> ), <i>friendly</i> ;<br>as noun, <i>friend</i> | [ <i>familia</i> ]   |
| fateor, fatē'rī, fas'sus sum, <i>confess</i>   | (confession)         |
| gra'dior, gra'dī, gres'sus sum, <i>step, walk</i>  | (congress)           |
| mī'ror, mīrā'rī, mīrā'tus sum, <i>wonder, admire</i>   | (admirable)          |
| quā'lis, -e, <i>what kind of, (such) as</i>  | (quality)            |
| se'quor, se'quī, secū'tus sum, <i>follow, pursue</i>   | (sequence)           |

#### 503.

#### Deponent Verbs of Four Conjugations

Some Latin verbs are *active in meaning* but *passive in form*. They are called **deponents** because they have *put away* (*dē-pōnō*) their active forms: **arbitror**, *I think*. Deponent verbs are conjugated throughout the indicative and subjunctive like regular verbs of the four conjugations in the passive (for complete synopses see 665).

#### 504.

#### Participles and Infinitives of Deponent Verbs

In deponent verbs the present and future participles and the future infinitive (formed from the future participle) are active in both form and meaning. The perfect participle, while passive in form, is active in meaning.

| PARTICIPLES                               | INFINITIVES                                      |
|---|--|
| Pres. ar'bitrāns, <i>thinking</i>         | arbitrā'rī, <i>to think</i>                      |
| Perf. arbitrā'tus, <i>having thought</i>  | arbitrā'tus es'se, <i>to have thought</i>        |
| Fut. arbitrātū'rus, <i>going to think</i> | arbitrātū'rus es'se, <i>to be going to think</i> |

**505. Drill.** — Give a synopsis of **mīror** in the 3rd sing. and **sequor** in the 3rd plur., with meanings. Give the participles and infinitives of these words.

**506.**

### Exercises

*Oral.* 1. Mīror cūr ille mē secūtus sit. 2. Fateor mē nōn scīre quālis homō familiāris tuus sit. 3. Caesar arbitrātus est id bellum celeriter cōfici posse. 4. Mīlitēs, perīcula bellī expertī, praemia et honōrēs exēgērunt. 5. Trēs tuās sorōrēs in Viā Altā gradientēs vīdī et ab eīs quaesīvī ubi tū essēs. 6. Arbitrārisne illōs quattuor hominēs nōs secūtūrōs esse? Illī nōn sequentur sī celerius gradiēmur. 7. Hōc opere effectō, mīrābāmur quid postea facerēmus. 8. Mīrātus quid facerēs ā māt্রে tuā quaesīvī.

*Written.* 1. The slave, after killing his master, walked slowly to the next town. 2. The witness, after confessing that he had deceived us, was led-out to punishment. 3. The mother wondered what boy had broken her daughter's new wagon. 4. He was so brave that five men could not hold him back. 5. Eight men were sent-ahead by the genera' to buy grain.



FIG. 102. ROMAN COMBS AND BUTTONS

## 507. Latin and English Word Formation

The suffixes **-ilis** and **-bilis** are added to verb stems to form adjectives. They indicate what *can be done*: **facilis** is "doable," *easy*. **-ilis** usually becomes **-ile** in English: *facile*, *fertile*. The more common suffix **-bilis** becomes **-ble**, **-able**, **-ible** in English: *noble*, *credible*, *terrible*, *amiable*, *visible*, *comparable*.

The suffixes **-āris** and **-ārius**, meaning *pertaining to*, are added to nouns and adjectives to form adjectives: **familiāris**, **militāris**, **frūmentārius**, **ordinārius**. The former becomes **-ar** in English, the latter **-ary**: *familiar*, *singular*; *ordinary*, *secondary*.

**Exercise.** — Find ten other examples of suffix **-ble** (**-able**, **-ible**) and five of the suffixes **-ar** and **-ary** in English words derived from Latin words already studied.



FIG. 103. CAVE CANEM: "LOOK OUT FOR THE DOG"

From a mosaic at the entrance of a house in Pompeii.

## LESSON LXXXVI

### POST, POSTEĀ, AND POSTQUAM DISTINGUISHED

508.

#### Vocabulary

*cir'cum*, prep. with acc., *around*

*circumve'niō*, -ī're, -vē'nī, -ven'tus, *surround*

[*veniō*]

*flec'tō*, -ere, fle'xī, fle'xus, *bend, curve, turn*

(reflex)

*nās'cor*, *nās'cī*, *nā'tus sum*, *be born*

(native)

*negō'tium*, -ī, n., *business*

[*ōtium*]

*post'quam*, conj., *after*

[*post + quam*]

*su'per*, prep. with acc., *over, above*

[*superō*]

*super'sum*, -es'se, -fuī, -futū'rus, *be left over*

[*sum*]

509.

#### Latin and English Word Formation

**Ne-** is sometimes used as a negative prefix in Latin: *nēmō* (*ne-homō*), *negōtium* (*ne-ōtium*), *neuter* (*ne-ūter*), *nūllus* (*ne-ūllus*).

**Circum** and **super** have their usual meanings when used as prefixes in Latin and English. **Super-** sometimes takes the form *sur-* in English, in which case it must be distinguished from assimilated **sub-**: *surplus*, *surmount*.

**Exercise.** — Find six English words with prefixes **circum-** or **super-** compounded with Latin words which you have studied.

510.

#### *Post, Posteā, and Postquam*

The conjunction **postquam**, meaning *after*, must be distinguished carefully from the adverb **posteā**, meaning *afterwards*, and the preposition **post**,<sup>1</sup> meaning *after* (with acc.). Examine the following:

1. *Post illud bellum pāx cōfirmāta est*, *After that war peace was established.*

2. *Cōsidius posteā fuerat in Galliā*, *Considius had afterwards been in Gaul.*

---

<sup>1</sup> Sometimes used as an adverb like *posteā*.



3. Caesar, *postquam* Gallōs fugere vidit, cum omnibus cōpiis secūtus est, *After Caesar saw the Gauls fleeing, he followed with all his troops.*

Note that (a) the addition of *quam* to *post* makes *postquam* a conjunction;

(b) *postea* means literally *after that*, hence *afterwards*;

(c) the real difficulty is in the English use of *after*, as both a conjunction and a preposition.

## 511.

## Exercises

*Oral.* 1. Quis cōspexit nautās nāvigantēs “plānīs” (in locō nāvium) super caput? 2. Post labōrēs bellī omnēs perpetuam pācem spērant. 3. Ita praeceps erat frōns montis ut nōn eum ascendere possēmus et iter circum eum flectere cogerēmur. 4. *Postquam* duo liberī nātī sunt, tōta familia in Americam migrāvit. 5. Ubi hunc hominem ante portam vestram gradientem animadvertī, eum rogāvī quem peteret. 6. Mīror cui hoc difficile negōtium mandāre possim, sī ego ipse hoc nōn suscipiam. 7. *Postquam* hostēs ā fugā interclūsī et *postea* circumventī sunt, plūrimī occīsī sunt et paucī superfuērunt.



FIG. 104. POSING FOR THEIR PICTURE

*Written.* 1. We cried-out (on) seeing the threatening danger. 2. We tied the prisoner but afterwards granted him freedom. 3. After the eighth year of the war, we enlisted 100,000 men and routed the enemy. 4. After they fought for ten years, so few were left that the nation was quickly destroyed. 5. Influenced by the speech of their leader, the men vowed they would take the town by assault.



FIG. 105. A ROMAN JUG

## 512.

## SCIPIO

P. Cornēlius Scīpiō, puer duodēvigintī annōrum, patrem, quī graviter vulnerātus erat, servāvit.<sup>1</sup> Post pugnam Cannēensem, in quā Rōmānī gravissimē victī sunt, omnibus probantibus, ad Scīpiōnem, puerum vīgintī annōrum, summum imperium delātum est. Post sex annōs in Hispāniam prōcessit et Carthāginem Novam diē quō vēnit expugnāvit. Scīpiōnem clēmentissimē sē gerentem Hispānī rēgem appellāverunt; sed Scīpiō, silentiō factō, dixit: “Nōmen imperātōris quō mē mei militēs appellāverunt, mihi maximum est: rēgis nōmen, apud aliōs magnum, Rōmānī odērunt. Sī id quod rēgāle est amplissimum iūdicātis, vōbīs licet existimāre rēgālem in mē esse animum.” Posteā, Hispāniā pācātā, Scīpiō in Āfricam prōcessit et ibi Carthāginiēnsēs victōriis ita terruit ut Hannibalem ex Italiā ad patriam revocārent. Sed Scīpiō eum (*at*) Zamae<sup>2</sup> vicit et ille, clārissimus et maximus omnium ducum quī contrā Rōmānōs pugnāverunt, ex patriā in exsilium fugit. Scīpiō ob hanc victōriam Āfricānus appellātus est.

<sup>1</sup> In the Second Punic War, the greatest of the three wars against Carthage, 218–201 B.C.

<sup>2</sup> 202 B.C.

## LESSON LXXXVII

### SUBORDINATE CLAUSES REVIEWED. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES: VOLITIVE AND RESULT

ELEMENTARY GRAMMAR: Review *Clauses*, 638.

513.

#### Vocabulary

|  |                       |
|--|-----------------------|
| dis'cō, -ere, di'dicī, —, <i>learn</i>                                     | [ <i>disciplīna</i> ] |
| ēi'ciō, -ere, ēiē'cī, ēiec'tus, <i>throw or thrust out</i>                 | [ <i>iaciō</i> ]      |
| fre'quēns, frequen'tis, <i>in great numbers, often</i>                     | (frequently)          |
| imā'gō, imā'ginis, f., <i>a likeness (i.e. statue or picture)</i>          | (imaginary)           |
| impel'lō, -ere, im'pulī, impul'sus, <i>drive on, incite, persuade</i>      | [ <i>pellō</i> ]      |
| im'perō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, <i>command, order (with dat. of person)</i> | (imperial)            |
| ō'rō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, <i>beg, ask</i>                                | [ <i>ōrātiō</i> ]     |
| pi'us, -a, -um, <i>dutiful, loyal</i>                                      | (piety)               |

514.

#### Subordinate Clauses Reviewed

Subordinate clauses are substitutes for single parts of speech, either *nouns*, *adjectives*, or *adverbs*. In previous lessons we have studied the following:

(a) *Substantive (or noun) clause*: Indirect question, used as direct object.

(b) *Adjective clause*: Relative clause, modifying an antecedent like an adjective.

(c) *Adverbial clauses*: Clauses introduced by *sī* (condition), *quod* and *quia* (cause), *dum*, *ubi*, and *postquam* (time), *ut* and *nē* (purpose), *ut* and *ut nōn* (result).

#### 515. Substantive Clauses: Volitive and Result

a. *Volitive Substantive Clauses*. Verbs of will or desire, like *addūcō* (*influence*), *cōgō* (*compel*), *impellō* (*persuade*), *imperō*<sup>1</sup> and *mandō* (*order*), *moneō* (*advise*), *ōrō* and *petō*

---

<sup>1</sup> *Iubeō* (*order*) always takes the infinitive.

(*beg*), **permittō** (*grant*), **rogō** (*ask*), take object clauses in the subjunctive with **ut** or **nē** :

1. **Rogō ut veniās**, *I ask you to come.*
2. **Impellit nē remaneāmus**, *He persuades us not to stay.*

*b. Substantive Clauses of Result.* Verbs meaning *to happen* (**accidō**) or *to cause* or *effect* (**efficiō**) require clauses of result in the subjunctive with **ut** or **ut nōn**, used as subject or object of the main verb :

(As subject) **Accidit ut mē nōn vidēret**, *It happened that he did not see me.*

(As object) **Efficiam ut veniat**, *I shall cause him to come.*

## 516.

## Exercises

*Oral.* 1. **Tē ōrāmus nē discēdās dum pater noster abest.**  
 2. **Relātum est militēs, nōn singulōs sed frequentēs, impelli ut dēsererent.** 3. **Fīlius pius imāginem patris magnā diligentīā cōservābat.**  
 4. **Imperāvimus Mārcō, gubernātōrī sextae nāvis, ut suam nāvem in mare flecteret et quīque reliquās sequerētur.**  
 5. **Accidit ut in aquam inciderem sed, flūmine dēlātus, in terram ēiectus sum.** 6. **Familiārem dē hīs crīminibus cōsuluī et ille effēcit ut nōn damnārer.**  
 7. **Tibi nōn permit-tam ut studia dē-pōnās, quia dēbēs discere, inter alia, quālem civitātem habeāmus.**



FIG. 106. MĀRCUS AURĒLIUS

This good emperor (161–180 A.D.) was also a philosopher.

*Written.* 1. It happened that we could not see him, for the time was not convenient. 2. Dutiful children do not shout and thrust-out their tongues. 3. These men, though well-trained, were surrounded and compelled to give themselves up. 4. They thought it was better to enlist fresh troops than to ransom those not fit for battle. 5. I commenced to lead the soldiers over the mountain but was persuaded by their shouts to lead them around it.

## 517.

## Legal Phrases in English

**Caveat êmptor**, *Let the buyer beware* (for he buys at his own risk).

**habeās corpus**, (*I command that*) *you have the body* (of a certain person brought into court), a writ issued by a judge to see whether a person is justly imprisoned.

**post mortem**, *after death*, e.g. a *post mortem* examination of a body.

**scire faciās** (*I demand that*) *you cause to know* (why a certain court action should not be carried out).

**supersedeās**, (*I command that*) *you suspend* (proceedings).



FIG. 107. THE SMALL THEATER AT POMPEII AS IT IS

This theater was a covered one, which was unusual. Prominent men had chairs down in front, while the rest of the audience sat on the stone seats above. Over the entrances were private boxes.

## LESSON LXXXVIII

### CONJUGATION OF *EŌ*

518.

#### Vocabulary

*ē'dō, -ere, ē'didī, ē'ditus, put forth, publish*

[*dō*]

*e'ō, i're, i'ī, i'tus, go*

[*iter*]

*ex'eō, exi're, ex'īi, ex'itus, go out or forth*

*red'eō, redi're, red'īi, red'itus, go back*

*me'mor, me'moris, mindful of, remembering (with gen.)*

[*memoria*]

*pa'tior, pa'tī, pas'sus sum, suffer, endure*

(passion)

*qui'ēs, quiē'tis, f., rest, sleep*

(quietus)

*tur'bō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, disturb, agitate*

(turbulent)

519.

#### Conjugation of *Eō*

*Eō* is irregular in the present, future, and perfect tenses.  
Note that the stem *-ī-* is changed to *-e-* before *a, o, u*.



FIG. 108. THE SMALL THEATER AT POMPEII AS IT WAS



| PRESENT SYSTEM (present stem i-) |            |       |             |        |         |
|----------------------------------|------------|-------|-------------|--------|---------|
|                                  | PRESENT    |       | IMPERFECT   | FUTURE |         |
| <i>Indic.</i>                    | e'ō        | i'mus | i'bam, etc. | i'bō   | i'bimus |
|                                  | īs         | i'tis |             | i'bis  | i'bitis |
|                                  | it         | e'unt |             | i'bit  | i'bunt  |
| <i>Subjunct.</i>                 | e'am, etc. |       | i'rem, etc. |        |         |

| PERFECT SYSTEM (perfect stem i-) |              |         |              |  |  |
|----------------------------------|--------------|---------|--------------|--|--|
|                                  | PERFECT      |         | PAST PERF.   |  |  |
| <i>Indic.</i>                    | i'ī          | i'imus  | i'eram, etc. |  |  |
|                                  | īs'tī        | īs'tis  | FUT. PERF.   |  |  |
|                                  | i'it         | iē'runt | i'erō, etc.  |  |  |
| <i>Subjunct.</i>                 | i'erim, etc. |         | īs'sem, etc. |  |  |

| INFINITIVES  |              | PARTICIPLES  |                                |
|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>Pres.</i> | i're         | <i>Pres.</i> | i'ēns ( <i>gen.</i> , eun'tis) |
| <i>Perf.</i> | īs'se        | <i>Perf.</i> | i'tus, -a, -um                 |
| <i>Fut.</i>  | itū'rus esse | <i>Fut.</i>  | itū'rus, -a, -um               |

(Note. — As eō is intransitive, passive forms are rare.)

520. Drill. — Conjugate *exeō* and *redeō* in the present system.

## 521.

## Exercises

*Oral.* 1. Carri quī sē movēre videntur celerius eunt quam eī quī equīs trahuntur. 2. Melius est liberōs beneficiō addūcere ut discant quam vī cōgere. 3. Ob mare turbātum quiētī nōs trādere nōn poterāmus. 4. Ex iīs quaesīvit cūr ex finibus suis exissent. 5. Postquam hic liber ēditus est, auctor maximōs honōrēs accēpit. 6. Nōne memorēs estis graviōrum malōrum quae mēcum multōs annōs passī estis? 7. Frūmentō collātō et nāvibus contrāctīs, Caesar imperāvit timidīs ut ad castra redirent.

*Written.* 1. The teacher asked who inhabited the farthest regions of Gaul. 2. The one sister was very beautiful, but the other was very unlike her. 3. After suffering many evils in this town, I shall go-back to the fields to till them. 4. My friend and I<sup>1</sup> were born in the same year, but he knows more than I. 5. We begged him not to go but we could not persuade him to remain.

## 522. English Word Studies : The Norman-French Influence

We saw in earlier lessons (270, 275) how Latin words were introduced into English at its very beginning. A very important period of influence was after the Norman conquest of England (1066). The language of the Normans was an old form of French, itself descended from Latin. In the course of a few centuries, the English language underwent striking changes and adopted many French (Latin) words. These sometimes show considerable changes in the original spelling. Especially common is the addition of a vowel (cf. 443).

**Exercise.** — Look up the Latin originals of *captain*, *vizor*, *sue*, *pursue*, *duke*, *peer*, *treason*. See Scott's *Ivanhoe*, Chap. I, for *pork*, *beef*, etc.



FIG. 109. A ROMAN ARCH IN REIMS, FRANCE

---

<sup>1</sup> Latin order: *I and my friend were born* (first plural).

## LESSON LXXXIX

### DESCRIPTIVE CUM CLAUSES

**523.**

#### Vocabulary

|  |                |
|--|----------------|
| <b>cum</b> , conj., <i>when</i>                      |                |
| dēi'ciō, -ere, dēiē'cī, dēiec'tus, <i>throw from</i> | [iaciō]        |
| dē'ligō, -ere, dēlē'gī, dēlēc'tus, <i>select</i>     | [legō]         |
| dig'nus, -a, -um, <i>worthy</i>                      | (dignity)      |
| pin'gō, -ere, pīn'xī, pic'tus, <i>paint</i>          | (picture)      |
| ra'pidus, -a, -um, <i>swift</i>                      | [rapiō]        |
| re'or, rē'rī, ra'tus sum, <i>think, calculate</i>    | (rational)     |
| sa'tis, adv. and indecl. adj., <i>enough</i>         | (satisfaction) |

**524.**

#### Descriptive Cum Clauses

In previous lessons **ubi** (*when*) and **postquam** (*after*) have been used with the indicative to introduce clauses purely temporal. A third conjunction, **cum**, meaning *when*, is used to introduce temporal clauses. In secondary sequence the Romans came to use **ubi** and **postquam** with the indicative and **cum** with the subjunctive. Such **cum** clauses are called **descriptive cum clauses**.

*Examples: Postquam milites redierunt, Caesar orationem fecit,*  
*After the soldiers returned, Caesar made a speech.*

*Cum milites redissent, Caesar orationem fecit, When the*  
*soldiers had returned, Caesar made a speech.*

*Cum milites redirent, Caesar orationem faciebat, When*  
*the soldiers returned, Caesar was making a speech.*

**525. Rule.** — *In secondary sequence, **ubi** and **postquam** are used with the perfect indicative, **cum** with the imperfect or the past perfect subjunctive.*

**526.**

#### Exercises

- Oral.* 1. Nōne rēris mortem dignissimōs virōs rapere?  
 2. Semper plūs timet animus periculum nōn nōtum.

3. Postquam imāginem suī patris pinxit, ōrāvī ut meī patris imāginem pingeret. 4. Dixit sē dē equō dēiectum esse sed ego existimō eum cecidisse. 5. Cum Caesar cerneret hostium frequentēs militēs instrūctōs, dēlēgit decem nūntiōs ut hoc ad reliquōs ducēs referret. 6. Cum nostrī ob rapidum flūmen nōn satis commodē redīre possent, dux iussit auxilia submittī. 7. Cum allātum esset summa loca hostibus complērī neque ūlla auxilia cōspici, Caesar cōstituit continēre cōpiās suās in castrīs.

*Written.* 1. When I had put-out the light and gone to rest, I thought I caught-sight-of a familiar shape. 2. When the enemy had been repulsed, the general permitted his men to take a rest. 3. I wonder why you do not select worthy friends. 4. So swiftly did the river flow that the boy could not grasp the boat. 5. When I noticed that my friend was struggling against nine men, I ran to him.

## 527.

## English Word Studies

Most of the names of our states are Indian, but several of them are of Latin origin or form. Vermont means *green mountain* (*viridis mōns*), New Jersey is "New Caesarea" (cf. 485), Pennsylvania is *Penn's woods* (*silva*), Virginia is the *maiden's land* (named after Queen Elizabeth, the virgin queen), Florida is the *flowery land* (*flōs, flōris*), Colorado is the land of the *colored* or *red* river, Montana is *mountainous* (*mōns*), Nevada is the land of *snow* (*nix, nivis*), and Rhode Island is named after the Greek island of Rhodes, meaning *rose*.

Names whose endings only are Latin are Carolina (Charles II), Georgia (George II), Louisiana (Louis XIV), and Indiana.

## LESSON XC

### REVIEW

#### 528. Noun and Adjective Review

1. Decline **tantus clāmor**, **mors mātūra**, **quantus timor**, **aetās pia**, **frōns alta**, **maximus honor**, **nūllum negōtium**, **imāgō familiāris**.

2. Review the Latin forms of the ordinal numerals 1st-10th. Decline the Latin forms of 1000, 2000, 3000.

#### 529. Verb Review

1. Give a synopsis of (a) **perterreō**, 1st sing., indic. act.; (b) **trādō**, 2nd sing., subjunct. pass.; (c) **perficiō**, 3rd sing., indic. act.; (d) **reservō**, 1st plur., subjunct. pass.; (e) **ex-prior**, 2nd plur., indic.; (f) **supersum**, 3rd plur., subjunct.

2. Conjugate **eō**, **exeō**, and **redeō** throughout.

3. **Rapid-fire drill on verb forms.**—*Locate the form:* **praemisit**, **frēgisset**, **attāctus est**, **distribuistis**, **exīstimem**, **incoluisse**, **iūctūrus esse**, **exercēri**, **strictus esse**, **exāctus**, **interclūdēns**, **animadvertēmus**, **crēscēns**, **dēserunt**, **turbant**, **vovent**, **quaesitūrus**, **discēmus**, **nāta est**, **fatēberis**, **mīrābāmini**, **ēdunt**.

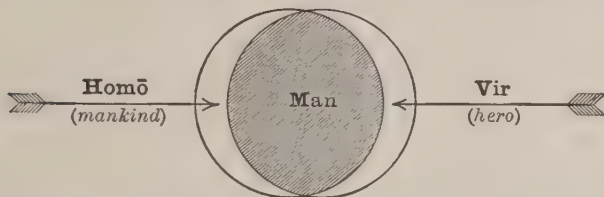
#### 530. Syntax Review

Quote the rules for the following constructions and illustrate each in Latin with a short original sentence: *result clause*; *accusative of extent*; *indirect question*; *sequence (harmony) of tenses*.

#### 531. Synonyms

We rarely find a word in any language which has exactly the same meaning as another word. Words which have approximately the same meaning are called **synonyms**. The

diagram may help you to remember the margin of difference between the synonyms **homō** and **vir**, which are often confused.



The following synonyms have occurred in previous vocabularies. Note differences and discriminate in their use :

1. **terra**, *land* (as opposed to water), then some particular *land* or *country*.  
**finēs**, *borders*, hence a *land* or *country* with reference to its boundaries.  
**patria**, *fatherland*, the *land* of one's birth.
2. **dux** [dūcō], *a leader* in any field, but often in a *military* sense.  
**prīnceps**, [prīmus + capiō], the *first* or *chief* man in a group — usually non-military.
3. **putō**, “reckon,” *be inclined to think*.  
**reor**, *think carefully and deliberately, come to a conclusion*.  
**iūdicō**, *judge*.  
**aestimō**, *value, estimate*, in a *literal* sense.  
**existimō** and **arbitror** are less carefully distinguished.
4. **videō**, *see*, the most general word.  
**cernō**, *see clearly*.  
**cōspiciō**, *catch sight of*.
5. **labor**, *hard work, toil, suffering*.  
**opus**, usually *a piece of work*.  
**negōtium**, *lack of leisure* [ōtium], *business*.
6. **potestās**, *power* in general, *opportunity*.  
**auctōritās**, *influence*.  
**rēgnum**, *royal power*.  
**imperium**, *military power, command*.

**532. A Derivative Match** (*To the teacher*). The desirability of holding frequent word contests was discussed in **391**. The same method may be applied to derivative work. After choosing sides dictate Latin words and have each student in turn give one English derivative, or, *vice versa*, dictate English words and have him give the Latin form of each.



533. THE STORY OF LUCIUS (*Concluded*)

## Civis Novus Iter Facit

Cum Lūcius aetātem quīndecim annōrum attigisset, pater eius dixit eum ita crēvisse ut dēbēret togam praetextam dēpōnere et virilem togam sūmere. (Puerī Rōmānī togās praetextās gerēbant sed virī tōtās albās. Brācae, quae ā virīs nunc geruntur, ā barbarīs, nōn ā Rōmānīs, illis temporibus gerēbantur.) Itaque pater Lūcī cōstituit ut Lūcius togam virilem sūmeret proximīs Līberālībūs,<sup>1</sup> quō tempore plūrimī puerī Rōmānī togās praetextās dēpōnēbant.

## THE NEW CITIZEN

Līberālia aderant. Multī cognātī et amīcī convēnērunt. Lūcius, postquam mōrem antīquum servāns togam praetextam ante Larēs posuit, novam virilem togam sūmpsit. Omnēs familiārēs cum eō ad Forum pedibus iērunt, et postea ad Capitōlium, ubi nōmen eius ad numerum cīvium ascriptum est. Nunc potest dicere, "Cīvis Rōmānus sum!" Omnēs Lūcium domum<sup>2</sup> redeuntem secūtī sunt, ubi optima cēna parāta erat. Multī cibī dē ultimīs terrīs portātī erant, aliī dē Graeciā, aliī dē Asiā, aliī dē Āfricā. Hospitēs cēnam variō sermōne prōdūxērunt et cum Lūciō dē officiīs cīvium, dē bellō et pāce, dē negōtiīs ēgērunt. Cum Lūcius quiētī sē daret, sēnsit quid esset cīvem Rōmānum esse.

## THE JOURNEY

Paulō (*shortly*) post pater Lūciō, nunc virō, permīsit ut sēcum iter faceret. Itaque per portam Capēnam ex urbe exiērunt. Raedā ibi inventā, in Appiā Viā prōcessērunt. Sepulchris ad viam vīsīs, Lūcius dixit sē semper mirātum esse cūr sepulchra ad viās pōnerentur. Pater respondit:

<sup>1</sup> The Liberalia, a festival held March 17.

<sup>2</sup> Place to which with **redeuntem**: "home."

"Ut omnēs ea videant." Lūcius fassus est sē nōn satis fortem esse ut nocte inter sepulchra iter facere audēret.

### GOOD ROADS AND GREAT MEN

Ita facile et commodum erat iter ut Lūcius diceret: "Nōne arbitrāris Appiam Viam optimam omnium esse?" Pater respondit: "Omnēs nostrae viae optimae sunt. Ob eam causam hostēs vicimus, potestātem nostram auximus, et nunc gentēs regimus. Aliī imāginēs pulchriōrēs pingunt, aliī ōrant (*plead*) causās melius, sed nōs regimus populōs." "Etiam causās optimē ōramus," respondit Lūcius. "Quis melior ōrātor fuit aut est aut erit quam Cicerō? Hic ōrātor etiam cōsul fuit et populum Rōmānum rēxit. Ego eum ōrātiōnem habentem in Forō audīvī et eius ōrātiōnēs in lūdō lēgī." "Lēgistīne ōrātiōnēs in Catilinam, illum quī cīvitatē ēvertere statuit?"

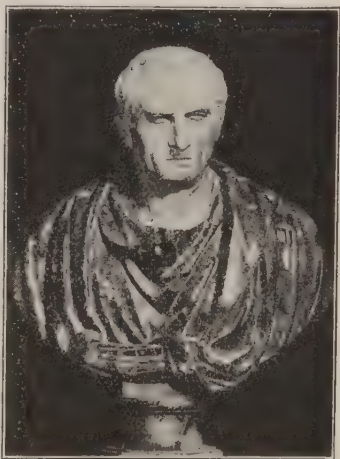


FIG. 110. M. TULLIUS CICERŌ

"Illās et aliās lēgī. In primā dixit dē Catilinā: 'Ō tempora! Ō mōrēs! Senātus haec intellegit, cōsul videt; hic tamen vivit.'" "Optimē!" dixit pater, "In secundā, sī rēctē memoriā teneō, dixit, postquam Catilina ex urbe exiit: 'Abiit, excessit, ēvāsit,<sup>1</sup> ērūpit<sup>2</sup>!' Ex Cicerōnis linguā fluēbat ōrātiō dulcior quam mel."

### SCENES BY THE WAY

Tum altōs et pulchrōs arcūs<sup>3</sup> aquaeductūs<sup>4</sup> cernunt, quī

<sup>1</sup> Ēvādō, ēvāsus — derivative?

<sup>2</sup> Ērumpō, ēruptus — derivative?

<sup>3</sup> Acc. plur.

<sup>4</sup> Gen. sing.

optimam aquam dē montibus ad urbem affert. Pater Lūciō dīxit prīmum aquaeductum ab Appiō factum esse. Appius fuit ille quī Appiam Viam mūnīvit. Ita prōcēdunt, nunc agrōs et villās, montēs silvāsque spectantēs, nunc hominēs frequentēs in viā ipsā, quōrum aliī gradiēbantur, aliī aut equō aut raedā aut lecticā ferēbantur.

### EPILOGUE

Nōn iam vīvit Lūcius et eius amīcī, nōn iam vīvunt Caesar et Cicerō, virī clārissimī, sed lingua eōrum vīvit, vīvunt eōrum dicta et facta, lēgēs et mōrēs, glōria et fāma. Haec omnia in eōrum librīs inveniuntur. Eīs quī itinera parva per illōs librōs faciunt Rōmānī ipsī vīvere videntur.



FIG. 111. AQUAEDUCTUS

Named after its builder, the emperor Claudius (41-54 A.D.), this aqueduct was one of many which brought pure water to Rome from a distance.

## LESSON XCI

### IDIOMS. THE DATIVE AND ACCUSATIVE WITH TO REVIEWED

534.

#### Vocabulary

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| côn'sequor, -sequi, -secũ'tus sum, <i>follow, overtake, attain</i> | [sequor]    |
| dē'sum, dees'se, dē'fui, dēfutũ'rus, <i>be lacking</i>             | [sum]       |
| ex'struō, -ere, -strũ'xī, -strũ'cus, <i>pile up, build up</i>      | [struō]     |
| hũmā'nus, -a, -um, <i>human</i>                                    | [homō]      |
| impe'rium, -ī, n., <i>command, power</i>                           | [imperō]    |
| necessā'rius, -a, -um, <i>necessary</i>                            | (necessity) |
| reci'piō, -ere, -cē'pī, -cep'tus, <i>take back, receive</i>        | [capiō]     |
| va'cō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, <i>be free, uninhabited</i>           | (vacation)  |

535.

#### Idioms

Review the idioms *committere proelium*, *alius . . . alius*, *aliū . . . aliū*, *alter . . . alter*, *summus mōns*, *extrēma via*. Memorize the following new idioms:

1. *sē recipere*, with *ad*, *to retreat*.
2. *certiōrem eum facere dē*, *to inform him about*; as, *Fēcī eōs certiōrēs dē itinere*, *I informed them about the road* (what literally?).
3. *quam*, when used with the superlative of an adjective or adverb, means *as . . . possible*. Cf. *quam plūrimī*, *as many as possible*; *quam celerrimē*, *as quickly as possible*.

536.

#### To with Verbs of Motion

The dative is essentially the "to" or "for" case. We have noticed, however, that, when *to* implies literally *motion toward* a place or person, the accusative is used. The following are "motion verbs," previously studied, that take the accusative with *ad* or *in*:

*accēdō*, *cēdō*, *cōferō*, *contendō*, *dēferō*, *dūcō*, *eō*, *ferō*, *fugiō*, *mātūrō*, *mittō*, *moveō*, *nāvigō*, *portō*, *prōcēdō*, *prōdūcō*, *properō*, *redigō*, *redūcō*, *trānsportō*, *sequor*, *veniō*.

### 537. Dative of Indirect Object: A Summary

When *to* or *toward* does not imply literal motion but indicates the person *to whom* something is given or *toward whom* a benefit, injury, feeling, or quality is directed, the dative must be used. The following verbs, already familiar, are transitive and admit an accusative of the *direct object* and a dative of the *indirect object*:

committō, dicō, dō, dōnō, iungō, mandō, mōnstrō, nūntiō, ostendō, permittō, prōpōnō, reddō, relinqūō, respondeō, submittō, trādō, tribuō, voveō.

### 538. Exercises

*Oral.* 1. Homō sum; nihil hūmānī ā mē aliēnum<sup>1</sup> putō. 2. Necessārium vīsum est patrem meum dē hīs factīs certiōrem facere et omnia eī dīcere. 3. Tōtam aestātem māteriae magnam cōpiam exstruēbāmus nē hieme deesset. 4. Reliquam partem hiemis sē alēbant cōpiīs<sup>2</sup> ā civitāte distribūtīs. 5. Cum nostrī cōspexissent hostēs ad castra sē recipere, eōs cum omnibus cōpiīs quam celerrimē cōsecūtī sunt. 6. Hostēs crūdēlēs haec loca vāstāvērunt quia ratī sunt quam maximam esse glōriam loca finitima vacāre. 7. Postquam Rōmānōs ex hīs regiōnibus expulērunt, ipsī sub imperium Rōmānum redāctī sunt.

*Written.* 1. The just man refrains from wrong and guards the rights of others. 2. After the slave delivered the letter to me, I sent him back to my mother. 3. He told me that the highest power had been offered to my brother, but I did not believe him (*dat.*). 4. We informed our allies that the enemy would not begin battle, and they retreated to their ships. 5. It is not enough to select worthy friends: you ought to promise them constant friendship.

<sup>1</sup> Foreign, of no concern to (lit., from).

<sup>2</sup> Supplies.

**539. Latin and English Word Formation**

We have seen (507) that the suffixes *-āris* and *-ārius* mean *pertaining to*. Other adjective suffixes with this meaning are *-ānus* (English *-an*, *-ane*, *-ain*), *-ālis* (English *-al*), *-icus* (English *-ic*), *-ivus* (English *-ive*). They are added to noun and adjective stems. Examples in English are *Roman*, *humane*, *captain*; *liberal*; *public*; *native*.

The suffix *-ōsus* (English *-ous* or *-ose*) is added to noun stems and means *full of*: *cōpiōsus*, *copious*; *ōtiōsus*, *otiose*.

**Exercise.** — Find ten examples of these suffixes in English words derived from Latin words which you have studied.



FIG. 112. TRIUMPHAL PROCESSION, ARCH OF TITUS, ROME  
Note the famous seven-branched candlestick from the temple at Jerusalem,  
captured in 70 A.D.



## LESSON XCII

### SPECIAL VERBS THAT TAKE THE DATIVE

540.

#### Vocabulary

|   |               |
|---|---------------|
| cōnfi'dō, -ere, cōnfi'sus sum, <sup>1</sup> <i>have confidence (in)</i>           | [fīdō, trust] |
| fa'veō, -ē're, fā'vī, fau'tus, <i>be favorable (to)</i>                           | (favor)       |
| invi'deō, -ē're, invī'dī, invī'sus, <i>be envious (toward), envy</i>              | [videō]       |
| no'ceō, -ē're, no'cuī, no'citus, <i>do harm (to)</i>                              | (noxious)     |
| pā'reō, -ē're, pā'ruī, pā'ritus, ( <i>appear</i> ), <i>be obedient (to), obey</i> | (apparent)    |
| pla'ceō, -ē're, pla'cuī, pla'citus, <i>be pleasing (to)</i>                       | (implacable)  |
| prae'stō, -ā're, prae'stiti, prae'stitus, <i>stand before, excel</i>              | [stō]         |
| resis'tō, -ere, re'stiti, —, <i>stand against, resist</i>                         | [sistō]       |

541.

#### The Dative with Special Verbs

a. **Dative and infinitive.** — The verbs in 537 are transitive and take a direct object in addition to an indirect object. Some of these verbs, however, have as the direct object either a neuter pronoun or an infinitive: **dīcō, respondeō, nūntiō, voveō.**

b. **Dative and ut clause.** — Similarly, other verbs require a subordinate **ut** clause as direct object, as we have seen (515): **imperō, permittō, mandō.**

Verbs of both these classes take an indirect object of the person; as, **Eī imperō ut,** etc., *I order him to,* etc.

**Note.** — With some of these verbs, either the direct or the indirect object is often omitted:

|                    |                            |                      |   |              |
|--------------------|----------------------------|----------------------|---|--------------|
| <i>I (in)trust</i> | { <i>this to him</i>       | <i>eī hoc</i>        | } | <i>crēdō</i> |
|                    | { <i>that this is true</i> | <i>hoc vērū esse</i> |   |              |
|                    | { <i>him</i>               | <i>eī</i>            |   |              |

So also **cōnfidō.**

c. **Dative only — no direct object.** — Certain other verbs rarely take any case but the dative. Memorize carefully: **dēsum, faveō, invidēō, noceō, pāreō, placeō, praestō, resistō.**

<sup>1</sup> Semi-deponent, i.e. deponent in perfect system only.

542.

Exercises

*Oral.* 1. Imperāre sibi maximum imperium est.  
 2. Quod cōfidēbāmus eōs nōn nōbīs resistere posse, eōs cum omnibus cōpiīs cōsecūtī sumus. 3. Mihi placet audire familiārem meum, optimum puerum, reliquīs puerīs praestāre. 4. Sī hostēs sē recipient, agricolīs quī illās regiōnēs incolunt nocēbunt. 5. Nēmō potest dicere quantam aetātem ille vir attigerit. 6. Cum cōspiceret pecūniam mihi nōn deesse, nōn iam mihi favēbat sed invidēbat. 7. Hic aliīs imperāre poterit, quia imperiūs pārere didicit. 8. Pārēbitisne patribus vestrīs neque eis resistētis?

*Written.* 1. I confess that an early death is not pleasing to me. 2. He brought back much booty, which he displayed to his admiring friends. 3. A twofold danger was threatening: behind them one part of the enemy was pressing (on), in-front-of them the other part was being led against them. 4. The general commanded his soldiers not to do harm to fields, but they were not obedient-to him. 5. It is necessary that men have-confidence-in themselves in order to obtain power.

543. English Word Studies: Abbreviations  
 of Latin Titles

- A.B. Artium Baccalaureus, *Bachelor of Arts.*
- S.B. Scientiae Baccalaureus, *Bachelor of Science.*
- A.M. Artium Magister, *Master of Arts.*
- Ph.D. Philosophiae Doctor, *Doctor of Philosophy.*
- LL.D. Lēgum Doctor, *Doctor of Laws* (double L is a sign of the plural).

**Exercise.** — Find and explain other abbreviations of titles and degrees.

## LESSON XCIII

### THE IRREGULAR VERBS *VOLŌ* AND *NŌLŌ*

544.

#### Vocabulary

|   |                            |
|---|----------------------------|
| <i>di'vidō, -ere, dīvī'sī, dīvī'sus, divide</i>                             | (division)                 |
| <i>explō'rō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, investigate, explore</i>                 | [ <i>plōrō, call out</i> ] |
| <i>magnitū'dō, magnitū'dinis, f., greatness, size</i>                       | [ <i>magnus</i> ]          |
| <i>multitū'dō, multitū'dinis, f., multitude, great number</i>               | [ <i>multus</i> ]          |
| <i>pe'cus, pe'coris, n., cattle</i>   | [ <i>pecūnia</i> ]         |
| <i>proficīs'cor, -ficīs'cī, -fec'tus sum, start, set out</i>                | [ <i>faciō</i> ]           |
| <i>prōgre'dior, prō'gredī, prōgres'sus sum, (step forward),<br/>advance</i> | [ <i>gradior</i> ]         |
| <i>ra'tiō, ratiō'nis, f., account, plan, manner, reason</i>                 | [ <i>reor</i> ]            |
| <i>vo'lō, vel'le, vo'luī, —, want, be willing, wish</i>                     | (volition)                 |
| <i>nō'lō, nōl'le, nō'luī, —, be unwilling, not wish</i>                     | [ <i>ne + volō</i> ]       |

545.

#### Conjugation of *Volō* and *Nōlō*

The present indicative of both verbs is irregular. The present subjunctive employs the tense sign *-ī-*, as in *sim*. The other tenses are regularly formed. There is no passive.

|  | INDICATIVE         |                    | SUBJUNCTIVE            |                  |
|--|--------------------|--------------------|------------------------|------------------|
| <i>Pres.</i>   | <i>vo'lō</i>       | <i>nō'lō</i>       | <i>ve'lim</i>          | <i>nō'lim</i>    |
|  | <i>vīs</i>         | <i>nōn vīs</i>     | <i>ve'lis</i>          | <i>nō'lis</i>    |
|  | <i>vult</i>        | <i>nōn vult</i>    | <i>ve'lit</i>          | <i>nō'lit</i>    |
|  | <i>vo'lumus</i>    | <i>nō'lumus</i>    | <i>velī'mus</i>        | <i>nōlī'mus</i>  |
|  | <i>vul'tis</i>     | <i>nōn vul'tis</i> | <i>velī'tis</i>        | <i>nōlī'tis</i>  |
|  | <i>vo'lunt</i>     | <i>nō'lunt</i>     | <i>ve'lint</i>         | <i>nō'lint</i>   |
| <i>Impf. volē'bam, etc. nōlē'bam, etc. vel'lem, etc. nōl'lem, etc.</i> |                    |                    |                        |                  |
|  | PRESENT PARTICIPLE |                    | INFINITIVES            |                  |
|  | <i>vo'lēns</i>     | <i>nō'lēns</i>     | <i>Pres. vel'le</i>    | <i>nōl'le</i>    |
|  |                    |                    | <i>Perf. voluis'se</i> | <i>nōluis'se</i> |

(For full conjugation see 670)

Observe that (a) the present stem is *vel-* in the subjunctive but *vol-* in the indicative; (b) the imperfect subjunctive of both *volō* and *nōlō* is formed regularly upon the present infinitive (*velle*, *nōlle*) — this explains why the *l* is doubled.

**546. Caution.** — *Volō* and *nōlō*, like *iubeō*, usually demand the infinitive construction (instead of *ut* and the subjunctive).

**547.****Exercises**

*Oral.* 1. Ille volēbat nōscere nōmen meum et quō modō ego cecidissem, sed ego nōlēbam eī dicere. 2. Incertī animī multitudinis ōrātiōne rēgis permōtī sunt et omnēs lēgibus pārēre cōstituērunt. 3. Explōrāvistine quae genera pecorum agrīs minimē noceant? 4. Ob magnitudinem periculī cum maximā cūrā prōgressī sunt nē ab hostibus pellerentur. 5. Iussī eum proficīscī ad hostium castra ut eōrum ratiōnem proeli cognōsceret et referret. 6. Cum cīvēs extrēmae civitātis pācem cōfirmāvissent, Caesar dixit sē velle cōpiās suās dimittere. 7. Rōmānī Galliae gentēs dividere voluērunt ut eīs facilius imperārent.

*Written.* 1. What will you do if he shall be unwilling to go-back with<sup>1</sup> you? 2. Reason is the greatest gift which God has given to the human race. 3. I asked him why he wanted to reserve this witness for (ad) the last, but I could not persuade him to answer. 4. He ran so swiftly and lightly that he seemed to graze, not touch, the earth. 5. The size of the cattle was such that the boys were thoroughly-frightened.

**548.****English Word Studies**

The suffix *-tūdō* (English *-tude*) is added to adjective stems to form nouns and means *state of being*: **magnitūdō**, *magnitude*.

---

<sup>1</sup> See 484, footnote 1.

The suffix **-mentum** (English *-ment*) is added to verb stems to form nouns and indicates the *means*: **impedimentum**, *impediment*.

The suffix **-tūra** (English *-ture*) is added to verb stems to form nouns but has no very definite meaning: **nātūra** (from **nā-scor**), *nature*.

The verb suffix **-fy** in English is derived from **faciō** (**-ficiō**) and means *to make*: *satisfy* (**satisfaciō**). It is usually added to adjectives.

**Exercise.** — Find five examples of each of these suffixes in English words derived from Latin words which you have studied.



FIG. 113. ROME AND THE TIBER

## LESSON XCIV

### THE FOURTH DECLENSION

549.

#### Vocabulary

|   |                                |
|---|--------------------------------|
| <i>cā'sus</i> , -ūs, m., <i>fall, chance, accident</i>                    | [ <i>cadō</i> ]                |
| <i>cruciā'tus</i> , -ūs, m., <i>torture</i>                               | [ <i>crux</i> , <i>cross</i> ] |
| <i>dēsi'liō</i> , -ī're, -si'lui, -sul'tus, <i>jump down</i>              | [ <i>saliō</i> , <i>jump</i> ] |
| <i>dēspi'ciō</i> , -ere, -spe'xī, -spec'tus, <i>look down on, despise</i> | [ <i>speciō</i> ]              |
| <i>do'mus</i> , -ūs, <sup>1</sup> f., <i>house, home</i>                  | (domestic)                     |
| <i>ēvā'dō</i> , -ere, -vā'sī, -vā'sus, <i>go out, escape</i>              | [ <i>vādō</i> , <i>go</i> ]    |
| <i>exer'citus</i> , -ūs, m., ( <i>trained</i> ) <i>army</i>               | [ <i>exerceō</i> ]             |
| <i>im'petus</i> , -ūs, m., <i>attack</i>                                  | [ <i>petō</i> ]                |
| <i>iū'rō</i> , -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, <i>swear</i>                         | [ <i>iūs</i> ]                 |
| <i>ma'nus</i> , -ūs, f., <i>hand, group, force</i>                        | (manual)                       |

550.

#### Fourth Declension

We have seen that nouns of the first three declensions are distinguished by the ending in the genitive singular — first declension *-ae*, second declension *-ī*, third declension *-is*. The majority of Latin nouns belong to these three declensions. A few nouns, however, have *-ūs* in the genitive singular and belong to the **fourth declension**. Many of these are derived from verbs.

|             | CASE ENDINGS |       | casus, chance (base, cās-) |                 |
|-------------|--------------|-------|----------------------------|-----------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | -us          | -ūs   | <i>cā'sus</i>              | <i>cā'sūs</i>   |
| <i>Gen.</i> | -ūs          | -uum  | <i>cā'sūs</i>              | <i>cā'suum</i>  |
| <i>Dat.</i> | -ui          | -ibus | <i>cā'sui</i>              | <i>cā'sibus</i> |
| <i>Acc.</i> | -um          | -ūs   | <i>cā'sum</i>              | <i>cā'sūs</i>   |
| <i>Abl.</i> | -ū           | -ibus | <i>cā'sū</i>               | <i>cā'sibus</i> |

**551. Gender.** — Nouns of the fourth declension in *-us* are mostly masculine; the only exceptions in this book are *manus* and *domus*, both of which are feminine.

<sup>1</sup> Usually has abl. sing. *domō* and acc. plur. *domōs* (645).



**552. Drill.** — Decline *exercitus noster, impetus fortis*.

**553. Exercises**

*Oral.* 1. Iūrāvit per (*by*) deōs sē nōn dēsertūrum esse suōs amīcōs, sed hī eī crēdere nōluērunt. 2. Omnēs ōrāvērunt nē in suīs propriīs domibus cruciātū interficerentur. 3. Libertās iūraque nulliūs<sup>1</sup> dēspiciētur; nam nōs omnēs parēs sumus. 4. Nautae singulī dē nāvī dēsiluērunt ut ē morte instantī ēvāderent. 5. Postquam cāsus ducī nūntiātus est, novem nāvibus contrāctīs, ad īnsulam rediit. 6. Exercitus noster impetum in (*on*) ōrdinēs Gallōrum ita ācriter fēcīt ut hī perterritī sē quam celerrimē reciperent. 7. Cum nostrīs resistere nōn iam vellent, manūs tendere incēpērunt petentēs pācem salūtemque.

*Written.* 1. By chance I caught-sight-of the army (as it was) setting-out to begin battle. 2. Who has said that a house divided against itself can not stand? 3. On-account-of the many wagons (which were) rolling (along) on the street, we could not take a rest. 4. As our house was not finished, we did not know where we should live. 5. These regions are uninhabited; for I have seen no one.

**554. English Word Studies**

In the fourteenth century there began a great revival of interest in the ancient Latin and Greek authors. This revival is known as the **Renaissance**, or **Renascence** (**re-nās-cor**). Beginning in Italy, it spread over western Europe and reached England in the sixteenth century. Ever since that time new words have been added to English from Latin and Greek in great numbers. As a result, over ninety per cent of the words in Caesar and Cicero have English derivatives. Words of this last period are easily distinguished by their similarity to the Latin originals.

---

<sup>1</sup> Used in place of the gen. sing. of *nēmō*.

One result of the introduction of new words directly from the Latin was the formation of a number of **doublets**, words derived at different periods from the same Latin word and having different meanings. Note the following (the earlier form precedes): *conceit, conception* (**concupiō**); *sample, example* (**exemplum**); *feat, fact* (**factum**); *Mr., master* (**magister**); *loyal, legal* (**lĕx**); *mayor, major* (**maior**); *treason, tradition* (**trādō**); *chance, cadence* (**cadō**); *pursue, persecute* (**persequor**).

**Exercise.** — Show how the above doublets got their meanings from the original Latin meaning.



FIG. 114. A TEMPLE AT TIVOLI

Tivoli (ancient Tibur) has always been a favorite summer resort for the people of Rome. It is eighteen miles east of Rome in the Sabine Hills.

## LESSON XCV

### INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

555.

#### Vocabulary

|   |                              |
|---|------------------------------|
| a'liquis, a'liquid, <i>someone</i> ; plur. <i>some, any</i>                       | [ <i>alius + quis</i> ]      |
| am'plius, compar. adv., <i>more, further</i>                                      | (amplify)                    |
| au'tem (never first word), <i>moreover, on the other hand</i>                     |                              |
| cōnsū'mō, -ere, -sūmp'sī, -sūmp'tus, ( <i>take wholly</i> ), <i>use up, waste</i> | [ <i>sūmō</i> ]              |
| lo'quor, lo'quī, locū'tus sum, <i>talk, speak</i>                                 | (loquacious)                 |
| mercā'tor, mercātō'ris, m., <i>trader, merchant</i>                               | [ <i>merx, merchandise</i> ] |
| quī'dam, quae'dam, quid'dam, <i>a certain one</i>                                 | [ <i>quī</i> ]               |
| tempes'tās, tempestā'tis, f., <i>season, storm</i>                                | [ <i>tempus</i> ]            |
| tri'plex, tri'plicis, <i>threefold</i>  | [ <i>trēs + plicō</i> ]      |
| ve'hō, -ere, ve'xī, vec'tus, <i>convey, carry</i>                                 | (vehicle)                    |

556.

#### Indefinite Pronouns

Review the declension of the interrogative **quis** (255) and the relative **quī** (241).

(a) The most indefinite of all Latin pronouns is **quis** (declined like the interrogative pronoun), *some, any*, used only after certain words (**sī** and **nē** in this book): **sī quis**, *if anyone*; **nē quid**, *lest anything*, etc.

(b) **Aliquis**, a compound of **quis**, often means “*someone* — I don't know who.” It is declined exactly like **quis**, except that it has **aliqua** in the nominative and accusative plural neuter.

(c) **Quīdam**, *a certain one*, is less indefinite than **quis** and **aliquis**. It often means “*someone whose name I can mention but won't.*” It is declined like **quī**<sup>1</sup> — the suffix **-dam** being indeclinable.

---

<sup>1</sup> Except in accusative singular **quendam**, **quandam**, **quiddam**, genitive plural **quōrundam**, **quārundam**, **quōrundam**. See 659 for full declension of **aliquis** and **quīdam**.

## 557.

## Exercises

*Oral.* 1. Loquar tēcum amplius postea dē quibusdam condiōnibus quās nunc explicāre nōlō. 2. Sī vīs esse aliquis, dēbēs et labōrāre cum maximā diligentiā et discere ea quae magister iubet. 3. Imperāvit nostrō exercituī ut prōgrederētur et triplicem impetum in manūs hostium faceret. 4. Crūdēlis est, nōn fortis, quī puerōs occīdit. 5. Nāvis quā vehēbāmur tempestāte ita rapidē agēbātur ut gubernātor eam regere nōn posset. 6. Iussī quendam mercātōrem ire cum manū militum ut frūmentum emeret. 7. Imperāvī autem ei nē ūllum tempus cōsūmeret, nē quid hostibus nūntiārētur. 8. Audīvī aliquem dē quibusdam cāsibus loquentem sed nōn bene intellēxī.



FIG. 115. CAESAR AND THE SOOTHSAYER

Caesar is being warned to beware the Ides of March (March 15), on which day he was assassinated (cf. Fig. 90). (From "Julius Caesar.")



FIG. 116. A CENTAUR

*Written.* 1. I wish to speak with you further about heroes,<sup>1</sup> wars, and battles. 2. Some say that a certain merchant bought the horse but did not pay for (**prō**) it. 3. It pleased me to see that the children had been well taught. 4. After having been conveyed to the-top-of the mountain by horses, we jumped-down from them and explored those regions on foot. 5. A certain man swore that he saw the body of a horse joined to a human head and body.

## 558.

## Latin Phrases in English

**prō et con(trā)**, *for and against*.

**quid prō quō**, *something for something*, "tit for tat."

**Deō volente**, *God willing* (often abbreviated D.V.).

**Possunt quia posse videntur**, *They can because they think they can* (lit., *seem to be able*). — Virgil.

**Dulce** (*sweet*) **et decōrum** (*glorious*) **est prō patriā mori** (from *morior*, *die*).

**cāsus bellī**, *an occasion for war*.

**mē iūdice**, *in my judgment*.

**in statū quō**, *in the situation in which (it was before)*; **status quō**, *the situation in which (it was before)*.

## 559.

## THE GRACCHI

Ti. et C. Gracchī Scīpiōnis Āfricānī nepōtēs erant. Dīligentiā Cornēliae mātris puerī doctī sunt. Cum quaedam hospita (*guest*) ōrnāmenta sua pulcherrima eī ostenderet,

<sup>1</sup> Vir or homō — which?

Cornēlia liberōs suōs hospitae ostendēns, dīxit : “ Haec sunt mea ōrnāmenta ! ” (*See Fig. 1.*)

Tiberius, cum adultus<sup>1</sup> esset, plēbī fāvit. Tribūnus plēbis creātus<sup>2</sup> agrōs populō dīvidēbat. Cum dīxisset omnia per plēbem agī dēbere, senātōrēs convocātī cōnsuluērunt quid facerent. Tiberiō accēdente Scipiō Nāsīca, senātor, clāmāvit : “ Quī rem<sup>3</sup> pūblicam salvam esse volunt, mē sequantur ! ” Tum omnēs ad Tiberium currunt et eum occīdunt.

Gāius voluit frātris mortem vindicāre et eius cōnsilia efficere. Tribūnus creātus, frūmentum plēbī dīvidēbat et cīvitatē omnibus quī in Italiā habitābant dabat. Sed fugere coāctus interfectus est.

Itaque senātōrēs mortem Gracchōrum effēcērunt sed cōnsilia eōrum exstinguere nōn potuērunt ; nam Rōmānī eōrum vītā<sup>4</sup> multōs annōs in memoriā tenuērunt.



FIG. 117. THE HOUSE WITH THE BALCONY, POMPEII

<sup>1</sup> From *adolēscō*.

<sup>2</sup> 133 B.C.

<sup>3</sup> Acc. of *rēs*.

<sup>4</sup> With plural meaning.



## LESSON XCVI

### CONJUGATION OF *fīō*. PREDICATE NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

560.

#### Vocabulary

|   |                  |
|---|------------------|
| adminis'trō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, <i>manage</i>                                    | (administration) |
| dēmōns'trō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, <i>point out, show</i>                            | [mōnstrō]        |
| fī'ō, fī'erī, fac'tus sum, <i>become, be made, happen</i>                           | (satisfy)        |
| praefi'ciō, -ere, -fē'cī, -fec'tus, <i>put in charge of</i> (with acc.<br>and dat.) | [faciō]          |
| prae'sum, -es'se, -fuī, -futū'rus, <i>be in charge of</i> (with dat.)               | [sum]            |
| se'nex, se'nis, m., <i>old man</i>  | (senior)         |
| senā'tus, -ūs, m., <i>senate</i>  |                  |
| sup'plex, sup'plicis, ( <i>kneeling</i> ), <i>suppliant, beseeching</i>             | [sub + plicō]    |
| temp'tō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, <i>test, try, attempt</i>                            | (temptation)     |
| vi'olō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, <i>treat with violence, profane</i>                   | [vīs]            |



FIG. 118. MĀTER ET PATER

561.

Conjugation of *FĪŌ*

**Faciō** does not have the present system in the passive. When the Romans, therefore, desired to express *be made, be done, become* in the present, imperfect, or future tenses, they used the verb **fĭō**, which has these meanings, although active in form :

| INDICATIVE  |                            | SUBJUNCTIVE |                            | INFINITIVE          |
|---|----------------------------|-------------|----------------------------|---------------------|
| Pres.   | <b>fĭ'ō</b> ———            | Pres.       | <b>fĭ'am, fĭ'ās</b> , etc. | Pres. <b>fĭ'erī</b> |
|   | <b>fit fĭ'unt</b>          |             |                            |                     |
| Impf.   | <b>fĭē'bam</b> , etc.      | Impf.       | <b>fĭ'erem</b> , etc.      |                     |
| Fut.  | <b>fĭ'am, fĭ'ēs</b> , etc. |             |                            |                     |
| (The perfect system is regularly formed with the perfect participle <b>factus</b> , <b>-a</b> , <b>-um</b> and <b>sum</b> , <b>eram</b> , <b>erō</b> , etc. See 671.) |                            |             |                            |                     |

a. Observe that the stem vowel *i* is lengthened throughout, except before *ē* and final *-t*.

b. Caution. — Compounds of **faciō**, such as **cōnficiō** and **efficiō**, form the passive regularly : **cōnficior**, **efficior**, etc.

562.

Predicate Nouns and Adjectives

**Fĭō** and the passive forms of **appellō** (*call*), **dēligō** (*choose*), **creō** (*elect*) may take a predicate noun or adjective :

**Caesar dux fiet**, *Caesar will be made leader*.

**Cicerō Pater Patriae appellātus est**, *Cicero was called the Father of his Country*.

563.

Exercises

*Oral.* 1. Nōne arbitrāris sorōrem meam crēvisse? Ea fit altior pulchriorque. 2. Vōbīs supplex manūs tendit patria commūnis, vōbīs vitam, libertātem salūtemque omnium civium committit. 3. Virum quī praesidiō praefuit huic negōtiō praeficiam ut omnia administret. 4. Senex,

cum Prīmus Cīvis Civitātis creātus esset, ēmit humilem domum in quā nātus erat. 5. Certior factus sum hostēs loca sacra violāvisse, domōs agrōsque vāstāvisse, omnia pecora remōvisse, et iter per finēs aliēnōs per vim temptāvisse. 6. Caesar dēmōnstrāvit hunc dignum senem prō beneficiīs crēbris amīcum sociumque populī Rōmānī ā senātū appellātum esse. 7. Nihil melius emī potest quam amīcus firmus.



FIG. 119. PUER RŌMĀNUS

am-in-charge-of this force of soldiers, those (things) will be done which I judge are best.

*Written.* 1. Someone is speaking, but I do not understand what he is saying on-account-of the shouts of the boys. 2. Who will become king after the old man's death? 3. After a certain boy told me that he could breathe under water, I wanted him to try, but he was unwilling. 4. If anyone wishes to excel others, let him always command himself. 5. While I

## 564.

## Musical Terms in English

Most of our musical terms come from the Italian and thus ultimately from the Latin. Explain the following, all derived from Latin words used in this book: *alto*, *forte*, *fortissimo*, *piano* (**plānus**), *accelerando* (**celer**), *ritardando* (**tardus**), *con amore*, *soprano* (**super**), *mezzo-forte* (**medius**), *da capo* (**dē capite**), *crescendo*, *opus*, *finale*, *libretto*, *trio*, *solo*, *tempo*.

---

Poēta nāscitur, nōn fīt, *A poet is born, not made.*

## LESSON XCVII

### FIFTH DECLENSION

565.

#### Vocabulary

|  |                |
|--|----------------|
| congre'dior, con'gredi, congres'sus sum, <i>come together with, fight with</i> | [gradior]      |
| coniun'gō, -ere, -iūn'xī, -iūnc'tus, <i>join with, unite</i>                   | [iungō]        |
| di'ēs, diē'ī, m., <i>day</i>   | (diary)        |
| diur'nus, -a, -um, <i>daily, by day</i>  |                |
| fin'gō, -ere, fin'xī, fic'tus, <i>shape, form, invent</i>                      | (fiction)      |
| rēs, re'ī, f., <i>thing, matter, affair</i>                                    | (real)         |
| spe'ciēs, speciē'ī, f., <i>appearance, pretense, kind</i>                      | [speciō]       |
| spēs, spe'ī, f., <i>hope</i>   | [spērō]        |
| sur'gō, -ere, surrē'xī, surrēc'tus, <i>rise</i>                                | (resurrection) |
| tol'lō, -ere, sus'tulī, sublā'tus, <i>raise, remove</i>                        | [ferō]         |

566.

#### Fifth Declension

The last of the noun declensions embraces comparatively few words. **Rēs** and **diēs**, however, occur constantly and should be memorized. Other nouns of the **fifth declension**, as a rule, have no plural; all are feminine except **diēs**, which is commonly masculine.

|      | CASE ENDINGS |       | diēs, day (base, di-) rēs, thing (base, r-) |         |      |        |
|------|--------------|-------|---|---------|------|--------|
|      | SING.        | PLUR. |   |         |      |        |
| Nom. | -ēs          | -ēs   | di'ēs                                       | di'ēs   | rēs  | rēs    |
| Gen. | -ēī          | -ērum | diē'ī                                       | diē'rum | re'ī | rē'rum |
| Dat. | -ēī          | -ēbus | diē'ī                                       | diē'bus | re'ī | rē'bus |
| Acc. | -em          | -ēs   | di'em                                       | di'ēs   | rem  | rēs    |
| Abl. | -ē           | -ēbus | di'ē  | diē'bus | rē   | rē'bus |

Observe that **e** appears in every ending and that in **diēs** it is long in the genitive and dative singular, though preceding a vowel (608).

567. Drill. — Decline **rēs similis, alia spēs, diēs longus**.

## 568.

## Exercises



FIG. 120. A ROMAN PITCHER

*Oral.* 1. Memoria est satis magnum praemium prō beneficiō. 2. Puerī tantum clāmōrem sustulērunt ut ā patre suō audirentur. 3. Alpēs montēs ab aliquō deō ficti esse videntur; nam multa mīlia pedum surgunt. 4. Gallī diurnīs proeliīs cum Germānīs congressī sunt. 5. Exercitus eius maiōrem partem nōnī diēi in castrīs remānsit, quia nūllam spem victōriae habuit. 6. Hīs rēbus cognitis, Gallī, trāns flūmen trāductī, manūs suās coniūnxērunt ut Rōmānōs impedirent et interclūderent.

7. Nova speciēs hominum nōn nōtōrum mē puerum perterrēbat et multōs annōs in memoriā haerēbat.

*Written.* 1. If anyone asks in which house I live, I hope that you will point it out to him. 2. On the seventh day after the grain was distributed by the merchants, it was used-up. 3. When it became necessary to put this old man in charge of affairs, we all promised to obey him. 4. By chance I heard the distinguished man say that there was no hope of peace before the fifth year of the war. 5. Under the pretense of friendship he offered terms of peace, but we knew that he was trying to deceive us.

## 569.

## English Word Studies

English words which preserve the forms of the Latin fourth declension are: **census**, **consensus**, **impetus**, **prospectus**, **status**, **apparatus** (plural **apparatuses** or **apparatus**; the latter preserves the Latin plural). Note that **consensus** (from **sentīō**) is spelled with an **s** but **census** (from **cēnseō**) with a **c**. An ablative form is seen in **impromptu**.

The fifth declension is represented by **rabies**, **series**, **species**. The last two are used in the plural with no change of form (as in Latin). The accusative singular is represented by **requiem**, the ablative by **specie**, and the ablative plural by **rebus**.

**A. M.**, *ante merīdiem*, *before midday*; **P. M.**, *post merīdiem*, *after midday*; **M.**, *meridiēs*, *midday*.

Latin verb forms preserved in English are **interest**, **fiat**, **exit**, **exeunt**, **exeat**, **posse**.

**Exercise.** — Define the words listed above.



FIG. 121. ROMAN AQUEDUCT AT SEGOVIA, SPAIN



## LESSON XCVIII

### DATIVES OF REFERENCE AND PURPOSE. ABLATIVE OF MEASURE OF DIFFERENCE

570.

#### Vocabulary

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| appā'reō, -ē're, -pā'rui, -pāritū'rus, <i>appear, become visible</i>            | [pāreō]    |
| conī'ciō, -ere, -iē'ci, -iec'tus, <i>throw (forcibly), throw together</i>       | [iaciō]    |
| du'bitō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, <i>doubt, hesitate</i>                           | (dubious)  |
| e'ques, e'quitis, m., <i>horseman</i>   | [equus]    |
| ignō'rō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, <i>be ignorant of, not know</i>                  | [nōscō]    |
| lūx, lū'cis, f., <i>light</i>   | [lūmen]    |
| occur'rō, -ere, occur'rī, -cur'sus, <i>run against, meet (with dat.), occur</i> | [currō]    |
| rēs pū'blica, re'ī pū'blicae, f., ( <i>public affairs</i> ), <i>government</i>  | (republic) |
| ser'viō, -ī're, -ī'vī, -ī'tus, <i>serve (with dat.)</i>                         | [servus]   |
| vī'vus, -a, -um, <i>alive, living</i>   | (vivid)    |

571.

#### Dative of Reference

1. Iussī eōs sibi frūmentum ferre, *I ordered them to carry grain for themselves.*

2. Sī mihi dignī esse vultis, *If you wish to be worthy in my sight (for me).*

Observe that (a) in both examples the dative denotes the person concerned or referred to; (b) the literal translation of this dative is often "for" rather than "to." Sometimes it is best translated by a possessive in English.

572.

#### Dative of Purpose

1. Locum castris dēlēgit, *He chose a place for a camp.*

2. Haec castra erunt praesidiō oppidō, *This camp will be (for) a protection to the town.*

Observe that (a) the dative may be used to express purpose; (b) a second dative (of reference) is often used with it, especially when the verb is some form of **sum**.

**573. Ablative of Measure of Difference**

1. *Tribus annis ante eum vidī, I saw him three years ago* (lit., *before by three years*).

2. *Pater est capite altior quam filius, The father is a head taller than his son* (lit., *taller by a head*).

Observe that the ablative expresses the measure of difference.

**574. Exercises**

*Oral.* 1. *Mē ignōrās, sī exīstimās mē amīcīs meis dignē et humiliter nōn semper servīre.* 2. *Puer perīculīs occur-*

*rere nōn dubitat, quia nihil timet; senex autem multō tardius agit, quia prōvidet quid futūrum sit.*

3. *Multi vīvī mortem timent quod nōn sciunt quid post mortem accidat.* 4. *Quī auctor clārus linguā nostrā dixit "sūmere arma contrā mare cūrārū"?* 5. *Ita bene rēs pūblica ab hōc homine administrāta erat ut omnēs eī favērent.* 6. *Cum lūx appārēret, dux tria milia equitum praesidiō impedimentīs antecēdere iussit.* 7. *Septem*

*diēbus post sex milia sociōrum auxiliō nostrīs pervēnērunt et hostēs in fugam coniēcērunt.*



FIG. 122. HADRIAN'S VILLA NEAR TIVOLI

The emperor Hadrian (117-138 A.D.) built a magnificent summer home, or rather a fair-sized town, near Rome. The wall here shown was intended to furnish a shady walk morning and afternoon, on the one side or the other.

*Written.* 1. To select a home for others is a most difficult thing. 2. Our house is much larger than yours. 3. Thrown-out by the force of the storm, he grasped the boat with his hands and escaped death. 4. Let us not envy those who with great skill form or paint the likenesses of our notable men. 5. It was (for) a great honor to the humble soldier to be consulted by the general.

## 575.

## Latin in Medicine

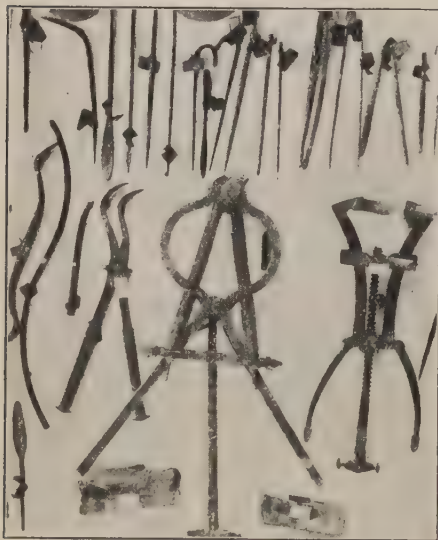


FIG. 123. SURGICAL INSTRUMENTS

Many Roman surgical instruments were like those used to-day. Modern surgeons have expressed their admiration of them.

Physicians daily make use of many Latin words and phrases. The science of anatomy, with which all physicians must be familiar, uses a large number of Latin terms. In writing prescriptions, physicians use Latin constantly, and druggists must be able to understand it. The letter *R* at the top of a prescription stands for *recipe, take*. Other examples are:

*aq(ua) pūr(a)*, pure water; *aq(ua) dēst(īl-lāta)*, distilled water; *t(er) i(n) d(iē)*, three

times a day; *cap(iat)*, let him take; *gtt.* (abbreviation of *gut-tae*), drops; *sig(nā)*, write.

## LESSON XCIX

### FUTURE PASSIVE PARTICIPLE (GERUNDIVE) AND ITS USE WITH SUM

576.

#### Vocabulary

|   |                  |
|---|------------------|
| admo'neō, -ē're, -mo'nui, -mo'nitus, <i>remind</i>            | [moneō]          |
| concur'rō, -ere, -cur'rī, -cur'sus, <i>run together, rush</i> | [currō]          |
| grex, gre'gis, m., <i>herd</i>                                | [ēgregius]       |
| incen'dō, -ere, -cen'dī, -cēn'sus, <i>set on fire, burn</i>   | (incense)        |
| lā'bor, lā'bi, lāp'sus sum, <i>slip, glide by</i>             | (lapse)          |
| lēgā'tus, -ī, m., <i>envoy, lieutenant general</i>            | [lēgō, appoint]  |
| lī'berō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, <i>set free</i>                | [liber]          |
| prae'dicō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, <i>declare, proclaim</i>     | [dīcō, proclaim] |
| rum'pō, -ere, rū'pī, rup'tus, <i>break</i>                    | (rupture)        |
| ū'tor, ū'tī, ū'sus sum, <i>use, make use of (with abl.)</i>   | (usury)          |

577. Idiom. — { causā  
grātiā } *by reason of, for the sake of* (preceded by genitive).

Note. — *E.g.*, used in English in the sense of “for example,” stands for exempli grātiā, lit., *for the sake of example*.

578.

#### Future Passive Participle

The future passive participle (commonly called the *gerundive*) is formed by adding **-ndus, -a, -um** to the present stem of any verb: **para-ndus, -a, -um, to be prepared.**<sup>1</sup>

*a. Drill.* — Form the future passive participle of **liberō, pāreō, cōnsūmō, serviō.**

579.

#### Uses of the Future Passive Participle

1. **Ad eās rēs cōficiendās Mārcus dēligitur**, *Marcus is chosen to accomplish these things* (lit., *for these things to be accomplished*).

2. **Caesaris videndī grātiā vēnit**, *He came for the sake of seeing Caesar* (lit., *for the sake of Caesar to be seen*).

---

<sup>1</sup> Add **-endus, -a, -um** in the case of **-iō** verbs: **mūni-endus, capi-endus**. The stem vowel is shortened before **-nd-**.

3. *Hoc opus vōbīs faciendum est, This work is to be done by you, i.e. This work must be done by you.*

Observe that (a) when used with *ad*, *causā*, or *grātiā*, the future passive participle expresses *purpose*; (b) when used with forms of *sum* as a predicate adjective, it naturally expresses *obligation* or *necessity*; (c) the person upon whom the obligation rests is expressed by the dative (**dative of agent**).<sup>1</sup>

## 580.

## Exercises

*Oral.* 1. Agricola prae sē gregem pecorum agēns ad oppidum tardē graditur. 2. Admonēmur annīs lābentibus nōn esse tempus ad omnia agenda. 3. Cīvēs frequentēs, puerī et etiam senēs, nōn dubitāvērunt sed ad rem pūblicam servandam concurrērunt. 4. Lēgātus nōbīs imperāvit ut, equīs ūsī, quam celerrimē proficīscerēmur et omnia explōrārēmus. 5. Ita rapidē iter nōbīs faciendum erat ut paucīs diēbus magnum spatium cōnficerēmus. 6. Lēgātus praedicāvit sē iūstās condiciōnēs pācis rūpisse captivōrum liberandōrum grātiā. 7. Cum Gallī animadvertissent hostēs ad sē contendere, omnēs suās domōs incendendās esse arbitrātī sunt quia scivērunt eōs ab iniūriā nōn temperātūrōs esse.

*Written.* 1. In the summer we shall set-out to explore the woods.<sup>2</sup> 2. If a boy meets an old man, what ought<sup>2</sup> he to do? 3. I am confident that he does not wish to do-harm-to us. 4. The war was carried-on for-the-sake-of freeing the slaves. 5. What ought<sup>2</sup> to be done by the Senate if the envoys hesitate to accept the harsh peace terms?

<sup>1</sup> To be distinguished from the **ablative of agent** with *ā* or *ab*, regularly used with the passive voice of verbs.

<sup>2</sup> Express in two ways.

**581. Latin Forms of English Names**

Many English names of boys and girls are derived from Latin words (a) without or (b) with change :

(a) Alma, *fostering*; Clara, *clear, bright*; Leo, *lion*; Stella, *star*; Sylvester, *pertaining to the woods*.

(b) Mabel, from **amābilis**, *lovable*; Belle, from **bella**, *beautiful*; Florence, from **flōrentia**, *flourishing*; Grace, from **grātia**, *grace, favor*; Margaret, from **margarīta**, *pearl*.

The following names were in common use among the Romans :

August, Augustus, *venerable*; Rufus, *red-haired*; Victor, *conqueror*; Vincent (**vincēns**), *conquering*.

Other Roman names still used in English are :

Emil and Emily (**Aemilius**, **Aemilia**) ; Cecilia (**Caecilia**) ; Claudia ; Cornelius, Cornelia ; Horace (**Horātius**) ; Julius, Julia ; Mark (**Mārcus**) ; Paul (**Paulus**).

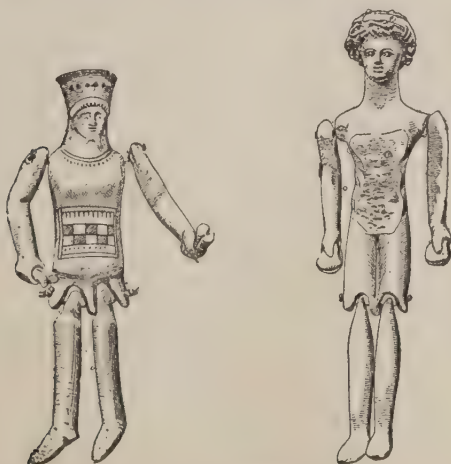


FIG. 124. ANCIENT DOLLS

Roman girls played with dolls to the time of marriage.



## LESSON C

### THE GERUND AND ITS USES. GENITIVE AND ABLATIVE OF DESCRIPTION

#### 582. Vocabulary

|   |               |
|---|---------------|
| do'lor, dolō'ris, m., <i>pain, grief</i>                | (doleful)     |
| dor'miō, -ī're, -ī'vī, -ī'tus, <i>sleep</i>             | (dormitory)   |
| fa'ciēs, faciē'ī, f., <i>face, appearance</i>           | (surface)     |
| frūc'tus, frūc'tūs, m., <i>enjoyment, fruit</i>         | [frūmentum]   |
| *mēns, men'tis, f., <i>mind</i>                         | (mental)      |
| mē'tior, mēti'rī, mēn'sus sum, <i>measure, deal out</i> | (mensuration) |
| o'rior, ori'rī, or'tus sum, <i>arise, rise</i>          | (orient)      |
| te'gō, -ere, tē'xī, tēc'tus, <i>cover, conceal</i>      | (detective)   |
| te'xō, -ere, te'xui, tex'tus, <i>weave</i>              | (textile)     |
| tor'queō, -ē're, tor'sī, tor'tus, <i>twist, torture</i> | (distorted)   |

#### 583. The Gerund

The gerund corresponds to the English verbal noun in **-ing**, as in *We learn to do by **doing***. It is formed by adding **-ndī, -ndō, -ndum, -ndō** to the present stem of any verb.<sup>1</sup> It is accordingly declined in the singular only, in all cases except the nominative.

a. Drill. — Learn the gerunds of the model verbs (660-4).

Form and decline the gerunds of **admoneō, lābor, dormiō, mētiōr**.

#### 584. Uses of the Gerund

1. Ad discendum vēnimus, *We have come for learning* (i.e. to learn).
2. Discendī causā (or grātiā) vēnimus, *We have come for the sake of learning*.

Observe that the gerund, when used with **ad**, **causā**, or **grātiā**, expresses *purpose*.

---

<sup>1</sup> Add **-endī**, etc., in the case of **-iō** verbs.

**585. Caution.** — Do not confuse the gerund and the future passive participle (gerundive). The former has only *four* case forms, the latter has *thirty*. The gerund is a verbal *noun*, and as such has the constructions of a noun (object of a preposition, ablative of means, etc.), while the future passive participle is a verbal *adjective*, and as such must modify a noun and agree with it in gender, number, and case. Forms ending in *-ī*, *-ō*, or *-um* *may* be either gerund or future passive participle, according to the context; other forms *must* be the future passive participle. When either construction is possible, the Latin prefers the future passive participle.

### 586. Genitive and Ablative of Description

1. *virī magnae virtūtis*, *men of great courage*.
2. *spatium decem pedum*, *a space of ten feet*.
3. *hominēs inimicā faciē*, *men with (or of) an unfriendly appearance*.

Observe that in English we may say *men of* or *with an unfriendly appearance*. Both are descriptive. Note also that description is similarly expressed in Latin, *i.e.* either by the genitive or the ablative, but only when modified by an adjective.

While the **genitive** and the **ablative of description** are translated alike, the Latin confines the genitive largely to expressions of *measure and number* (see 2) and the ablative to *physical qualities* (see 3).

### 587. Exercises

*Oral.* 1. Puella pulchrā faciē nōn semper mentem mīrandam habet. 2. Arbitrārisne tē dormiendī causā ad hunc locum vēnisse? 3. Scīsne quibus rēbus Rōmānī ad texendum ūsī sint? 4. Plūrima flūmina ex altīs montibus oriuntur. 5. Gallī circumventī militibus frūmentum mētīrī nōn potuērunt et cōs frūctibus aluērunt. 6. Equitēs nūllam spem redeundī<sup>1</sup> habuērunt. 7. Captīvus magnae virtūtis quī torquēbātur faciem ob dolōrem tegēbat.

---

<sup>1</sup> Gerund of *redeō*.

*Written.* 1. Do you know that Roman girls painted their faces? 2. Marcus was a boy with a famous father. 3. Did he come to this place for-the-sake-of learning? 4. Some boys invent reasons of all kinds in-order-to escape work. 5. At the end of this journey we ought to give thanks to our leader.

588.

## English Word Studies

The future passive participle is preserved in a number of English words: **propaganda**, **Amanda**, **memorandum**, **corrigendum**, **addendum**, **referendum**. It may also be seen in the following abbreviations, used in geometry: **Q. E. D.** (**Quod erat dēmōnstrandum**), **Q. E. F.** (**Quod erat faciendum**).

## Latin Phrases in English

**sine diē**, *without a day (being set)*; used of adjournment by a parliamentary body.

**primā faciē**, *on the first face (of it)*; e.g. *prima facie* evidence.

**in rē**, *in the matter (of)*.

**bonā fidē**, *in good faith*.

**mēns sāna** (*sound*) **in corpore sãnō**.

## LATIN INSCRIPTION ON LONGFELLOW'S GRAVE



## 589.

## MARIUS AND SULLA

C. Marius, humili locō nātus, ob singulārem virtutem et cupiditatem ad pericula suscipienda cōsul ā Rōmānīs creātus est. Postquam Iugurtham, rēgem Numidiaē, vicit, bellum contrā Cimbrōs et Teutonēs suscepit. Hī recentēs hostēs, ab extrēmīs Germāniae finibus fugientēs, novās sēdēs quaerēbant, et ā Rōmānīs petivērunt ut sibi terram darent. Repulsī armīs petere cōstituērunt. Trēs ducēs Rōmānī impetūs barbarōrum nōn sustinuērunt sed Marius imperium Rōmānōrum servāvit, nam Teutonēs sub Alpibus proeliō superāvit.

Victīs Teutonibus, Marius Cimbris occurrit. Hī lēgātōs misērunt ut agrōs urbēsq̄e sibi et Teutonibus peterent — nihil enim dē cāsū Teutonum audiverant. Marius ridēs, “Illī quidem tenent,” inquit, “semperque tenēbunt terram ā nōbīs acceptam.” Postea pugnāre coepērunt, nec minor cum uxōribus Cimbrōrum est pugna quam cum virīs. Victae sē infantēsque suōs occidērunt. Ad urbem reversus,<sup>1</sup> Marius triumphum ēgit.

Cum Sulla cōsul contrā Mithridātem, rēgem Pontī, missus esset, Marius voluit imperātor fierī. Sulla cum exercitū ad urbem vēnit et eam armīs occupāvit. Interim Marius in Āfricam fūgit. Profectō ad bellum Sullā, Marius in Italiam rediit et Rōmam vāstāvit. Omnēs nōbilēs variīs suppliciōrum generibus affēcit. Post bellum Mithridāticum Sulla rediit et, Mariō ipsō mortuō (*dead*), omnēs quī Mariō fāverant superāvit. Dictātor creātus tam multa milia cīvium interfici iussit ut quidam diceret vivere aliquōs dēbere ut essent quibus imperāret (*that there might be some left to govern*).

---

<sup>1</sup> Used here as a deponent verb.

## SĀTURNĀLIA

## Persōnae

Geta, *callidissimus servōrum*Hector, *maximus servōrum*Bellus, *pulcherrimus servōrum*Boadix, *coquus*L. Calpurnius, *dominus*

Alii servi

TEMPUS: Decembrī. LOCUS: in aedibus L. Calpurni. (*Servi accēdunt.*)

Servi. Iō Sāturnālia! Iō Sāturnālia! Iō Sāturnālia!

(*Boadix ā sinistrā parte accēdit, currēns*)

Boadix. Quid est? Quem clāmōrem audiō? Quid accidit? Quis interfectus est?

Servi. Ho, ho, ho! Coquus est!

Bellus. Nōne pulcher est? Tam gravis est, ut, eō currente, audire videāmur — montem cadentem!

Servi. Ha, ha!

Boadix. Quid? Montem cadentem? Ubi?

Hector. Mōns nōn cadit; stupidus es!

Geta. Sāturnālia adsunt! Nōne Sāturnālia in Galliā, tuā patriā, erant?

Boadix. Quae sunt? Nūlla coxi!

Servi. Ha, ha! "Coxi!"

Geta. Sāturnālia! — Sunt septem diēs quibus deō Sāturnō honōrēs dōnantur —

Boadix. Septem diēs! Deī Superī! Cūr rīdētis? Abīte<sup>1</sup> aut vōs omnēs interficiam!

Hector. Quid? Properāre nōn dēbēs!

Boadix. Diēbus quibus deīs honōrēs dōnantur, tum labor coqui maximus est! Cūr tantum clāmōrem fēcistis? Cūr nōn permisistis ut dominus noster ex memoriā hōs diēs dēpōneret? Cūr —

Geta. Sed hīs diēbus servi liberī sunt! Rēgem habent, ē numerō servōrum dēlēctum! Rēx domum regit! Nūllus labor est!

Boadix. Coquis labor semper est! Abīte<sup>1</sup>!

<sup>1</sup> *Be off!*

**Hector.** Nunc nōn est tempus labōris. Tē teneō! Sī nōbīscum Sātūrnālia nōn clāmābis, — in viam tē ēiciēmus!

**Bellus.** Eat stupidus ad labōrem!

**Geta.** Eat!

**Boadix.** Poenam dabit, — pessimī! (*Exit*)

**Geta** (*Hectori*). Eat, — nam dē graviōribus rēbus loquī dēbēmus!

**Hector.** Dē graviōribus quam dē Boadice loquī nōn possumus!  
Ha, ha!

**Geta** (*Hectori*). Nōnne tū cōfidis tē rēgem futūrum esse?

**Servi.** Iō Sātūrnālia!

**Hector.** Rēgem?

**Geta.** Rēgem familiae, — servum quī reliquōs servōs Sātūrnālibus regit.

**Hector.** Mē?

**Geta.** Tē! Maximus servōrum es. Dominus tē amat. — Mihi dixit tē sibi cārissimum servōrum esse!

**Hector.** Dixitne?

**Geta.** Dixit. Sed Bellus putat sē rēgem futūrum esse!

**Hector.** Bellus! Puer est! Rēx nōn erit!

**Geta.** Tū rēx eris! Iō Sātūrnālia!

**Hector et reliquī Servi.** Iō Sātūrnālia!

**Geta** (*Bellō*). Nōnne tū cōfidis tē rēgem familiae futūrum esse?

**Bellus.** Mē?

**Geta.** Tē! Pulcherrimus servōrum es. Dominus tē amat. — Mihi dixit tē sibi cārissimum servōrum esse! Sed Hector putat sē rēgem futūrum esse!

**Bellus.** Hector? Nōn pulcher est!

**Hector.** Servi! Nōnne mē audītis?

**Servi.** Audīmus.

**Hector.** Rēx familiae erō!

**Bellus.** Quid? Ego rēx erō!

**Hector.** Puer es!

**Bellus.** Tē nōn timeō! Tē interficiam!

**Hector.** Tē in viam ēiciam!

**Bellus.** Em!

**Hector.** Em tibi! (*Pugnant*)



**Servī.** Bellus vincit! Bene, Hector! Bellus eum interficiet!  
Iō!

(*Calpurnius ā dextrā parte, Boadīx ā sinistrā parte accēdunt*)

**Calpurnius et Boadīx.** Quid hoc?

**Servī.** Dominus adest! Illī tamen pugnant!

**Calpurnius.** Quid hoc! Librum meum legere nōn possum!

**Geta** (*Calpurniō*). Diū pugnāvērunt! Ego eōs dēsinere pugnāre iussī, sed mihi nōn pārūērunt. Sī mē rēgem familiae faciēs, mihi pārēbunt! Rēx bonus erō. —

**Calpurnius.** O-ho! Rēx familiae!

**Hector et Bellus.** Mēne vocās? Ōh! Dominus est!

**Calpurnius.** Ha, ha! Rēgem familiae dēligere dēbeō! In memoriā nōn habēbam! Dēligō —

**Hector et Bellus et Geta.** Mē!

**Calpurnius.** Dēligō servum mihi cārissimum et optimum, — coquum!

**Servī.** Coquum!

**Calpurnius.** Boadīx, rēx es! Em, vidēsne? Haec pecūnia tua est! Sī servī tibi pārēbunt, eīs partem dā<sup>1</sup>! Sed in memoriā tenē<sup>2</sup> tē rēgem esse! Bene rege<sup>3</sup>! Iō Sātūrnālia! (*Exit*)

**Boadīx.** Rēx nunc sum! Vōs omnēs nunc mihi auxilium dabitīs! Meus labor vester est! Iō Sātūrnālia! — Cūr nōn iam Sātūrnālia clāmātis?

**Servī.** Ōh! Ōh! Sātūrnālia dūra!

(*Exeunt*)



FIG. 125. AN UNKNOWN ROMAN

<sup>1</sup> Give! <sup>2</sup> Remember! <sup>3</sup> Rule!



FIG. 126. A ROMAN FESTIVAL



# SYNTAX OUTLINES FOR FINAL REVIEW

## NOUN SYNTAX

(References are to sections)

### 591. NOMINATIVE

1. Subject of Verb (13).
2. Predicate Noun or Adjective (13).
  - (a) Predicate nominative with passive of such verbs as *call*, *choose*, etc. (562).
  - (1. In the active these verbs take two accusatives.)

### 592. GENITIVE

1. Possession (38).
2. Description (586).

### 593. DATIVE

1. Indirect Object (48).
  - (a) With transitive verbs (*give*, etc.) and Acc. of Dir. Obj. (537).
  - (b) With certain intransitive verbs (*favor*, etc.) (541).
2. With adjectives meaning *like*, *fit*, *near*, etc. (415).
3. Reference (person concerned) (571).
4. Purpose (often with dat. of reference and *sum*) (572).
5. Agent (with future passive participle) (579).

### 594. ACCUSATIVE

1. Direct Object (25).
2. Place to Which with *ad* or *in* (96).
3. Subject of an Infinitive (204).
4. Extent of Time or Space (481).
5. Prepositions with acc.: *ad*, *ante*, *circum*, *contrā*, *ob*, *per*, *trāns*, *post*, *inter*, *super*; also *in* and *sub* after verbs of motion.
6. Two Accusatives: see Nominative, 2 (a) 1.

### 595. ABLATIVE

(a) *With Preposition*

1. Agent (person) with *ab* (*ā*) (182).
2. Place Where with *in*, *sub* (75, a).
3. Place from Which with *ab*, *dē*, *ex* (84).

4. Separation <sup>1</sup> with **ab**, **dē**, **ex** (84).
5. Accompaniment with **cum** (150).
6. Manner with **cum** <sup>2</sup> (250).
7. Prepositions with the abl. : **ab**, **cum**, **dē**, **ex**, **prae**, **prō** ; also **in** and **sub** after verbs of rest or position.  
(b) *Without Preposition*
8. Means (thing) (56).
9. Time When (338).
10. Respect (322).
11. Ablative Absolute (292).
12. Measure of Difference (573).
13. Description (586).
14. Special Verbs (576).
15. Cause (97, footnote).

## 596.

## VOCATIVE

A separate case of address, called the **vocative**, is used in the singular of **-us** and **-ius** nouns and adjectives of the second declension. The ending is **-e** in **-us** nouns and **-ī** in **-ius** nouns.

## 597.

## LOCATIVE

In the singular of **domus** and of names of towns of the first and second declensions, a special case, known as the **locative**, identical in form with the genitive singular, is used to express Place Where.



FIG. 127. CUPIDS GATHERING GRAPES

<sup>1</sup> When the separation is not meant literally, the preposition is usually omitted: **Liberor timōre**, *I am freed from fear*.

<sup>2</sup> When an adjective is used with the noun, **cum** may be omitted.

## VERB SYNTAX

## 598. SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

## 1. Used as Adverbs

| <i>Name</i>            | <i>Introduced by</i>     | <i>Translated by</i>        | <i>Verb in</i>                      |
|------------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Purpose (434)          | ut (neg. <i>nē</i> )     | to, in order to, so<br>that | Subjunctive                         |
| Result (470)           | ut (neg. <i>ut nōn</i> ) | that, so that               | Subjunctive                         |
| Cause (133, 486)       | quod, quia               | because                     | Indicative                          |
| Temporal (340)         | dum                      | while                       | Pres. Indic.                        |
| Conditional (381)      | sī                       | if                          | Indicative <sup>1</sup>             |
| Past Temporal<br>(524) | cum                      | when, after                 | Imperf. and Past<br>Perf. Subjunct. |
| Past Temporal<br>(524) | ubi, postquam            | when, after                 | Perf. Indic.                        |

## 2. Used as Adjectives

|                          |     |            |            |
|--------------------------|-----|------------|------------|
| Simple Relative<br>(241) | qui | who, which | Indicative |
|--------------------------|-----|------------|------------|

## 3. Used as Nouns (subject, object)

## a. Finite

| <i>Name</i>             | <i>Introduced by</i>     | <i>Translated by</i> | <i>Verb in</i> |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|----------------------|----------------|
| Indirect Question (488) | quis, ubi, cūr,<br>etc.  |                      | Subjunctive    |
| Volitive (515)          | ut (neg. <i>nē</i> )     | to, that             | Subjunctive    |
| Result (515)            | ut (neg. <i>ut nōn</i> ) | that, so that        | Subjunctive    |
| Cause (133)             | quod                     | because, that        | Indicative     |

## b. Infinitive

| <i>Use</i>                | <i>After Verbs</i>                                    | <i>Translated by</i>     |
|---------------------------|---|--------------------------|
| Subject or Object         | as in English, without<br>subject                     | Infinitive (106,<br>107) |
| Object                    | order, teach, etc., as in<br>English, with subj. acc. | Infinitive (204)         |
| Object (indir. statement) | saying, thinking, know-<br>ing, etc., with subj. acc. | "That" clause<br>(376)   |

<sup>1</sup> Subjunctive uses have not been discussed.



## 599.

## TENSE

- a. Imperfect Indicative — state of being; repeated, customary, or continuous action (193)

Perfect Indicative — act performed once (193)

## b.

## Sequence (441, 447, 498)

Primary (present, future) followed by primary tenses

Secondary (past) followed by secondary tenses

Primary Tenses of the Subjunctive: present, perfect

Secondary Tenses of the Subjunctive: imperfect, past perfect

## c.

## Summary of Subjunctive Uses by Tenses

I. *Present Tense Only*

Independent Volitive. Negative *nē* (429)

II. *Present and Imperfect Tenses*

(a) Purpose, introduced by *ut*, negative *nē* (434)

(b) Subordinate Volitive introduced by *ut*, negative *nē* (515, a)

(c) Result, introduced by *ut*, negative *ut nōn* (470, 515, b)

III. *Imperfect and Past Perfect Tenses*

*Cum* Descriptive (524)

IV. *Any Tense Required*

Indirect Question (488)

## 600. EXPRESSIONS OF PURPOSE SUMMARIZED

## a. For Short Statements

Dative (confined to nouns) (572)

Future passive participle or gerund with *ad*<sup>1</sup> (579, 584)

Future passive participle or gerund with *causā* or *grātiā* (577, 579, 584)

## b. For Longer Statements

*ut* (negative *nē*) and the subjunctive (434)

---

<sup>1</sup> When there is a noun that can be modified, the future passive participle is preferred to the gerund.

**601. TENSES OF INFINITIVES AND PARTICIPLES**

(Determined by main verb)

Present: *same time as* main verb (361)

Perfect: *before* main verb (384)

Future: *after* main verb

**602. AGREEMENT**

**Adjectives** agree in number, gender, and case with the nouns which they modify (15).

**Verbs** agree in person and number with their subjects (29).

When two singular subjects are connected by **aut, aut . . . aut, neque . . . neque**, the verb is singular (183).

The **relative pronoun** agrees in gender and number with its antecedent but its case depends upon its use in its own clause (244).

**Appositives** agree in case (130).



FIG. 128. BATHS OF CARACALLA, ROME

The baths were really magnificent clubhouses which served as community centers for the Romans. Besides the baths and swimming pools there were gymnasiums, lecture rooms, reading rooms, etc.



© International

Fig. 129. OSTIA FROM AN AIRPLANE

This town at the mouth (ostia) of the Tiber was the busy seaport of ancient Rome. It is now several miles inland because of the river deposits.

## SUPPLEMENTARY READING

### Cicero's Jests

Cum Cicerō Lentulum generum suum, parvae statūrae hominem, vīdisset longō gladiō accīnetum, "Quis," inquit, "generum meum ad gladium alligāvit?" . . . Mātrōna quaedam, iūniōrem sē quam erat simulāns, dicēbat sē trīgintā annōs habēre; cui Cicerō "Vērū est," inquit, "nam illam hoc dicere iam vīgintī annōs audiō." . . . Dē Canīniō, quī quīnque hōrās cōsul erat, Cicerō scrīpsit: "Maximā fuit vigilantīa Canīnius; nam tōtō suō cōsulātū somnum nōr vīdit." . . . Homīnī quī multa falsa dē annīs aetātis suae dicēbat Cicerō respondit: "Itaque ubi ego et tū puerī in lūdō erāmus, nōn erās nātus."

### Roman Wit<sup>1</sup>

#### No Friend of Mine

1. Nōn amo tē, Sabidī,<sup>2</sup> nec possum dicere quārē;  
Hoc tantum possum dicere, nōn amo tē.

#### No Change of Occupation

2. Nūper erat medicus, nunc est vispillo Diaulus,  
Quod vispillo facit, fēcerat et <sup>3</sup> medicus.

#### Nothing at All

3. Esse nihil dīcis quidquid petis, improbe <sup>2</sup> Cinna:  
Sī nīl,<sup>4</sup> Cinna, petis, nīl tibi, Cinna, negō.

#### A Deadly Friend

4. Omnēs quās habuit, Fabiāne,<sup>2</sup> Lycōris amīcās  
Extulit <sup>5</sup>: uxōrī fiat amīca meae.

#### Teeth

5. Thāis habet nigrōs, niveōs Laecānia dentēs.  
Quae ratio est? Ēmptōs haec habet, illa suōs.

---

<sup>1</sup> These are epigrams of Martial, a Roman poet of the end of the first century, A.D. <sup>2</sup> See 596. <sup>3</sup> = *etiam*. <sup>4</sup> = *nihil*. <sup>5</sup> *Buried* (lit., *carried out* — for burial).

## Proverbs of Publilius Syrus

1. Bonus vir nēmō est nisi quī bonus est omnibus.
2. Fraus <sup>1</sup> est accipere quod nōn possis reddere.
3. Gravissimum est imperium cōnsuetūdinis.
4. Inīūriarum remedium est obliviō.
5. Irācundiam quī vincit, hostem superat maximum.
6. Malum est cōnsilium quod mūtārī nōn potest.
7. Necessitās dat lēgem, nōn ipsa accipit.
8. Nūlla hominum maior poena est quam infēlicitās.
9. Nōn nōvit <sup>2</sup> virtūs calamitātī cēdere.
10. Nēmō timendō ad summum pervenit locum.
11. Sēditio civium hostium est occāsiō.
12. Ubi libertās cecidit, audet liberē nēmō loquī.

*Isaiah ii, 3-4. A Prophecy of World Peace*<sup>3</sup>

Et ibunt populi multī et dicent: Venīte,<sup>4</sup> ascendāmus ad montem Dominī et ad domum Deī Iacob<sup>5</sup> et docēbit nōs viās suās, et ambulābimus in sēmitis eius; quia dē Sion exhibit lēx, et verbum Dominī dē Ierūsalem, et iudicābit gentēs, et docēbit populōs multōs; et cōflābunt gladiōs suōs in vōmerēs, et lanceās suās in falcēs; nōn levābit gēns contrā gentem gladium, nec exercēbuntur ultrā ad proelium.

## Julius Caesar

C. Iūlius Caesar nōbilissimā Iūliōrum familiā<sup>6</sup> nātus est. Dum adulēscēns ad Asiam nāvigat, ā pirātis captus est. Eīs pecūniam flāgitantibus plūs quam flāgitābant dedit. Sed liberātus ad proximam urbem properāvit ibique contrāctis nāvibus impetum in pīrātās fēcit et eōs vicit. Postea quaestor in Hispāniam profectus est. Cum montēs trānsīret et, paupere quōdam vicō cōnspectō, comitēs dicerent ibi nūllum locum ambitionī esse, Caesar dixit malle sē ibi primum esse quam Rōmae<sup>7</sup> secundum. Cōnsul creātus

<sup>1</sup> Gen. *fraudis*; deriv.?    <sup>2</sup> *Know how*.    <sup>3</sup> From the Vulgate edition of the Bible.    <sup>4</sup> *Come*.    <sup>5</sup> Many Hebrew names are indeclinable in Latin.    <sup>6</sup> Origin (*from, of*).    <sup>7</sup> See 597.

cum Pompeiō et Crassō sē iūnxit ut ipsī sōlī in rē pūblicā potestātem habērent. Post cōsulātum Caesar Galliam prōvinciam accēpit. Gessit autem novem annīs haec: Galliam in prōvinciae fōrmam redēgit; Germānōs quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt prīmus Rōmānōrum ponte factō aggressus superāvit. Aggressus est Britannōs, ante nōn nōtōs.

Posteā inter Pompeium et Caesarem aemulātiō ērūpit. Caesar in Italiam rediit et ad Rubicōnem flūmen, quī prōvinciae eius finis erat, vēnit. Ibi cōstitit et dixit: "Etiam nunc regredi possumus; quod<sup>1</sup> sī ponticulum<sup>2</sup> trānsierimus, omnia armīs agenda erunt." Tum "Iacta ālea est," inquit, et exercitum trādūcī iussit.

Pompeiō victō, Caesar ipse omnem potestātem tenēbat. Sed post paucōs annōs in senātū occīsus est. Cum M. Brūtum, quem in locō filī habēbat, sē gladiō petentem vīdisset, ultima verba fuērunt: "Et tū, Brūte."

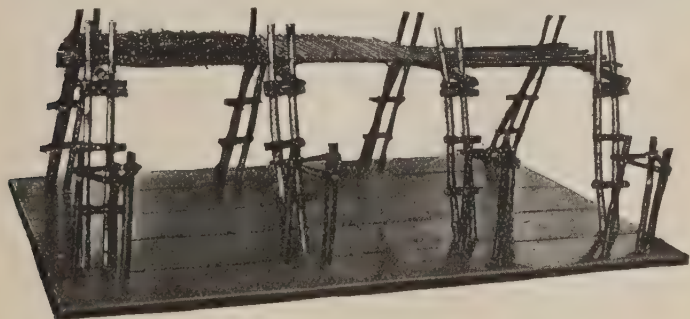


FIG. 130. CAESARIS PŌNS

Military bridges of considerable strength and permanence were used by Caesar in crossing important rivers. In his campaign against the Germans, he twice spanned the Rhine with a well-constructed bridge, 40 feet wide. (From a model made by a high school boy.)

<sup>1</sup> *But.*

<sup>2</sup> Diminutive of pōns.



## Caesar

Selections from *The Gallic War*1. *Gaul, Its Divisions and Inhabitants*

Gallia est omnis divīsa in partēs trēs; quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae,<sup>1</sup> aliam Aquitānī, tertiam quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, quod nōn ad eōs saepe mercātōrēs commeant atque ea quae ad effēmīnandōs animōs pertinent important; proximīque sunt Germānīs quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Quā dē causā Helvētiī<sup>2</sup> quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē cotidiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs contendunt.

2. *The Helvetians Threaten to Invade the Roman Province and Caesar Prepares to Check Them*

Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset Helvētiōs per prōvinciam Rōmānam iter facere cōnārī, mātūrat ab urbe proficiscī, et, quam maximīs potest itineribus, in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit et ad Genavam pervenit. Ubi dē eius adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt, nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, quī dicerent<sup>3</sup> sibi esse in animō sine ūllō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, quod aliud iter habērent nūllum.

3. *After Desperate Fighting the Helvetians Are Defeated*

Diūtius cum Helvētiī sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, alterī sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēpērunt, alterī ad impedimenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proeliō, cum<sup>4</sup> ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pugnātum sit, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. Tandem impedimentis castrisque nostrī potītī sunt. Ibi Orgetorīgis filia atque ūnus ē filiīs captus est.

---

<sup>1</sup> Ancestors of the modern Belgians.

<sup>2</sup> The name of the early Swiss. "Helvetia" is used on Swiss stamps and coins to-day.

<sup>3</sup> Relative clause of purpose.

<sup>4</sup> Although.

#### 4. *Caesar Crosses the Aisne and Fortifies a Camp*

Postquam omnēs Belgārum cōpiās in ūnum locum coāctās ad sē venīre neque iam longē abesse ab Rēmīs<sup>1</sup> cognōvit, flūmen Axonam,<sup>2</sup> quod est in extrēmīs Rēmōrum finibus, exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvit atque ibi castra posuit. In eō flūmine pōns erat. Ibi praesidium pōnit et in alterā parte flūminis Q. Titūrium Sabīnum lēgātum cum sex cohortibus relinquit; castra in altitudinem pedum duodecim vāllō fossāque duodēvigintī pedum mūniri iubet.

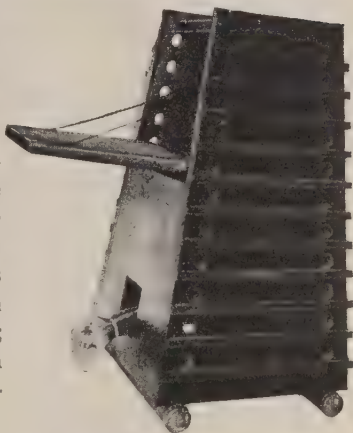


FIG. 131. FIGHTING TOWER ON ROLLERS

Equipped with a battering-ram to attack walls. (From a model made by a high school boy.)

#### 5. *An Ancient Remedy for Food Hoarding*

Vercingetorix, ratiōne initā, dixit sē exiguē diērum XXX habēre frūmentum, sed paulō etiam longius tolerārī posse parcendō. Frūmentum omne ad sē referri iubet, capitis poenam eis quī nōn pāruerint cōstituit; pecus, cuius magna erat cōpia ā Mandubiis compulsa, viritim distribuit, frūmentum parcē et paulātīm mētiri instituit.

#### 6. *Caesar Invades Britain and Lands without Resistance*

Accessit Caesar ad Britanniam cum omnibus nāvibus merīdiānō ferē tempore; neque in eō locō hostis est vīsus, sed, ut postea Caesar ex captivīs cognōvit, cum magnae manūs eō convēnissent, multitūdine nāvium perterritae, ā lītore discesserant ac sē in superiōra loca abdiderant.

<sup>1</sup> The Remi gave their name to Reims, the city whose cathedral was ruined in the World War.

<sup>2</sup> The modern form of Axona is "Aisne," the river which saw so much fighting in the recent war.

**Books for Supplementary Reading or Reference**

*The Children's Plutarch; Tales of the Romans.* (Harper)

*Stories from the Classics.* Vol. 3. By Eva March Tappan (Houghton Mifflin)

*Pictures of Roman Life and Story.* By A. J. Church (Appleton)

*The Story of Rome.* By Mary MacGregor (Stokes)

*Lays of Ancient Rome.* By T. B. Macaulay (Macmillan Pocket Classics)

*Last Days of Pompeii.* By Bulwer-Lytton (Macmillan Pocket Classics)

*The Story of the Romans.* By H. A. Guerber (American Book Co.)

*Buried Cities.* By Jennie Hall (Macmillan)

*The Private Life of the Romans.* By H. W. Johnston (Scott, Foresman)

*The Development of Language.* By H. F. Scott and W. L. Carr (Scott, Foresman)

*Word Study for High Schools.* By Norma L. Swan (Macmillan)



FIG. 132. ROMAN WATER  
BOILER

# APPENDIX

## PRONUNCIATION <sup>1</sup>

### 603. Alphabet

The English alphabet is one of the many things which we have borrowed from the Romans, but we have added two letters, *j* and *v*. The former is a variation of *i*, the latter, as its name and form show, is a "double *u* (or *v*)."

### 604. Vowels

At one time the English vowels were pronounced like the Latin, but the pronunciation of English has changed greatly. In French, Spanish, Italian, German, etc., which also have adopted the Latin alphabet, the vowels are still pronounced substantially as in Latin.

Each of the Latin vowels may be pronounced long or short, the difference being one of *time*. This is called **quantity**. In addition, all the long vowels except *a* have a different *sound* from the short vowels. This is called **quality**. The pronunciation is as follows:

| (a) <i>Long</i>       | <i>Short</i>                      | <i>Long and Short as in</i> |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| ā as in <i>father</i> | a as first <i>a</i> in <i>aha</i> | <i>Martha</i> (ā, ă)        |
| ē as in <i>they</i>   | e as in <i>let</i>                | <i>lateness</i> (ē, ě)      |
| ī as in <i>police</i> | i as in <i>bit</i>                | <i>seasick</i> (ī, ĭ)       |
| ō as in <i>rope</i>   | o as in <i>obey, for</i>          | <i>phonograph</i> (ō, ǫ)    |
| ū as in <i>rude</i>   | u as in <i>full</i>               | <i>two-footed</i> (ū, ŭ)    |

In this book long vowels are regularly marked *-*; short vowels are usually unmarked, but *˘* is sometimes used.

(b) **Caution.** — It is very important to distinguish the *sounds* of the long and short vowels. For a person to say, *I heard the din in the hall*, when he meant the "dean," or *I forgot the debt*, when he meant the "date," is no worse than to confuse *ī* and *ĭ*, *ē* and *ě* in Latin.

The English equivalents of *e* and *o* are only approximate. Avoid pronouncing *ǫ* like *o* in *not* or in *note*.

---

<sup>1</sup> The best way to learn correct pronunciation is by careful imitation of the teacher; the rules are given for reference.

## 605.

## Diphthongs

The first three of the following diphthongs (two vowels making one sound) are the ones most commonly used :

**ae** like *ai* in *aisle*

**au** like *ou* in *out*

**oe** like *oi* in *oil*

**ei** like *ei* in *freight*

**eu** like *eh-oo* (pronounced quickly)

**ui** like *oo-ee* (pronounced quickly) ; only in **cui** and **huic**

## 606.

## Consonants

The Latin consonants have, generally speaking, the same sounds as in English. The following exceptions, however, should be noted :

**b** before **s** or **t** has the sound of **p**.

**c** is always hard as in *cat*, never soft as in *city*.

**g** is always hard as in *go*, never soft as in *gem*.

**i** (consonant) has the sound of *y* in *year*.

(**i** is a consonant between vowels and before a vowel at the beginning of a word)

**s** always has the sound of *s* in *sin*; never of *s* in *these*.

**t** always has the sound of *t* in *ten*; never of *t* in *motion*.

**v** has the sound of *w* in *will*.

**x** has the sound of *x* in *extra*.

(**ch** = **k**; **ph** = **f**; **th** = **t**)

Doubled consonants are pronounced separately : **an'-nus**.

**607. English Pronunciation of Latin.** — The above method of pronunciation is the ancient Roman method. It should be remembered, however, that Latin words which have become thoroughly English should be pronounced as English words; *e.g.* in *terra firma*, the *i* is pronounced as in *firm*, not as in *miracle*; in *alumni*, the *i* is pronounced as in *mile*.

## 608.

## Quantity of Vowels

The quantity (and quality) of vowels must be learned as part of the word. There are, however, a few general rules :

1. A vowel is short before another vowel or **h** (because **h** is weakly sounded).

2. A vowel is short before **nt**, **nd**, and final **m** and **t**.

## 609.

## Syllables

Every Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels or diphthongs: **vir-tū'-te**, **proe'-li-um**.

A single consonant between two vowels or diphthongs is pronounced with the second: **fi'-li-us**, **a'-git**. Compound words are divided into their component parts and are exceptions to this rule: **ad'-es**.

When two or more consonants occur between vowels or diphthongs, the division is made before the last consonant: **por'-tus**, **vinc'-tī**, **an'-nus**. An exception to this rule occurs whenever a mute (**p**, **b**, **t**, **d**, **c**, **g**) is followed by a liquid (**l**, **r**), in which case the mute combines with the liquid and both are pronounced with the second vowel: **pū'-bli-cus**, **cas'-tra**.

The next to the last syllable of a word is called the **penult**; the one before the penult (or the third from the end) is called the **antepenult**.

## 610.

## Quantity of Syllables

Some syllables of course take longer to pronounce than others, just as some vowels are longer than others.

1. A syllable is *naturally* long if it contains a long vowel or a diphthong.

2. A syllable is long (*by position*) if it contains a short vowel followed by two or more consonants or the double consonant **x** (= **cs**).

**Note.** — Exception is made in the case of a mute followed by a liquid (see above). **H** is so weakly sounded that it does not help make a syllable long.

**Caution.** — Distinguish carefully between long syllable and long vowel; in **ĕxĕm'plum** the first two syllables are long, though the vowels are short.

## 611.

## Accent

The accented syllable of a word is the one that is pronounced with more stress or emphasis than the others; so in the word *an'swer*, the accent is on the first syllable. In Latin the accent is easily learned according to fixed rules:

1. Words of two syllables are accented on the first: **frā'ter**.

2. Words of three or more syllables are accented on the penult if it is long, otherwise on the antepenult: **lēgā'tus**, **exem'plum**, **dī'cĕre**, **sī'mĭlis**.



## ELEMENTARY GRAMMAR

The material here given may be reviewed in connection with the Lessons, where cross references to it will be found. For the use of those who prefer to review Elementary Grammar before taking up the Lessons, a number of explanations are given here which will also be found in the body of the book. Teachers can easily devise English exercises for drill with classes which need it. The sentences on these pages may be used for that purpose.

## 612. The Sentence. Subject and Predicate

A **sentence** is a group of words which make complete *sense*. Every sentence consists of two parts — the **subject** about which something is said and the **predicate** which says something about the subject: *The sailor* (subject) *saved the girl* (predicate), *Nauta puellam servāvit*.

A subject or predicate is said to be **modified** by those words which are closely associated with it.

## 613. Parts of Speech

The words of a language are divided, according to their use, into eight classes called **parts of speech**. These are:

|            |         |               |
|------------|---------|---------------|
| Nouns      | Verbs   | Prepositions  |
| Pronouns   | Adverbs | Conjunctions  |
| Adjectives |         | Interjections |

## 614. Nouns

A **noun** (from Latin *nōmen*, *name*) is a word that names a person, place, or thing: *Anna*, *Anna*; *island*, *insula*; *letter*, *littera*.

Nouns may be classified as:

a. **Common** (applied to any one of a class): *city*, *urbs*; *girl*, *puella*.

b. **Proper** (applied to a particular one of a class): *Rome*, *Rōma*; *Julia*, *Iūlia*.

**Note.** — Proper nouns always begin with a capital letter.

## 615. Pronouns

A **pronoun** (Latin *prō*, *for*; *nōmen*, *name*) is a word used instead of a noun. The noun whose place is taken by a pronoun is called an **antecedent** (Latin *ante*, *before*; *cēdere*, *go*). There are five classes of pronouns:

**a. Personal** pronouns distinguish the three persons: the person speaking (*I, ego; we, nōs* — first person), the person spoken to (*you, tū, vōs* — second person), the person or thing spoken of (*he, is; she, ea; it, id; they, eī* — third person).

**b. Interrogative** pronouns are used to ask questions: *who, quis; which, what, quid*.

**c. Relative** pronouns relate to a preceding (antecedent) word and join to it a dependent clause: *who, quī; which, what, that, quod*.

**d. Demonstrative** pronouns point out persons or objects definitely — often accompanied with a gesture: *this, hic; that, ille; these, hī; those, illī*.

**e. Indefinite** pronouns refer to persons or objects in an indefinite way: *someone, some, any, anyone, aliquis; no one, nēmō; each, every-one, quisque*.

## 616.

## Adjectives

An adjective is a word used to describe or limit the meaning of a noun or pronoun:

**a. Descriptive** adjectives are either **common** or **proper**: *good, bonus; Roman, Rōmānus* (see 614 *a, b*, and *Note*).

**b. Limiting**:

1. **Article** — **definite** (*the*), **indefinite** (*a, an*). There is no word in Latin for "the" or "a."
2. **Numerals** — **cardinals** (*one, two, three, etc., ūnus, duo, trēs, etc.*), **ordinals** (*first, second, third, etc., primus, secundus, tertius, etc.*)
3. **Possessive** adjectives (formed from personal pronouns): *my, mine, meus; our, ours, noster; your, yours, tuus, vester; his, her, its, eius; their, theirs, eōrum*.

When interrogative, relative, demonstrative, and indefinite pronouns (616) are used as adjectives, they are called respectively:

4. **Interrogative** adjectives: *what street? quae via?*
5. **Relative** adjectives: *He spent a year in Italy, in which country he saw many beautiful things, Annum in Italiā ēgit, in quā terrā multa pulchra vidit.*
6. **Demonstrative** adjectives: *that road, illa via.*
7. **Indefinite** adjectives: *some boy, aliquis puer.*

In English the demonstrative adjectives are the only ones that have different forms in the singular and plural: *this, these; that, those*.

## 617.

## Verbs

A **verb** is a word used to tell something about a subject and expresses action or situation: *He fought, Pugnābat; He is good, Bonus est.*

a. According to use verbs are either **transitive** or **intransitive**.

1. A **transitive** verb (Latin *trāns*, *over*; *īre*, *go, pass*) is one in which the action expressed by the verb passes over to a receiver: *Anna is carrying water, Anna aquam portat.*
2. An **intransitive** verb is one whose action does not pass over to a receiver: *Anna is working, Anna labōrat.*

Contrast "set" (transitive) with "sit" (intransitive), and "lay" (transitive) with "lie" (intransitive).

b. Intransitive verbs are either **complete** or **linking** (copulative).

1. A **complete** verb is one which is complete in meaning without an object or other word: *He sails, Nāvigat.*
2. A **linking** verb is one which links a noun or adjective to the subject: *They are good, Bonī sunt.*

The chief linking verbs in English are *be, appear, seem, become, feel, look, taste, smell.*

c. An **auxiliary** verb (Latin *auxilium, help*) is one used in the conjugation of other verbs: *I am learning; Did you see? They have given.*

## 618.

## Adverbs

An **adverb** is a word used to modify the meaning of a verb, adjective or other adverb: *He is working now, Nunc labōrat.*

## 619.

## Prepositions

A **preposition** is a word used to show the relation of a noun or pronoun, called its **object**, to some word in the sentence: *He sails to the island, Ad insulam nāvigat.* The preposition is said to **govern** its object.

## 620.

## Conjunctions

A **conjunction** is a word used to join words, groups of words, and sentences. Conjunctions according to their use may be:

- a. **Coördinate**, connecting words or sentences of equal rank (*and, et; but, sed; or, aut; nor, neque*).
- b. **Subordinate**, connecting a subordinate part of a sentence with a principal part (*if, sī; while, dum; because, quod, etc.*).
- c. **Correlative**, used in pairs (*both . . . and, et . . . et; neither . . . nor, neque . . . neque, etc.*).

## 621. Interjections

An **interjection** is a word used to show emotion. It has no direct relation to any other word in the sentence: *O! Alas! Ah! Oh!*

## 622. Inflection

The change of form which words undergo to indicate differences in use is called **inflection**: *boy* — *boys*, *puer* — *pueri*; *see*, *saw*, *seen*, *videō*, *vīdī*, *vīsus*. The inflection of nouns is called **declension**. Nouns and pronouns are declined to indicate change in number and case, and sometimes gender. Some pronouns indicate person (615, a).

## 623. Number

A noun or pronoun is **singular** when it refers to one person or thing: *girl*, *puella*; *house*, *aedificium*; *mouse*, *mūs*; *tooth*, *dēns*. It is **plural** when it refers to more than one: *girls*, *puellae*; *houses*, *aedificia*; *mice*, *mūrēs*; *teeth*, *dentēs*.

## 624. Gender

**Gender** is a distinction in the form of words corresponding to a distinction of sex. It is shown by change of word, by change of endings, or by use of a prefix: *father*, *pater* — *mother*, *māter*; *master*, *dominus* — *mistress*, *domina*; *he-goat* — *she-goat*. The first words given are **masculine**, the second are **feminine**. Most nouns in English have no gender and are therefore **neuter** ("neither" masculine nor feminine).

## 625. Case

**Case** is a change in the form of a noun or pronoun to show its use in the sentence: *She* (subject) *is here*, *Ea* *adest*; *I saw her* (object), *Eam* *vīdī*.

## 626. Subject and Object

a. The **subject** of a verb is that about which something is said (612).

b. The **direct object** is that which is directly affected by the action indicated in the verb: *Anna carries water*, *Anna aquam portat*. The term object is also applied to a word dependent upon a preposition (619)

### 627. Names and Uses of the Cases

a. **Nominative**. — A noun or pronoun used as the subject of a verb is in the nominative case: *The farmer is calling, Agricola vocat.*

b. **Accusative** (Objective). — A noun or pronoun used as the object of a verb or preposition is in the accusative case: *I sent a book to him, Ad eum librum misi.*

c. **Dative**. — The noun or pronoun that shows for whom or what the direct object is intended is called the **indirect object** and is put in the dative case: *I gave him a book, Eī librum dedi.*

d. **Genitive** (Possessive). — Possession is expressed by the genitive case: *the boy's book, pueri liber; the troops' victory, cōpiarum victōria.*

### 628. Conjugation

The inflection of verbs is called **conjugation**. Verbs are conjugated to indicate *person, number, tense, voice, and mood*.

### 629. Person and Number

A verb must agree with its subject in person and number: *The girl is good, Puella est bona; The girls are good, Puellae sunt bonae.*

### 630. Tense

**Tense** is time. There are six tenses:

a. The **present** represents an act as taking place now: *He goes.*

b. The **past** represents an act as having already taken place: *He went yesterday.*

c. The **future** represents an act that will occur at some future date: *He will go to-morrow.*

d. The **present perfect** represents an act as completed but connected in thought with the present: *He has gone* (just left).

e. The **past perfect** represents an act as completed at some definite time in the past: *He had gone* (before something else occurred).

f. The **future perfect** represents an act as completed at or before some definite time in the future: *He will have gone* (before something else will occur).

### 631. Progressive and Emphatic Verb Forms

a. **Progressive** (time or action continuous; used with the auxiliary "be"): *They are studying, they were studying, they will be studying,*

*they have been studying, they had been studying, they will have been studying.*

b. **Emphatic** (with the auxiliary "do," used only in the present and past):

1. Used in questions: *Do (did) you know this?*
2. Negative: *I do (did) not know it.*
3. Emphatic: *I do (did) believe it.*

## 632.

## Voice

A transitive verb is in the **active voice** when it represents the subject as the doer or agent: *Anna accuses the sailor, Anna nautam accūsāt.*

A transitive verb is in the **passive voice** when it represents the subject as the receiver of the action: *The sailor is accused, Nauta accūsātur.*

**Note.** — Intransitive verbs are used only in the active voice in English.

## 633.

## Mood

The **indicative mood** is used to assert a fact or to ask a question: *Rome is a great city, Rōma est magna urbs; Where is Anna? Ubi est Anna?*

## 634.

## Infinitive

The **infinitive** is a form of the verb to which *to* is usually prefixed in English: *to go, to sing.* It has tense and voice, but not person, number, or mood.

## 635.

## Participle

The **participle** is a verbal adjective. As an adjective it modifies a noun or pronoun: *a losing fight.* As a verb it may have an object or adverbial modifiers: *losing his balance, he fell off.* The participles which are used in English are:

|         | ACTIVE             | PASSIVE                       |
|---------|--------------------|-------------------------------|
| Present | <i>seeing</i>      | <i>being seen</i>             |
| Past    | <i>having seen</i> | <i>seen, having been seen</i> |

## 636.

## Synopsis

A **synopsis** is an outline, showing the given verb in a certain person and number in all moods and tenses (and in both voices if the verb is transitive).



## 637.

## Phrases

A **phrase** is a group of words without subject and predicate.

One important kind of phrase is the **prepositional phrase**, that is, a preposition together with the word or words which it governs: *in great danger*, *in magnō periculō*.

## 638.

## Clauses

A **clause**, like a phrase, is a part of a sentence but differs from it in having a subject and a predicate.

Clauses are classified as :

a. **Principal**, when used as the leading or independent statement in a sentence: *The girl whom you saw on the street is my sister*, *Puella quam in viā vidistī est mea soror*.

b. **Subordinate**, when used as a dependent statement to modify the principal clause: *The girl whom you saw on the street is my sister*, *Puella quam in viā vidistī est mea soror*.

Subordinate clauses are used as single parts of speech :

1. **Substantive clause**: *I saw what you wrote* (your writing), *Vidī quid scriberēs*.

2. **Adjective clause**: *This boy, who is always good, will receive a reward* (this good boy), *Hic puer, quī semper bonus est, praeium accipiet*.

3. **Adverbial clause**: *I gave him the money because he earned it*, *Eī pecūniam dedī quod eam meruit*.

## 639.

## Sentences

a. A **simple sentence** contains one principal clause: *My friend, the farmer, has many horses*, *Amicus meus, agricola, multōs equōs habet*.

b. A **compound sentence** contains two or more principal clauses connected by the coördinate conjunctions "and," "but," etc.: *My friend, the farmer, has many horses, but I have not seen them*, *Amicus meus, agricola, multōs equōs habet, sed eōs nōn vidī*.

c. A **complex sentence** contains one principal clause to which one or more subordinate clauses are joined by subordinate conjunctions or by relative or interrogative pronouns: *My friend, the farmer, has many horses which I have not seen*, *Amicus meus, agricola, multōs equōs habet quōs nōn vidī*.

# SUMMARY OF INFLECTIONS

## NOUNS

### 640. FIRST DECLENSION (63) SECOND DECLENSION (79)

|               | SINGULAR | PLURAL   |  | SINGULAR | PLURAL   |
|---------------|----------|----------|--|----------|----------|
| <i>Nom.</i>   | via      | viae     |  | servus   | servi    |
| <i>Gen.</i>   | viae     | viarum ) |  | servi    | servorum |
| <i>Dat.</i>   | viae     | viis     |  | servō    | servīs   |
| <i>Acc.</i>   | viam     | viās     |  | servum   | servōs   |
| <i>Abl.</i>   | viā      | viīs     |  | servō    | servīs   |
| <i>(Voc.)</i> |          |          |  | (serve)  |          |

### 641. SECOND DECLENSION (90, 100)

|             | SINGULAR | PLURAL  |  | SINGULAR | PLURAL   |  | SINGULAR | PLURAL   |
|-------------|----------|---------|--|----------|----------|--|----------|----------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | ager     | agri    |  | puer     | pueri    |  | signum   | signa    |
| <i>Gen.</i> | agri     | agrōrum |  | pueri    | puerōrum |  | signi    | signōrum |
| <i>Dat.</i> | agrō     | agris   |  | puerō    | pueris   |  | signō    | signis   |
| <i>Acc.</i> | agrum    | agrōs   |  | puerum   | puerōs   |  | signum   | signa    |
| <i>Abl.</i> | agrō     | agris   |  | puerō    | pueris   |  | signō    | signis   |

### 642. THIRD DECLENSION (286, 296)

|             | SINGULAR | PLURAL    |  | SINGULAR | PLURAL  |  | SINGULAR | PLURAL     |
|-------------|----------|-----------|--|----------|---------|--|----------|------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | miles    | militēs   |  | lēx      | lēgēs   |  | corpus   | corpora    |
| <i>Gen.</i> | militis  | militum   |  | lēgis    | lēgum   |  | corporis | corporum   |
| <i>Dat.</i> | militi   | militibus |  | lēgi     | lēgibus |  | corpori  | corporibus |
| <i>Acc.</i> | militem  | militēs   |  | lēgem    | lēgēs   |  | corpus   | corpora    |
| <i>Abl.</i> | milite   | militibus |  | lēge     | lēgibus |  | corpore  | corporibus |

## I-STEMS (305)

|             | SINGULAR | PLURAL     |  | SINGULAR | PLURAL  |
|-------------|----------|------------|--|----------|---------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | cīvis    | cīvēs      |  | mare     | maria   |
| <i>Gen.</i> | cīvis    | cīvium     |  | maris    | marium  |
| <i>Dat.</i> | cīvī     | cīvibus    |  | marī     | maribus |
| <i>Acc.</i> | cīvem    | cīvēs (īs) |  | mare     | maria   |
| <i>Abl.</i> | cīve     | cīvibus    |  | marī     | maribus |

## 643. FOURTH DECLENSION (550)

|             | SINGULAR | PLURAL  | SINGULAR | PLURAL   |
|-------------|----------|---------|----------|----------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | cāsus    | cāsūs   | cornū    | cornua   |
| <i>Gen.</i> | cāsūs    | cāsuum  | cornūs   | cornuum  |
| <i>Dat.</i> | cāsui    | cāsibus | cornū    | cornibus |
| <i>Acc.</i> | cāsum    | cāsūs   | cornū    | cornua   |
| <i>Abl.</i> | cāsū     | cāsibus | cornū    | cornibus |

## 644. FIFTH DECLENSION (566)

|             | SINGULAR | PLURAL | SINGULAR | PLURAL |
|-------------|----------|--------|----------|--------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | diēs     | diēs   | rēs      | rēs    |
| <i>Gen.</i> | diēi     | diērum | rei      | rērum  |
| <i>Dat.</i> | diēi     | diēbus | rei      | rēbus  |
| <i>Acc.</i> | diem     | diēs   | rem      | rēs    |
| <i>Abl.</i> | diē      | diēbus | rē       | rēbus  |

## 645. NOUNS OF IRREGULAR OR DEFECTIVE DECLENSION

|               | (366) |             | (405)     | (549)      |                |
|---------------|-------|-------------|-----------|------------|----------------|
|               | SING. | PLUR.       | SING.     | SING.      | PLUR.          |
| <i>Nom.</i>   | vīs   | vīrēs       | nēmō      | domus      | domūs          |
| <i>Gen.</i>   | —     | virium      | (nūllius) | domūs (-ī) | domuum (-ōrum) |
| <i>Dat.</i>   | —     | viribus     | nēminī    | domui (-ō) | domibus        |
| <i>Acc.</i>   | vim   | vīrēs (-īs) | nēminem   | domum      | domōs (-ūs)    |
| <i>Abl.</i>   | vī    | viribus     | (nūllō)   | domō (-ū)  | domibus        |
| <i>(Loc.)</i> |       |             |           | (domi)     |                |

## ADJECTIVES

## 646. FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS (79, 90, 100, 112)

|               | SINGULAR          |                  |                   |
|---------------|-------------------|------------------|-------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i>   | magnus, <i>m.</i> | magna, <i>f.</i> | magnum, <i>n.</i> |
| <i>Gen.</i>   | magnī             | magnae           | magnī             |
| <i>Dat.</i>   | magnō             | magnae           | magnō             |
| <i>Acc.</i>   | magnum            | magnam           | magnum            |
| <i>Abl.</i>   | magnō             | magnā            | magnō             |
| <i>(Voc.)</i> | magne             |                  |                   |

|             |          | PLURAL   |          |
|-------------|----------|----------|----------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | magnī    | magnae   | magna    |
| <i>Gen.</i> | magnōrum | magnārum | magnōrum |
| <i>Dat.</i> | magnīs   | magnīs   | magnīs   |
| <i>Acc.</i> | magnōs   | magnās   | magna    |
| <i>Abl.</i> | magnīs   | magnīs   | magnīs   |

|             |                  | SINGULAR          |                    |
|-------------|------------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | liber, <i>m.</i> | libera, <i>f.</i> | liberum, <i>n.</i> |
| <i>Gen.</i> | liberī           | liberae           | liberī             |
| <i>Dat.</i> | liberō           | liberae           | liberō             |
| <i>Acc.</i> | liberum          | liberam           | liberum            |
| <i>Abl.</i> | liberō           | liberā            | liberō             |

|             |           | PLURAL    |           |
|-------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | liberī    | liberae   | libera    |
| <i>Gen.</i> | liberōrum | liberārum | liberōrum |
| <i>Dat.</i> | liberīs   | liberīs   | liberīs   |
| <i>Acc.</i> | liberōs   | liberās   | libera    |
| <i>Abl.</i> | liberīs   | liberīs   | liberīs   |

|             |                   | SINGULAR          |                    |
|-------------|-------------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | noster, <i>m.</i> | nostra, <i>f.</i> | nostrum, <i>n.</i> |
| <i>Gen.</i> | nostrī            | nostrae           | nostrī             |
| <i>Dat.</i> | nostrō            | nostrae           | nostrō             |
| <i>Acc.</i> | nostrum           | nostram           | nostrum            |
| <i>Abl.</i> | nostrō            | nostrā            | nostrō             |

Plural, nostrī, nostrae, nostra, etc.

647.

## THIRD DECLENSION (316)

## a. THREE ENDINGS

|             | SINGULAR        |                  |                 |             | PLURAL      |         |
|-------------|-----------------|------------------|-----------------|-------------|-------------|---------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | ācer, <i>m.</i> | ācris, <i>f.</i> | ācre, <i>n.</i> | ācrēs       | ācrēs       | ācria   |
| <i>Gen.</i> | ācris           | ācris            | ācris           | ācrium      | ācrium      | ācrium  |
| <i>Dat.</i> | ācrī            | ācrī             | ācrī            | ācribus     | ācribus     | ācribus |
| <i>Acc.</i> | ācrem           | ācrem            | ācre            | ācrēs (-is) | ācrēs (-is) | ācria   |
| <i>Abl.</i> | ācrī            | ācrī             | ācrī            | ācribus     | ācribus     | ācribus |

## b. TWO ENDINGS

|             | SINGULAR              |                  | PLURAL       |          |
|-------------|-----------------------|------------------|--------------|----------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | fortis, <i>m., f.</i> | forte, <i>n.</i> | fortēs       | fortia   |
| <i>Gen.</i> | fortis                | fortis           | fortium      | fortium  |
| <i>Dat.</i> | fortī                 | fortī            | fortibus     | fortibus |
| <i>Acc.</i> | fortem                | forte            | fortēs (-īs) | fortia   |
| <i>Abl.</i> | fortī                 | fortī            | fortibus     | fortibus |

## c. ONE ENDING

|             | SINGULAR           |                | PLURAL      |         |
|-------------|--------------------|----------------|-------------|---------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | pār, <i>m., f.</i> | pār, <i>n.</i> | parēs       | paria   |
| <i>Gen.</i> | paris              | paris          | parium      | parium  |
| <i>Dat.</i> | parī               | parī           | paribus     | paribus |
| <i>Acc.</i> | parem              | pār            | parēs (-īs) | paria   |
| <i>Abl.</i> | parī               | parī           | paribus     | paribus |

## 648. PRESENT PARTICIPLE (362)

|             | SINGULAR              |                   | PLURAL         |            |
|-------------|-----------------------|-------------------|----------------|------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | parāns, <i>m., f.</i> | parāns, <i>n.</i> | parantēs       | parantia   |
| <i>Gen.</i> | parantis              | parantis          | parantium      | parantium  |
| <i>Dat.</i> | parantī               | parantī           | parantibus     | parantibus |
| <i>Acc.</i> | parantem              | parāns            | parantēs (-īs) | parantia   |
| <i>Abl.</i> | parante (-ī)          | parante (-ī)      | parantibus     | parantibus |

## 649.

|             |                 |                |                              |                     |                 |
|-------------|-----------------|----------------|------------------------------|---------------------|-----------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | ūnus, <i>m.</i> | ūna, <i>f.</i> | ūnum, <sup>1</sup> <i>n.</i> | trēs, <i>m., f.</i> | tria, <i>n.</i> |
| <i>Gen.</i> | ūnūs            | ūnūs           | ūnūs                         | trium               | trium           |
| <i>Dat.</i> | ūnī             | ūnī            | ūnī                          | tribus              | tribus          |
| <i>Acc.</i> | ūnum            | ūnam           | ūnum                         | trēs                | tria            |
| <i>Abl.</i> | ūnō             | ūnā            | ūnō                          | tribus              | tribus          |

(476)

(477)

|             |                |                 |                |       |         |
|-------------|----------------|-----------------|----------------|-------|---------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | duo, <i>m.</i> | duae, <i>f.</i> | duo, <i>n.</i> | mille | mīlia   |
| <i>Gen.</i> | duōrum         | duārum          | duōrum         | mille | mīlium  |
| <i>Dat.</i> | duōbus         | duābus          | duōbus         | mille | mīlibus |
| <i>Acc.</i> | duōs           | duās            | duo            | mille | mīlia   |
| <i>Abl.</i> | duōbus         | duābus          | duōbus         | mille | mīlibus |

<sup>1</sup> Alius has aliud in the nom. and acc. sing. neuter. The plural is regular.

## 650.

## COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

## a. REGULAR (399, 412, 414)

| POSITIVE          | COMPARATIVE    | SUPERLATIVE          |
|-------------------|----------------|----------------------|
| altus, -a, -um    | altior, altius | altissimus, -a, -um  |
| fortis, forte     | fortior, -ius  | fortissimus, -a, -um |
| liber, -era, -um  | liberior, -ius | liberrimus, -a, -um  |
| ācer, ācris, ācre | ācrior, -ius   | ācerrimus, -a, -um   |
| facilis, facile   | facilior, -ius | facillimus, -a, -um  |

## b. IRREGULAR (419)

| POSITIVE         | COMPARATIVE    | SUPERLATIVE                 |
|------------------|----------------|-----------------------------|
| bonus, -a, -um   | melior, -ius   | optimus, -a, -um            |
| malus, -a, -um   | peior, -ius    | pessimus, -a, -um           |
| magnus, -a, -um  | maior, -ius    | maximus, -a, -um            |
| parvus, -a, -um  | minor, -us     | minimus, -a, -um            |
| multus, -a, -um  | ——, plūs       | plūrimus, -a, -um           |
| īferus, -a, -um  | īferior, -ius  | īfimus or īmus, -a, -um     |
| superus, -a, -um | superior, -ius | suprēmus or summus, -a, -um |
| ——               | prior, -ius    | primus, -a, -um             |
| ——               | propior, -ius  | proximus, -a, -um           |
| ——               | ulterior, -ius | ultimus, -a, -um            |

## 651. DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES (400, 419)

|             | SINGULAR              |                   | PLURAL     |            |
|-------------|-----------------------|-------------------|------------|------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | altior, <i>m., f.</i> | altius, <i>n.</i> | altiōrēs   | altiōra    |
| <i>Gen.</i> | altiōris              | altiōris          | altiōrum   | altiōrum   |
| <i>Dat.</i> | altiōrī               | altiōrī           | altiōribus | altiōribus |
| <i>Acc.</i> | altiōrem              | altius            | altiōrēs   | altiōra    |
| <i>Abl.</i> | altiōre               | altiōre           | altiōribus | altiōribus |

|             | SINGULAR                     |                       | PLURAL           |
|-------------|------------------------------|-----------------------|------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | plūs, <sup>1</sup> <i>n.</i> | plūrēs, <i>m., f.</i> | plūra, <i>n.</i> |
| <i>Gen.</i> | plūris                       | plūrium               | plūrium          |
| <i>Dat.</i> | ——                           | plūribus              | plūribus         |
| <i>Acc.</i> | plūs                         | plūrēs                | plūra            |
| <i>Abl.</i> | plūre                        | plūribus              | plūribus         |

<sup>1</sup> Masculine and feminine lacking in the singular.



## 652. COMPARISON OF ADVERBS (408, 420)

| POSITIVE | COMPARATIVE | SUPERLATIVE |
|----------|-------------|-------------|
| altē     | altius      | altissimē   |
| liberē   | liberius    | liberrimē   |
| fortiter | fortius     | fortissimē  |
| facile   | facilius    | facillimē   |
| bene     | melius      | optimē      |
| male     | peius       | pessimē     |
| multum   | plūs        | plūrimum    |
| —        | minus       | minimē      |
| —        | magis       | maximē      |

## 653. NUMERALS (272, 475)

| ROMAN<br>NUMERALS |        | CARDINALS                          | ORDINALS                                 |
|-------------------|--------|------------------------------------|--|
| 1.                | I.     | ūnus, -a, -um                      | primus, -a, -um                          |
| 2.                | II.    | duo, duae, duo                     | secundus (alter)                         |
| 3.                | III.   | trēs, tria                         | tertius                                  |
| 4.                | IV.    | quattuor                           | quārtus                                  |
| 5.                | V.     | quīnque                            | quīntus                                  |
| 6.                | VI.    | sex                                | sextus                                   |
| 7.                | VII.   | septem                             | septimus                                 |
| 8.                | VIII.  | octō                               | octāvus                                  |
| 9.                | IX.    | novem                              | nōnus                                    |
| 10.               | X.     | decem                              | decimus                                  |
| 11.               | XI.    | ūndecim                            | ūndecimus                                |
| 12.               | XII.   | duodecim                           | duodecimus                               |
| 13.               | XIII.  | tredecim                           | tertius decimus                          |
| 14.               | XIV.   | quattuordecim                      | quārtus decimus                          |
| 15.               | XV.    | quīndecim                          | quīntus decimus                          |
| 16.               | XVI.   | sēdecim                            | sextus decimus                           |
| 17.               | XVII.  | septendecim                        | septimus decimus                         |
| 18.               | XVIII. | duodēviginti                       | duodēvicēsimum                           |
| 19.               | XIX.   | ūndēviginti                        | ūndēvicēsimum                            |
| 20.               | XX.    | vīginti                            | vīcēsimum                                |
| 21.               | XXI.   | vīginti ūnus or<br>ūnus et vīginti | vīcēsimum primus or<br>ūnus et vīcēsimum |
| 30.               | XXX.   | trīgintā                           | tricēsimum                               |
| 40.               | XL.    | quadrāgintā                        | quadrāgēsimum                            |
| 50.               | L.     | quīnquāgintā                       | quīnquāgēsimum                           |

|       |        |                       |                        |
|-------|--------|-----------------------|------------------------|
| 60.   | LX.    | sexāgintā             | sexāgēsīmus            |
| 70.   | LXX.   | septuāgintā           | septuāgēsīmus          |
| 80.   | LXXX.  | octōgintā             | octōgēsīmus            |
| 90.   | XC.    | nōnāgintā             | nōnāgēsīmus            |
| 100.  | C.     | centum                | centēsīmus             |
| 101.  | CI.    | centum (et) ūnus      | centēsīmus (et) primus |
| 200.  | CC.    | ducentī, -ae, -a      | ducentēsīmus           |
| 300.  | CCC.   | trecentī, -ae, -a     | trecentēsīmus          |
| 400.  | CCCC.  | quadringentī, -ae, -a | quadringentēsīmus      |
| 500.  | D.     | quīngentī, -ae, -a    | quīngentēsīmus         |
| 600.  | DC.    | sescentī, -ae, -a     | sescentēsīmus          |
| 700.  | DCC.   | septingentī, -ae, -a  | septingentēsīmus       |
| 800.  | DCCC.  | octingentī, -ae, -a   | octingentēsīmus        |
| 900.  | DCCCC. | nōngentī, -ae, -a     | nōngentēsīmus          |
| 1000. | M.     | mille                 | millēsīmus             |
| 2000. | MM.    | duo mīlia             | bis millēsīmus         |

## PRONOUNS

## 654. PERSONAL (451)

|             | SING. | PLUR.            | SING. | PLUR.          | M. F. N.     |
|-------------|-------|------------------|-------|----------------|--------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | ego   | nōs              | tū    | vōs            | is ea id     |
| <i>Gen.</i> | meī   | nostrum (nostrī) | tuī   | vestrum (-trī) | (For declen- |
| <i>Dat.</i> | mihi  | nōbīs            | tibi  | vōbīs          | sion see 656 |
| <i>Acc.</i> | mē    | nōs              | tē    | vōs            | — demon-     |
| <i>Abl.</i> | mē    | nōbīs            | tē    | vōbīs          | strative is) |

## 655. REFLEXIVE (452)

## FIRST PERSON

## SECOND PERSON

*Gen.* meī (declined like ego)                      tuī (declined like tū)

**Note.**— Reflexive pronouns are not used in the nominative.

## THIRD PERSON

|             | SINGULAR  | PLURAL    |
|-------------|-----------|-----------|
| <i>Gen.</i> | suī       | suī       |
| <i>Dat.</i> | sibi      | sibi      |
| <i>Acc.</i> | sē (sēsē) | sē (sēsē) |
| <i>Abl.</i> | sē (sēsē) | sē (sēsē) |

**656. DEMONSTRATIVE (333, 341, 348)**

|             | SINGULAR       |                 |                | PLURAL           |                  |                  |
|-------------|----------------|-----------------|----------------|------------------|------------------|------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | <i>hic, m.</i> | <i>haec, f.</i> | <i>hoc, n.</i> | <i>hī</i>        | <i>hae</i>       | <i>haec</i>      |
| <i>Gen.</i> | <i>huius</i>   | <i>huius</i>    | <i>huius</i>   | <i>hōrum</i>     | <i>hārum</i>     | <i>hōrum</i>     |
| <i>Dat.</i> | <i>huic</i>    | <i>huic</i>     | <i>huic</i>    | <i>hīs</i>       | <i>hīs</i>       | <i>hīs</i>       |
| <i>Acc.</i> | <i>hunc</i>    | <i>hanc</i>     | <i>hoc</i>     | <i>hōs</i>       | <i>hās</i>       | <i>haec</i>      |
| <i>Abl.</i> | <i>hōc</i>     | <i>hāc</i>      | <i>hōc</i>     | <i>hīs</i>       | <i>hīs</i>       | <i>hīs</i>       |
| <i>Nom.</i> | <i>is, m.</i>  | <i>ea, f.</i>   | <i>id, n.</i>  | <i>eī (iū)</i>   | <i>eae</i>       | <i>ea</i>        |
| <i>Gen.</i> | <i>eius</i>    | <i>eius</i>     | <i>eius</i>    | <i>eōrum</i>     | <i>eārum</i>     | <i>eōrum</i>     |
| <i>Dat.</i> | <i>eī</i>      | <i>eī</i>       | <i>eī</i>      | <i>eīs (iīs)</i> | <i>eīs (iūs)</i> | <i>eīs (iīs)</i> |
| <i>Acc.</i> | <i>eum</i>     | <i>eam</i>      | <i>id</i>      | <i>eōs</i>       | <i>eās</i>       | <i>ea</i>        |
| <i>Abl.</i> | <i>eō</i>      | <i>eā</i>       | <i>eō</i>      | <i>eīs (iīs)</i> | <i>eīs (iūs)</i> | <i>eīs (iūs)</i> |

|             | SINGULAR        |                  |                 | PLURAL                            |                                   |                                   |
|-------------|-----------------|------------------|-----------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | <i>idem, m.</i> | <i>eadem, f.</i> | <i>idem, n.</i> | <i>eīdem</i><br>( <i>īdem</i> )   | <i>eaedem</i>                     | <i>eadem</i>                      |
| <i>Gen.</i> | <i>eiusdem</i>  | <i>eiusdem</i>   | <i>eiusdem</i>  | <i>eōrundem</i>                   | <i>eārundem</i>                   | <i>eōrundem</i>                   |
| <i>Dat.</i> | <i>eīdem</i>    | <i>eīdem</i>     | <i>eīdem</i>    | <i>eīsdem</i><br>( <i>īsdem</i> ) | <i>eīsdem</i><br>( <i>īsdem</i> ) | <i>eīsdem</i><br>( <i>īsdem</i> ) |
| <i>Acc.</i> | <i>eundem</i>   | <i>eandem</i>    | <i>idem</i>     | <i>eōsdem</i>                     | <i>eāsdem</i>                     | <i>eadem</i>                      |
| <i>Abl.</i> | <i>eōdem</i>    | <i>eādem</i>     | <i>eōdem</i>    | <i>eīsdem</i><br>( <i>īsdem</i> ) | <i>eīsdem</i><br>( <i>īsdem</i> ) | <i>eīsdem</i><br>( <i>īsdem</i> ) |

**DEMONSTRATIVE (333)**

|             | SINGULAR        |                 |                  |
|-------------|-----------------|-----------------|------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | <i>ille, m.</i> | <i>illa, f.</i> | <i>illud, n.</i> |
| <i>Gen.</i> | <i>illius</i>   | <i>illius</i>   | <i>illius</i>    |
| <i>Dat.</i> | <i>illī</i>     | <i>illī</i>     | <i>illī</i>      |
| <i>Acc.</i> | <i>illum</i>    | <i>illam</i>    | <i>illud</i>     |
| <i>Abl.</i> | <i>illō</i>     | <i>illā</i>     | <i>illō</i>      |

(Plur. regular like *magnus*)

**INTENSIVE (352)**

|             | SINGULAR        |                 |                  |
|-------------|-----------------|-----------------|------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | <i>ipse, m.</i> | <i>ipsa, f.</i> | <i>ipsum, n.</i> |
| <i>Gen.</i> | <i>ipsius</i>   | <i>ipsius</i>   | <i>ipsius</i>    |
| <i>Dat.</i> | <i>ipsī</i>     | <i>ipsī</i>     | <i>ipsī</i>      |
| <i>Acc.</i> | <i>ipsum</i>    | <i>ipsam</i>    | <i>ipsum</i>     |
| <i>Abl.</i> | <i>ipsō</i>     | <i>ipsā</i>     | <i>ipsō</i>      |

(Plur. regular)

**657. RELATIVE (241)**

|             | SINGULAR       |                 |                 | PLURAL        |               |               |
|-------------|----------------|-----------------|-----------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | <i>quī, m.</i> | <i>quae, f.</i> | <i>quod, n.</i> | <i>qui</i>    | <i>quae</i>   | <i>quae</i>   |
| <i>Gen.</i> | <i>cuius</i>   | <i>cuius</i>    | <i>cuius</i>    | <i>quōrum</i> | <i>quārum</i> | <i>quōrum</i> |
| <i>Dat.</i> | <i>cui</i>     | <i>cui</i>      | <i>cui</i>      | <i>quibus</i> | <i>quibus</i> | <i>quibus</i> |
| <i>Acc.</i> | <i>quem</i>    | <i>quam</i>     | <i>quod</i>     | <i>quōs</i>   | <i>ouās</i>   | <i>quae</i>   |
| <i>Abl.</i> | <i>quō</i>     | <i>quā</i>      | <i>quō</i>      | <i>quibus</i> | <i>quibus</i> | <i>quibus</i> |

658.

INTERROGATIVE (255) <sup>1</sup>

## SINGULAR

|             |                                  |                 |
|-------------|----------------------------------|-----------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | quis, <sup>2</sup> <i>m., f.</i> | quid, <i>n.</i> |
| <i>Gen.</i> | cuius                            | cuius           |
| <i>Dat.</i> | cui                              | cui             |
| <i>Acc.</i> | quem                             | quid            |
| <i>Abl.</i> | quō                              | quō             |

659.

## INDEFINITE (556)

## SINGULAR

## PLURAL

|             |                        |                    |           |           |           |
|-------------|------------------------|--------------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | aliquis, <i>m., f.</i> | aliquid, <i>n.</i> | aliqui    | aliquae   | aliqua    |
| <i>Gen.</i> | alicuius               | alicuius           | aliquōrum | aliquārum | aliquōrum |
| <i>Dat.</i> | alicui                 | alicui             | aliquibus | aliquibus | aliquibus |
| <i>Acc.</i> | aliquem                | aliquid            | aliquōs   | aliquās   | aliqua    |
| <i>Abl.</i> | aliquō                 | aliquō             | aliquibus | aliquibus | aliquibus |

(The adjective form is *aliqui*, *-qua*, *-quod*, etc.)

## SINGULAR

|             |                   |                    |                    |
|-------------|-------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | quidam, <i>m.</i> | quaedam, <i>f.</i> | quiddam, <i>n.</i> |
| <i>Gen.</i> | cuiusdam          | cuiusdam           | cuiusdam           |
| <i>Dat.</i> | cuidam            | cuidam             | cuidam             |
| <i>Acc.</i> | quendam           | quandam            | quiddam            |
| <i>Abl.</i> | quōdam            | quādam             | quōdam             |

## PLURAL

|             |           |           |           |
|-------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | quidam    | quaedam   | quaedam   |
| <i>Gen.</i> | quōrundam | quārundam | quōrundam |
| <i>Dat.</i> | quibusdam | quibusdam | quibusdam |
| <i>Acc.</i> | quōsdam   | quāsdam   | quaedam   |
| <i>Abl.</i> | quibusdam | quibusdam | quibusdam |

(The adjective has *quoddam* for *quiddam*)

<sup>1</sup> Plural like that of *qui*. <sup>2</sup> Interrogative adjective *qui* declined throughout like relative *qui*.

## REGULAR VERBS

660.

## FIRST CONJUGATION

Principal Parts: parō, parāre, parāvī, parātus

(Stems: parā-, parāv-, parāt-)

## ACTIVE VOICE

## PASSIVE VOICE

## INDICATIVE

## PRESENT (20)

|       |         |
|-------|---------|
| parō  | parāmus |
| parās | parātis |
| parat | parant  |

## PRESENT (176)

|               |          |
|---------------|----------|
| paror         | parāmur  |
| parāris (-re) | parāmini |
| parātur       | parantur |

## IMPERFECT (33)

|         |           |
|---------|-----------|
| parābam | parābāmus |
| parābās | parābātis |
| parābat | parābant  |

## IMPERFECT (176)

|                 |            |
|-----------------|------------|
| parābar         | parābāmur  |
| parābāris (-re) | parābāmini |
| parābātur       | parābantur |

## FUTURE (43)

|         |           |
|---------|-----------|
| parābō  | parābimus |
| parābis | parābitis |
| parābit | parābunt  |

## FUTURE (176)

|                 |            |
|-----------------|------------|
| parābor         | parābimur  |
| parāberis (-re) | parābimini |
| parābitur       | parābuntur |

## PERFECT (188)

|           |                   |
|-----------|-------------------|
| parāvī    | parāvimus         |
| parāvistī | parāvistis        |
| parāvit   | parāvērunt (-ēre) |

## PERFECT (213)

|           |       |           |         |
|-----------|-------|-----------|---------|
| parātus   | { sum | parātī    | { sumus |
| (-a, -um) | { es  | (-ae, -a) | { estis |
|           | { est |           | { sunt  |

## PAST PERFECT (197)

|           |             |
|-----------|-------------|
| parāveram | parāverāmus |
| parāverās | parāverātis |
| parāverat | parāverant  |

## PAST PERFECT (214)

|           |        |           |          |
|-----------|--------|-----------|----------|
| parātus   | { eram | parātī    | { erāmus |
| (-a, -um) | { erās | (-ae, -a) | { erātis |
|           | { erat |           | { erant  |

## FUTURE PERFECT (198)

|           |             |
|-----------|-------------|
| parāverō  | parāverimus |
| parāveris | parāveritis |
| parāverit | parāverint  |

## FUTURE PERFECT (219)

|           |        |           |          |
|-----------|--------|-----------|----------|
| parātus   | { erō  | parātī    | { erimus |
| (-a, -um) | { eris | (-ae, -a) | { eritis |
|           | { erit |           | { erunt  |

## ACTIVE VOICE

## PASSIVE VOICE

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT (438)

|       |         |
|-------|---------|
| parem | parēmus |
| parēs | parētis |
| paret | parent  |

## PRESENT (438)

|               |          |
|---------------|----------|
| parer         | parēmur  |
| parēris (-re) | parēmini |
| parētur       | parentur |

## IMPERFECT (446)

|         |           |
|---------|-----------|
| parārem | parārēmus |
| parārēs | parārētis |
| parāret | parārent  |

## IMPERFECT (446)

|                 |            |
|-----------------|------------|
| parārer         | parārēmur  |
| parārēris (-re) | parārēmini |
| parārētur       | parārentur |

## PERFECT (495)

|           |             |
|-----------|-------------|
| parāverim | parāverimus |
| parāveris | parāveritis |
| parāverit | parāverint  |

## PERFECT (495)

|           |       |           |         |
|-----------|-------|-----------|---------|
| parātus   | { sim | parātī    | { simus |
| (-a, -um) | { sis | (-ae, -a) | { sitis |
|           | { sit |           | { sint  |

## PAST PERFECT (495)

|            |              |
|------------|--------------|
| parāvissem | parāvissēmus |
| parāvissēs | parāvissētis |
| parāvisset | parāvissent  |

## PAST PERFECT (495)

|           |         |           |           |
|-----------|---------|-----------|-----------|
| parātus   | { essem | parātī    | { essēmus |
| (-a, -um) | { essēs | (-ae, -a) | { essētis |
|           | { esset |           | { essent  |

## PRESENT IMPERATIVE

2nd sing. parā, *prepare (thou)*

parāre, *be (thou) prepared*

2nd plur. parāte, *prepare (ye)*

parāmini, *be (ye) prepared*

## INFINITIVE (20, 221, 368, 374)

Present parāre

parārī

Perfect parāvisse

parātus esse

Future parātūrus esse

## PARTICIPLES (211, 362-3, 578)

Present parāns, Gen. -antis

Perfect

parātus, -a, -um

Future parātūrus, -a, -um

parandus, -a, -um

## GERUND (583)

Gen. parandī, Dat. parandō, Acc. parandum, Abl. parandō



## 661.

## SECOND CONJUGATION

Principal Parts: *habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus*(Stems: *habē-, habu-, habit-*)

## ACTIVE VOICE

## PASSIVE VOICE

## INDICATIVE

## PRESENT (69)

|              |                |
|--------------|----------------|
| <i>habeō</i> | <i>habēmus</i> |
| <i>habēs</i> | <i>habētis</i> |
| <i>habet</i> | <i>habent</i>  |

## PRESENT (176)

|                      |                 |
|----------------------|-----------------|
| <i>habeor</i>        | <i>habēmur</i>  |
| <i>habēris (-re)</i> | <i>habēmini</i> |
| <i>habētur</i>       | <i>habentur</i> |

## IMPERFECT (69)

|                |                  |
|----------------|------------------|
| <i>habēbam</i> | <i>habēbāmus</i> |
| <i>habēbās</i> | <i>habēbātis</i> |
| <i>habēbat</i> | <i>habēbant</i>  |

## IMPERFECT (176)

|                        |                   |
|------------------------|-------------------|
| <i>habēbar</i>         | <i>habēbāmur</i>  |
| <i>habēbāris (-re)</i> | <i>habēbāmini</i> |
| <i>habēbātur</i>       | <i>habēbantur</i> |

## FUTURE (69)

|                |                  |
|----------------|------------------|
| <i>habēbō</i>  | <i>habēbimus</i> |
| <i>habēbis</i> | <i>habēbitis</i> |
| <i>habēbit</i> | <i>habēbunt</i>  |

## FUTURE (176)

|                        |                   |
|------------------------|-------------------|
| <i>habēbor</i>         | <i>habēbimur</i>  |
| <i>habēberis (-re)</i> | <i>habēbimini</i> |
| <i>habēbitur</i>       | <i>habēbuntur</i> |

## PERFECT (188)

|                 |                         |
|-----------------|-------------------------|
| <i>habuī</i>    | <i>habuimus</i>         |
| <i>habuistī</i> | <i>habuistis</i>        |
| <i>habuit</i>   | <i>habuērunt (-ēre)</i> |

## PERFECT (213)

|                  |              |                  |                |
|------------------|--------------|------------------|----------------|
| <i>habitus</i>   | { <i>sum</i> | <i>habitī</i>    | { <i>sumus</i> |
| <i>(-a, -um)</i> | { <i>es</i>  | <i>(-ae, -a)</i> | { <i>estis</i> |
|                  | <i>est</i>   |                  | <i>sunt</i>    |

## PAST PERFECT (197)

|                 |                   |
|-----------------|-------------------|
| <i>habueram</i> | <i>habuerāmus</i> |
| <i>habuerās</i> | <i>habuerātis</i> |
| <i>habuerat</i> | <i>habuerant</i>  |

## PAST PERFECT (214)

|                  |               |                  |                 |
|------------------|---------------|------------------|-----------------|
| <i>habitus</i>   | { <i>eram</i> | <i>habitī</i>    | { <i>erāmus</i> |
| <i>(-a, -um)</i> | { <i>erās</i> | <i>(-ae, -a)</i> | { <i>erātis</i> |
|                  | <i>erat</i>   |                  | <i>erant</i>    |

## FUTURE PERFECT (198)

|                 |                   |
|-----------------|-------------------|
| <i>habuerō</i>  | <i>habuerimus</i> |
| <i>habueris</i> | <i>habueritis</i> |
| <i>habuerit</i> | <i>habuerint</i>  |

## FUTURE PERFECT (219)

|                  |               |                  |                 |
|------------------|---------------|------------------|-----------------|
| <i>habitus</i>   | { <i>erō</i>  | <i>habitī</i>    | { <i>erimus</i> |
| <i>(-a, -um)</i> | { <i>eris</i> | <i>(-ae, -a)</i> | { <i>eritis</i> |
|                  | <i>erit</i>   |                  | <i>erunt</i>    |

## ACTIVE VOICE

## PASSIVE VOICE

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT (427)

|        |          |
|--------|----------|
| habeam | habeāmus |
| habeās | habeātis |
| habeat | habeant  |

## PRESENT (427)

|                |           |
|----------------|-----------|
| habear         | habeāmur  |
| habeāris (-re) | habeāminī |
| habeātur       | habeantur |

## IMPERFECT (446)

|         |           |
|---------|-----------|
| habērem | habērēmus |
| habērēs | habērētis |
| habēret | habērent  |

## IMPERFECT (446)

|                 |            |
|-----------------|------------|
| habērer         | habērēmur  |
| habērēris (-re) | habērēminī |
| habērētur       | habērentur |

## PERFECT (495)

|          |            |
|----------|------------|
| habuerim | habuerīmus |
| habueris | habueritis |
| habuerit | habuerint  |

## PERFECT (495)

|           |       |           |         |
|-----------|-------|-----------|---------|
| habitus   | { sim | habitī    | { simus |
| (-a, -um) | { sīs | (-ae, -a) | { sītis |
|           | { sit |           | { sint  |

## PAST PERFECT (495)

|           |             |
|-----------|-------------|
| habuissē  | habuissēmus |
| habuissēs | habuissētis |
| habuisset | habuissent  |

## PAST PERFECT (495)

|           |         |           |           |
|-----------|---------|-----------|-----------|
| habitus   | { essem | habitī    | { essēmus |
| (-a, -um) | { essēs | (-ae, -a) | { essētis |
|           | { esset |           | { essent  |

## PRESENT IMPERATIVE

2nd sing. habē, have (thou)  
 2nd plur. habēte, have (ye)

habēre  
 habēminī

## INFINITIVE (20, 221, 368, 374)

Present habēre  
 Perfect habuisse  
 Future habitūrus esse

habēri  
 habitus esse

## PARTICIPLES (211, 362-3, 578)

Present habēns, Gen. -entis  
 Perfect  
 Future habitūrus, -a, -um

habitus, -a, -um  
 habendus, -a, -um

## GERUND (583)

Gen. habendī, Dat. habendō, Acc. habendum, Abl. habendō

## 662.

## THIRD CONJUGATION

Principal Parts: pōnō, pōnēre, posuī, positus

(Stems: pōnē-, posu-, posit-)

## ACTIVE VOICE

## PASSIVE VOICE

## INDICATIVE

## PRESENT (123)

|       |         |
|-------|---------|
| pōnō  | pōnimus |
| pōnis | pōnitis |
| pōnit | pōnunt  |

## PRESENT (176)

|               |          |
|---------------|----------|
| pōnor         | pōnimur  |
| pōneris (-re) | pōnimini |
| pōnitur       | pōnuntur |

## IMPERFECT (123)

|         |           |
|---------|-----------|
| pōnēbam | pōnēbāmus |
| pōnēbās | pōnēbātis |
| pōnēbat | pōnēbant  |

## IMPERFECT (176)

|                 |            |
|-----------------|------------|
| pōnēbar         | pōnēbāmur  |
| pōnēbāris (-re) | pōnēbāmini |
| pōnēbātur       | pōnēbantur |

## FUTURE (145)

|       |         |
|-------|---------|
| pōnam | pōnēmus |
| pōnēs | pōnētis |
| pōnet | pōnent  |

## FUTURE (176)

|               |          |
|---------------|----------|
| pōnar         | pōnēmur  |
| pōnēris (-re) | pōnēmini |
| pōnētur       | pōnentur |

## PERFECT (188)

|          |                  |
|----------|------------------|
| posuī    | posuimus         |
| posuistī | posuistis        |
| posuit   | posuērunt (-ēre) |

## PERFECT (213)

|           |       |           |         |
|-----------|-------|-----------|---------|
| positus   | { sum | positī    | { sumus |
| (-a, -um) | { es  | (-ae, -a) | { estis |
|           | { est |           | { sunt  |

## PAST PERFECT (197)

|          |            |
|----------|------------|
| posueram | posuerāmus |
| posuerās | posuerātis |
| posuerat | posuerant  |

## PAST PERFECT (214)

|           |        |           |          |
|-----------|--------|-----------|----------|
| positus   | { eram | positī    | { erāmus |
| (-a, -um) | { erās | (-ae, -a) | { erātis |
|           | { erat |           | { erant  |

## FUTURE PERFECT (198)

|          |            |
|----------|------------|
| posuerō  | posuerimus |
| posueris | posueritis |
| posuerit | posuerint  |

## FUTURE PERFECT (219)

|           |        |           |          |
|-----------|--------|-----------|----------|
| positus   | { erō  | positī    | { erimus |
| (-a, -um) | { eris | (-ae, -a) | { eritis |
|           | { erit |           | { erunt  |

## ACTIVE VOICE

## PASSIVE VOICE

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT (427)

|       |         |
|-------|---------|
| pōnam | pōnāmus |
| pōnās | pōnātis |
| pōnat | pōnant  |

## PRESENT (427)

|               |          |
|---------------|----------|
| pōnar         | pōnāmur  |
| pōnāris (-re) | pōnāminī |
| pōnātur       | pōnantur |

## IMPERFECT (446)

|         |           |
|---------|-----------|
| pōnerem | pōnerēmus |
| pōnerēs | pōnerētis |
| pōneret | pōnerent  |

## IMPERFECT (446)

|                 |            |
|-----------------|------------|
| pōnerer         | pōnerēmur  |
| pōnerēris (-re) | pōnerēminī |
| pōnerētur       | pōnerentur |

## PERFECT (495)

|          |            |
|----------|------------|
| posuerim | posuerīmus |
| posuerīs | posuerītis |
| posuerit | posuerint  |

## PERFECT (495)

|                      |       |                     |         |
|----------------------|-------|---------------------|---------|
| positus<br>(-a, -um) | { sim | positī<br>(-ae, -a) | { sīmus |
|                      | { sīs |                     | { sītis |
|                      | { sit |                     | { sint  |

## PAST PERFECT (495)

|           |             |
|-----------|-------------|
| posuissē  | posuissēmus |
| posuissēs | posuissētis |
| posuisset | posuissent  |

## PAST PERFECT (495)

|                      |         |                     |           |
|----------------------|---------|---------------------|-----------|
| positus<br>(-a, -um) | { essem | positī<br>(-ae, -a) | { essēmus |
|                      | { essēs |                     | { essētis |
|                      | { esset |                     | { essent  |

## PRESENT IMPERATIVE

|           |                    |
|-----------|--------------------|
| 2nd sing. | pōne, place (thou) |
| 2nd plur. | pōnite, place (ye) |

|                          |
|--------------------------|
| pōnere, be (thou) placed |
| pōniminī, be (ye) placed |

## INFINITIVE (20, 221, 368, 374)

|         |                |
|---------|----------------|
| Present | pōnere         |
| Perfect | posuisse       |
| Future  | positūrus esse |

|              |
|--------------|
| pōnī         |
| positus esse |

## PARTICIPLES (211, 362-3, 578)

|         |                     |
|---------|---------------------|
| Present | pōnēns, Gen. -entis |
| Perfect |                     |
| Future  | positūrus, -a, -um  |

|                   |
|-------------------|
| positus, -a, -um  |
| pōnendus, -a, -um |

## GERUND (583)

Gen. pōnendī, Dat. pōnendō, Acc. pōnendum, Abl. pōnendō

## 663.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION

Principal Parts: *mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīvī, mūnītus*(Stems: *mūnī-, mūnīv-, mūnīt-*)

## ACTIVE VOICE

## PASSIVE VOICE

## INDICATIVE

## PRESENT (136)

|              |                |
|--------------|----------------|
| <i>mūniō</i> | <i>mūnīmus</i> |
| <i>mūnīs</i> | <i>mūnītis</i> |
| <i>mūnīt</i> | <i>mūniunt</i> |

## PRESENT (176)

|                      |                  |
|----------------------|------------------|
| <i>mūnior</i>        | <i>mūnīmur</i>   |
| <i>mūnīris (-re)</i> | <i>mūnīmini</i>  |
| <i>mūnītur</i>       | <i>mūniuntur</i> |

## IMPERFECT (136)

|                 |                   |
|-----------------|-------------------|
| <i>mūniēbam</i> | <i>mūniēbāmus</i> |
| <i>mūniēbās</i> | <i>mūniēbātis</i> |
| <i>mūniēbat</i> | <i>mūniēbant</i>  |

## IMPERFECT (176)

|                         |                    |
|-------------------------|--------------------|
| <i>mūniēbar</i>         | <i>mūniēbāmur</i>  |
| <i>mūniēbāris (-re)</i> | <i>mūniēbāmini</i> |
| <i>mūniēbātur</i>       | <i>mūniēbantur</i> |

## FUTURE (155)

|               |                 |
|---------------|-----------------|
| <i>mūniam</i> | <i>mūniēmus</i> |
| <i>mūniēs</i> | <i>mūniētis</i> |
| <i>mūniet</i> | <i>mūnient</i>  |

## FUTURE (176)

|                       |                  |
|-----------------------|------------------|
| <i>mūniar</i>         | <i>mūniēmur</i>  |
| <i>mūniēris (-re)</i> | <i>mūniēmini</i> |
| <i>mūniētur</i>       | <i>mūnientur</i> |

## PERFECT (188)

|                  |                          |
|------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>mūnīvī</i>    | <i>mūnīvimus</i>         |
| <i>mūnīvistī</i> | <i>mūnīvistis</i>        |
| <i>mūnīvit</i>   | <i>mūnīvērunt (-ēre)</i> |

## PERFECT (213)

|                  |  |                  |  |
|------------------|--|------------------|--|
| <i>mūnītus</i>   | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sum} \\ \text{es} \\ \text{est} \end{array} \right.$ | <i>mūnītī</i>    | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sumus} \\ \text{estis} \\ \text{sunt} \end{array} \right.$ |
| <i>(-a, -um)</i> |  | <i>(-ae, -a)</i> |  |

## PAST PERFECT (197)

|                  |                    |
|------------------|--------------------|
| <i>mūnīveram</i> | <i>mūnīverāmus</i> |
| <i>mūnīverās</i> | <i>mūnīverātis</i> |
| <i>mūnīverat</i> | <i>mūnīverant</i>  |

## PAST PERFECT (214)

|                  |  |                  |   |
|------------------|--|------------------|---|
| <i>mūnītus</i>   | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{eram} \\ \text{erās} \\ \text{erat} \end{array} \right.$ | <i>mūnītī</i>    | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{erāmus} \\ \text{erātis} \\ \text{erant} \end{array} \right.$ |
| <i>(-a, -um)</i> |  | <i>(-ae, -a)</i> |   |

## FUTURE PERFECT (198)

|                  |                    |
|------------------|--------------------|
| <i>mūnīverō</i>  | <i>mūnīverimus</i> |
| <i>mūnīveris</i> | <i>mūnīveritis</i> |
| <i>mūnīverit</i> | <i>mūnīverint</i>  |

## FUTURE PERFECT (219)

|                  |   |                  |   |
|------------------|---|------------------|---|
| <i>mūnītus</i>   | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{erō} \\ \text{eris} \\ \text{erit} \end{array} \right.$ | <i>mūnītī</i>    | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{erimus} \\ \text{eritis} \\ \text{erunt} \end{array} \right.$ |
| <i>(-a, -um)</i> |   | <i>(-ae, -a)</i> |   |

## ACTIVE VOICE

## PASSIVE VOICE

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT (427)

|        |          |
|--------|----------|
| mūniam | mūniāmus |
| mūniās | mūniātis |
| mūniat | mūniant  |

## PRESENT (427)

|                |           |
|----------------|-----------|
| mūniar         | mūniāmur  |
| mūniāris (-re) | mūniāmini |
| mūniātur       | mūniantur |

## IMPERFECT (446)

|         |           |
|---------|-----------|
| mūnīrem | mūnīrēmus |
| mūnīrēs | mūnīrētis |
| mūnīret | mūnīrent  |

## IMPERFECT (446)

|                 |            |
|-----------------|------------|
| mūnīrer         | mūnīrēmur  |
| mūnīrēris (-re) | mūnīrēmini |
| mūnīrētur       | mūnīrentur |

## PERFECT (495)

|           |             |
|-----------|-------------|
| mūnīverim | mūnīverimus |
| mūnīverīs | mūnīverītis |
| mūnīverit | mūnīverint  |

## PERFECT (495)

|           |       |           |         |
|-----------|-------|-----------|---------|
| mūnītus   | { sim | mūnītī    | { sīmus |
| (-a, -um) | { sīs | (-ae, -a) | { sītis |
|           | { sit |           | { sint  |

## PAST PERFECT (495)

|            |              |
|------------|--------------|
| mūnīvissem | mūnīvissemus |
| mūnīvisse  | mūnīvissetis |
| mūnīvisset | mūnīvissent  |

## PAST PERFECT (495)

|           |         |           |           |
|-----------|---------|-----------|-----------|
| mūnītus   | { essem | mūnītī    | { essēmus |
| (-a, -um) | { essēs | (-ae, -a) | { essētis |
|           | { esset |           | { essent  |

## PRESENT IMPERATIVE

|           |                      |
|-----------|----------------------|
| 2nd sing. | mūnī, fortify (thou) |
| 2nd plur. | mūnite, fortify (ye) |

|                             |
|-----------------------------|
| mūnire, be (thou) fortified |
| mūnīmini, be (ye) fortified |

## INFINITIVE (20, 221, 368, 374)

|         |                |
|---------|----------------|
| Present | mūnire         |
| Perfect | mūnīvisse      |
| Future  | mūnītūrus esse |

|              |
|--------------|
| mūnīrī       |
| mūnītus esse |

## PARTICIPLES (211, 362-3, 578)

|         |                         |
|---------|-------------------------|
| Present | mūniēns, Gen. mūnientis |
| Perfect |                         |
| Future  | mūnītūrus, -a, -um      |

|                    |
|--------------------|
| mūnītus, -a, -um   |
| mūniendus, -a, -um |

## GERUND (583)

Gen. mūniendī, Dat. mūniendō, Acc. mūniendum, Abl. mūniendō



**664. THIRD CONJUGATION -IŌ VERBS**

Principal Parts : capiō, capĕre, cĕpī, captus

(Stems : capĕ-, cĕp-, capt-)

**ACTIVE VOICE****PASSIVE VOICE****INDICATIVE****PRESENT (135)**

|       |         |
|-------|---------|
| capiō | capimus |
| capis | capitis |
| capit | capiunt |

**PRESENT (176)**

|               |           |
|---------------|-----------|
| capior        | capimur   |
| caperis (-re) | capimini  |
| capitur       | capiuntur |

**IMPERFECT (135)**

capiēbam, etc.

**IMPERFECT (176)**

capiēbar, etc.

**FUTURE (155)**

|        |          |
|--------|----------|
| capiam | capiēmus |
| capies | capiētis |
| capiet | capient  |

**FUTURE (176)**

|                |           |
|----------------|-----------|
| capiar         | capiēmur  |
| capiēris (-re) | capiēmini |
| capiētur       | capiuntur |

**PERFECT (188)**

cĕpī, etc.

**PERFECT (213)**

captus sum, etc.

**PAST PERFECT (197)**

cĕperam, etc.

**PAST PERFECT (214)**

captus eram, etc.

**FUTURE PERFECT (198)**

cĕperō, etc.

**FUTURE PERFECT (219)**

captus erō, etc.

**SUBJUNCTIVE****PRESENT (427)**

|        |          |
|--------|----------|
| capiam | capiāmus |
| capias | capiātis |
| capiat | capiant  |

**PRESENT (427)**

|                |           |
|----------------|-----------|
| capiar         | capiāmur  |
| capiāris (-re) | capiāmini |
| capiātur       | capiantur |

**IMPERFECT (446)**

caperem, etc.

**IMPERFECT (446)**

caperer, etc.

## ACTIVE VOICE

## PASSIVE VOICE

## PERFECT (495)

cēperim, etc.

## PERFECT (495)

captus sim, etc.

## PAST PERFECT (495)

cēpisse, etc.

## PAST PERFECT (495)

captus essem, etc.

## PRESENT IMPERATIVE

2nd sing. cape, take (thou)

capere, be (thou) taken

2nd plur. capite, take (ye)

capimini, be (ye) taken

## INFINITIVE (20, 221, 368, 374)

Present capere

capī

Perfect cēpisse

captus esse

Future captūrus esse

## PARTICIPLES (211, 362-3, 578)

Present capiēns, Gen. capientis

Perfect

captus, -a, -um

Future captūrus, -a, -um

capiendus, -a, -um

## GERUND (583)

Gen. capiendī, Dat. capiendō, Acc. capiendum, Abl. capiendō

## 665.

## DEPONENT VERBS (503)

arbitror, arbitrārī, arbitrātus sum (1st Conj.)

fateor, fatērī, fassus sum (2nd Conj.)

sequor, sequī, secūtus sum (3rd Conj.)

gradior, gradī, gressus sum (3rd Conj. -iō)

experior, experirī, expertus sum (4th Conj.)

## INDICATIVE

Pres.

arbitror

fateor

sequor

Impf.

arbitrābar

fatēbar

sequēbar

Fut.

arbitrābor

fatēbor

sequar

Perf.

arbitrātus sum

fassus sum

secūtus sum

Past P.

arbitrātus eram

fassus eram

secūtus eram

Fut. P.

arbitrātus erō

fassus erō

secūtus erō

|                 |                     |                      |
|-----------------|---------------------|----------------------|
| <i>Pres.</i>    | <i>gradior</i>      | <i>experior</i>      |
| <i>Impf.</i>    | <i>gradiēbar</i>    | <i>experiēbar</i>    |
| <i>Fut.</i>     | <i>gradiar</i>      | <i>experiar</i>      |
| <i>Perf.</i>    | <i>gressus sum</i>  | <i>expertus sum</i>  |
| <i>Past. P.</i> | <i>gressus eram</i> | <i>expertus eram</i> |
| <i>Fut. P.</i>  | <i>gressus erō</i>  | <i>expertus erō</i>  |

## SUBJUNCTIVE

|                 |                         |                       |                      |
|-----------------|-------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|
| <i>Pres.</i>    | <i>arbitrer</i>         | <i>fatear</i>         | <i>sequar</i>        |
| <i>Impf.</i>    | <i>arbitrārer</i>       | <i>fatērer</i>        | <i>sequerer</i>      |
| <i>Perf.</i>    | <i>arbitrātus sim</i>   | <i>fassus sim</i>     | <i>secūtus sim</i>   |
| <i>Past P.</i>  | <i>arbitrātus essem</i> | <i>fassus essem</i>   | <i>secūtus essem</i> |
| <i>Pres.</i>    | <i>gradiar</i>          | <i>experiar</i>       |                      |
| <i>Impf.</i>    | <i>graderer</i>         | <i>experīrer</i>      |                      |
| <i>Perf.</i>    | <i>gressus sim</i>      | <i>expertus sim</i>   |                      |
| <i>Past. P.</i> | <i>gressus essem</i>    | <i>expertus essem</i> |                      |

## PRESENT IMPERATIVE

|                 |                    |                   |                  |
|-----------------|--------------------|-------------------|------------------|
| <i>2d sing.</i> | <i>arbitrāre</i>   | <i>fatēre</i>     | <i>sequere</i>   |
| <i>2d plur.</i> | <i>arbitrāminī</i> | <i>fatēminī</i>   | <i>sequiminī</i> |
| <i>2d sing.</i> | <i>gradere</i>     | <i>experīre</i>   |                  |
| <i>2d plur.</i> | <i>gradiminī</i>   | <i>experīminī</i> |                  |

## INFINITIVE

|              |                          |                        |                       |
|--------------|--------------------------|------------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>Pres.</i> | <i>arbitrārī</i>         | <i>fatērī</i>          | <i>sequī</i>          |
| <i>Perf.</i> | <i>arbitrātus esse</i>   | <i>fassus esse</i>     | <i>secūtus esse</i>   |
| <i>Fut.</i>  | <i>arbitrātūrus esse</i> | <i>fassūrus esse</i>   | <i>secūtūrus esse</i> |
| <i>Pres.</i> | <i>gradi</i>             | <i>experīrī</i>        |                       |
| <i>Perf.</i> | <i>gressus esse</i>      | <i>expertus esse</i>   |                       |
| <i>Fut.</i>  | <i>gressūrus esse</i>    | <i>expertūrus esse</i> |                       |

## PARTICIPLES

|                   |                     |                    |                  |
|-------------------|---------------------|--------------------|------------------|
| <i>Pres.</i>      | <i>arbitrāns</i>    | <i>fatēns</i>      | <i>sequēns</i>   |
| <i>Perf.</i>      | <i>arbitrātus</i>   | <i>fassus</i>      | <i>secūtus</i>   |
| <i>Fut. Act.</i>  | <i>arbitrātūrus</i> | <i>fassūrus</i>    | <i>secūtūrus</i> |
| <i>Fut. Pass.</i> | <i>arbitrandus</i>  | <i>fatendus</i>    | <i>sequendus</i> |
| <i>Pres.</i>      | <i>gradiēns</i>     | <i>experiēns</i>   |                  |
| <i>Perf.</i>      | <i>gressus</i>      | <i>expertus</i>    |                  |
| <i>Fut. Act.</i>  | <i>gressūrus</i>    | <i>expertūrus</i>  |                  |
| <i>Fut. Pass.</i> | <i>gradiendus</i>   | <i>experiendus</i> |                  |

## IRREGULAR VERBS

666. Principal Parts : sum, esse, fuī, futūrus

## INDICATIVE

## SUBJUNCTIVE

(95)

## PRESENT

(440)

sum sumus  
es estis  
est sunt

sim sīmus  
sīs sītis  
sit sint

(105)

## IMPERFECT

(446)

eram erāmus  
erās erātis  
erat erant

essem essēmus  
essēs essētis  
esset essent

(105)

## FUTURE

erō erimus  
eris eritis  
erit erunt

(192)

## PERFECT

(495)

fuī fuimus  
fuistī fuistis  
fuit fuērunt (-ēre)

fuerim fuerimus  
fuerīs fueritis  
fuerit fuerint

(203)

## PAST PERFECT

(495)

fueram fuerāmus  
fuerās fuerātis  
fuerat fuerant

fuissem fuissēmus  
fuissēs fuissētis  
fuisset fuissent

(203)

## FUTURE PERFECT

fuerō fuerimus  
fueris fueritis  
fuerit fuerint

## PRESENT IMPERATIVE

2nd sing. es

2nd plur. este

## INFINITIVE (368, 374)

|              |              |
|--------------|--------------|
| <i>Près.</i> | esse         |
| <i>Perf.</i> | fuisse       |
| <i>Fut.</i>  | futūrus esse |

## PARTICIPLE (363)

|                  |
|------------------|
| —                |
| —                |
| futūrus, -a, -um |

667. Principal Parts: possum, posse, potuī, —

## INDICATIVE (265)

## SUBJUNCTIVE (440, 446, 495)

|                |                           |                                 |                            |                                 |
|----------------|---------------------------|---------------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>Pres.</i>   | possum<br>potes<br>potest | possumus<br>potestis<br>possunt | possim<br>possis<br>possit | possimus<br>possitis<br>possint |
| <i>Impf.</i>   | poteram, etc.             |                                 | possem, etc.               |                                 |
| <i>Fut.</i>    | poterō, etc.              |                                 |                            |                                 |
| <i>Perf.</i>   | potuī, etc.               |                                 | potuerim, etc.             |                                 |
| <i>Past P.</i> | potueram, etc.            |                                 | potuissem, etc.            |                                 |
| <i>Fut. P.</i> | potuerō, etc.             |                                 |                            |                                 |

## INFINITIVE (262, 368)

*Present* posse

*Perfect* potuisse

## PARTICIPLE (362)

*Present* potēns, *Gen.* -entis (*adj.*), *powerful*

668. Principal Parts: ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus

## INDICATIVE (395)

## ACTIVE

## PASSIVE

|                |                    |         |                      |          |
|----------------|--------------------|---------|----------------------|----------|
| <i>Pres.</i>   | ferō               | ferimus | feror                | ferimur  |
|                | fers               | fertis  | ferris (-re)         | ferimini |
|                | fert               | ferunt  | fertur               | feruntur |
| <i>Impf.</i>   | ferēbam, etc.      |         | ferēbar, etc.        |          |
| <i>Fut.</i>    | feram, ferēs, etc. |         | ferar, ferēris, etc. |          |
| <i>Perf.</i>   | tulī, etc.         |         | lātus sum, etc.      |          |
| <i>Past P.</i> | tuleram, etc.      |         | lātus eram, etc.     |          |
| <i>Fut. P.</i> | tulerō, etc.       |         | lātus erō, etc.      |          |

## SUBJUNCTIVE (427, 446, 495)

|                | ACTIVE                    | PASSIVE                     |
|----------------|---------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>Pres.</i>   | <b>feram, ferās, etc.</b> | <b>ferar, ferāris, etc.</b> |
| <i>Impf.</i>   | <b>ferrem, etc.</b>       | <b>ferrar, etc.</b>         |
| <i>Perf.</i>   | <b>tulerim, etc.</b>      | <b>lātus sim, etc.</b>      |
| <i>Past P.</i> | <b>tulissem, etc.</b>     | <b>lātus essem, etc.</b>    |

## PRESENT IMPERATIVE

|                  |            |              |              |                 |
|------------------|------------|--------------|--------------|-----------------|
| <i>2nd Pers.</i> | <b>fer</b> | <b>ferte</b> | <b>ferre</b> | <b>ferimini</b> |
|------------------|------------|--------------|--------------|-----------------|

## INFINITIVE (395)

|              |                     |                   |
|--------------|---------------------|-------------------|
| <i>Pres.</i> | <b>ferre</b>        | <b>ferri</b>      |
| <i>Perf.</i> | <b>tulisse</b>      | <b>lātus esse</b> |
| <i>Fut.</i>  | <b>lāturus esse</b> |                   |

## PARTICIPLES (395, 578)

|              |                         |                          |
|--------------|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Pres.</i> | <b>ferēns, -entis</b>   |                          |
| <i>Perf.</i> |                         | <b>lātus, -a, -um</b>    |
| <i>Fut.</i>  | <b>lāturus, -a, -um</b> | <b>ferendus, -a, -um</b> |

## GERUND (583)

*Gen.* ferendī, *Dat.* ferendō, *Acc.* ferendum, *Abl.* ferendō

## 669. Principal Parts : eō, ire, ii, itus (519)

## INDICATIVE

| PRESENT                              | IMPERFECT         | FUTURE                              | PERFECT                  |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------|-------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| <b>eō imus</b>                       | <b>ibam, etc.</b> | <b>ibō ibimus</b>                   | <b>iī iimus</b>          |
| <b>is itis</b>                       |                   | <b>ibis ibitis</b>                  | <b>īstī istis</b>        |
| <b>it eunt</b>                       |                   | <b>ibit ibunt</b>                   | <b>iit iērunt (-ēre)</b> |
| <i>Past Perf.</i> <b>ieram, etc.</b> |                   | <i>Fut. Perf.</i> <b>ierō, etc.</b> |                          |

## SUBJUNCTIVE

| PRESENT          | IMPERFECT         | PERFECT            | PAST PERFECT       |
|------------------|-------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| <b>eam, etc.</b> | <b>irem, etc.</b> | <b>ierim, etc.</b> | <b>issem, etc.</b> |



| IMPERATIVE            | INFINITIVE  | PARTICIPLES                                   |
|-----------------------|-------------|---|
| <i>Pres.</i> ī    ite | īre         | iēns, <i>Gen.</i> euntis                      |
| <i>Perf.</i>          | isse        | itus, -a, -um                                 |
| <i>Fut.</i>           | itūrus esse | itūrus, -a, -um<br>( <i>Passive</i> , eundus) |

## GERUND

*Gen.* eundī, *Dat.* eundō, *Acc.* eundum, *Abl.* eundō

**670.** Principal Parts: volō, velle, voluī (545); nōlō, nōlle, nōluī (545); mālō, mālle, mālui

## INDICATIVE

## PRESENT

|      |         |          |            |        |          |
|------|---------|----------|------------|--------|----------|
| volō | volumus | nōlō     | nōlumus    | mālō   | mālumus  |
| vīs  | vultis  | nōn vīs  | nōn vultis | māvis  | māvultis |
| vult | volunt  | nōn vult | nōlunt     | māvult | mālunt   |

*Impf.*      volēbam, etc.      nōlēbam, etc.      mālēbam, etc.

*Fut.*      volam, etc.      nōlam, etc.      mālam, etc.

*Perf.*      voluī, etc.      nōluī, etc.      mālui, etc.

*Past P.*    volueram, etc.      nōlueram, etc.      mālueram, etc.

*Fut. P.*    voluerō, etc.      nōluerō, etc.      māluerō, etc.

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

|       |         |       |         |       |         |
|-------|---------|-------|---------|-------|---------|
| velim | velimus | nōlim | nōlimus | mālim | mālimus |
| velis | velitis | nōlis | nōlitis | mālis | mālitis |
| velit | velint  | nōlit | nōlint  | mālit | mālint  |

*Impf.*      vellem, etc.      nōllem, etc.      māllem, etc.

*Perf.*      voluerim, etc.      nōluerim, etc.      māluerim, etc.

*Past P.*    voluissem, etc.      nōluissem, etc.      māluissem, etc.

## PRESENT IMPERATIVE

nōlī      nōlite

## INFINITIVE

|              |                 |                 |                 |
|--------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| <i>Pres.</i> | <b>velle</b>    | <b>nōlle</b>    | <b>mälle</b>    |
| <i>Perf.</i> | <b>voluisse</b> | <b>nōluisse</b> | <b>mäluisse</b> |

## PARTICIPLES

|              |               |               |
|--------------|---------------|---------------|
| <i>Pres.</i> | <b>volēns</b> | <b>nōlēns</b> |
|--------------|---------------|---------------|

**671.** Principal Parts : **fiō, fieri, factus sum (561)**

## INDICATIVE

| PRESENT                 | IMPERFECT           | FUTURE            | PERFECT                 |
|-------------------------|---------------------|-------------------|-------------------------|
| <b>fiō</b> ———          | <b>fiēbam, etc.</b> | <b>fiam, etc.</b> | <b>factus sum, etc.</b> |
| -----                   |                     |                   |                         |
| <b>fit</b> <b>fiunt</b> |                     |                   |                         |

*Past Perf.* **factus eram, etc.**    *Fut. Perf.* **factus erō, etc.**

## SUBJUNCTIVE

| PRESENT           | IMPERFECT           | PERFECT                 | PAST PERFECT              |
|-------------------|---------------------|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| <b>fiam, etc.</b> | <b>fierem, etc.</b> | <b>factus sim, etc.</b> | <b>factus essem, etc.</b> |

## IMPERATIVE

## INFINITIVE

## PARTICIPLES

|              |                       |                    |                           |
|--------------|-----------------------|--------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>Pres.</i> | <b>fi</b> <b>fite</b> | <b>fieri</b>       |                           |
| <i>Perf.</i> |                       | <b>factus esse</b> | <b>factus, -a, -um</b>    |
| <i>Fut.</i>  |                       |                    | <b>faciendus, -a, -um</b> |

# FRENCH AND SPANISH THROUGH LATIN

*Nōtitia linguārum est prima porta sapientiae, A knowledge of languages is the first door to wisdom. — BACON*

## 672. The Romance Languages

The Romance (*Rōmānus*, *Roman*) languages — French, Spanish, Italian, Portuguese, and Rumanian — are modern forms of Latin. Fully ninety per cent of the words in French and Spanish are derived from Latin. The Latin student, therefore, who is familiar with the principles that govern vowel and consonant changes, as well as other peculiarities of word transfer, can recognize at a glance a large proportion of words in French and Spanish derived from classical (as opposed to late) Latin.

The following pages are intended primarily for older students who have elected Latin after having begun the study of French or Spanish. These rules will, moreover, be found invaluable for reference by the Latin student who may later elect French or Spanish (see 1).

## 673. Pronunciation

The distinctions in sound between long and short *e* and *o* (604, *a*) are preserved in French and Spanish, though not in all derived words.

Spanish has no silent letters, except *h*, thus resembling Latin (*h* was weakly sounded in Latin).

## 674. Syllable Division

Syllable division in French and Spanish is according to the Latin rule (609).

## 675. Gender

Nouns which are masculine or feminine in Latin retain their gender in French and Spanish :

|             |                  |                  |                 |                     |                  |
|-------------|------------------|------------------|-----------------|---------------------|------------------|
| <i>Lat.</i> | <i>poēta, m.</i> | <i>liber, m.</i> | <i>mōns, m.</i> | <i>libertās, f.</i> | <i>manus, f.</i> |
| <i>Fr.</i>  | <i>poète</i>     | <i>livre</i>     | <i>mont</i>     | <i>liberté</i>      | <i>main</i>      |
| <i>Sp.</i>  | <i>poeta</i>     | <i>libro</i>     | <i>monte</i>    | <i>libertad</i>     | <i>mano</i>      |

**Exception :** Most Latin masculines in *-or* become feminine in French : *error, erreur.*

Nouns which are neuter in Latin become masculine in French and Spanish :

|             |           |               |               |
|-------------|-----------|---------------|---------------|
| <i>Lat.</i> | <i>n.</i> | <b>verbum</b> | <b>tempus</b> |
| <i>Fr.</i>  | <i>m.</i> | <b>verbe</b>  | <b>temps</b>  |
| <i>Sp.</i>  | <i>m.</i> | <b>verbo</b>  | <b>tiempo</b> |

**Exception :** Many Latin neuters, especially those which were commonly used in the plural (which ends in *-a*, like the feminine singular) become feminine singular in French and Spanish :

|             |                 |             |             |               |
|-------------|-----------------|-------------|-------------|---------------|
| <i>Lat.</i> | <i>n. plur.</i> | <b>arma</b> | <b>data</b> | <b>pecora</b> |
| <i>Fr.</i>  | <i>f. sing.</i> | <b>arme</b> | <b>date</b> | <b>pécure</b> |
| <i>Sp.</i>  | <i>f. sing.</i> | <b>arma</b> | <b>data</b> | <b>pécora</b> |

## FRENCH THROUGH LATIN

### 676.

### Accent

The French stress often preserves the Latin accent. The syllables after the accented syllable in Latin were dropped or became silent in French, which fact explains why the French stress is usually on the last syllable.

### 677.

### Vocabulary

Many Latin words remain unchanged in French, as in English : *agenda, alibi, errata, humus, omnibus, ultimum*, etc.

### 678.

### Loss of Letters

1. The final syllable or letters of many Latin words are lost in French or changed to silent *e* : *ami* (*amicum* <sup>1</sup>), *mont* (*montem*), *terre* (*terram*).

2. An unaccented short vowel within a word is often lost : *homme* (*hominem*), *livrer* (*liberâre*), *peuple* (*populus*).

3. A consonant between two vowels is often lost : *cruel* (*crūdēlem*), *dire* (*dīcere*).

4. The first of two consonants is often lost : *frère* (*frātre*).

---

<sup>1</sup> The accusative of all Latin nouns and adjectives is given because the French and Spanish forms are derived from it, not from the nominative.

## 679.

## Vowels

The Latin vowels often remain unchanged in French, but the following changes are to be noted :

(A) *Change to a single vowel*

1. **a** sometimes becomes **e**: *père* (*patrem*), *aimer* (*amāre*), *gré* (*grātum*), *mer* (*mare*).
2. **e** sometimes becomes **i**: *six* (*sex*), *lire* (*legere*).
3. **i** sometimes becomes **e**: *ferme* (*firmum*), *lettre* (*litteram*).
4. **u** sometimes becomes **o**: *nombre* (*numerus*), *onde* (*undam*), *rompre* (*rumpere*).
5. **au** sometimes becomes **o**: *chose* (*causam*).
6. **ae** and **oe** are treated as **e**.

(B) *Change to two vowels*

This was very common in accented syllables (cf. 443, 522).

1. **ai** is from **a**: *aimer* (*amāre*), *main* (*manum*).
2. **ei** is from **e** or **i**: *plein* (*plēnus*), *seing* (*signum*).
3. **oi** is from **e**, **i**, **o**, or **u**: *roi* (*rēgem*), *voie* (*viam*), *gloire* (*glōriam*), *croix* (*crux*).
4. **ui** is from **o** or **u**: *puis* (*post*), *suis* (*sum*).
5. **au** is from **al**, and **eau** from **el**: *haut* (*altum*), *vaut* (*valet*), *beau* (*bellum*).
6. **eu**, **oeu**, is from **o**: *seul* (*sōlum*), *coeur* (*cor*).
7. **ou** is from **o** or **u**: *nous* (*nōs*), *prouver* (*probāre*), *jour* (*diurnum*).
8. **ie** is from **e**: *bien* (*bene*), *pied* (*pedem*).

## 680.

## Consonants

1. **b** and **p** sometimes become **v**: *livre* (*librum*), *avril* (*aprilem*).
2. **p** and **v** sometimes become **b** or **f**: *double* (*duplicem*), *chef* (*caput*), *neuf* (*novum*).
3. **ct** sometimes becomes **it**: *fait* (*factum*), *fruit* (*fructum*).
4. **t** followed by **i** and **a** vowel in certain cases becomes **s**: *raison* (*rationem*).
5. **s** before a consonant is dropped and the preceding vowel receives **a** circumflex accent: *maître* (*magistrum*), *tempête* (*tempestātem*).
6. **c** before **a**, especially at the beginning of words, becomes **ch**: *char* (*carrum*), *chef* (*caput*), *chose* (*causam*).
7. Initial **sc**, **sp**, and **st** become **esc**, **esp**, and **est**: *espace* (*spatium*), *espèce* (*speciem*).

In some words the *s* is dropped and the *e* has an acute accent: *étude* (*studium*).

## 681.

## Word Formation

The Latin prefixes used in French have undergone the same changes that have been noted for English in this book (cf. especially *com-*, *con-*, *en-*, *em-*, *sur-*, *tra-*). In addition, attention is called to the change from *dis-* to *de-*, *dés-* (*déshonneur*), *inter-* to *entre-* (*entrevoir*), *per-* to *par-* (*parfait*), *pro-* to *pour-* (*poursuivre*), *sub-* to *sou-*, *sous-* (*souvenir*), *ultra-* to *oultre-* (*outrémer*).

Latin suffixes in French show much the same form as in English. Note, however, the change of *-ātum* to *é* (*amātum*, *aimé*), *-ōrem* to *-eur* (*auctōrem*, *auteur*), *-ōsum* to *-eux* (*ōtiōsum*, *oiseux*), *-tātem* to *-té* (*libertātem*, *liberté*).

## 682.

## Inflection

1. Nouns of the first Latin declension in *-a* end in silent *-e* in French.  
 2. The French definite article *le*, *la*, is derived from the last syllable of *ille*, *illa*.

3. The comparative forms of Latin irregular adjectives are to some extent preserved in French: *meilleur* (*melior*), *moins* (*minus*), *pire* (*peior*).

4. The same forms constitute the principal parts of verbs in French as in Latin, with the addition of the present participle.

5. Most French verbs belong to the first conjugation, with infinitive in *-er*. This corresponds to the Latin first conjugation, with infinitive in *-āre*, but includes a number of verbs of the Latin second and third conjugations.

6. The French second conjugation, with infinitive in *-ir*, corresponds to the Latin fourth conjugation (*-ire*).

7. The French third conjugation, with infinitive in *-re*, corresponds to the Latin third conjugation (*-ēre*).

8. The Latin personal endings have undergone considerable changes in French. The endings of the French past definite can easily be traced to those of the Latin perfect. Many of the numerous irregular verbs in French preserve forms derived from the Latin:

|             |                |               |                  |
|-------------|----------------|---------------|------------------|
| <i>suis</i> | ( <i>sum</i> ) | <i>sommes</i> | ( <i>sumus</i> ) |
| <i>es</i>   | ( <i>es</i> )  | <i>êtes</i>   | ( <i>estis</i> ) |
| <i>est</i>  | ( <i>est</i> ) | <i>sont</i>   | ( <i>sunt</i> )  |



## SPANISH THROUGH LATIN

## 683.

## Accent

Accent is greatly simplified in Spanish if the student understands Latin accent. The so-called irregular accent of nouns and adjectives in Spanish preserves the Latin accent of the accusative case:

|             |        |         |           |             |          |
|-------------|--------|---------|-----------|-------------|----------|
| <i>Lat.</i> | a'mant | a'nimum | ima'ginem | prōpo'situm | dormi're |
| <i>Sp.</i>  | aman   | ánimo   | imagen    | propósito   | dormir   |

## 684.

## Vocabulary

Hundreds of words in Spanish are either identical with the original Latin form or resemble it so closely that one who knows Latin can understand their meaning at a glance, without knowing the principles that govern word transfer:

|             |      |      |       |      |        |      |          |      |        |
|-------------|------|------|-------|------|--------|------|----------|------|--------|
| <i>Lat.</i> | aqua | arma | causa | hōra | patria | trēs | victōria | dare | ūtilis |
| <i>Sp.</i>  | agua | arma | causa | hora | patria | tres | victoria | dar  | útil   |

## 685.

## Loss of Letters

1. Final letters and syllables are often lost in Spanish, but not to the same extent as in French: *amigo* (*amicum*), *monte* (*montem*), *útil* (*utilem*).

2. An unaccented short vowel within a word is sometimes lost: *hombre* (*hominem*), *librar* (*liberāre*), *pueblo* (*populum*).

3. A consonant (especially *b*, *d*, *g*, *h*) between vowels is sometimes lost: *leer* (*legere*), *creer* (*crēdere*), *traer* (*trahere*).

4. The first of two consonants is sometimes lost, especially *n* before *s*: *escrito* (*scriptum*), *autor* (*auctōrem*), *isla* (*īnsulam*).

5. Double consonants become single: *oficio* (*officium*), *nulo* (*nūllum*), *permitir* (*permittere*). Double *n* becomes *ñ*: *año* (*annum*); *ñ* is also for *ni*, etc.: *señor* (*senior*).

## 686.

## Vowels

The Latin vowels often remain unchanged in Spanish, but the following changes are to be noted:

(A) *Change to a single vowel*

1. Short *i* sometimes becomes *e*: *lengua* (*linguam*), *letra* (*literam*), *menos* (*minus*).

2. Short **u** sometimes becomes **o**: *onda* (*undam*), *romper* (*rumper*).
3. **au** sometimes becomes **o**: *oído* (*auditum*), *cosa* (*causam*).
4. **ae** and **oe** are treated as **e**.

(B) *Change to two vowels*

1. Accented short **e** becomes **ie**: *bien* (*bene*), *cielo* (*caelum*), *cierto* (*certum*).
2. Accented short **o** becomes **ue**: *bueno* (*bonum*), *cuero* (*corpus*), *nuevo* (*novem*).

## 687.

## Consonants

1. **c** sometimes becomes **g**: *amigo* (*amicum*).
2. **p** sometimes becomes **b**: *pueblo* (*populum*).
3. **t** sometimes becomes **d**: *maduro* (*mātūrum*), *padre* (*patrem*).
4. **ct** becomes **ch**: *dicho* (*dictum*), *hecho* (*factum*), *ocho* (*octō*).
5. **li** becomes **j**: *consejo* (*cōnsilium*), *hijo* (*filium*), *mejor* (*melior*).
6. Initial **f** sometimes becomes **h**: *hacer* (*facere*), *hijo* (*filium*).
7. Initial **cl** and **pl** sometimes become **ll**: *llamar* (*clāmāre*), *llano* (*plānum*).
8. Initial **sc**, **sp**, and **st** become **esc**, **esp**, **est**: *escribir* (*scribere*), *esperar* (*spērāre*), *estar* (*stāre*).

## 688.

## Word Formation

The Latin prefixes used in Spanish are easily recognizable. Note the following changes which sometimes occur: **ex-** to **ej-** (*ejercer*), **dis-** to **des-** (*descrédito*), **super-** to **sobre-** (*sobrehumano*).

The Latin suffixes are also used in Spanish. Note the following changes: **-ātum** to **-ado** (*amado*), **-tātem**, **-tūtem**, to **-tad**, **-tud** (*libertad*, *virtud*), **-tiōnem** to **-cion** (*oración*), **-tiam** to **-cia** (*gracia*).

## 689.

## Inflection

1. Nouns of the first Latin declension ending in **-a** retain the **-a** in Spanish: *gracia* (*grātia*), *tierra* (*terra*).
2. Nouns of the second Latin declension in **-us** and **-um** end in **-o** in Spanish: *carro* (*carrus*), *reino* (*rēgnum*).
3. The comparative and superlative forms of Latin irregular adjectives are to some extent preserved in Spanish: *peor* (*peior*), *mayor* (*maior*), *óptimo* (*optimus*), *libérrimo* (*liberrimus*).
4. The Spanish first conjugation, with infinitive in **-ar**, corresponds to the Latin first conjugation (**-āre**).

5. The Spanish second conjugation, with infinitive in *-er*, corresponds to the Latin second and third conjugations (*-ēre*, *-ĕre*).

6. The Spanish third conjugation, with infinitive in *-ir*, corresponds to the Latin fourth conjugation (*-ire*) but also includes many verbs of the third conjugation.

7. Many of the tenses of the Spanish verb are very much like the Latin. Cf. the imperfect:

*Lat.*    **amābam**    **amābās**    **amābat**    **amābāmus**    **amābātis**    **amābant**

*Sp.*    **amaba**      **amabas**    **amaba**    **amábamos**    **amabais**    **amaban**

Observe that final *-m* and *-t* of the personal endings of Latin verbs disappear in Spanish.

The Spanish past definite is very similar to the Latin perfect.

8. The Latin perfect participle will suggest at once the past participle of the Spanish verb, no matter how irregular: **impressus**, *Sp. impreso*; **scriptus**, *Sp. escrito*.



FIG. 133. A BRONZE STAND

# HELPS FOR CLASSROOM CONVERSATION

690.

## Vocabulary

### I The Classroom

*blackboard, tabula (nigra)*

*desk, scrinium*

*door, iānuā*

*open, close the door, aperi, claude iānuam*

*seat, sella*

*window, fenestra*

*sit down, cōnside, -ite*

*chalk, crēta*

*pencil, stilus*

*pen, calamus*

*ink, atramentum*

*paper, charta*

*stand up, surge, -ite*

### II The Lesson

*page, pāgina*

*lesson, pēnsū*

*to speak, know Latin, loquī, scīre Latīnē*

*translate into English, Anglicē redde*

### III Grammar

*parts of speech, partēs ōrātiōnis :*

*nōmen, adiectivum, prōnōmen (persōnāle, relātivum,<sup>1</sup> etc.),*

*verbum, adverbium, praepositio, coniunctio, interiectio*

*case, cāsus : nōminātivus, genitivus, dativus, accūsātivus, ablātivus<sup>1</sup>*

*gender, genus : masculinum, fēmininum, neutrum*

*number, numerus : singulāris, plūrālis*

*person, persōna : prima, secunda, tertia*

*declension, dēclīnātiō ; to decline, dēclīnāre*

*tense, tempus : praesēns, imperfectum, futūrum, perfectum,*

*praeteritum perfectum, futūrum perfectum*

*mood, modus : indicātivus,<sup>1</sup> etc.*

*voice, vōx : actīva, passīva*

*conjugation, coniugātiō ; to conjugate, coniugāre*

*participle, participium*

*deponent, dēpōnēns*

### IV Miscellaneous

*good morning, salvē, -ēte*

*good bye, valē, -ēte*

*how are you? quid agis?*

*good! bene!*

*to-day, hodiē*

*yesterday, heri*

*to-morrow, crās*

*that's enough, satis est*

<sup>1</sup> Similarly other words whose English forms end in *-ive*.

## GAUDEAMUS IGITUR

Student Song

1. Gau-de - a - mus i - gi-tur, Iu - ve-nes dum  
 2. Vi - vat a - ca - de - mi - a, Vi - vant pro - fes -  
 3. Vi - vat et res pu - bli-ca Et qui il - lam

su - mus; Post iu-cun-dam iu-ven-tu - tem,  
 so - res, Vi - vat mem-brum quod-li - bet,  
 re - git; Vi - vat nos - tra ci - vi - tas;

Post mo-les - tam se-nec - tu - tem, Nos ha-be - bit  
 Vi - vant mem-bra quae-li - bet, Sem-per sint in  
 Vi - vat haec so - da - li - tas Quae nos huc col

hu - mus, Nos ha-be - bit hu - mus.  
 flo - re, Sem-per sint flo - re.  
 git, Quae nos huc col - le - git.

## SUPPLEMENTARY GRADED READINGS

### Viae Bonae (Lesson IV) \*

Viae Rōmānae erant <sup>1</sup> bonae. Viae Rōmānae magnam fāmam habēbant.<sup>2</sup> Ubi sunt malae <sup>3</sup> viae? Multae viae Americānae sunt malae, sed <sup>4</sup> America multās bonās viās parat. Novās viās probāmus. Ubi sunt bonae viae?

<sup>1</sup> were.

<sup>2</sup> had.

<sup>3</sup> bad.

<sup>4</sup> but.

### Rōma (Lesson VI)

Rōma primō <sup>1</sup> parva erat. Postea <sup>2</sup> magna et clāra rēgīna terrārum erat. Viae Rōmae erant longae. Cōpia aquae bonae erat magna. Nunc <sup>3</sup> fāma Rōmae magna est. Rōmam amāmus et ruīnās Rōmae saepe <sup>4</sup> spectāmus. Ubi est Rōma?

5

<sup>1</sup> at first.

<sup>2</sup> afterwards.

<sup>3</sup> now.

<sup>4</sup> often.

### Eurōpa (Lesson VII)

Ad Eurōpam nāvigābimus. Magnam pecūniam ad Eurōpam portābimus. Undās magnās spectābimus. Ad insulās clārās, Britanniam, Hiberniam, Siciliam, nāvigābimus. Galliam, Italiam, Germāniam, Hispāniam spectābimus. Nautae nāvem <sup>1</sup> parant.

5

<sup>1</sup> Accusative singular of *nāvis*.

\* These lesson numbers refer to the lessons in *Elementary Latin*. The selections here given are best taken up in connection with the lessons indicated.

Copyright, 1925, by The Macmillan Company.

**Gallia** (Lesson IX)

Cōpiae Rōmānae Galliam occupant et Gallī <sup>1</sup> fortūnās et familiās silvīs mandant. Sed memoria iniuriarum Galliam ad pugnam incitat. Gallī Rōmānīs <sup>2</sup> nūntiant:

“Terram nostram <sup>3</sup> occupātis et pugnīs vāstātis. Prae-  
5 dam magnam ad Italiam portātis. Sed pugnābimus et victōriīs vītā et pecūniam servābimus. Victōriās grātās Rōmae nōn nūntiābitis.”

Gallī pugnānt, sed multae et clārae sunt victōriae Rōmānae. Ubi est Gallia?

<sup>1</sup> the Gauls.

<sup>2</sup> to the Romans.

<sup>3</sup> our.

**Lingua Latīna** (Lesson XI)

Patriam amāmus et amābimus. Disciplinā fāmam patriae augēbimus. Lingua patriae nostrae nōn Latīna est. Sed linguā Latīnā scientiam nostrae linguae augēmus. Litterās Latīnās scribēmus <sup>1</sup> et nāvī <sup>2</sup> mandābimus. Nāvis litterās  
5 nostrās ad puerōs <sup>3</sup> quī <sup>4</sup> in Eurōpā habitant portābit. In Britannīā, in Galliā, in Germāniā, in multis terrīs magistrī linguam Latīnam docent.

<sup>1</sup> we shall write.

<sup>2</sup> to a ship.

<sup>3</sup> to the boys.

<sup>4</sup> who.

**Britannia** (Lesson XII)

Caesar ad magnam īnsulam Britanniam nāvigat et Britan-  
nōs <sup>1</sup> pugnīs terret. Victōriās litterīs Rōmae nūntiat. Sed in Britannīā nōn manet. Īnsulam videt, nōn occupat. Undae magnae cūrās Caesaris <sup>2</sup> augent. Ubi est Britannia?

<sup>1</sup> the Britons.

<sup>2</sup> of Caesar.

**Socius** (Lesson XIII)

Socius meus Mārcus in Altā Viā habitat. Carrum parvum et equum parvum habet. Equum incitat, et equus nōs <sup>1</sup>



ad silvam portat. Via plāna et longa est. In viā Mārcus equum mihi <sup>2</sup> mandat. In silvā manēbimus. Silva nōs nōn terret; silvam amāmus.

5

<sup>1</sup> us.<sup>2</sup> to me.

### Magister (Lesson XV)

Magister noster bonus est. Pueris bonis pecūniam dōnat. Puer bonus sum. Magister pucrōs dē agris et silvis, dē glōriā et fāmā patriae nostrae docet.

Carrum parvum, sed nōn equum magister habet. In carrō ad lūdum <sup>1</sup> venit.<sup>2</sup> Sine <sup>3</sup> equō? Sine equō. Magister <sup>5</sup> carrum nōn movet; carrus sē <sup>4</sup> movet.

Amīcus meus Paulus <sup>5</sup> magistrum nōn amat; magister Paulō pecūniam nōn dōnat. Sed Paulus pecūniam nōn meret. Malus est in lūdō; puellās terret.

<sup>1</sup> school.<sup>2</sup> he comes.<sup>3</sup> without.<sup>4</sup> itself.<sup>5</sup> Paulus, -ī, m., Paul.

### Clāra (Lesson XVI)

Puella Clāra <sup>1</sup> in magnā insulā habitat. Īnsula, patria Clārae, Britannia est. Pater Clārae magnum numerum servōrum habet. Multōs agrōs et equōs et carrōs habet. Clāra equūm parvū dōnat. Clāra servis pecūniam dōnat et grātiā servōrum meret.

5

Ā Britannīā Clāra ad Eurōpām nāvigābit. Spatium parvum est, sed Clāra magnās undās ad nauseam <sup>2</sup> spectābit. Rōmam vidēbit. Magister Clāram dē Eurōpā et Rōmā docet.

<sup>1</sup> Clāra, -ae, f., Clara.<sup>2</sup> to (the point of) disgust. See 54.

### Trōia (Lesson XVII)

Graeci et Trōiānī <sup>1</sup> ad Trōiam <sup>2</sup> pugnābant. Ubi est Trōia? Trōia in Asiā est. Annōs x pignant. Magnus est

numerus virōrum et sociōrum et servōrum. Tum Ulixēs,<sup>3</sup> clārus Graecus, cōnsilium novum docet. Graecī multam  
 5 māteriam ex silvā ad castra portant. Ex māteriā equum magnum et altum parant. In equum virī ascendunt.<sup>4</sup> In equō aliī litterās scribunt:<sup>5</sup> “Graecī cēdentēs<sup>6</sup> Minervae equum dōnant.” Tum equum ad Trōiam movent. Ad īnsulam parvam nāvigant. Trōiānī equum et castra dēserta<sup>7</sup>  
 10 Graecōrum vident. Equum vocant sacrum et equum in oppidum movent. Nocte<sup>8</sup> Graecī ab īsulā revertunt<sup>9</sup> et ūnus ex Graecīs<sup>10</sup> virōs signō ex equō ēvocat. Sociōs in oppidum vocant. Trōiam occupant et vāstant. Trōiānī pugnant sed vītā nōn servant. Victōria magna erat. Magnus erat numerus captivōrum, magna praeda.

<sup>1</sup> Trōiānī, -ōrum, *m.*, Trojans.

<sup>2</sup> Trōia, -ae, *f.*, Troy.

<sup>3</sup> Ulixēs, -is, *m.*, Ulysses (ū-līs'ēz).

<sup>4</sup> climb.

<sup>5</sup> write.

<sup>6</sup> departing.

<sup>7</sup> deserted.

<sup>8</sup> at night.

<sup>9</sup> return.

<sup>10</sup> one of the Greeks.

### Virginia et Vēra (Lesson XXI)

Virginia<sup>1</sup> et Vēra<sup>2</sup> sunt duae puellae quae<sup>3</sup> in oppidō nostrō habitant. Estne oppidum in Eurōpā? In Eurōpā nōn est, et puellae Eurōpaeae<sup>4</sup> nōn sunt. Oppidum in Americā est, et puellae Americānae sunt. Nōmen oppidō<sup>5</sup> Chicago  
 5 est.

Quot<sup>6</sup> litterās nōmen “Virginia” habet? Nōmen “Virginia” octō litterās habet; nōmen “Vēra” quattuor habet. Littera prīma ambōrum “V” est; littera ultima “a” est. Nōmen “Virginia” longum est; nōmen “Vēra” nōn longum  
 10 est. Puella Virginia parva est; Vēra magna est. Puella parva habet nōmen magnum; puella magna habet nōmen parvum. Alia<sup>7</sup> puella nōmen “Alta” habet, sed alta nōn est. Estne Clāra clāra?

<sup>1</sup> Virginia, -ae, *f.*, Virginia.

<sup>2</sup> Vēra, -ae, *f.*, Vera.

<sup>3</sup> who.

<sup>4</sup> Adjective.

<sup>5</sup> Possessive dative; translate as if it were oppidī.

<sup>6</sup> how many.

<sup>7</sup> another.

**Vir Quī Patriam Regit** (Lesson XXII)

Estne aequus vir quī<sup>1</sup> patriam nostram regit? Officium viri quī populum regit est patriam semper dēfendere et servāre, in bellō virōs ad pugnam ēvocāre. Bonīs virīs patriam mandāre dēbēmus. Bonōs virōs probāmus, malōs accūsāmus. Vir quī populum regit semper labōrat; vītā dūram 5 agit. Labōrāsne semper et vītā dūram agis?

Vir quī patriam regit in albā domō<sup>2</sup> habitat. In quō<sup>3</sup> oppidō habitat? Semperne ibi manet? Quattuor aut octō annōs ibi manet. Tum excēdit et alium virum ad Albam Domum<sup>2</sup> mittimus. Vidēbisne Albam Domum? Multī 10 puerī et puellae eam<sup>4</sup> spectant. Ūnus ex puerīs<sup>5</sup> fortasse<sup>6</sup> erit vir quī in Albā Domō habitābit. Fortasse<sup>6</sup> tū<sup>7</sup> eris ille<sup>8</sup> vir! Sī<sup>9</sup> labōrābis, fortasse<sup>6</sup> illud<sup>10</sup> praemium merēbis.

<sup>1</sup> *who.*<sup>2</sup> *white house.*<sup>3</sup> *what.*<sup>4</sup> *it.*<sup>5</sup> *one of the boys.*<sup>6</sup> *perhaps.*<sup>7</sup> *you.*<sup>8</sup> *that.*<sup>9</sup> *if.*<sup>10</sup> *that.***Rōma** (Lesson XXIII)

Quondam Rōma oppidum parvum erat. Ibi Rōmānī habitābant et ibi pugnābant. Victōriis magnīs patriam servābant et augēbant. Magna praemia Rōmānī accipiēbant, quod officium faciēbant et armīs patriam dēfendēbant. Multōs colōnōs in aliās terrās mittēbant. Aequī multās 5 terrās regēbant. Frūmentum ex aliīs terrīs in Italiam portābant. Ad Britanniam,<sup>d</sup> Hispāniam, Āfricam, Graeciam, Asiam nāvigābant. Nunc Rōma magna et pulchra est. Multī Americānī ad Italiam veniunt et viās pulchrās et templa et Forum Rōmae spectant. Mātūrābisne in Italiam 10 venire?

**Castra Rōmāna** (Lesson XXIV)

In multis locīs Galliae et Hispāniae et Britanniae vestīgia castrōrum Rōmānōrum invenīmus. Rōmānī castra in locīs altīs pōnēbant ubi aqua bona erat. Vāllō et fossā castra

mūniēbant. Vāllum erat altum et quattuor portās habēbat.

- 5 Quās <sup>1</sup> portās vigiliae semper dēfendēbant. Fossa erat alta sed aquam nōn continēbat.

Vidēmus verbum “castra” in nōminibus <sup>2</sup> multōrum oppidōrum Americānōrum — Lancaster, Worcester, Chester, et cētera. Memoriāne tenēs alia <sup>3</sup>?

<sup>1</sup> these.

<sup>2</sup> names.

<sup>3</sup> others.

### Cerēs et Prōserpina (Lesson XXV)

Cerēs erat dea frūmentī et agrōrum. Filia deae Prōserpina <sup>1</sup> erat. Dea et filia in clārā insulā Siciliā habitābant.

Quondam Prōserpina et aliae puellae in agrīs erant. Locum commodum inveniunt et in cō locō manent et flōrēs <sup>2</sup> legunt.

- 5 Ōtium grātum est. Plūtō,<sup>3</sup> deus Īnferōrum,<sup>4</sup> Prōserpinam videt et amat. Equōs incitat et ad locum accēdit ubi puellae sunt. Puellās terret. Prōserpina fugere mātūrat, sed Plūtō eam <sup>5</sup> capit, in carrō pōnit, ad Īnferōs dūcit.

- Cerēs nocte <sup>6</sup> ex agrīs venit. Filiam exspectat, tum vocat,  
10 sed Prōserpina nōn venīt. Magna est cūra deae. Ad multa loca, ad terminōs terrae Cerēs accēdit; in silvīs, in agrīs, in oppidīs multārum terrārum multōs virōs, puerōs, puellās videt. Semper filiam vocat sed nōn invenit.

- Quod Cerēs Prōserpinam nōn invenit, in agrīs nōn labōrat.  
15 Flōrēs nōn sunt, frūmentum in agrīs nōn est. Carrī ad oppida frūmentum nōn portant. Pretium frūmentī magnum est. Populus vītam dūram agit. Deam accūsāt. Multī virī dicunt:

- “Quid <sup>7</sup> agēmus? In agrīs labōrāmus sed frūmentum nōn  
20 habēmus. Deī nōn acqui sunt; officium nōn faciunt. Vītam nostram servāre dēbent.”

Iuppiter, quī deōs et virōs regit, iniūriās populī videt et deae agrōrum nūntiat:

- “Plūtō filiam tuam habet. Mercurium nūntium ad Īn-  
25 ferōs mittam. Mercurius filiam tuam ad tē <sup>8</sup> dūcet. Sed

nōn semper in terrā Prōserpina manēbit. Partem <sup>9</sup> annī in terrā, partem sub terrā agere cōgētur.”<sup>10</sup>

Mercurium ēvocat et ad Īnferōs mittit. Mercurius Prōserpinam in Siciliam dūcit et Cerēs filiam accipit. Prōserpina partem annī in terrā, partem sub terrā agit. Cum <sup>11</sup> <sup>30</sup> libera in terrā est, multōs flōrēs <sup>2</sup> et magnam cōpiam frūmentī vidēmus, quod Cerēs grāta in agrīs est. Sed cum Prōserpina ad Īnferōs excēdit, Cerēs trīstis <sup>12</sup> est et flōrēs <sup>2</sup> nōn sunt.

<sup>1</sup> Prōserpina, -ae, f., Proserpina (prō-sūr'pī-nā). <sup>2</sup> flowers.

<sup>3</sup> Plūtō, -ōnis, m., Pluto (plōō'tō). <sup>4</sup> those below, i.e. the shades in Hades. <sup>5</sup> her. <sup>6</sup> at night. <sup>7</sup> what. <sup>8</sup> you. <sup>9</sup> Accusative singular of pars. <sup>10</sup> Passive; she will be compelled. <sup>11</sup> whenever. <sup>12</sup> sad.

### Vita Antiqua (Lesson XXVII)

Poētae <sup>1</sup> multa <sup>2</sup> dē deīs virisque antīquīs nārrant. Multās fābulās dē clārīs Graecīs et Rōmānīs ā tuō magistrō audiēs et in librīs legēs. Fortasse ōlim ad Graeciam Italiamque nāvigābis et templa deōrum et clāra loca vidēbis dē quibus <sup>3</sup> poētae saepe scribunt. Tum grātum erit verba poētārum memoriā tenēre. Italia multās antīquās ruīnās <sup>1</sup> continet. Multa <sup>2</sup> dē vitā antīquōrum Graecōrum et Rōmānōrum nōscēs sī ad Italiam nāvigābis et ibi manēbis. Multī Americānī ex Eurōpā variās rēs <sup>4</sup> Rōmānās portant. Fortasse magister tuus rēs Rōmānās habet et puerīs puellisque <sup>10</sup> mōnstrābit. Librī tuī Latīnī multās novās fābulās dē clārīs Rōmānīs continēbunt.

<sup>1</sup> Use the English derivative. <sup>2</sup> many things. <sup>3</sup> which. <sup>4</sup> things.

### Aenēās (Lesson XXVIII)

Graeci Trōiam occupant. Filiās Priamī,<sup>1</sup> quī Trōiam regēbat, terrent et ad castra Graeca trahunt. Priamum et filium occidunt.

Aenēās <sup>2</sup> Trōiānus <sup>3</sup> clāmōrem <sup>4</sup> audit. Arma capit et cum  
 5 multis viris oppidum dēfendere mātūrat. Pugnāre incipit,  
 sed Venus dea, māter Aenēae, <sup>5</sup> ad eum <sup>6</sup> in mediō oppidō  
 venit et verba facit:

“Familiam tuam memoriā tenēre dēbēs. Nōne filium  
 tuum amās? Cūr nōn vitam fili servāre mātūrās? Cūm  
 10 familiā et amīcis ex oppidō fugere dēbēs et ad aliās terrās  
 nāvigāre. Novam patriam inveniēs, novum oppidum mūniēs.  
 Glōria novae patriae magna erit. Deī Trōiam vāstābunt.  
 Trōiānōs <sup>7</sup> poenā afficient.”

Cōnsilium nōn grātum sed bonum Aenēās <sup>2</sup> audit et probat.  
 15 Ad familiam virōs redūcit et amīcōs convocat. Patrem <sup>8</sup>  
 portat et filium parvum dūcit. Cūm multis servīs et sociīs  
 ex oppidō fugit. Singulī in ūnum locum conveniunt, sed  
 Creusam <sup>9</sup> uxōrem <sup>4</sup> Aenēās nōn invenit. Ibi castra pōnunt.  
 Māteriam ex silvā portant et nāvēs <sup>10</sup> parant. In nāvēs  
 20 magnam cōpiam frūmentī portant. Tum undīs nāvēs  
 mandant et migrant. Ad multās insulās et terrās novās  
 veniunt sed patriam novam nōn inveniunt. Vitam dūram  
 agunt. Semper mala est fortūna. Causa est ira Iūnōnis, <sup>11</sup>  
 rēgīnae deōrum.

25 In insulā Crētā <sup>12</sup> castra pōnunt. Tum in somnō Aenēās  
 Penātēs videt et audit:

“Crēta patria vestra nōn erit. Excēdere dēbētis. Locus  
 est quem <sup>13</sup> Graeci Hesperiam, <sup>14</sup> aliī Italianam vocant. Terra  
 antiqua est. Ibi patria vestra erit. Ibi in ōtiō et concordiā  
 30 habitābitis et magnum oppidum habēbitis.”

Ita Trōiānī <sup>7</sup> cōnsilium novum capiunt. Castra movent et  
 ad Italianam nāvigant. Sed Iūnō iram nōn dēpōnit.

<sup>1</sup> Priamus, -ī, *m.*, Priam (prī'ām).

<sup>2</sup> Aenēās, -ae, *m.*, Aeneas (ā-nē'ās).

<sup>3</sup> Trōiānus, -a, -um, Trojan.

<sup>4</sup> Accusative singular. <sup>5</sup> Genitive singular.

<sup>6</sup> *him.*

<sup>7</sup> Trojans.

<sup>8</sup> Accusative singular of pater.

<sup>9</sup> Creusa, -ae, *f.*, Creusa (krē-ū'sā).

<sup>10</sup> Accusative plural of nāvis.

<sup>11</sup> of Juno.

<sup>12</sup> Crēta, -ae, *f.*, Crete.

<sup>13</sup> Accusative; which.

<sup>14</sup> Hesperia, -ae, *f.*, Hesperia.



## Ad Italiam (Lesson XXXI)

In magnīs undīs nāvēs <sup>1</sup> Trōiānōrum volvuntur. Magnum est periculum. Sed ad īnsulam parvam Trōiānī veniunt et ex undīs servantur. In īnsulā nōn manent. Ad Actium <sup>2</sup> nāvīgant et ibi inveniunt Helenum <sup>3</sup> Trōiānum, quī terram regēbat. Helenus verba facit:

“Longa est via ad Italiam, ad quam <sup>4</sup> accēdere parātis. Nōn dēbētis accēdere ad terrās quae <sup>5</sup> proximae <sup>6</sup> nostrīs terrīs sunt, quod ibi Graeci malī habitant. Ad Siciliam accēdere et ab Siciliā ad Italiam nāvīgāre dēbētis. Dūrum est semper nāvīgāre, sed Fāta viam invenient.”

Verba Helenī grāta sunt, et Aenēās <sup>7</sup> Helenō grātiās agit. Tum sociōs incitat. Castra moventur nāvēsque <sup>1</sup> undīs committuntur. “Italiam, Italiam videō!” clāmat nauta et mōnstrat terram. In terrā equī videntur. “Signum bellī sunt equī,” dicit Anchīsēs; <sup>8</sup> “equīs bellum geritur.” Nōn ibi <sup>15</sup> manent sed ad Siciliam nāvīgant. Aetna cōs <sup>9</sup> terret et ab Siciliā nāvīgant.

Tum Iūnō in patriam ventōrum venit et ad Aeolum, <sup>10</sup> quī ventōs regit et continet, accēdit. Verba facit:

“Trōiānī malī in undīs nāvīgant et in Italiam Penātēs <sup>20</sup> portant. Nōn aequum est. Sī <sup>11</sup> ventōs dūrōs in nāvēs <sup>12</sup> Trōiānōrum mittēs, magnam grātiām habēbō et magna praemia tibi <sup>13</sup> dōnābō.”

Aeolus ventōs incitat et in nāvēs mittere mātūrat. Al-tae undae Trōiānōs terrent. Virī et arma in undīs sunt. <sup>25</sup> Tum Neptūnus, deus undārum, ventōs audit et ad locum venit ubi nāvēs <sup>1</sup> sunt. Īra Neptūnī magna est. Ventōs accūsāt. Ventī fugere mātūrant. Trōiānī ad terram veniunt et servantur. In terram nāvēs <sup>1</sup> trahuntur. Ex nāvibus <sup>14</sup> frūmentum portātur. Locus commodus invenitur et <sup>30</sup> castra pōnuntur. Aqua et māteria ex silvā portantur. Sed in quā <sup>15</sup> terrā sunt? Nōn sciunt. <sup>16</sup>



<sup>1</sup> Nominative plural.

<sup>2</sup> Actium, -ī, *n.*, Actium (āk'shī-ŭm), a promontory in Epirus, on the west coast of Greece.

<sup>3</sup> Helenus, -ī, *m.*, Helenus (hĕl'ĕ-nŭs). <sup>4</sup> *which.*

<sup>5</sup> Nominative plural feminine: *which.*

<sup>6</sup> *nearest to.*

<sup>7</sup> *Aeneas*

<sup>8</sup> Anchīsēs, -ae, *m.*, Anchises (ān-kī'sēz), father of Aeneas.

<sup>9</sup> *them.* <sup>10</sup> Aeolus, -ī, *m.*, Aeolus (ē'ō-lŭs).

<sup>11</sup> *if.* <sup>12</sup> Accusative plural. <sup>13</sup> *to you.*

<sup>14</sup> Ablative plural. <sup>15</sup> *what.* <sup>16</sup> *know.*

### Aenēās in Āfricā Est (Lesson XXXII)

Aenēās sociōs in locum commodum convocat et verba facit:

“Dūra est vīta nostra. Multa sunt mala nostra. In terrā nōn nōtā sumus. Sed deī nōs <sup>1</sup> servābunt. Deīs <sup>2</sup> cōfidere dēbētis. Nōn semper perpetuīs cūrīs afficiēmur.

<sup>5</sup> Firmum animum habēre dēbētis. Italia nostra erit. Ibi et terminus malōrum nostrōrum et ōtium grātum invenientur. Ibi patria erit et nova Trōia.”

Tum Aenēās cum sociō ūnō ex castrīs excēdit. Loca explorāre mātūrat. Venus māter cum <sup>3</sup> videt et accēdit.

<sup>10</sup> Nōmen terrae et oppidī, quod <sup>4</sup> appellātur Carthāgō et in Āfricā est, et nōmen rēgīnae, quae <sup>5</sup> est Dīdō, <sup>6</sup> Aenēae <sup>7</sup> Venus nūntiat. Via ā deā Aenēae mōnstrātur. Aenēās prōcēdit et magnum oppidum videt. In mediō oppidō templum Iūnōnis <sup>8</sup> est. Ad templum rēgīna Dīdō cum multis sociīs <sup>15</sup> venit. Ibi sunt reliquī Trōiānī quōs <sup>9</sup> undae ab Aeneā <sup>10</sup> sēparāverant. <sup>11</sup> Hī <sup>12</sup> servantur et ad oppidum veniunt.

Dīdō mala Trōiānōrum audit et dīcit:

“Auxiliō meō vel in Italiam vel in Siciliam veniētis, amīcī. Et pecūniam et nāvēs <sup>13</sup> dōnābō. Sed sī in nostrā <sup>20</sup> patriā manēre grātum est, oppidum nostrum vestrum est. Trōiānōs in amīcī<sup>14</sup>iam et concordiam accipiēmus.”

Tum magna cēna ā rēgīnā parātur. Aenēās nūntium ad castra mittit, quī Iūlō, <sup>14</sup> filiō Aenēae, dīcit:

“Ad oppidum venīre dēbēs et dōna portāre. Pater tē <sup>15</sup> <sup>25</sup> exspectat.”

Sed in locō Iūli Venus deum Amōrem <sup>16</sup> mittit. Sed et Aenēās et reliquī Trōiānī deum <sup>17</sup> crēdunt esse Iūlum. Tum Amor rēginam afficit, et Didō Aenēam amāre incipit.

<sup>1</sup> *us.*      <sup>2</sup> Dative with cōfidere.      <sup>3</sup> *him.*      <sup>4</sup> *which.*      <sup>5</sup> *who.*

<sup>6</sup> Didō, -ōnis, *f.*, Dido (dī'dō).

<sup>7</sup> Dative.

<sup>8</sup> *of Juno.*

<sup>9</sup> *whom.*

<sup>10</sup> Ablative.

<sup>11</sup> Use the English derivative in the past perfect tense (*had* —).

<sup>12</sup> *these.*

<sup>13</sup> Accusative plural.

<sup>14</sup> Iūlus, -ī, *m.*, Iulus (ī-ū'lūs).

<sup>15</sup> *you.*

<sup>16</sup> *Love*, a Roman god.

<sup>17</sup> *deum . . . Iūlum: believe the god to be Iulus.*

### Aenēās et Didō (Lesson XXXIII)

Ad Annam <sup>1</sup> sorōrem <sup>2</sup> Didō properāvit:

"Anna soror," dicit, "animus meus periculis terrētur; Aenēam amō. Quid <sup>3</sup> agam?"

Anna respondet:

"Aenēās est bonus vir. Prō Trōiā pugnāvit; nunc prō <sup>5</sup> nostrā patriā pugnābit. Populī finitimī nōn sunt amīcī. Proelium committere parant. Terminī nostrī ab Aenēā dēfenduntur."

Aenēās in Āfricā cum rēginā manet. Didō Trōiānum per oppidum dūcit et eī <sup>4</sup> cōpiās oppidumque mōnstrat. 10

Tum Iuppiter Mercurium nūntium ad Aenēam mīsīt.

"Nōn aequum est in hōc locō manēre," Mercurius dicit.

"Verba deī memoriā nōn tenēs; nunc in Italiam cum sociīs tuis properāre dēbēs, ubi filius tuus reget. Ibi ōtium habēbis neque labōrābis. Annum in hōc locō ēgistī. Tardus in pa- <sup>15</sup> triam novam veniēs."

Aenēās sociōs convocāvit. Sociī arma parāvērunt et frūmentum in nāvēs <sup>5</sup> portāvērunt. Anna cōnsilia Trōiānōrum rēginae nūntiāvit. Didō Aenēam verbis accūsāvit:

"Cūr fugis? Dūrus es; iniūriam facis. Magnum est <sup>20</sup> periculum nostrum. Ā populīs finitimīs bellum gerētur, agrī nostrī vāstābuntur, oppidum occupābitur. Prō patriā meā et tuā pugnāre dēbēs."

Aenēās respondet:

- 25 “Deum Mercurium vīdī. Officium meum est ad Italiam nāvīgāre. Dūrum est, sed deus imperat.”

Aenēās excessit et ad nāvēs vēnit. Socii convēnērunt et nāvēs <sup>5</sup> in aquam trāxērunt. Tum nāvēs <sup>5</sup> undīs ventisque commīsērunt. Dīdō nāvēs vīdit et sē <sup>6</sup> interfēcīt.<sup>7</sup>

- 30 Trōiānī ad Italiam migrāvērunt et patriam novam invēnērunt. Posterī <sup>8</sup> Trōiānōrum Rōmam cōstituērunt.<sup>9</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Anna, -ae, f., Anna.

<sup>2</sup> Accusative: *sister*.

<sup>3</sup> *what*.

<sup>4</sup> *to him*.

<sup>5</sup> Accusative plural.

<sup>6</sup> *herself*.

<sup>7</sup> *killed*.

<sup>8</sup> *descendants*.

<sup>9</sup> *founded*.

### Grātia (Lesson XXXIV)

Tenēsne memoriā puerum quem <sup>1</sup> in viā vīdistī? Huic <sup>2</sup> grātiā habēre dēbēmus, quod amīcum nostrum ex aquā trāxit et vītā servāvit. Magnae undae amīcum nostrum terrēbant: auxilium aberat et amīcus noster vītā āmittēbat.

- 5 Sed puer eum <sup>3</sup> vīdit et servāvit. Reliqui spectābant et nihil <sup>4</sup> faciēbant. Amīcus noster fuit grātus et magnum praemium puerō dōnāvit. Nōmen puerī nōn nōvī. Filius agricolae est sed nōn semper in agrīs fuit. In oppidō finitīmō habitābat.

<sup>1</sup> *whom*.

<sup>2</sup> *to him*.

<sup>3</sup> *him*.

<sup>4</sup> *nothing*.

### Aenēās et Latīnus (Lesson XXXV)

Aenēās ad Italiam nunc vēnerat. Finitimam terram ubi Trōiānī castra posuerant bonus Latīnus <sup>1</sup> regēbat. Lāvīnia,<sup>2</sup> filia Latīnī, ā Turnō <sup>3</sup> amābātur sed deī verbīs signisque mātirimōnium nōn probāverant.

- 5 “Vir veniet quī <sup>4</sup> Lāvīniam in mātirimōnium ducet. Populus novus terram Latīnī reget.” Haec <sup>5</sup> fuērunt verba deōrum, et Latīnus audīvit.

Aenēās nūntiōs ad portās oppidī Latīnī dīmīsīt quī dīxērunt:

“*Properāmus concordiam amīcitiamque efficere. Bellum 10  
nōn gerēmus in populum Latīnī.*”

Latīnus respondit:

“*Sī Aenēās nōn erit inimīcus, tum nostra amīcitia erit  
perpetua.*”

Tum Latīnus nūntiōs cum equīs integrīs et dōnīs com- 15  
modīs ad castra Trōiāna dīmīsīt. Trōiānī amīcitiam con-  
cordiamque effēcerant — Aenēās et Latīnus nunc erant  
amīcī sociīque.

<sup>1</sup> *Latīnus*, -ī, *m.*, Latinus (lā-tī'nŭs).

<sup>2</sup> *Lāvīnia*, -ae, *f.*, Lavinia (lā-vīn'ī-ā).

<sup>3</sup> *Turnus*, -ī, *m.*, Turnus, king of the Rutuli.

<sup>4</sup> *who*.

<sup>5</sup> *these*.

### Aenēās et Turnus (Lesson XXXVII)

Trōia ā Graecīs capta erat et Aenēās cum paucīs Trōiānīs  
ad Italiam vēnerat. Sed Iūnō inimīca remānsit et multōs  
populōs Itāliae contrā Aenēam incitāvit. Ā Turnō Lāvīnia,  
filia rēgis <sup>1</sup> Latīnī, amābātur sed Aenēae <sup>2</sup> dōnāta erat.  
Turnus irā magnā afficiēbātur et bellum gerere properāvit. 5  
Sed Fāta causam Trōiānōrum probāverant. Aenēās auxi-  
lium ā Graecīs quī in Italiā habitābant accēpit, quod erant  
inimīcī Turnō. Per multōs diēs bellum gerēbant, et multa  
ēgregia exempla virtūtis <sup>3</sup> in proeliīs clārīs prōposita sunt.

Tandem Turnus sōlus Aenēam ad pugnam ēvocāvit. In 10  
locō commodō ad portās oppidī pugnāvērunt. Nōn longa  
fuit pugna, quod Venus, māter Aenēae, filiō ēgregia arma  
dōnāverat, quae <sup>4</sup> Vulcānus fēcerat. Fāta iusserant auxi-  
lium ad Turnum nōn mitti <sup>5</sup>; itaque Iūnō aberat. Turnus  
vītā amīsīt et cōpiae Turnī discessērunt. Colōnia <sup>6</sup> ab 15  
Aenēā cōstitutā est quae “*Lāvīnium*” <sup>7</sup> prō Lāvīniā appel-  
lāta est.

<sup>1</sup> Genitive singular of *rēx*.

<sup>2</sup> Dative.

<sup>3</sup> *of courage*.

<sup>4</sup> *which*.

<sup>5</sup> *to be sent*.

<sup>6</sup> Use the English derivative.

<sup>7</sup> *Lāvīnium*, -ī, *n.*, Lavinium (lā-vīn'ī-ŭm).

## Niobē (Lesson XXXVIII)

Niobē,<sup>1</sup> rēgīna superba, in Graeciā habitābat. Avus erat Iuppiter, quī deōs virōsque regēbat, et hoc <sup>2</sup> superbiam augēbat. Niobē erat etiam superba quod septem filiōs et septem filiās habēbat.

5 Apollō deus erat filius Lātōnae,<sup>3</sup> et Diāna erat filia. Aliōs liberōs Lātōna nōn habēbat.

Sacra <sup>4</sup> Lātōnae ā populō parābantur. Superba Niobē adfuit et rogāvit:

“Cūr sacra mātī <sup>5</sup> duōrum liberōrum parātis? Etiam  
10 Niobē dea est; xiv, nōn duōs, liberōs habet. Lātōna glōriam nōn meret — Niobē esse prīma dēbet.”

Superba verba rēgīnae Lātōna audīvit. Filium vocāvit et eum <sup>6</sup> septem filiōs Niobae interficere iussit. Niobē septem filiōs nunc amiserat, tamen remānsit superba. Itaque Lātōna iussit etiam filiās septem ā Diānā interficī. Singulae  
15 filiae ē vitā discesserunt et Niobē in saxum dūrum mūtāta est. Poenā magnā et aequā affecta erat.

<sup>1</sup> Niobē (or -ba), -ae, f., Niobe (nī'ō-bē), queen of Thebes.

<sup>2</sup> this.

<sup>3</sup> Lātōna, -ae, f., Latona (lā-tō'nā), mother of Apollo and Diana.

<sup>4</sup> sacred rites.

<sup>5</sup> for the mother.

<sup>6</sup> him (subject of interficere).

## Lūdī Rōmānī et Americānī (Lesson XL)

Lūdī <sup>1</sup> Rōmānī nostrīs lūdīs similēs <sup>2</sup> nōn erant. In lūdīs Rōmānīs erant nullae (nōn erant) puellae, in nostrīs sunt multae; puerī Rōmānī ad lūdum ā servīs dūcēbantur, nōs <sup>3</sup> solī venimus; magistrī Rōmānī servī erant, nostrī liberī  
5 sunt; lingua lūdōrum Rōmānōrum erat Latīna, lingua lūdōrum nostrōrum est Anglica.<sup>4</sup> Diligentiā et studiō puerī Rōmānī praemia merēbant, nunc puerī Americānī “A” merent. Tardī discipulī Rōmānī poenā afficiēbantur, nunc poena nōn similis est; sed tardī discipulī poenā semper affici-

untur. Ob multās causās vīta discipulōrum nostrōrum 10  
grāta est, sed etiam puerī Rōmānī lūdum librōsque amābant.

<sup>1</sup> *schools.*<sup>2</sup> *similar to.*<sup>3</sup> *we.*<sup>4</sup> *Anglicus, -a, -um, English.*

### Templa Deōrum (Lesson XLI)

Silvae erant prīma templa deōrum. Primō <sup>1</sup> virī in agrīs  
habitābant et Nātūram colēbant. Postea virī quī in oppidis  
habitābant aedificia pulchra in altīs locīs ad glōriam deōrum  
pōnēbant. Templa saepe in altīs locīs posita sunt quod  
haec <sup>2</sup> loca finitima caelō erant, in quō deī habitābant. 5

“Nātūra est pulchra,” hominēs <sup>3</sup> dīxērunt. “Etiam loca  
sacra ad quae deī veniunt et in quibus verba nostra audiunt  
esse pulchra dēbent.”

Itaque Graeci et Rōmānī magna et pulchra templa faciē-  
bant quae erant grāta deīs. Statua deī aut deae semper in 10  
templō pōnēbātur.

In Graeciā et Italiā ruinae <sup>4</sup> templōrum multōrum et  
pulchrōrum videntur. Templum clārum Athēnae, <sup>5</sup> quod  
Parthenōn <sup>6</sup> appellātur, ob fōrmam pulchram semper laudā-  
tum est. Nōne vidistī multās pictūrās <sup>4</sup> templōrum anti- 15  
quōrum? Pictūrae templōrum et Graecōrum et Rōmānōrum  
in multis libris inveniuntur.

In templis virī auxilium deōrum petēbant. Virī malī  
quōrum vitae in periculō erant saepe ad templa fugiēbant,  
quod neque ex templis removēbantur neque ibi poenā 20  
afficiēbantur.

<sup>1</sup> *at first.*<sup>2</sup> *these.*<sup>3</sup> *men.*<sup>4</sup> Use the English derivative.<sup>5</sup> *Athēna, -ae, f., Athena (ā-thē'nā), Greek goddess of wisdom.*<sup>6</sup> *Parthenōn, -ōnis, m., the Parthenon (pär'thē-nōn), celebrated temple of Athena at Athens.*

### Colossēum (Lesson XLII)

Lūdōs et pompās populus Rōmānus semper amābat. In  
Italiā, Āfricā, Galliā inveniuntur theātra <sup>1</sup> et amphitheātra <sup>1</sup>



- Rōmānōrum, in quibus lūdī etiam nunc habentur. Vidistīne pictūrās <sup>1</sup> Colossēi <sup>2</sup> Rōmāni?
- 5 Captīvī et servī in arēnā pugnāre cōgēbantur. Populus Rōmānus studium lūdōrum numquam intermīsīt. Multī captīvī cum magnō animō pugnābant et libertātem <sup>1</sup> obtinēbant. Multī malī virī etiam prō vitā pugnābant et poenam in arēnā dabant.
- 10 Ōlim duo gladiātōrēs <sup>1</sup> in arēnā Rōmānā pugnābant. Tum inter gladiātōrēs vēnit vir bonus aequusque, quī dixit: <sup>3</sup> “Cūr pugnātis? Nōn dēbētis pugnāre; nam estis amīcī.” Gladiātōrēs verbīs nōn permōtī sunt sed virum bonum interfēcērunt.<sup>4</sup> Servī virum ex arēnā trahere incipiēbant. Tum
- 15 populus irā magnā incitātus est, quod vir erat Tēlemachus,<sup>5</sup> quī amīcus pauperibus <sup>6</sup> semper fuerat. Rōmānī magnō dolōre <sup>7</sup> affectī sunt. Numquam postea gladiātōrēs in Colossēo pugnāvērunt.

<sup>1</sup> Translate by the English derivative.

<sup>2</sup> Colossēum, -ī, *n.*, the Colosseum (kōl'ō-sē'ūm), a huge building at Rome where games, combats, and pageants were held.

<sup>3</sup> said. <sup>4</sup> killed.

<sup>5</sup> Tēlemachus, -ī, *m.*, Telemachus (tē-lēm'ā-kūs).

<sup>6</sup> to the poor. <sup>7</sup> grief.

### Vērus Rōmānus (Lesson XLIII)

- Audivistīne dē Dentātō?<sup>1</sup> “Quis fuit et quid fēcīt?” rogās. Dentātus fuit clārus Rōmānus quī multa proelia fēcīt et inimīca castra oppidaque cēpit. Modus eius <sup>2</sup> vitae et ab amīcīs et ab inimīcīs probābātur et laudābātur, quod <sup>3</sup>
- 5 Rōmānus bonus erat. Cum <sup>4</sup> officiīs pūblicīs nōn prohibēbātur,<sup>5</sup> agricola erat et labōrābat in agrīs.
- Samnītēs,<sup>6</sup> quōs Dentātus saepe superāverat, magnam pecūniam ad clārum virum mīsērunt. “Haec <sup>7</sup> pecūnia est tua. Auxilium tuum et amīcitiā petimus.” Dentātus
- 10 respondit: “Vestrum aurum et praemia mē <sup>8</sup> nōn temptant.



Nōn grātum est vērō Rōmānō habēre pecūniam sed superāre eōs <sup>9</sup> quī aurum rēgnumque habent."

<sup>1</sup> Dentātus, -ī, *m.*, Dentatus (dēn-tā'tūs).

<sup>2</sup> *his.*

<sup>3</sup> *because.*

<sup>4</sup> *whenever.*

<sup>5</sup> *prevented.*

<sup>6</sup> Samnitēs, -ium, *m.*, the Samnites (sām'nītz).

<sup>7</sup> *this.*

<sup>8</sup> *me.*

<sup>9</sup> *those.*

### Pūblius Mārcō Sal.<sup>1</sup> (Lesson XLIV)

Sī valēs, bene est; ego valeō. Magnō studiō lēgī tuās litterās quās cum cūrā scripserās et plicāverās.

Rogās dē Galliā. Vīta nostra nōn dūra est. Multī captīvī in castrīs sunt. Caesar multās pugnās iam pugnāvit et multa oppida cēpit et mox erit dominus Galliae. Tum cōpiās nostrās trāns Rhēnum dūcet et Germānōs terrēbit. Sententia eius <sup>2</sup> est: "Veniō, videō, vincō!" Magnus et clārus vir est. Fortasse in Britanniam prōcēdēmus, quae est magna insula.

Quid Quīntus noster agit? Quae nova officia suscēpit? Cūr nōn scripsit? Tuum respōnsum cum studiō expectābō. 10 Valē!<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> For *salūtem dicit*: *Publius pays his respects to Marcus*, the usual form of greeting in a letter.

<sup>2</sup> *his.*

<sup>3</sup> *farewell!*

### Colōnī (Lesson XLVI)

Puerīs et puellīs Americānī "colōnī" nōtī sunt. Colōnī ē Britannīā ad Americam vērunt et in Americā habitāverunt. Patriam novam petiverunt et invenerunt. Etiam puerīs puellisque Rōmānīs "colōnī" nōtī erant. Rōmānī oppida occupāta et agrōs captōs virīs Rōmānīs dabant. 5 Multīs Rōmānīs agrī nōn grātī erant; pugnās amābant. Sed multī in agrīs habitābant.

Multī virī quī in oppidīs habitāverant captīvī et servī colōnōrum malōrum factī labōrāre cōgēbantur. Ōtium

10 habere nōn poterant. Alii liberī erant et amicī colōnōrum erant.

Cōpia ē Rōmānīs in Britanniam trānsportātae sunt, in quā multa bella gesta sunt. Per colōnōs in Britanniam trāductōs lingua Latīna Britannīs data est. Rōmānī oppida in  
 15 Britanniā mūnīverunt — Londinium, Eborācum, Lindum; nunc appellantur London, York, Lincoln. Vāllā fēcērunt, viās mūnīverunt. Britannia facta est prōvincia Rōmāna. Ruīnae<sup>1</sup> Rōmānae etiam nunc vidērī possunt. Cui nōn grātum est ad Britanniam nāvigāre et ibi ruīnās Rōmānās  
 20 vidēre?

<sup>1</sup> Translate by the English derivative.

### Mārcus Pūbliō Sal. (Lesson XLVII)

Accēpī tuās litterās scrīptās in Galliā et statim respondēbō, quod multa nova sunt. Quid putās? Quīntus noster filiam Rūfī<sup>1</sup> in mātirimōnium dūxit! Tenēsne memoriā eam? <sup>2</sup> Pulchra puella est, ā multīs, amāta. Familia clāra est.  
 5 Fortūna Quīntī bona est, sed Quīntus meret bonam fortūnam.

Scrīpsistī dē Caesaris<sup>3</sup> victōriīs. Cum magnō studiō lēgi tuās litterās, quod Gallia semper fuit terra nova et nōn nōta mihi.<sup>4</sup> Paucī nūntiī dē Galliā vērērunt et paucae victōriae  
 10 nūntiātae sunt. Caesar victōriīs suis glōriam et fāmam armōrum Rōmānōrum augēbit. Nōn iam timēbimus Gallos in fugam datōs. Alpēs nunc Rōmam ā periculō dēfendunt. Galli territī nōn prōcēdent trāns Alpēs.

Caesar librum “Dē Bellō Gallicō” scrībere dēbet. Si liber  
 15 ab eō<sup>5</sup> scrībētur, ā multīs legētur; etiam post multōs annōs cum cūrā et diligentiā legētur.

Litterae tuae nōn longae erant. Cūr longās nōn scrībīs? Multa nova vidistī et vidēbis. Valē!<sup>6</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Rūfus, -ī, m., Rufus. <sup>2</sup> her. <sup>3</sup> Genitive singular. <sup>4</sup> to me. <sup>5</sup> him. <sup>6</sup> farewell.

## Ulixēs (Lesson XLIX)

Ulixēs,<sup>1</sup> dux Graecus quī in bellō Trōiānō pugnāverat, post bellum ad Ithacam,<sup>2</sup> in quā insulā habitāverat, properāvit. Sed multa dūra mala sustinuit. Decem annōs in multis terrīs ēgit. Ventīs semper ab aliō locō ad alium āctus est. Semper salūtem petiuit neque invēnit.

5

Ā Trōiā cum multis sociīs Ulixēs nāvigāvit. Ad terrās Lōtophagōrum<sup>3</sup> accessit. Paucī militēs Graecī lōtum ēdērunt<sup>4</sup> et amāvērunt; patriam sociōsque nōn iam memoriā tenuērunt. Sed Ulixēs militēs ad nāvēs redūxit.

Tum ad Siciliam ventīs āctus est. In Siciliā habitābant<sup>5</sup> Cyclōpēs,<sup>6</sup> hominēs altī et dūrī quī singulōs oculōs<sup>7</sup> habēbant. Ulixēs cum paucīs hominibus in hōc<sup>8</sup> locō frūmentum petiuit. Magnam spēluncam invēnit in quā multum frūmentum fuit. Tum vēnit Cyclōps quī appellātus est Polyphēmus.<sup>9</sup> Ovēs in spēluncam ēgit. Polyphēmus Graecōs vidit et dīxit:<sup>10</sup> 15  
“Ā quō locō venītis? Quī estis? Quid petitis?” Ulixēs respondit: “Graecī sumus. Nēmō<sup>11</sup> appellor. Auxilium tuum petimus.”

Polyphēmus duōs hominēs cēpit et ēdit. Graecī territī sunt. Tum Polyphēmus somnum cēpit. Graecī sude<sup>12</sup> 20  
oculum Polyphēmi perfōdērunt, quī clāmāvit et sociōs convocāvit. “Quid est?” rogant. “Quis tē<sup>13</sup> vulnerāvit?” Polyphēmus respondet: “Nēmō mē<sup>14</sup> vulnerāvit.” Itaque reliquī Cyclōpēs discessērunt. Polyphēmus Graecōs petiuit sed nōn invēnit quod sub ovibus<sup>15</sup> ligātī ex spēluncā exces- 25  
sērunt. Ad nāvēs properāvērunt et salūtem invēnērunt.

<sup>1</sup> *Ulysses.*<sup>2</sup> *Ithaca, -ae, f., Ithaca (īth'á-ká).*<sup>3</sup> *Lōtophagī, -ōrum, m., lotus-eaters.*<sup>4</sup> *ate.*<sup>5</sup> *Cyclōps, -ōpis (plur., Cyclōpēs, -um), m., the Cyclopes (sī-klō'pēz), or one-eyed giants.*<sup>6</sup> *one eye apiece.*<sup>7</sup> *this.*<sup>8</sup> *Polyphēmus, -ī, m., Polyphemus (pol'y-fē'mūs).*<sup>9</sup> *No-man.*<sup>10</sup> *with a stake.*<sup>11</sup> *you.*<sup>12</sup> *me.*<sup>13</sup> *Ablative plural.*

## Circē (Lesson L)

Tum Ulixēs ad rēgnum Aeolī, dominī ventōrum, nāvigāvit, quī Ulixī<sup>1</sup> ventōs malōs in saccō ligātōs dedit et dixit:

“Sī malōs ventōs in saccō continēbis, nōn iam ventīs impediēris et ad patriam tuam veniēs.”

- 5 Itaque Ulixēs grātō animō rēgem Aeolum reliquit. Multōs diēs<sup>2</sup> Graeci nāvigāvērunt, ūnō bonō ventō āctī, reliquīs ligātīs. Iam Ithacam cernunt. Sed nautae dē saccō cūrā affectī sunt quod dē ventīs quī in saccō erant nihil audiverant. “Praemia et pecūnia in saccō sunt,” nauta dixit.
- 10 “Ulixēs nautīs quī mala sustinuērunt pecūniam dare dēbet.” Itaque saccum aperuērunt. Ventī tempestātem incitāvērunt quā Graeci ad rēgnum Aeolī redāctī sunt. Sed nunc Acolus auxilium nōn dat. Ūnam nāvem Graeci nunc habent, reliquīs āmissīs.

- 15 Nunc ad īnsulam veniunt quam Circē<sup>3</sup> pulchra regēbat. Ulixēs xx hominēs ad rēginam mīsīt. Hī<sup>4</sup> pācem auxiliumque petīvērunt. Ab Eurylochō<sup>5</sup> duce per silvam ad rēginam ductī sunt, quae eōs<sup>6</sup> in suēs<sup>7</sup> vertit. Eurylochos sōlus in suem nōn versus ad nāvem fūgit et Ulixī<sup>1</sup> omnia<sup>8</sup>
- 20 nūntiāvit. Ulixēs commōtus cum reliquīs auxilium sociīs dare mātūrāvit. In viā Mercurium deum vīsum cōnsuluit. Mercurius eum<sup>9</sup> monuit et herbam eī<sup>10</sup> dedit. “Hāc<sup>11</sup> herbā,” inquit, “vītā tuā servāre et sociōs tuōs liberāre poteris.” Ulixēs prōcessit. Ubi ad rēginam accessit, iussit
- 25 eam sociōs in hominēs vertere. Circē Ulixīs<sup>12</sup> verbīs et factīs territa suēs in hominēs vertit. Magnam Ulixī grātiā habuērunt. Circē, quae nōn iam inimīca fuit, magnam et bonam cēnam parāvit. Annum ibi Ulixēs mānsit et vītā grātā ēgit. Tum ā sociīs adductus discessit.

<sup>1</sup> Dative.<sup>2</sup> Accusative plural.<sup>3</sup> Circē, -ēs, *f.*, Circe (sūr'sē), a sorceress.<sup>4</sup> *these.*<sup>5</sup> Eurylochos, -ī, *m.*, Eurylochos (ū-rīl'ō-kūs), a companion of Ulysses.<sup>6</sup> *them.*<sup>7</sup> *pigs.*<sup>8</sup> *everything.*<sup>9</sup> *him.*<sup>10</sup> *to him.*<sup>11</sup> (*with*) *this.*<sup>12</sup> Genitive.

## Sirēnēs et Calypsō (Lesson LI)

Tum ad Sirēnēs <sup>1</sup> Ulixēs cum sociis vēnit. Sirēnēs corpora avium <sup>2</sup> et capita puellārum habuērunt. Sirēnēs carmina pulchra canēbant quibus nautae affecti nāvēs ad saxa vertēbant. Hōc <sup>3</sup> modō vitam amittēbant.

Sed Ulixēs, quī dē Sirēnibus ā Circē <sup>4</sup> monitus erat, periculum prōvidit. In auribus <sup>5</sup> sociōrum cēram posuit, sed nōn in suis. Iussit manūs <sup>6</sup> pedēsque suos ad nāvem ligārī. Hōc modō carmina Sirēnum audivit neque vitam amisit.

Tum ad Siciliam accessērunt, ubi erat magnum periculum, quod inter Scyllam <sup>7</sup> et Charybdim <sup>8</sup> nāvīgāvērunt. Fugere <sup>10</sup> mātūrāvērunt, sed Scylla sex hominēs cēpit.

Ubi ad Siciliam vēnērunt, vaccās sacrās Sōlis, quī deus etiam Apollō appellātus est, vidērunt. Socii vaccās occidere parant, sed Ulixēs eōs <sup>9</sup> monet:

“Vaccae sunt sacrae. Quī vaccās occidit ā deō occidētur.” <sup>15</sup>  
Sed socii, quī multa mala sustinuerant, vaccās occidērunt et ēdērunt.<sup>10</sup> Sōlus Ulixēs nōn ēdit. Tum reliquī Graeci occisi sunt et Ulixēs sōlus ad insulam āctus est in quā habitābat rēgīna pulchra cui <sup>11</sup> nōmen erat Calypsō.<sup>12</sup> Ulixī <sup>13</sup> auxilium dedit, quī magnam grātiā habuit. Calypsō Ulixem amāre <sup>20</sup> incipit neque dimittit. Ulixēs discēdere nōn potuit quod nāvem nōn habuit. Itaque ibi octō annōs remānsit. Sed tum Iuppiter misit Mercurium ad rēgīnam et iussit eam <sup>14</sup> Ulixī nāvem parāre et auxilium dare. Hōc <sup>3</sup> factō, Ulixēs insulam reliquit.

25

<sup>1</sup> Sirēnēs, -um, *f.*, the Sirens (sī'rēnz).

<sup>2</sup> of birds.

<sup>3</sup> this.

<sup>4</sup> Ablative.

<sup>5</sup> ears.

<sup>6</sup> hands.

<sup>7</sup> Scylla, -ae, *f.*, Scylla (sīl'ā), a great rock opposite Charybdis.

<sup>8</sup> Charybdis, -is, *f.*, Charybdis (kā-rīb'dis), a dangerous whirlpool opposite Scylla (accusative Charybdim).

<sup>9</sup> them.

<sup>10</sup> ate.

<sup>11</sup> whose name.

<sup>12</sup> Calypsō, -ūs, *f.*, Calypso (kā-līp'sō).

<sup>13</sup> Dative.

<sup>14</sup> her.

## Phaeācia (Lesson LII)

Neptūnī, rēgis undārum, magna fuit ira ob iniūriam Polyphēmī, quī erat filius rēgis undārum. Itaque tempestās magna ā Neptūnō incitāta est quā nāvis Ulixīs frācta est. Sed auxiliō quod dea Leucothea<sup>1</sup> dedit Ulixēs ad insulam  
 5 Phaeāciam<sup>2</sup> vēnit. Vulneribus impeditus vix potuit sē<sup>3</sup> in silvam finitimam trahere, ubi somnum cēpit.

Interim Minerva ad Nausicaam,<sup>4</sup> rēgis Phaeāciae filiā, vēnit et iussit eam<sup>5</sup> ad flūmen prōcēdere et vestēs lavāre; nam tempus mātirimōnī aderat. Itaque Nausicaa cum aliis  
 10 puellis carrō ad flūmen prōcessit. Ubi vestēs in flūmine lāvērunt, labōre intermissō, pilā<sup>6</sup> lūdēbant. Clāmōrēs puellārum ab Ulixē auditī sunt, quī pilam ex aquā servāvit. Puellae timidae fugere incipiunt, quod Ulixēs ob mala quae sustinuerat nōn pulcher erat. Sed Nausicaa nōn territa ante  
 15 Ulixem stat et ei<sup>7</sup> grātiās agit. Ulixēs vestem petivit. Nausicaa permōta eum<sup>8</sup> iussit ad oppidum prōcēdere. Nausicaa cum puellis antecessit et Ulixī viam mōnstrāvit. Ulixēs ab rēge Alcinoō<sup>9</sup> acceptus est, cui factīs clārīs nōtus fuit. Paucōs diēs Ulixēs in Phaeāciā mānsit. Tum Alcinoous Ulixī praemia dedit et in nāvī<sup>10</sup> ad Ithacam mīsīt. Itaque post xx annōs Ulixēs sōlus ad patriam vēnit.

Ulixē in Ithacā vīsō, Neptūnus, auctor malōrum Ulixīs, iram continēre nōn potuit. Nāvem in quā Ulixēs trānsportātus erat ante portum<sup>11</sup> Phaeāciae in saxum vertit.  
 25 Hōc<sup>12</sup> modō portus insulae clausus est neque postea Alcinoous et hominēs insulae nāvigāre potuērunt.

<sup>1</sup> Leucothea, -ae, f., Leucothea (lū-kōth'ē-ā).

<sup>2</sup> Phaeācia, -ae, f., Phaeacia (fē-ā'shī-ā).

<sup>3</sup> himself.

<sup>4</sup> Nausicaa, -ae, f., Nausicaa (nō-sīk'ā-ā).

<sup>5</sup> her.

<sup>6</sup> with a ball.

<sup>7</sup> to him.

<sup>8</sup> him.

<sup>9</sup> Alcinoous, -ī, m., Alcinoous (āl-sīn'ō-ūs), king of the Phaeacians.

<sup>10</sup> Ablative singular.

<sup>11</sup> harbor.

<sup>12</sup> this.



## Pēnelopē (Lesson LIV)

Ad finem itineris sed nōn labōrum Ulixēs vēnerat. Prīmus Eumaeus <sup>1</sup> pāstor, quī ad mare habitāvit, Ulixem vīdit sed nōn cognōvit. Ab Eumaeō Ulixēs multa dē uxōre Pēnelopē <sup>2</sup> et filiō Tēlemachō audivit. Tēlemachus ab insulā tum aberat, quod Pēnelopē eum <sup>3</sup> ad rēgna civitātēsque Graeciae <sup>5</sup> mīserat, in quibus locīs Ulixem petēbat. Per multōs annōs nūllam fāmam dē Ulixē Pēnelopē accēperat. Interim multī ducēs rēgēsque cupiditate rēgnī Ulixis adductī ē finitimīs insulīs convēnerant et rēgīnam in mātīmōnium petēbant, quod crēdidērunt rēgem Ulixem nōn iam vīvum esse. Pēne- <sup>10</sup> lopē eōs <sup>4</sup> ē finibus Ithacae expellere nōn poterat. Itaque eōs verbīs dēcēpit:

“Ubi vestem quam faciō cōnfēcērō, grātum crit in mātīmōnium darī.”

Itaque exspectāvērunt. Sed cōnsilium Pēnelopēs <sup>5</sup> fuit <sup>15</sup> tempus trahere. Itaque nocte retexēbat <sup>6</sup> vestem quam multā diligentiā texuerat. Post trēs annōs hominēs cōnsilium Pēnelopēs cognōvērunt, et Pēnelopē accūsāta vestem cōnficere coācta est.

Hōc <sup>7</sup> tempore Ulixēs ad insulam vēnit. Eōdem <sup>8</sup> tempore <sup>20</sup> Tēlemachus ā Minervā monitus ad Ithacam properāvit. Ibi ad mare ab Ulixē vīsus et cognitus est. Ulixēs Tēlemachum ad oppidum antecēdere iussit. Ab Ulixē monitus Tēlemachus neque mātīri neque aliīs adventum <sup>9</sup> patris nūntiāvit. 25

Posteā Ulixēs ad oppidum prōcessit.

<sup>1</sup> Eumaeus, -ī, m., Eumaeus (ū-mē'ūs).

<sup>2</sup> Pēnelopē, -ēs, f., Penelope (pē-nēl'ō-pē), wife of Ulysses.

<sup>3</sup> him. <sup>4</sup> them. <sup>5</sup> Genitive. <sup>6</sup> unwove. <sup>7</sup> this. <sup>8</sup> same. <sup>9</sup> Accusative.

## Fīnis Labōrum (Lesson LV)

Ulixēs, rēx Ithacae, ad portās oppidī quod rēxerat stābat, ā multīs hominibus vīsus, sed nōn cognitus, quod vestēs



sordidās habēbat. In oppidum prōcessit. Multōs servōs  
vidit ā quibus nōn cognitus est. Canis tamen Ulixis domi-  
5 num cognōvit et statim ē vitā excessit. Adventū<sup>1</sup> Ulixis  
nūntiātō, Pēnelopē iussit eum ad sē<sup>2</sup> addūcī. Ubi Ulixēs  
accessit, omnēs procī eum hostem appellāvērunt et discēdere  
iussērunt. Sed Pēnclopē, quae eum nōn cognōverat, vestibis  
sordidīs permōta eum manēre iussit et cibum dedit.

10 Pēnelopē vestem cōnfēcerat et nunc tempus aderat quō  
necessārium erat maritum dēligere. Iussit magnum arcum<sup>3</sup>  
pōnī ante procōs quem Ulixēs clārus ante xx annōs gesserat.  
Tum nūntiāvit:

“Homō quī arcum Ulixis fortis tendere poterit maritus  
15 meus erit; marītus novus pār Ulixī esse dēbet.”

Itaque singulī in ōrdine arcum cēpērunt sed tendere nōn  
potuērunt. Tum Ulixēs arcum petīvit. Omnēs rīsērunt,<sup>4</sup>  
sed Pēnclopē iussit arcum Ulixī darī. Id<sup>5</sup> quod reliquī nōn  
facere poterant — arcum tendere — Ulixī facile erat. Tum  
20 in procōs arcum tetendit, quōs in fugam dedit. Tēle-  
machus et Eumaeus auxilium dedērunt. Ulixēs omnēs por-  
tās oppidī claudī iusserat, ob quam causam procī ex oppidō  
fugere nōn potuērunt. Salūte petītā, nōn inventā, omnēs  
interfectī sunt. Hōc<sup>6</sup> modō rēgnum et uxōrem Ulixēs  
25 recēpit et in pāce ōtiōque vitā ēgit.

<sup>1</sup> Ablative.<sup>2</sup> herself.<sup>3</sup> bow.<sup>4</sup> From rīdeō.<sup>5</sup> that.<sup>6</sup> this.

### Cīneās et Pyrrhus (Lesson LVI)

Pyrrhus erat rēx Ēpīrī. Cīneās,<sup>1</sup> quī erat lēgātus in  
Pyrrhī castrīs et reliquōs lēgātōs auctōritāte superābat, cōn-  
silia Pyrrhī nōn semper probābat. Quondam Pyrrhus dixit:  
“In Italiam prōcēdere et Rōmam superāre parō.”

5 Cīneās, “Superātīs Rōmānīs,” inquit, “quid est tibi in  
animō<sup>2</sup> facere, rēx fortis?”

“Italiae finitima est insula Sicilia,” inquit rēx, “quam  
facile erit armīs occupāre.”

Tum Cīneās, "Occupātā Siciliā," inquit, "quid postea faciēs?"

10

Pyrrhus respondit: "Postea trāns mare in Āfricam milītēs meōs trānsportābō et hostēs, quī celeritāte milītibz meis nōn parēs sunt, pellam."

Cīneās, "Pulsīs hostibus," inquit, "quid tum faciēs?"

"Tum, Cīneā,"<sup>3</sup> inquit Pyrrhus, "vītam in pāce ōtiōque agam."

Magnā celeritāte Cīneās respondit: "Cūr nōn in pāce ōtiōque etiam nunc vītam agis?"

<sup>1</sup> Cīneās, -ae, m., Cineas (sīn'ē-ās), a friend of Pyrrhus.

<sup>2</sup> quid . . . animō, what do you intend.

<sup>3</sup> Vocative.

### Sāturnus et Iuppiter (Lesson LVIII)

Prīmus rēx deōrum Ūranus<sup>1</sup> erat. Hunc filius Sāturnus ex rēgnō expulit. Ūranus hīs verbīs Sāturnum monuit: "Tempus auctōritātis tuae nōn longum erit; nam ā filiō tuō expellēris." Hīs verbīs territus Sāturnus omnēs filiōs dēvorābat. Sed ūnum quem māter ante<sup>2</sup> reliquōs filiōs amābat callidō cōnsiliō servāvit. Hic fuit Iuppiter. Post paucōs annōs hic patrem expulit et rēgnum illius occupāvit. Sāturnus reliquōs filiōs reddere coāctus est. Rēgiam in monte Olympō<sup>3</sup> Iuppiter posuit, ex quō in omnēs partēs spectāre poterat. Frātrēs convocāvit. Neptūnō maris rēgnum, Plūtōnī<sup>4</sup> rēgnum Īnferōrum<sup>5</sup> dedit.

Sed postea Gigantēs,<sup>6</sup> filii Terrae, cum deīs bellum gesserunt. Ad Olympum praecipitēs cucurrērunt<sup>7</sup> sed ā deīs superātī poenīs dūrīs affectī sunt.

<sup>1</sup> Ūranus, -ī, m., Uranus (ū'rā-nūs), father of Saturn.

<sup>2</sup> more than.

<sup>3</sup> Olympus, -ī, m., Olympus (ō-līm'pūs), the abode of the gods.

<sup>4</sup> Plūtō, -ōnis, m., Pluto, king of the Lower World.

<sup>5</sup> of the shades (in Hades).

<sup>6</sup> Gigantēs, -um, m., Giants.

<sup>7</sup> From currō.

## Caedicius Fortis (Lesson LIX)

Primō bellō Pūnicō hostēs locum nātūrā mūnītum occupāverant, et periculum militum Rōmānōrum magnum erat. Tribūnus militum Rōmānus, cui<sup>1</sup> nōmen Caedicius<sup>2</sup> erat, ad ducem vēnit et dixit, locō quōdam<sup>3</sup> mōnstrātō:

5 “Cōpiās tuās servāre poteris sī ad illum locum cccc milītēs prōcēdere iubēbis. Hostēs, ubi hōs milītēs viderint, proelium committent et hōs omnēs interficient. Dum haec faciunt, facile erit reliquōs milītēs ex hōc locō ēdūcere. Haec est sōla via salūtis.”

10 “Bonum tuum cōnsilium probō,” inquit dux, “sed quis illōs in mortem certam dūcet?”

“Cūr mē nōn mittis?” respondit tribūnus.

Itaque dux tribūnō grātiās ēgit et hunc cum cccc militibus contrā hostēs mīsīt. Fortēs Rōmānī nihil timuērunt.  
15 Neque cessērunt neque fūgērunt sed magnīs cōpiīs hostium superātī sunt. Omnēs aut vītā āmisērunt aut vulnera accēpērunt. Interim reliquī milītēs Rōmānī integrī salūtem petivērunt.

Deī praemium tribūnō ob ēgregium exemplum dōnāvērunt; nam vītā nōn āmisīt. Vulnera multa accēpit sed neque in capite neque in corde.

<sup>1</sup> whose name.

<sup>2</sup> Caedicius, -ī, m., Caedicius (sê-d'is'i-ūs).

<sup>3</sup> certain.

## Civitas Rōmāna (Lesson LX)

Rōma ā Trōiānīs et Latīnīs cōstitūta est. Hae duae partēs civitātis Rōmānae contrā pericula commūnia pugnavērunt. Ubi civitās concordīā aucta est, rēgēs populīque finitimī praedae cupiditāte adductī cum Rōmānīs bella  
5 gerēbant. Paucī ex amicīs<sup>1</sup> auxilium Rōmānīs dabant, quod periculīs territī sunt. Sed Rōmānī properābant, parābant, cum hostibus proelia committēbant, libertātem patriamque armīs dēfendēbant. Postea, ubi hostēs virtūte

populērunt, sociis et amicis auxilia ferēbant.<sup>2</sup> Hōc modō novae amicitiae ab eis parābantur. 10

Ei Rōmānī quōrum corpora ob annōs nōn firma erant sed quī bonō cōsiliō valēbant dē rē publicā<sup>3</sup> cōsulēbantur et ob aetātem patrēs vel senātōrēs appellābantur.

Primō rēgēs erant, quī libertātem cōservābant et rem publicam<sup>4</sup> augēbant, sed postea, quod hī superbī fuērunt, 15 Rōmānī creāvērunt cōsulēs.

Eō tempore cupiditās glōriae magna erat. Virī fortēs bella amābant, in castris labōrābant, nihil timēbant: virtūs omnia superāverat. Itaque populus Rōmānus magnās hostium cōpiās paucis militibus in fugam dabat, oppida 20 nātūrā mūnita pugnīs capiēbat. Hostibus superātis, Rōmānī aequī erant. Iūra bellī pācisque cōservābant. Hōc modō auctōritātem cōfirmābant. Post Pūnica bella Rōmānī fuērunt dominī omnium terrārum mariumque.

Sed tum fortūna Rōmānōs superāvit. Hī pecūniam im- 25 periumque, nōn iam glōriam spērāvērunt. Superbī, nōn iam aequī fuērunt. Iūra lēgēsque nōn iam cōservāvērunt.

<sup>1</sup> ex amicis = amicōrum.

<sup>2</sup> From ferō.

<sup>3</sup> Translate by the English derivative of this compound noun.

<sup>4</sup> Accusative. See rēs.

### Midās (Lesson LXI)

Midās,<sup>1</sup> rēx Phrygiae,<sup>2</sup> Silēnō,<sup>3</sup> magistrō dei Bacchī, auxilium dederat. Ob hanc causam ēgregiō praemiō ā deō dōnātus est: deus parātus fuit ei dare id quod cupīvit. Midās dīxit: "Sī omnia quae corpore meō tetigerō<sup>4</sup> in aurum mūtābuntur, grātum erit." 5

Hōc factō, omnia quae rēx tangēbat in aurum mūtābantur. Terram tangit: nōn iam terra est sed aurum. Aquam tangit: eōdem modō in aurum mūtātur. Tum grātiās Bacchō prō magnō praemiō ēgit.

Tum cēnam ēgregiam et magnam parārī iussit et omnia 10 genera cibōrum in mēnsā pōnī. Haec mēnsa ab eō tācta erat

et mūtāta in aurum. Dum magnā celeritāte servī cēnam parant, Midās amīcōs nōbilēs convocāvit. Grātō animō bonam cēnam quae parāta erat spectāvit. Tum cibum cēpit  
 15 — et cibus in aurum mūtātus est. Vinum in mēnsā pōnī iussit. Hoc tangit et nōn iam idem est sed in aurum mūtātur. Omnibus amīcīs ēgregia cēna grāta fuit sed nōn rēgī. Inter multōs cibōs edere <sup>5</sup> nōn potuit.

Tandem ad Bacchum, auctōrem malōrum, rēx prōcessit et  
 20 finem supplicī petīvit — nam supplicium, nōn iam prae-mium erat id quod ā deō accēperat. Bacchus iussit eum in flūmine Pactōlō <sup>6</sup> sē <sup>7</sup> lavāre. Praeceptus rēx ad flūmen cucurrit ubi sē lāvī. Arēna <sup>8</sup> flūminis in aurum mūtāta est, et etiam nunc in hōc flūmine aurum est.

<sup>1</sup> Midās, -ae, *m.*, Midas (mī'dās).

<sup>2</sup> Phrygia, -ae, *f.*, Phrygia (frīj'ī-ā), a country in Asia Minor.

<sup>3</sup> Silēnus, -ī, *m.*, Silenus (sī-lē'nūs), tutor and constant attendant of Bacchus.

<sup>4</sup> From tangō. <sup>5</sup> eat.

<sup>6</sup> Pactōlus, -ī, *m.*, the Pactolus (pāk-tō'lūs), a river in Lydia.

<sup>7</sup> himself. <sup>8</sup> sand.

### Cicerō et Tīrō (Lesson LXIII)

Cicerō, ōrātor clārus, Tīrōnem,<sup>1</sup> servum quī diligentīā sapientiāque studiīs Cicerōnis magnum auxilium dabat, maximē amābat. Cicerō cum Tīrōne in Graeciā fuerat. Ubi in Italiam revertit, Tīrō sōlus in Graeciā relictus est  
 5 quod aeger fuit. Cicerō ad eum trēs epistulās in itinere eōdem diē <sup>2</sup> scrīpsit. Inter alia haec scrīpsit:

“Variīs modīs litterīs tuīs affectus sum, primā pāginā territus, alterā cōfirmātus. Hōc tempore tē <sup>3</sup> neque marī neque itinerī committere dēbēs. Medicus tuus bonus est,  
 10 ut <sup>4</sup> scrībīs et ego audiō; sed cūratiōnēs eius nōn probō; nam iūs <sup>5</sup> nōn dēbet stomachō <sup>6</sup> aegrō darī. Ad illum et ad Lysōnem <sup>7</sup> scrīpsī. Lysōnis nostrī neglegentiam nōn probō, quī, litterīs ā mē acceptīs, ipse nullās remisit. Sed Lysō

Graecus est et omnium Graecōrum magna est negligentia. In nullā rē<sup>8</sup> properāre debēs.

15

Curium<sup>9</sup> iussī omnem pecūniam tibi<sup>10</sup> dare quam cupis. Si medicō pecūniam dabis, diligentia eius augēbitur. Magna sunt tua in mē<sup>11</sup> officia;<sup>12</sup> omnia superāveris, si, ut<sup>4</sup> spērō, salūtem tuam cōfirmātam viderō. Antea, dum magnā diligentia mihi<sup>13</sup> auxilium dās,<sup>14</sup> nōn salūtem tuam cō- 20 firmāre potuisti; nunc tē<sup>15</sup> nihil impedit. Omnia depōnere debēs, salūs sōla in animō tuō esse debet."

Nōne dominī bonī illis temporibus erant? Etiam malī erant. Omnī aetāte bonī et malī hominēs fuērunt et sunt et semper erunt.

25

<sup>1</sup> Tīrō, -ōnis, *m.*, Tiro (tī'rō), Cicero's freedman and secretary.

<sup>2</sup> Ablative. <sup>3</sup> *yourself*. <sup>4</sup> *as*. <sup>5</sup> *soup*.

<sup>6</sup> Use the English derivative.

<sup>7</sup> Lysō, -ōnis, *m.*, Lyso (lī'sō), at whose house Tiro was staying.

<sup>8</sup> *thing*.

<sup>9</sup> Curius, -ī, *m.*, Curius (kū'rī-ūs), a banker.

<sup>10</sup> *to you*.

<sup>11</sup> *me*.

<sup>12</sup> *services*.

<sup>13</sup> *to me*.

<sup>14</sup> With *dum* = *dabās*.

<sup>15</sup> *you*.

### Quīntus Cicerō et Pompōnia (Lesson LXIV)

Pompōnius<sup>1</sup> Atticus<sup>2</sup> erat firmus amicus M. Cicerōnis. Pompōnia,<sup>3</sup> soror Atticī, erat uxor Quīntī, frātris M. Cicerōnis. Inter Pompōniam Quīntumque nōn semper concordia erat. Ūna causa erat quod auctōritās Stātī<sup>4</sup> servī apud<sup>5</sup> Quīntum valēbat. Aliae causae nōn nōtae sunt. Cicerō 5 Pompōniam accūsāvit, Atticus Quīntum. Cicerō ad Atticum hōc modō scrīpsit:

"Frātre meum vidī. Multus sermō inter nōs<sup>6</sup> dē tē<sup>7</sup> et sorōre tuā fuit. Verba eius nōn inimica fuērunt. Tum ad Pompōniam contendimus. Quīntus eī dīxit: 'Si mulierēs 10 ad cēnam vocābis, puerōs (filium Cicerōnis et frātris eius) vocābō.' Sed illa, 'Ego sum,' inquit, 'in hōc locō hospita.' Hoc dīxit quod Stātius servus, nōn ea ipsa, cēnam parārī iusserat. Tum Quīntus, 'Audīsne?' inquit mihi,<sup>8</sup>



- 15 'haec semper sustinēre cōgor.' Dicēs: 'Haec vōx nihil est.' Sed magnum<sup>9</sup> est; verbis dūrīs eius oppressus et commōtus sum. Ad cēnam illa nōn adfuit; Quīntus ad eam cibum mīsīt; illa remīsīt. Grave vulnus Quīntus accēpit neque ipse ūllam iniūriam fēcīt. Sorōrem tuam monēre  
20 dēbēs. Ob amīcitiam nostram perpetuam hoc dicō. Mag-nīs cūrīs afficior. Officium nostrum est inter sorōrem tuam et frātrem meum pācem efficere."

<sup>1</sup> Pompōnius, -ī, *m.*, Pomponius (pōm-pōn'ī-ūs).

<sup>2</sup> Atticus, -ī, *m.*, Atticus (ăt'ī-kūs).

<sup>3</sup> Pompōnia, -ae, *f.*, Pomponia (pōm-pōn'ī-ā).

<sup>4</sup> Stātius, -ī, *m.*, Statius (stā'shī-ūs), one of Cicero's slaves.

<sup>5</sup> *with.*

<sup>6</sup> *us.*

<sup>7</sup> *you.*

<sup>8</sup> *to me.*

<sup>9</sup> *it is a serious thing.*

### Bella (Lesson LXVI)

- Quae sunt causae bellī? Putō multās esse causās. Vidē-mus multa bella ob iniūriās gerī. Haec bella iūsta sunt. Multī populī pugnant quod putant imperium auctōritātem-que vī bellōque augērī posse. Hī sī superantur omnia saepe  
5 āmittunt; sī superant, aliēnās terrās occupant. Putāsne bella huius generis iūsta esse? Multī dicunt omnia bella iūsta esse, alii putant nūlla esse iūsta. Quid dē hōc putās? Alia bella prō libertāte, alia prō glōriā geruntur. Quae fuērunt causae bellōrum Americānōrum?
- 10 Horātius,<sup>1</sup> poēta Rōmānus, scribit dulce esse prō patriā vītā āmittere. Nōnne omnēs putāmus hoc vērū esse? Sī patria in periculō est, nōnne putās officium nostrum esse eam dēfendere? Scīmus gravēs esse labōrēs militum, gravia cōs accipere vulnera, multōs eōrum vītā āmittere; scīmus  
15 etiam eōs omnia haec prō patriā grātō animō suscipere et sustinēre. Prō hīs mūneribus praemia aequa eīs dare nōn possumus. Sed praemia nōn exspectant; spērant civēs facta sua memoriā tentūrōs esse et aliōs semper parātōs futūrōs esse patriam dēfendere.
- 20 Ēgregia exempla virtūtis in omnibus bellis vidērī possunt.



Legimus dē multīs clārīs factīs in librīs Graecīs et Latinīs et Anglicīs.<sup>2</sup> Omnēs populī putant et semper putāvērunt sacrum officium esse patriam cōservāre.

Sed spērāmus nōn semper bella futūra esse; spērāmus omnēs hominēs aliōrum iūra cōservātūrōs esse. Tum bella nōn iam necessāria erunt, et pāx perpetua erit.

<sup>1</sup> Horātius, -ī, m., Horace.

<sup>2</sup> English.

### Scīpiō Āfricānus (Lesson LXVII)

M. Naevius<sup>1</sup> accūsāvit Scīpiōnem ad populum, dixitque eum accēpisse ā rēge Antiochō<sup>2</sup> pecūniam. Dixit Antiochum pecūniam prō levibus condiciōnibus pācis dedisse. Scīpiō respondit hōc diē<sup>3</sup> sē<sup>4</sup> Hannibalem, imperī Rōmānōrum inimicum, magnō proeliō in terrā Āfricā vicisse pācemque et victōriam clāram obtinuisse. Etiam dixit omnēs ad templa prōcēdere dēbere et deīs grātiās agere et stupidum Naevium relinquere. Hōc dictō, ad Capitōlium prōcēdere incipit. Tum omnēs verbīs eius permōtī, relictō Naeviō, cum Scīpiōne in Capitōlium prōcessērunt.

Etiam aliud factum eius est clārum. Petilius,<sup>5</sup> ā Catōne,<sup>6</sup> Scīpiōnis inimicō, iussus est petere in senātū<sup>3</sup> ratiōnēs pecūniae praedaeque captae in bellō cum Antiochō gestō. Tum Scīpiō librum ostendit et dixit:

“In hōc librō ratiōnēs scrīptae sunt omnis pecūniae omnisque praedae quam accēpī. Mihi in animō erat<sup>7</sup> ratiōnēs in senātū<sup>3</sup> hōc tempore legere. Sed nunc, quod ille instat, id nōn faciam.”

Hōc dictō, librum discidit.<sup>8</sup>

Id etiam dicī potest quod eī quī dē vitā Āfricānī scrīpserunt litteris mandāvērunt. Saepe ante primam lūcem in Capitōlium veniēbat et ibi sōlus manēbat. Dicēbātur deum dē salūte civitātis cōsultare.

Aliud dē eō scrīptum est. Oppugnābat oppidum mūnītum in quō erant multī militēs et magna cōpia cibōrum. Paucī

putābant oppidum capī posse. In castrīs Scīpiō iūs dicēbat <sup>9</sup> et ex eō locō oppidum vidērī poterat. Ūnus ē militibus quī ante eum stābat rogāvit: “Quō diē <sup>3</sup> locōque iubēs hunc hominem <sup>10</sup> ad tē venīre?” Tum Scīpiō manum ad oppidum  
 30 ipsum tetendit et iussit eum hominem in oppidō illō esse tertiō diē.<sup>3</sup> Ita factum est; diē tertiō oppidum captum est eōdemque diē ibi iūs dixit.

<sup>1</sup> Naevius, -ī, *m.*, Naevius (nē'vī-ŭs).

<sup>2</sup> Antiochus, -ī, *m.*, Antiochus (ān-tī'ō-kŭs), a Syrian king.

<sup>3</sup> Ablative.

<sup>4</sup> *he.*

<sup>5</sup> Petilius, -ī, *m.*, Petilius (pē-tīl'ī-ŭs).

<sup>6</sup> Catō, -ōnis, *m.*, Cato (kā'tō), a famous Roman senator.

<sup>7</sup> Mihi . . . erat, *I intended.*

<sup>8</sup> *tore in pieces.*

<sup>9</sup> *was administering justice (iūs).*

<sup>10</sup> The man charged with an offense. The trial was set for the third day after.

### Auctōritās Scīpiōnis (Lesson LXIX)

Rēx Antiochus bellō quod cum Rōmānīs gerēbat filium Scīpiōnis Āfricānī vulneribus cōfectum intercēpit. Multīs honōribus eum excēpit <sup>1</sup> et magnīs mūneribus dōnātum ad patrem remīsīt, quamquam illō ipsō tempore ab eō ex finibus  
 5 imperī <sup>2</sup> pellēbātur.

Ad eundem Āfricānum in villā habitantem multī principēs praedōnum eōdem tempore convēnērunt quī cupivērunt eum vidēre. Sed Scīpiō putāvit eōs, procul vīsōs, vim factūrōs esse. Itaque praesidium servōrum ante villam posuit.  
 10 Hōc vīsō, praedōnēs, dīmissīs militibus dēiectisque armīs, accessērunt et clārā vōce nūntiāvērunt sē <sup>3</sup> vēnisse nōn vitāe Scīpiōnis hostēs, sed virtūtis admīrātōres. Haec ubi servī Scīpiōnī rettulērunt, eōs ad sē <sup>4</sup> addūcī iussit. Tamquam in templum accessērunt, ante eum cōstitērunt, diū eum  
 15 spectāvērunt. Manum <sup>5</sup> eius tetigērunt et huic oscula dedērunt. Mūnera ad Scīpiōnem tamquam ad deum tulērunt et tum discessērunt.

Haec et hostis <sup>6</sup> et praedōnēs fēcērunt ob magnam auctōritātem Scipionis. Scivērunt eum esse clārum virum, sēnsērunt paucōs Scipionēs aut fuisse aut esse aut futūrōs esse. 20

<sup>1</sup> received. <sup>2</sup> empire. <sup>3</sup> they. <sup>4</sup> him. <sup>5</sup> Accusative. <sup>6</sup> i.e. Antiochius.

### Quattuor Aetātēs (Lesson LXX)

Prīma aetās erat aurea. Sātūrnus erat rēx deōrum hominumque. Illō tempore poena lēgēsque aberant, sed omnēs hominēs iūstī erant. Nāvēs in marī nōn erant nec trāns mare hominēs nāvīgābant. Bellum nōn erat nec milītēs et arma. In ōtiō et pāce vītā hominēs agēbant. Hominēs 5 in agrīs nōn labōrābant; terra nōn culta ipsa frūmentum dabat. Neque hiems neque aestās erat: semper erat vēr. Flūmina lactis <sup>1</sup> et vīnī erant. Quod omnēs agrī commūnēs erant, terminī agrōrum nōn erant.

Sātūrnō expulsō, Iuppiter rēx erat. Nunc incipit secunda 10 aetās, quae ex argentō est, dūrior quam prīma, grātior quam tertia. Tum aestās et hiems esse incipiunt; quattuor sunt spatia annī. Tum prīmum in agrīs labōrāre hominēs incipiunt.

Tertia aetās ex aere <sup>2</sup> erat. Dūrior erat quam secunda. 15

Quārta aetās, quae ex ferrō est, dūrissima omnium est. Poenae gravissimae sunt, sed hominēs interficiunt et rapiunt. Nautae in omnī marī nāvīgant. Hominēs semper bella gerunt et praedam petunt. Hominēs in agrīs labōrant; nam labor omnia vincit. 20

Haec dicunt auctōrēs clārissimī Rōmānī dē quattuor aetātibus. Vergilius <sup>3</sup> putābat iterum aetātem auream futūram esse. Etiam nunc putāmus vītā semper grātiōrem futūram esse. Putātisne condiōnem fortūnamque populi Rōmānī meliōrem <sup>4</sup> fuisse quam fortūnam nostram? Cūr 25 haec sententia vestra est? Quae erit condiō hominum post mille annōs? Aliī dicunt: "Tempora mūtantur, et nōs <sup>5</sup> mūtāmur in illis." Aliī dicunt hominēs semper eōsdem

fuisse et futūrōs esse. Quae est sententia vestra? Pos-  
suntne ambae sententiae vērae esse?

<sup>1</sup> of milk.

<sup>2</sup> bronze.

<sup>3</sup> Vergilius, -ī, m., Virgil (vûr'jîl), a Roman poet.

<sup>4</sup> better.

<sup>5</sup> we.

### Baucis et Philēmōn (Lesson LXXI)

Iuppiter et Mercurius per Phrygiam, quae in Asiā est, iter  
fēcērunt, sed nēmō eōs cognōvit. Omnēs eōs iūdicāvērunt  
esse humilēs hominēs. Ad mille domōs accessērunt; nam  
locum somnō aptum petivērunt. Sed omnēs, hīs visīs,  
5 domōs celeriter clausērunt. In tōtā regiōne repulsī sunt.  
Tamen ūna domus eōs recēpit, parva et humilis. Ibi Bau-  
cis <sup>1</sup> et Philēmōn <sup>2</sup> multōs annōs longae vitae fēliciter ēgerant.  
Magnam pecūniam nōn habuērunt sed paupertātem aequō  
animō tulērunt et hōc modō effēcērunt levem. Duo tōta  
10 domus <sup>3</sup> fuērunt, et dominī et servī ipsī; nam servōs nōn  
habuērunt.

Cēnam humilem Baucis magnā diligentīā et celeritāte  
parāvit ad quam tum deōs vocāvit. Multī cibī nōn fuērunt,  
sed bonī. Vīnum bibērunt sed semper crātēr plēnus erat.  
15 Tum Philēmōn et Baucis sēnsērunt deōs adesse. Ūnus  
ānser erat quem dominī deīs interficere parābant. Sed  
aetāte tardī eum capere nōn poterant. Hic ad pedēs deōrum  
ipsōrum fūgit. Tum Iuppiter, "Deī sumus," inquit, "tō-  
tam hanc regiōnem poenā afficiēmus, quod nēmō nōbīs <sup>4</sup>  
20 auxilium tulit, sed vestra vīta servābitur. Ad montem  
prōcēdēmus." Itaque tardī ad montem prōcessērunt. Ibi  
cōstitērunt et vīdērunt tōtam regiōnem aquā tēctam esse,  
domum suam sōlam manēre. Dum spectant, domus eōrum  
in pulchrum templum vertitur.  
25 Tum Iuppiter, "Quid cupitis?" inquit; "id quod petitis  
dōnābō." Philēmōn, uxōre cōsultā, respondit: "Cupimus  
esse sacerdōtēs <sup>5</sup> illius templī et ē vītā eōdem tempore  
excēdere quod in concordiā multōs annōs ēgimus." Hoc  
mūnus accēpērunt.

Post multōs annōs, aetāte gravēs ante sacrum templum 30  
stābant. Corpora eōrum in arborēs tardē vertuntur. Mul-  
tōs annōs hae duae arborēs ante templum stābant.

<sup>1</sup> *Baucis*, -idis, *f.*, Baucis (bô'sis), wife of Philemon.

<sup>2</sup> *Philēmōn*, -onis, *m.*, Philemon (fi-lē'mōn), husband of Baucis.

<sup>3</sup> *household.*

<sup>4</sup> *to us.*

<sup>5</sup> *priests.*

### Daedalus et Īcarus (Lesson LXXII)

In insulā Crētā <sup>1</sup> Mīnōs <sup>2</sup> fuit rēx. Daedalus <sup>3</sup> cum filiō  
parvō Īcarō <sup>4</sup> ibi captivus fuit. Crētam nōn amāvit. Fugere  
nōn potuit quod mare prohibuit. "Neque per terram,"  
inquit, "neque per mare fugere possum, sed caelum certē nōn  
clausum est. Illā viā difficillimā prōcēdēmus." Itaque ālās 5  
parāvit, simillimās ālīs vērīs avium.<sup>5</sup> Partēs ālārum cērā  
ligāvit. Īcarus ad patrem stābat, ālās levissimās tangēbat,  
opus patris impediēbat. Tandem finis labōris aderat; ālae  
parātae erant. Tum Daedalus filium hīs verbīs monuit:

"In mediō caelō prōcēdēmus; nam, sī humilīus volābi- 10  
mus,<sup>6</sup> undae ālās graviōrēs facient; sī altius volābimus, ignis  
ālās ūret."

Tum omnēs partēs ālārum filiō ostendit et omnia in ōrdine  
explicāvit. Omnia parāta fuērunt, et Daedalus ipse ālās  
mōvit. Perīculum esse sēnsit et filiō timuit. Antecessit et 15  
filium iussit post volāre.

Agricolae territī ex agrīs eōs vīdērunt; multī putāvērunt  
eōs deōs esse. Celerrimē pater filiusque aera<sup>7</sup> ālīs pepulērunt.<sup>8</sup>  
Multās terrās reliquērunt. Tum puer nōn iam timidus  
patrem ducem reliquit. Verba patris memoriā nōn tenuit 20  
et altius volāvit. Celeriter sōl cēram solvit; nōn iam ālac  
haesērunt. Praeceptus puer in mare cecidit; frūstrā nōmen  
patris clāmāvit. Ab illō posteā hoc mare nōmen <sup>9</sup> accēpit.

Interim pater, nōn iam pater, in omnibus regiōnibus filium  
petivit, nōmen filiī clāmāvit. Tandem ālās Īcarī in undīs 25  
vīdit.

Tum ipse ad Siciliam pervēnit et ibi multōs annōs ēgit. Sed aliī scribunt eum in Italiam volāvisse et ibi in templō ālās posuisse. Hōc modō deīs prō salūte grātiās ēgit.

30 Prīmus omnium hominum Daedalus per caelum volāvit, sī auctōrēs Graecī et Rōmānī vērūm dixērunt. Nunc multi hominēs volant, sed nōn ālīs.

<sup>1</sup> Crēta, -ae, *f.*, Crete.

<sup>2</sup> Minōs, -ōis, *m.*, Minos (mī'nōs), a Cretan king and lawgiver.

<sup>3</sup> Daedalus, -ī, *m.*, Daedalus (dēd'ā-lŭs), a mythical character.

<sup>4</sup> Icarus, -ī, *m.*, Icarus (ik'ā-rŭs), son of Daedalus.

<sup>5</sup> of birds.

<sup>6</sup> fly.

<sup>7</sup> Accusative singular: *air*.

<sup>8</sup> From *pellō* : *beat*.

<sup>9</sup> The Icarian Sea.



# WORD LISTS FOR VOCABULARY DRILL<sup>1</sup>

## FIRST HALF YEAR

### VERBS

|            |                                 |            |   |
|------------|---------------------------------|------------|---|
| amō        | love                            | occupō     | seize, take possession of                     |
| appellō    | name, call                      | suscipiō   | undertake                                     |
| audeō      | dare, venture                   | cēdō       | go, yield                                     |
| cognōscō   | learn, ascertain                | discēdō    | go away, depart                               |
| cōfirmō    | strengthen, encourage, affirm   | excēdō     | go out  |
| cōsulō     | consult ( <i>w. acc.</i> )      | prōcēdō    | go forward, advance                           |
| dēbeō      | owe, ought                      | dūcō       | lead  |
| dēfendō    | defend                          | abdūcō     | lead away                                     |
| dicō       | say                             | addūcō     | lead to, influence                            |
| dō         | give                            | ēdūcō      | lead out                                      |
| existimō   | think, consider                 | indūcō     | lead into, induce                             |
| expectō    | expect, wait, await             | perdūcō    | lead through, extend                          |
| gerō       | carry, accomplish               | prōdūcō    | lead forward                                  |
| iubeō      | order                           | redūcō     | lead back                                     |
| labōrō     | labor, suffer                   | habeō      | have, hold                                    |
| liberō     | set free                        | adhibeō    | apply, employ                                 |
| nāvigō     | sail                            | prohibeō   | prohibit, prevent                             |
| nūntiō     | announce, declare               | locō       | place, put, set                               |
| oportet    | it is fitting                   | mittō      | send  |
| pācō       | pacify                          | āmittō     | send away, lose                               |
| petō       | seek                            | committō   | commit, entrust ( <i>w. proelium</i> , begin) |
| portō      | carry                           | dīmittō    | send away                                     |
| properō    | hurry                           | intermittō | interrupt, discontinue                        |
| putō       | think                           | permittō   | permit, grant, entrust                        |
| respondeō  | answer                          | praemittō  | send ahead                                    |
| relinquō   | leave behind, abandon           | remittō    | send back                                     |
| spectō     | look at                         | moneō      | advise, warn                                  |
| timeō      | fear                            | admoneō    | remind  |
| agō        | drive, do                       | moveō      | move  |
| cōgō       | drive together, collect, compel | commoveō   | alarm, excite                                 |
| redigō     | drive back, reduce, render      | permoveō   | arouse, disturb                               |
| capiō      | take                            | removeō    | move back, remove                             |
| accipiō    | accept, receive                 | parō       | get ready, prepare                            |
| incipiō    | begin, undertake                | comparō    | get together, provide                         |
| intercipiō | intercept, cut off              |            |   |

<sup>1</sup> Prescribed for the first year by the New York State Syllabus in Latin.



VERBS — *Continued*

|          |                      |          |                                      |
|----------|----------------------|----------|--------------------------------------|
| pugnō    | fight                | contineō | hold together, con-<br>tain, confine |
| expugnō  | capture by assault   | obteneō  | obtain, hold, have                   |
| oppugnō  | attack               | pertineō | reach, extend, per-<br>tain          |
| scribō   | write                | retineō  | hold back, retain                    |
| cōscribō | enrol                | sustineō | hold up, sustain                     |
| servō    | save, protect        | videō    | see                                  |
| cōservō  | save fully, preserve | prōvideō | foresee                              |
| sum      | be                   | vocō     | call                                 |
| absum    | be away              | convocō  | call together, sum-<br>mon           |
| adsum    | be near, be present  | ēvocō    | call out                             |
| possum   | be able              |          |                                      |
| teneō    | hold, keep           |          |                                      |

## NOUNS

|            |                          |                   |                                      |
|------------|--------------------------|-------------------|--------------------------------------|
| aestās     | summer                   | impedimen-<br>tum | hindrance ( <i>plur.</i><br>baggage) |
| ager       | field                    | iniūria           | wrong                                |
| agricola   | farmer                   | insula            | island                               |
| amīcitia   | friendship               | iūdex             | judge, juror                         |
| animus     | spirit, life, soul       | iūdicium          | trial, judgment                      |
| annus      | year                     | lēx               | law                                  |
| arma       | arms                     | liber             | book                                 |
| auctōritās | influence                | libertās          | freedom                              |
| auxilium   | aid, help                | lingua            | tongue, language                     |
| bellum     | war                      | locus             | place                                |
| caput      | head                     | lūx               | light                                |
| castra     | camp                     | māter             | mother                               |
| celeritās  | speed, swiftness         | memoria           | memory                               |
| civitās    | citizenship, state       | miles             | soldier                              |
| cōsiliū    | advice, plan             | nātūra            | nature                               |
| cōsul      | consul                   | negōtium          | business, trouble                    |
| deus       | god                      | nōmen             | name                                 |
| dignitās   | worth, position          | numerus           | number                               |
| diligentia | painstaking, care        | officiū           | duty, service, cour-<br>tesy         |
| dux        | leader                   | oppidum           | town                                 |
| equus      | horse                    | pater             | father                               |
| exemplum   | example, precedent       | pāx               | peace                                |
| factum     | thing done, act,<br>deed | pecūnia           | money                                |
| fāma       | reputation, report       | periculum         | trial, danger                        |
| filia      | daughter                 | poena             | penalty                              |
| filius     | son                      | populus           | people                               |
| flūmen     | river                    | porta             | gate                                 |
| fortūna    | fortune, wealth          | praemium          | reward                               |
| frāter     | brother                  | praesidium        | garrison, guard                      |
| frūmentum  | grain                    | prīnceps          | leader, chief man                    |
| fuga       | flight                   | proelium          | battle                               |
| hiems      | winter                   | puella            | girl                                 |
| homō       | man                      |                   |                                      |

NOUNS — *Continued*

|          |                             |            |                            |
|----------|-----------------------------|------------|----------------------------|
| puer     | boy                         | supplicium | punishment                 |
| rēgina   | queen                       | tempus     | time                       |
| rēgnum   | kingdom                     | terra      | land, earth                |
| rēx      | king                        | via        | highway, road              |
| salūs    | safety                      | victōria   | victory                    |
| servitūs | slavery                     | villa      | farmhouse                  |
| servus   | slave                       | vir        | man, hero                  |
| signum   | sign, signal, stand-<br>ard | virtūs     | manliness, courage         |
| silva    | forest                      | vita       | life                       |
| socius   | ally, comrade               | vōx        | voice, speech, re-<br>mark |
| soror    | sister                      |            |                            |

## ADVERBS, CONJUNCTIONS, PREPOSITIONS

|               |   |                |   |
|---------------|---|----------------|---|
| ā, ab         | away from, by   | longē          | by far  |
| ad            | to  | -ne            | ( <i>sign of a question</i> )                           |
| ac, atque     | and also  | nec (neque)    | and not, nor, neither                                   |
| ante          | before ( <i>prep. and<br/>adv.</i> )                  | nec (neque)... |   |
| anteā         | before  | nec (neque)    | neither . . . nor                                       |
| aut           | or  | nōn            | not   |
| aut . . . aut | either . . . or                                       | nunc           | now   |
| certē         | certainly, at least                                   | per            | through   |
| cum           | with ( <i>prep.</i> )                                 | post           | after, behind ( <i>prep.</i> )                          |
| cūr           | why   | postea         | afterwards  |
| dē            | down from, con-<br>cerning                            | prō            | in front of, on be-<br>half of                          |
| ē, ex         | out of, from  | quam           | than ( <i>conj.</i> ), how<br>( <i>adv. of degree</i> ) |
| et            | and, also, even                                       | -que           | and   |
| etiam         | even  | sed            | but   |
| iam           | by this time, al-<br>ready                            | trāns          | across  |
| in            | in, on ( <i>w. abl.</i> ); into<br>( <i>w. acc.</i> ) | tum            | then  |
|               |   | ubi            | where, when   |

## PRONOUNS, ADJECTIVES

|          |                                       |           |  |
|----------|---------------------------------------|-----------|--|
| aequus   | level, even, just,<br>fair            | finitimus | neighboring                                      |
| altus    | high, deep                            | hic       | this, <i>as adj.</i> ; he, <i>as<br/>pron.</i>   |
| amicus   | friendly ( <i>as noun,</i><br>friend) | īdem      | the same   |
| amplus   | large, distinguished                  | ipse      | self, the very                                   |
| barbarus | foreign, barbarous                    | ille      | that, he   |
| bonus    | good                                  | inimicus  | unfriendly, hostile<br>( <i>as noun, enemy</i> ) |
| certus   | fixed, certain                        | iniquus   | uneven, unfavor-<br>able, unjust                 |
| crēber   | frequent, thick                       | integer   | whole, unimpaired                                |
| ēgregius | eminent, unusual                      |           |  |

PRONOUNS, ADJECTIVES — *Continued*

|              |   |              |                                      |
|--------------|---|--------------|--------------------------------------|
| is           | this, that, <i>as adj.</i> ;<br>he, <i>as pron.</i> | pūblicus     | belonging to the<br>state, official, |
| liber        | free  |              | public                               |
| longus       | long  | pulcher      | beautiful                            |
| magnus       | large   | quis         | who ( <i>interrogative</i> )         |
| medius       | middle, middle of                                   | reliquus     | the rest, remaining,<br>remainder of |
| meus         | my, mine  | sacer        | sacred                               |
| noster       | our   | tardus       | slow, late                           |
| nōtus        | known   | timidus      | fearful                              |
| novus        | new   | ūnus...decem | one . . . ten                        |
| parvus       | small   | tuus         | your                                 |
| pauci        | few   | vērus        | true                                 |
| primus . . . |   | vester       | your                                 |
| decimus      | first . . . tenth                                   |              |                                      |

## SECOND HALF YEAR

## VERBS

|             |                                  |            |                             |
|-------------|----------------------------------|------------|-----------------------------|
| antecēdō    | go before, precede               | praesum    | be in command of            |
| appropinquō | draw near to, ap-<br>proach      | premō      | press, oppress              |
| audiō       | hear                             | quaerō     | seek, inquire               |
| coepi       | began                            | rīdēō      | laugh                       |
| concitō     | arouse, excite                   | sciō       | know                        |
| cōnfidō     | trust                            | sentīō     | feel, realize               |
| cupiō       | desire                           | serviō     | serve                       |
| dēligō      | select, choose                   | sūmō       | take, assume                |
| dēmōnstrō   | point out, show                  | superō     | overcome, excel,<br>surpass |
| dēsum       | be lacking                       | temptō     | test, try, attempt          |
| doceō       | teach, show                      | trahō      | drag                        |
| dormiō      | sleep                            | trādūcō    | lead across                 |
| dubitō      | doubt, hesitate                  | vincō      | conquer                     |
| ēripiō      | snatch away                      | vulnerō    | wound                       |
| ignōrō      | be ignorant of                   | claudō     | close, confine              |
| imperō      | command, order                   | exclūdō    | shut out                    |
| incendō     | set on fire                      | interclūdō | shut off, cut off,<br>stop  |
| invidēō     | envy                             | dō         | give                        |
| legō        | pick, gather, read               | abdō       | put away, hide              |
| licet       | it is lawful, it is<br>permitted | addō       | add                         |
| mūniō       | fortify                          | circumdō   | put around, sur-<br>round   |
| noceō       | injure                           | reddō      | give back                   |
| ōdi         | hate                             | trādō      | hand over                   |
| persuādeō   | persuade                         | faciō      | do, make                    |
| perterreō   | alarm                            | cōnficiō   | finish, exhaust             |
| praeciپیō   | order, instruct, ad-<br>vise     | dēficiō    | fail, revolt, rebel         |
| praedicō    | foretell                         | exciپیō    | take, accept                |

VERBS — *Continued*

|            |                            |             |   |
|------------|----------------------------|-------------|---|
| interficiō | kill                       | ascendō     | climb, ascend,<br>mount   |
| perficiō   | accomplish                 | dēscendō    | descend   |
| praeфициō  | put in charge of           | sedeō       | sit   |
| reficiō    | repair                     | obsideō     | besiege   |
| satisfaciō | satisfy                    | cōsistō     | take one's place,<br>stop   |
| iaciō      | throw, hurl                | dēsistō     | desist from cease   |
| adiciō     | throw to, add              | resistō     | resist  |
| coniciō    | hurl                       | spērō       | hope  |
| dēiciō     | throw down                 | dēspērō     | lose hope, despair  |
| ēiciō      | throw out                  | exstruō     | pile up, erect  |
| obiciō     | throw against, op-<br>pose | instruō     | arrange   |
| prōiciō    | throw forward              | contendō    | struggle, hasten  |
| reiciō     | throw back                 | ostendō     | show  |
| traiciō    | throw across, pierce       | veniō       | come  |
| maneō      | remain                     | circumveniō | come around, sur-<br>round  |
| permaneō   | remain, hold out           | conveniō    | come together   |
| remaneō    | stay behind, re-<br>main   | inveniō     | come upon, find   |
| pellō      | drive, defeat              | pervenio    | come through, ar-<br>rive   |
| expellō    | drive out                  | recipiō     | take back ( <i>esp. with</i><br><i>sē, withdraw</i> ), re-<br>ceive |
| impellō    | drive on, excite           | submittō    | send to the assist-<br>ance of, yield to                            |
| repellō    | drive back, repulse        | succēdō     | come up, succeed  |
| pōnō       | put, place                 |             |   |
| dēpōnō     | put down, put aside        |             |   |
| expōnō     | set forth, explain         |             |   |
| oppōnō     | put against, oppose        |             |   |
| prōpōnō    | put before, propose        |             |   |

## NOUNS

|                     |                               |                     |  |
|---------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------|--|
| aciēs               | line of battle                | exercitus           | army   |
| adventus            | a coming (to), ar-<br>rival   | exitus              | a going forth, out-<br>come, departure         |
| aetās               | age                           | fidēs               | good faith, protec-<br>tion                    |
| altitudō            | height, depth                 | finis               | end, <i>plur.</i> , boun-<br>daries, territory |
| beneficium          | kindness                      | genus               | race, kind                                     |
| cīvis               | citizen                       | hostis              | enemy (of the state)                           |
| cohors              | cohort                        | imperātor           | commander, general                             |
| cōpia               | supply; <i>plur.</i> , forces | imperium            | command, power                                 |
| condiciō            | condition, terms              | inopia              | need, lack                                     |
| consuētūdō          | custom, habit                 | iter                | journey  |
| cornū               | horn, wing (of army)          | iūs                 | justice, right                                 |
| corpus              | body                          | laus                | praise   |
| cupiditās           | desire, greed                 | magnitūdō           | size, importance                               |
| diēs                | day                           | manus ( <i>f.</i> ) | hand, group, force                             |
| difficultās         | difficulty                    | mare                | sea  |
| dolor               | grief                         | mēns                | mind   |
| domus ( <i>f.</i> ) | home, house                   |                     |  |
| equitātus           | cavalry                       |                     |  |

NOUNS — *Continued*

|                  |                   |                      |                         |
|------------------|-------------------|----------------------|-------------------------|
| <b>modus</b>     | manner            | <b>rēs</b>           | thing                   |
| <b>mōns</b>      | mountain          | <b>rēs frūmen-</b>   |                         |
| <b>mors</b>      | death             | <b>tāria</b>         | grain supplies          |
| <b>multitūdō</b> | multitude         | <b>rēs militāris</b> | military affairs, art   |
| <b>nāvigium</b>  | boat              |                      | of war                  |
| <b>nāvis</b>     | ship              | <b>rēs pūblica</b>   | commonwealth,           |
| <b>nox</b>       | night             |                      | government              |
| <b>ōrātiō</b>    | speaking, speech  | <b>senātus</b>       | senate                  |
| <b>ōrdō</b>      | rank, class       | <b>spatium</b>       | space, time, dis-       |
| <b>pars</b>      | part              |                      | tance                   |
| <b>passus</b>    | pace (about five  | <b>spēs</b>          | hope                    |
|                  | feet)             | <b>timor</b>         | fear                    |
| <b>pōns</b>      | bridge            | <b>turris</b>        | tower                   |
| <b>potestās</b>  | power, authority, | <b>urbs</b>          | city                    |
|                  | chance            | <b>vis</b>           | force, violence;        |
| <b>ratio</b>     | account, theory,  |                      | <i>plur.</i> , strength |
|                  | manner            | <b>vulnus</b>        | wound                   |

## ADVERBS, CONJUNCTIONS, PREPOSITIONS

|                   |                               |                        |                             |
|-------------------|-------------------------------|------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <b>ācritēr</b>    | sharply, fiercely             | <b>interim</b>         | meanwhile                   |
| <b>amplē</b>      | fully                         | <b>magnopere</b>       | greatly                     |
| <b>apud</b>       | among, at the home            | <b>multum</b>          | much                        |
|                   | of                            | <b>nam</b>             | for                         |
| <b>autem</b>      | ( <i>postpositive</i> ) more- | <b>nē . . . quidem</b> | not even                    |
|                   | over, on the other            | <b>ob</b>              | on account of               |
|                   | hand                          | <b>quidem</b>          | ( <i>postpositive</i> ) in- |
| <b>bene</b>       | well                          |                        | deed, certainly,            |
| <b>celeriter</b>  | swiftly, quickly              |                        | at least                    |
| <b>diligenter</b> | with care                     | <b>quod</b>            | because                     |
| <b>enim</b>       | ( <i>postpositive</i> ) for   | <b>propter</b>         | on account of               |
| <b>facile</b>     | easily                        | <b>satis</b>           | enough, quite               |
| <b>fortiter</b>   | bravely                       | <b>sī</b>              | if                          |
| <b>graviter</b>   | heavily, weightily,           | <b>sine</b>            | without                     |
|                   | seriously                     | <b>vērō</b>            | in truth, but               |
| <b>inter</b>      | between, among                |                        |                             |

## PRONOUNS, ADJECTIVES

|                   |                 |                     |                     |
|-------------------|-----------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| <b>ācer</b>       | sharp, keen     | <b>facilis</b>      | easy                |
| <b>celer</b>      | swift           | <b>familiāris</b>   | of the household,   |
| <b>centum</b>     | hundred         |                     | intimate            |
| <b>commūnis</b>   | common          | <b>fortis</b>       | brave               |
| <b>cupidus</b>    | desirous, eager | <b>frūmentārius</b> | pertaining to grain |
| <b>dexter</b>     | right (hand)    | <b>gravis</b>       | heavy, serious      |
| <b>difficilis</b> | difficult       | <b>idōneus</b>      | fit, suitable       |
| <b>ducenti</b>    | two hundred     | <b>immortālis</b>   | without death, im-  |
| <b>ego</b>        | I               |                     | mortal              |
| <b>equester</b>   | cavalry         | <b>incolumis</b>    | unharmcd, safe      |

PRONOUNS, ADJECTIVES — *Continued*

|                     |                             |                      |   |
|---------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------|---|
| <b>levis</b>        | light (in weight)           | <b>recēns</b>        | fresh, new, recent                        |
| <b>militāris</b>    | military                    | <b>sescenti</b>      | six hundred                               |
| <b>mille</b>        | one thousand                | <b>similis</b>       | like                                      |
| <b>multus</b>       | much, many                  | <b>singulāris</b>    | single, unusual                           |
| <b>necessārius</b>  | necessary, urgent           | <b>sinister</b>      | left (hand)                               |
| <b>nōbilis</b>      | (knowable) noble,<br>famous | <b>sui</b>           | himself, herself, it-<br>self, themselves |
| <b>omnis</b>        | every, ( <i>plur.</i> ) all | <b>suus</b>          | his (her, its, their)<br>own              |
| <b>pār</b>          | equal                       | <b>tālis</b>         | such                                      |
| <b>pedester</b>     | infantry ( <i>adj.</i> )    | <b>trecenti</b>      | three hundred                             |
| <b>peritus</b>      | skilled, experienced        | <b>tū</b>            | you                                       |
| <b>plēnus</b>       | full                        | <b>ūndecim . . .</b> |   |
| <b>praesēns</b>     | present, in person          | <b>viginti</b>       | eleven . . . twenty                       |
| <b>propinquus</b>   | near, neighboring           | <b>vivus</b>         | alive                                     |
| <b>quadringenti</b> | four hundred                |                      |   |
| <b>quī</b>          | who                         |                      |   |





# LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

## A

**ā, ab**, *prep. w. abl.*, from, away from, by.

**abdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus**, put away, hide.

**abdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus**, lead away.

**abeō, -īre, -iī, -itus**, go away.

**absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus**, be away, be absent.

**ac**, *see atque*.

**accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus**, approach.

**accidō, -ere, accidī, —, fall to, be-fall, happen (*w. dat.*)**.

**accingō, -ere, -cīnxī, -cīnctus**, gird.

**accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus**, receive.

**accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, blame, accuse.

**ācer, ācris, ācre**, sharp, keen.

**aciēs, aciēī, f.**, battle line.

**ācriter, comp., ācrius, superl., ācer-rimē, adv.**, sharply.

**ad**, *prep. w. acc.*, to, toward, for, near.

**addō, -ere, -didī, -ditus**, add.

**addūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus**, lead to, influence.

**adhibeō, -ēre, -hibuī, -hibitus**, apply, employ, summon.

**adiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus**, throw to, add.

**administrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, manage.

**admirātor, -ōris, m.**, admirer.

**admoneō, -ēre, -monuī, -monitus**, remind.

**adolēscō, -ere, -olēvī, -ultus**, grow up.

**adsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus**, be near, be present.

**adolēscēns, -centis, m.**, a youth.

**adventus, -ūs, m.**, a coming to, arrival.

**aedēs, -ium, f. pl.**, a house.

**aedificium, -ī, n.**, building.

**aeger, -gra, -grum**, sick.

**Aegyptiī, -ōrum, m.**, the Egyptians.

**Aegyptus, -ī, f.**, Egypt.

**aemulātiō, -iōnis, f.**, rivalry.

**aequus, -a, -um**, even, equal, fair, just, calm.

**aes, aeris, n.**, bronze.

**aestās, aestātis, f.**, summer.

**aestimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, estimate, value (*in money*).

**aetās, aetātis, f.**, age, time of life.

**Aetna, -ae, f.**, (Mt.) Etna.

**afferō, afferre, attulī, allātus**, bring (to or against), report.

**afficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus**, affect, afflict with, visit with.

**Āfri, -ōrum, m.**, the Africans.

**Āfrica, -ae, f.**, Africa.

**Āfricanus, -ī, m.**, Africanus.

**ager, agrī, m.**, field, country.

- aggredior, aggredi, aggressus sum, attack.
- agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus, drive, live or spend (*of time*), do, treat, discuss; grātiās agere, thank; triumphum agere, celebrate a triumph.
- agricola, -ae, *m.*, farmer.
- āh! *interj.*, ah!
- āla, -ae, *f.*, wing.
- Albānī, -ōrum, *m.*, the Albans (*people of Alba Longa*).
- albus, -a, -um, white.
- ālea, -ae, *f.*, die (*pl.*, dice).
- Alexandria, -ae, *f.*, Alexandria (*a city in Egypt*).
- Alexandrinī, -ōrum, *m.*, the Alexandrians (*the people of Alexandria*).
- aliēnus, -a, -um, another's, unfavorable, foreign, of no concern.
- aliquis, aliquid, some one, some, any.
- alius, alia, aliud, other, another; alius . . . alius, one . . . another; alii . . . alii, some . . . others.
- alligō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, tie to.
- alō, -ere, alui, alitus, feed, nourish.
- Alpēs, -ium, *f.*, the Alps.
- altē, on high, highly, deeply, far.
- alter, altera, alterum, the other (*of two*); alter . . . alter, the one . . . the other.
- altitūdō, -tūdinis, *f.*, height, depth.
- altus, -a, -um, high, deep, tall.
- ambitiō, -iōnis, *f.*, ambition.
- ambō, -ae, -ō, both.
- ambulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, walk.
- America, -ae, *f.*, America.
- Americānus, -a, -um, American.
- amīcitia, -ae, *f.*, friendship.
- amicus, -a, -um, friendly; amicus, -ī, *m.*, amica, -ae, *f.*, friend.
- āmittō, -ere, āmisi, āmissus, let go, lose.
- amō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, love, like.
- amor, -ōris, *m.*, love.
- amphitheātrum, -ī, *n.*, amphitheater.
- amplē, fully; *comp.*, amplius, more, further.
- amplius, -a, -um, great, large, magnificent.
- Amūlius, -ī, *m.*, Amulius.
- animadvertō, -ere, -verti, -versus, (*turn the mind to*), notice, punish (*w. in and acc.*).
- animus, -ī, *m.*, mind, spirit, courage.
- Anna, -ae, *f.*, Anna.
- annus, -ī, *m.*, year.
- ānser, -eris, *m.*, goose.
- ante, *adv. and prep. w. acc.*, before (*of time or space*).
- anteā, *adv.*, before.
- antecēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessus, go before, precede, take the lead.
- antiquus, -a, -um, ancient, of old.
- aperiō, -īre, -perui, -pertus, open.
- Apollō, -inis, *m.*, Apollo.
- appāreō, -ēre, -pāruī, -pāritūrus, appear, become visible.
- appellō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, call, call upon, name.
- Appius, -ī, *m.*, Appius.
- Appius, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Appius, Appian.
- appropinquō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, draw near to, approach.
- aptus, -a, -um, fit, suitable (*w. dat.*).
- apud, *prep. w. acc.*, among, at the home of.

**aqua**, -ae, *f.*, water.  
**aquaeductus**, -ūs, *m.*, aqueduct.  
**Aquitāni**, -ōrum, *m.*, the Aquitani-  
 ans (*a people in Gaul*).  
**arbitror**, arbitrarī, arbitratūs sum,  
 think, believe.  
**arbor**, -oris, *f.*, tree.  
**arcus**, -ūs, *m.*, arch.  
**arēna**, -ae, *f.*, arena.  
**argentum**, -ī, *n.*, silver.  
**Ariovistus**, -ī, *m.*, Ariovistus (*a*  
*German chieftain*).  
**arma**, -ōrum, *n.*, weapons, arms.  
**armō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, arm.  
**ars**, artis, *f.*, skill, art.  
**arx**, arcis, *f.*, citadel.  
**ascendō**, -ere, ascendī, ascēsus,  
 climb (up), ascend.  
**ascribō**, -ere, ascripsī, ascriptus,  
 add to (*in writing*).  
**Asia**, -ae, *f.*, Asia.  
**Atlanticus**, -a, -um, Atlantic.  
**atque** (ac), *conj.*, and.  
**ātrium**, -ī, *n.*, atrium, hall, house.  
**attingō**, -ere, -tigī, -tactus, touch,  
 reach.  
**auctor**, -ōris, *m.*, maker, author.  
**auctōritās**, -tātis, *f.*, authority,  
 influence.  
**audācia**, -ae, *f.*, boldness.  
**audeō**, -ēre, ausus sum, dare, ven-  
 ture.  
**audiō**, -īre, -ivī, -ītus, hear.  
**augeō**, -ēre, auxī, auctus, increase.  
**aureus**, -a, -um, of gold, golden.  
**auriga**, -ae, *m.*, charioteer.  
**auris**, -is, *f.*, ear.  
**aurōra**, -ae, *f.*, dawn.  
**aurum**, -ī, *n.*, gold.  
**aut**, or; **aut . . . aut**, either . . .  
 or.

**autem**, *conj.* (*never first word*),  
 moreover, on the other hand.  
**auxilium**, -ī, *n.*, help, aid, assist-  
 ance; *pl.*, reinforcements.  
**āvertō**, -ere, āvertī, āversus, turn  
 away from.  
**avis**, -is, *f.*, bird.  
**avus**, -ī, *m.*, grandfather.  
**axis**, -is, *m.*, axletree.

## B

**Bacchus**, -ī, *m.*, Bacchus (*god of*  
*wine*).  
**barbarus**, -a, -um, foreign, bar-  
 barous; **barbarus**, -ī, *m.*, a bar-  
 barian.  
**Belgae**, -ārum, *m.*, the Belgians.  
**bellum**, -ī, *n.*, war; **bellum gerere**,  
 wage or carry on war.  
**bene**, *adv.*, well, well done; *comp.*,  
 melius, better; *superl.*, optimē,  
 best.  
**beneficium**, -ī, *n.*, kindness.  
**bibō**, -ere, bibī, —, drink.  
**bis**, *adv.*, twice.  
**bonus**, -a, -um, good; *comp.*,  
 melior, melius, better; *superl.*,  
 optimus, -a, -um, best.  
**brācae**, -ārum, *f.*, trousers.  
**Britanni**, -ōrum, *m.*, the Britons.  
**Britannia**, -ae, *f.*, Britain.  
**Brūtus**, -ī, *m.*, Brutus.

## C

**C.**, *abbreviation for Gāius*.  
**cadō**, -ere, cecidī, cāsus, fall.  
**caedō**, -ere, cecidī, caesus, cut, kill.  
**caelum**, -ī, *n.*, sky.  
**Caesar**, -aris, *m.*, Caesar.  
**calamitās**, -tātis, *f.*, misfortune.

- callidus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, crafty, clever.  
**Campānia**, -ae, *f.*, Campania (*a district of Italy*).  
**Campus Mārtius**, **Campī Mārtī**, *m.*, Campus Martius (*a place of assembly in Rome*).  
**candidus**, -a, -um, white.  
**Caninius**, -ī, *m.*, Caninius.  
**canis**, -is, *m. and f.*, dog.  
**Cannēnsis**, -e, *adj.*, of Cannae.  
**canō**, -ere, **cecinī**, **cantus**, *sing.*  
**Capēna**, *see porta*.  
**capiō**, -ere, **cēpī**, **captus**, take, seize, capture.  
**Capitōlium**, -ī, *n.*, the Capitol (*temple of Jupiter, at Rome*); the Capitoline Hill.  
**captivus**, -ī, *m.*, prisoner.  
**caput**, **capitis**, *n.*, head.  
**carmen**, -minis, *n.*, song.  
**carrus**, -ī, *m.*, cart, wagon.  
**Carthāginiēnsēs**, -ium, *m.*, the Carthaginians.  
**Carthāgō**, -inis, *f.*, Carthage (*a city in Africa*).  
**cārus**, -a, -um, dear.  
**castra**, -ōrum, *n.*, camp; **castra pōnere**, pitch camp; **castra movēre**, break camp.  
**cāsus**, -ūs, *m.*, fall, chance, accident.  
**Catīlina**, -ae, *m.*, Catiline.  
**causa**, -ae, *f.*, cause, reason; **causās ōrāre**, plead cases; **causā**, by reason of, for the sake of.  
**cēdō**, -ere, **cessī**, **cessus**, move, retreat.  
**celer**, **celeris**, **celere**, swift.  
**celeritās**, -tātis, *f.*, swiftness, speed.  
**celeriter**, *comp.*, **celerius**, quickly.  
**Celtae**, -ārum, *m.*, Celts (*a people of Gaul*).  
**cēna**, -ae, *f.*, dinner.  
**centum**, hundred.  
**cēra**, -ae, *f.*, wax.  
**Cerēs**, -eris, *f.*, Ceres (*goddess of agriculture*).  
**cernō**, -ere, **crēvī**, **crētus**, separate, discern, *see*.  
**certē**, certainly, at least.  
**certus**, -a, -um, fixed, certain, sure; **certiōrem eum facere dē**, inform him about.  
**cēterī**, -ae, -a, the other, the rest.  
**Christus**, -ī, *m.*, Christ.  
**cibus**, -ī, *m.*, food.  
**Cicerō**, -ōnis, *m.*, Cicero.  
**Cimbri**, -ōrum, *m.*, the Cimbri (*a people of Germany*).  
**Cincinnātus**, -ī, *m.*, Cincinnatus.  
**Cinna**, -ae, *m.*, Cinna.  
**circum**, *prep. w. acc.*, around.  
**circumdō**, -dare, -dedī, -datus, put around, surround.  
**circumveniō**, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, surround.  
**circus**, -ī, *m.*, circle, circus (*esp. the Circus Maximus at Rome*).  
**cīvis**, **cīvis**, *m.*, citizen.  
**cīvītās**, -tātis, *f.*, citizenship, state.  
**clāmō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, cry out, shout.  
**clāmor**, -ōris, *m.*, shout.  
**clārus**, -a, -um, clear, brilliant, famous.  
**claudō**, -ere, **clausī**, **clausus**, close.  
**clēmēter**, mildly, with forbearance.  
**Cleopātra**, -ae, *f.*, Cleopatra (*queen of Egypt*).  
**Coclēs**, *see Horātius*.  
**coepī**, **coepisse**, **coeptus** (*used only in perf. tenses*), began.

**cognātus**, -ī, *m.*, relative.

**cognōmen**, -inis, *n.*, cognomen, surname.

**cognōscō**, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus, learn, recognize; *perf. tenses*, have learned, know, understand.

**cōgō**, -ere, cōēgī, cōāctus, drive together, collect, compel.

**cohors**, cohortis, *f.*, cohort (*a division of the Roman army*).

**colō**, -ere, coluī, cultus, till, dwell in, worship.

**colōnia**, -ae, *f.*, colony.

**colōnus**, -ī, *m.*, settler.

**Columbus**, -ī, *m.*, Columbus.

**comes**, comitis, *m.*, comrade.

**Comitium**, -ī, *n.*, the Comitium (*the assembly place of the Romans*).

**commeō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, visit.

**committō**, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, join together, commit, intrust; **proelium committere**, begin battle.

**commodē**, suitably, conveniently.

**commodus**, -a, -um, suitable, convenient.

**commoveō**, -āre, -mōvī, -mōtus, move away, disturb.

**communis**, -e, common.

**comparō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, get ready, get together, prepare.

**compellō**, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus, drive together, collect.

**compleō**, -ēre, -plēvī, -plētus, fill up.

**concitō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, arouse, excite.

**concordia**, -ae, *f.*, harmony.

**concurrō**, -ere, -currī, -cursus, run together, rush.

**condiciō**, -ōnis, *f.*, condition, terms.  
**cōnferō**, cōnferre, contulī, collātus, bring together, collect.

**cōnficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, (do thoroughly), complete, exhaust.

**cōnfidō**, -ere, cōnfishus sum, have confidence (in), be confident.

**cōnfirmō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, make firm, encourage, establish.

**cōnflō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, melt.

**congregior**, congregī, congressus sum, come together with, fight with.

**coniciō**, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, throw (forcibly), throw together.

**coniungō**, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūctus, join with, unite.

**cōnor**, cōnārī, cōnātus sum, try.

**cōnscrībō**, -ere, -scripsī, -scriptus, enlist, enroll.

**cōnsequor**, cōnsequī, cōnsecūtus sum, follow, overtake, attain.

**cōnservō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, save, preserve.

**cōnsilium**, -ī, *n.*, plan, prudence, advice.

**cōnsistō**, -ere, cōnstitī, cōnstitus, stand still, stop.

**cōnspiciō**, -ere, -spexī, -spectus, catch sight of, see.

**cōnstituō**, -ere, -stitūī, -stitūtus, set up, establish, determine.

**cōnsuētūdō**, -tūdinis, *f.*, custom, habit.

**cōnsul**, -ulis, *m.*, consul (*the highest Roman official*).

**cōnsulātus**, -ūs, *m.*, consulship.

**cōnsulō**, -ere, -sulūī, -sultus, consult.

**cōnsūmō**, -ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmp-tus, (take wholly), use up, waste.

- contemnō, -ere, -tempſi, -temp-**  
 tus, scorn, despise.  
**contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus,**  
 struggle, hasten.  
**continenter,** continually.  
**contineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus,** hold  
 together, detain, contain, hem in.  
**contrā, adv. and prep. w. acc.,**  
 against.  
**contrahō, -ere, -trāxi, -trāctus,**  
 draw or bring together, contract.  
**conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus,**  
 come together, assemble.  
**convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,** call to-  
 gether, summon.  
**cōpia, -ae, f.,** supply, abundance;  
*pl.*, forces, troops.  
**coquō, -ere, coxi, coctus,** cook.  
**coquus, -ī, m.,** cook.  
**cor, cordis, n.,** heart.  
**Cornēlia, -ae, f.,** Cornelia.  
**Cornēlius, -ī, m.,** Cornelius.  
**cornicen, -cinis, m.,** hornblower.  
**cornū, cornūs, n.,** horn, wing (*of*  
*an army*).  
**corōna, -ae, f.,** crown, wreath.  
**corpus, -poris, n.,** body.  
**Corsica, -ae, f.,** Corsica.  
**cotidiānus, -a, -um,** daily.  
**Crassus, -ī, m.,** Crassus.  
**crātēr, -ēris, m.,** bowl.  
**crēber, -bra, -brum,** frequent, close  
 together.  
**crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus,** believe,  
 intrust (*w. dat.*).  
**creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,** create,  
 elect.  
**crēscō, -ere, crēvī, crētus,** grow,  
 increase.  
**crīmen, -minis, n.,** charge.  
**cruciātus, -ūs, m.,** torture.
- crūdēlis, -e, cruel.**  
**cum, prep. w. abl.,** with.  
**cum, conj.,** when.  
**cupiditās, -tātis, f.,** desire, greed.  
**cupidus, -a, -um,** desirous, eager.  
**cupiō, cupere, cupīvī, cupītus,** de-  
 sire.  
**cūr, adv.,** why.  
**cūra, -ae, f.,** care, concern; (**cum**)  
 magnā cūrā, very carefully.  
**cūrātiō, -ōnis, f.,** cure.  
**currō, -ere, cucurri, cursus,** run.  
**currus, -ūs, m.,** chariot.  
**cursus, -ūs, m.,** course.
- D**
- damnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,** con-  
 demn.  
**dē, prep. w. abl.,** from, down from,  
 concerning.  
**dea, -ae, f.,** goddess.  
**dēbeō, -ēre, dēbui, dēbitus,** ought,  
 owe, be obliged to.  
**dēcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus,** de-  
 part, go away.  
**decem,** ten.  
**December, -bris, m.,** December.  
**decimus, -a, -um,** tenth.  
**dēcipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus,** de-  
 ceive.  
**dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsus,** de-  
 fend.  
**dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus,** carry  
 away, refer, offer.  
**dēficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus,** fail,  
 revolt, rebel.  
**dēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus,** throw  
 from.
- dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus,** select.  
**dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,** point  
 out, show.



- dēns, *dentis*, *m.*, tooth.  
 Dentātus, -ī, *m.*, Dentatus.  
 dēpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, put or lay aside.  
 dēscendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsus, descend.  
 dēserō, -ere, -seruī, -sertus, desert.  
 dēsiliō, -īre, -siluī, -sultus, jump down.  
 dēsīnō, -ere, -sīi, -situs, stop, cease.  
 dēsistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitus, desist from, cease.  
 dēspērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, lose hope, despair.  
 dēspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus, look down on, despise.  
 dēsum, deesse, dēfui, dēfutūrus, be lacking (*w. dat.*).  
 deus, -ī, *m.*, god.  
 dēvorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, swallow.  
 dexter, -tra, -trum, right (*hand*).  
 Diāna, -ae, *f.*, Diana (*goddess of hunting*).  
 Diaulus, -ī, *m.*, Diaulus.  
 dicō, -ere, dixī, dictus, say, tell.  
 dictātor, -ōris, *m.*, dictator.  
 dictātūra, -ae, *f.*, dictatorship.  
 dictum, -ī, *n.*, word, saying.  
 diēs, diēi, *m.*, day.  
 difficilis, -e, difficult.  
 difficultās, -tātis, *f.*, difficulty.  
 digitus, -ī, *m.*, finger.  
 dignē, worthily.  
 dignitās, -tātis, *f.*, worth, position.  
 dignus, -a, -um, worthy.  
 diligenter, with care, diligently.  
 diligētia, -ae, *f.*, carefulness, diligence.  
 dīmīttō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, let go, send away.  
 discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus, go away, depart.  
 discindō, -ere, -cidī, -cissus, tear in pieces.  
 disciplīna, -ae, *f.*, training, instruction, learning.  
 discipulus, -ī, *m.*, discipula, -ae, *f.*, learner, pupil.  
 discō, -ere, didicī, —, learn.  
 dissimilis, -e, unlike.  
 distribuō, -ere, -tribuī, -tribūtus, distribute.  
 diū, *comp.*, diūtius, *superl.*, diūtissimē, *adv.*, for a long time.  
 diurnus, -a, -um, daily, by day.  
 dīvidō, -ere, -visī, -vīsus, divide.  
 dō, dare, dedī, datus, give; poenam dare, pay the penalty.  
 doceō, -ēre, docuī, doctus, teach.  
 dolor, -ōris, *m.*, grief, pain.  
 dominus, -ī, *m.*, master, lord, ruler.  
 domus, -ūs, *f.*, house, home.  
 dōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, give, present.  
 donum, ī, *n.*, gift.  
 dormiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, sleep.  
 dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, doubt, hesitate.  
 ducentī, -ae, -a, two hundred.  
 dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus, lead.  
 dulcis, -e, sweet.  
 dum, *conj.*, while.  
 duo, -ae, -o, two.  
 duodecim, twelve.  
 duodēvigintī, eighteen.  
 duplex, *gen. duplicis*, *adj.*, twofold, double.  
 dūrus, -a, -um, hard, harsh.  
 dux, ducis, *m.*, leader, general.



## E

**ē, ex, prep. w. abl.,** from, out from, out of.

**ecce, interj.,** behold!

**edō, -ere, ēdī, ēsus, eat.**

**ēdō, -ere, ēdidi, ēditus, put forth, publish.**

**ēducō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, bring up, educate.**

**ēducō, -ere, ēdūxī, ēductus, lead out.**

**effeminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, weaken.**

**efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, make out, bring about, complete.**

**ego, meī, I.**

**ēgregius, -a, -um, distinguished, excellent.**

**ēiciō, -ere, ēiēcī, ēiectus, throw or thrust out.**

**elephantus, -ī, m., elephant.**

**em! interj.,** here! there! take that!

**emō, -ere, ēmī, ēmptus, get, buy.**

**enim, conj. (never first word),** for.

**eō, ire, ii, itus, go.**

**eō, adv.,** there.

**Ēpīrus, -ī, f., Epirus (a province in Greece).**

**epistula, -ae, f., letter.**

**eques, equitis, m., horseman.**

**equester, -tris, -tre, adj., cavalry.**

**equitātus, -ūs, m., cavalry.**

**equus, -ī, m., horse.**

**ēripiō, -ere, ēripiū, ēreptus, snatch away.**

**ērumpō, -ere, ērūpī, ēruptus, burst forth.**

**et, conj.,** and, even; et . . . et, both . . . and.

**etiam, adv.,** also, even, too.

**Etrūscī, -ōrum, m., the Etruscans.**

**Eurōpa, -ae, f., Europe.**

**ēvādō, -ere, ēvāsī, ēvāsus, go out, escape.**

**ēvertō, -ere, ēvertī, ēversus, overturn.**

**ēvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, summon.**

**excēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus, go away, depart.**

**excipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, take, accept.**

**exclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsus, shut out.**

**exemplum, -ī, n., sample, example, model.**

**exeō, -ire, -iī, -itus, go out or forth.**

**exerceō, -ēre, -ercuī, -ercitus, occupy, train.**

**exercitus, -ūs, m., (trained) army.**

**exigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctus, drive out, demand.**

**exiguē, hardly.**

**existimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, think, consider.**

**exitus, -ūs, m., a going forth, outcome, departure.**

**expediō, -ire, -ivī, -itus, set free.**

**expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus, drive out.**

**experior, experiri, expertus sum, test, try, experience.**

**explicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, unfold, spread out, explain.**

**explōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, investigate, explore.**

**expōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, set forth, explain.**

**expugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, capture by assault.**

**exsilium, -ī, n., exile.**

**expectō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, look out for, await, wait.  
**extinguō**, -ere, -stīnxī, -stīnctus, extinguish, destroy.  
**exstruō**, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus, pile up, build up.  
**extrēmus**, -a, -um, farthest, last, end of.

## F

**Fabiānus**, -ī, *m.*, Fabianus.  
**Fabius**, -ī, *m.*, Fabius.  
**Fabricius**, -ī, *m.*, Fabricius.  
**fābula**, -ae, *f.*, story.  
**faciēs**, -iēī, *f.*, face, appearance.  
**facile**, *adv.*, easily.  
**facilis**, -e, easy.  
**faciō**, -ere, fēcī, factus, do, make, hold; **verba facere**, speak, make a speech; **certiorem eum facere** dē, inform him about.  
**factum**, -ī, *n.*, deed.  
**fallō**, -ere, fefellī, falsus, deceive.  
**falsus**, -a, -um, false.  
**falx**, falcis, *f.*, sickle, pruning hook.  
**fāma**, -ae, *f.*, report, fame, reputation.  
**familia**, -ae, *f.*, household, family.  
**familiāris**, -e, (belonging to the family), friendly; *as noun*, friend.  
**fateor**, fatērī, fassus sum, confess.  
**fātum**, -ī, *n.*, fate; *often personified*, the Fates.  
**Faustulus**, -ī, *m.*, Faustulus.  
**faveō**, -ēre, fāvī, fautus, be favorable to (*v. dat.*).  
**feliciter**, *adv.*, happily.  
**fēlix**, -icis, happy.  
**fēmina**, -ae, *f.*, woman.  
**ferō**, *adv.*, almost, about.

**fēriae**, -ārum, holidays.  
**ferō**, ferre, tulī, lātus, bear, carry, bring.  
**ferrum**, -ī, *n.*, iron.  
**fīdēs**, -eī, *f.*, good faith, protection.  
**fīlia**, -ae, *f.*, daughter.  
**fīlius**, -ī, *m.*, son.  
**fīngō**, -ere, fīnxī, fīctus, shape, form, invent.  
**fīnis**, fīnis, *m.*, end, limit; *pl.*, borders, territory.  
**fīnitimus**, -a, -um, neighboring; **fīnitimus**, -ī, *m.*, a neighbor.  
**fīō**, fierī, factus sum, become, be made, happen.  
**fīrmus**, -a, -um, strong, steadfast, firm, solid.  
**flāgitō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, demand.  
**flectō**, -ere, flexī, flexus, bend, curve, turn.  
**flēō**, flēre, flēvī, flētus, cry, weep.  
**flōs**, flōris, *m.*, flower.  
**flūmen**, flūminis, *n.*, river.  
**fluō**, -ere, flūxī, flūxus, flow.  
**focus**, -ī, *m.*, hearth.  
**fōns**, fontis, *m.*, spring.  
**fōrma**, -ae, *f.*, shape, image, form.  
**fortasse**, *adv.*, perhaps.  
**fortis**, -e, strong, brave.  
**fortiter**, bravely.  
**fortūna**, -ae, *f.*, fortune.  
**forum**, -ī, *n.*, market place; **Forum** (*at Rome*).  
**fossa**, -ae, *f.*, trench.  
**frangō**, -ere, frēgī, frāctus, break, wreck.  
**frāter**, frātris, *m.*, brother.  
**fraus**, fraudis, *f.*, fraud.  
**frequēns**, *gen. frequentis*, *adj.*, in great numbers, often.  
**frōns**, frontis, *f.*, forehead, front.

**fructus**, -ūs, *m.*, enjoyment, fruit.  
**frumentārius**, *see* **rēs**.  
**frumentum**, -ī, *n.*, grain.  
**frustrā**, *adv.*, in vain.  
**fuga**, -ae, *f.*, flight; **in fugam**  
     **dare**, put to flight.  
**fugiō**, -ere, **fūgī**, **fugitūrus**, flee.  
**fulmen**, -minis, *n.*, lightning.  
**fundō**, -ere, **fūdī**, **fūsus**, pour,  
     rout, scatter.  
**futūrus**, *see* **sum**.

## G

**Gāius**, -ī, *m.*, Gaius.  
**Galba**, -ae, *m.*, Galba.  
**Gallia**, -ae, *f.*, Gaul (*ancient France*).  
**Gallicus**, -a, -um, Gallic.  
**Gallus**, -ī, *m.*, a Gaul.  
**Genava**, -ae, *f.*, Geneva.  
**gener**, -erī, *m.*, son-in-law.  
**gēns**, **gentis**, *f.*, tribe, people, nation.  
**genus**, **generis**, *n.*, birth, race, kind.  
**Germānia**, -ae, *f.*, Germany.  
**Germānus**, -ī, *m.*, a German.  
**gerō**, -ere, **gessī**, **gestus**, carry on, manage, wear; **bellum gerere**, wage war; **sē gerere**, act.  
**gladiātor**, -ōris, *m.*, gladiator.  
**gladius**, -ī, *m.*, sword.  
**glōria**, -ae, *f.*, glory, fame.  
**Gracchus**, -ī, *m.*, Gracchus.  
**gradior**, **gradī**, **gressus sum**, step, walk.  
**Graecia**, -ae, *f.*, Greece.  
**Graecus**, -a, -um, Greek; **Graecus**, -ī, *m.*, a Greek.  
**grātia**, -ae, *f.*, gratitude, favor, influence, grace; **grātiā** ha-

**bēre**, feel grateful; **grātiās agere**, thank; **grātiā**, by reason of, for the sake of.

**grātus**, -a, -um, pleasing, grateful.  
**gravis**, -e, heavy, serious, severe  
**graviter**, seriously.  
**grex**, **gregis**, *m.*, herd.  
**gubernātor**, -ōris, *m.*, pilot, governor.

## H

**ha!** *interj.*, ha!  
**habeō**, -ēre, **habuī**, **habitus**, have, hold, consider; **grātiā** **habēre**, feel grateful (*w. dat.*); **ōrātiōnem habēre**, deliver an oration.  
**habitō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, live.  
**haereō**, -ēre, **haesi**, **haesus**, stick.  
**Hannibal**, -alis, *m.*, Hannibal (*a Carthaginian general*).  
**Helvētiī**, -ōrum, *m.*, the Helvetians (*lived in ancient Switzerland*).  
**herba**, -ae, *f.*, plant.  
**Hibernia**, -ae, *f.*, Ireland.  
**hic**, **haec**, **hoc**, this; *as pron.*, he, she, it.  
**hiems**, **hiemis**, *f.*, winter.  
**Hispānia**, -ae, *f.*, Spain.  
**Hispānus**, -a, -um, Spanish; **Hispānus**, -ī, *m.*, a Spaniard.  
**ho!** *interj.*, ho!  
**homō**, **hominis**, *m.*, man, human being.  
**honestās**, -tātis, *f.*, honor, honesty.  
**honor**, -ōris, *m.*, honor, office.  
**hōra**, -ae, *f.*, hour.  
**Horātius**, -ī, *m.*, Horatius; **Horātius Coclē**s ("One-eye"), *a famous Roman*.  
**hospes**, -pitis, *m.*, guest.  
**hospita**, -ae, *f.*, guest.

**hostis, hostis, m.,** enemy (*usually pl.*).

**hūmānus, -a, -um,** human.

**humilis, -e,** low, humble.

**humiliter,** humbly.

## I

**iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactus,** throw, cast, hurl.

**iam, adv.,** already; **nōn iam,** no longer.

**ibi, adv.,** there.

**īdem, eadem, idem,** same.

**idōneus, -a, -um,** suitable.

**ignis, -is, m.,** fire.

**ignōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus,** be ignorant of, not know.

**ille, illa, illud, demonst. adj.,** that; *as pron.,* he, she, it.

**imāgō, imāginis, f.,** likeness (*i.e. a statue or picture*).

**immortālis, -e,** undying, immortal.

**impedimentum, -ī, n.,** hindrance; *pl.,* baggage.

**impediō, -īre, -īvi, -ītus,** hinder.

**impellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus,** drive on, incite, persuade.

**imperātor, -ōris, m.,** commander, general.

**imperium, -ī, n.,** command, power.

**imperō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus,** command, order, govern (*w. dat.*).

**impetus, -ūs, m.,** attack.

**importō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus,** import.

**improbis, -a, -um,** bad, shameless.

**in, prep. w. acc.,** into, to, against; *w. abl.,* in, on.

**incendō, -ēre, -cendī, -cēnsus,** set on fire, burn.

**incertus, -a, -um,** uncertain.

**incidō, -ere, -cidī, —,** fall into or upon, happen.

**incipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptus,** take to, begin.

**incitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus,** urge on, arouse.

**incolō, -ere, incolui, incultus,** dwell, inhabit.

**incolumis, -e,** unharmed.

**inducō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus,** lead in, induce.

**ineō, -īre, -iī, -ītus,** enter upon; **rationem inire,** make a calculation.

**infāns, -fantis, m., f.,** infant.

**infelicitās, -tātis, f.,** unhappiness.

**Inferī, -ōrum, m. pl.,** those below (*i.e. the shades in Hades*).

**inferior, inferius,** lower.

**inimicus, -a, -um,** unfriendly, hostile; *as noun,* enemy.

**iniquus, -a, -um,** uneven, unfavorable, unjust.

**iniūria, -ae, f.,** wrong, injustice, injury.

**inopia, -ae, f.,** need, lack.

**inquit,** says he, said he.

**insignis, -e,** remarkable, notable.

**instituō, -ere, -stitui, -stitutus,** establish, commence, train.

**instō, -āre, institi, —,** press on, threaten.

**instruō, -ere, -struxi, -structus,** arrange, provide.

**insula, -ae, f.,** island.

**integer, -gra, -grum,** untouched, fresh.

**intellegō, -ere, -lēxi, -lēctus,** understand.

**inter, prep. w. acc.,** between, among.

**intercipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptus,** intercept.  
**interclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsus,** shut off, cut off.  
**interficiō, -ere, -fēci, -fēctus,** kill.  
**interim, adv.,** meanwhile.  
**intermittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus,** let go between, suspend, stop, cease.  
**inveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus,** come upon, find.  
**invidēō, -ēre, -vidī, -vīsus,** be envious toward, envy (*w. dat.*).  
**iō, interj.,** hurrah!  
**ipse, ipsa, ipsum,** self.  
**ira, -ae, f.,** anger.  
**irācundia, -ae, f.,** anger, temper.  
**is, ea, id,** this, that; *as pron.,* he, she, it.  
**Isabella, -ae, f.,** Isabella.  
**ita, adv.,** so, in such a way, thus.  
**Italia, -ae, f.,** Italy.  
**itaque, adv.,** and so, therefore.  
**iter, itineris, n.,** journey, road, march.  
**iterum, adv.,** again, for the second time.  
**iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussus,** order, command.  
**iūdex, iūdicis, m.,** judge, juror.  
**iūdicium, -ī, n.,** trial, judgment.  
**iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,** judge, decide.  
**Jugurtha, -ae, m.,** Jugurtha (*king of Numidia*).  
**Iūlia, -ae, f.,** Julia.  
**Iūlius, -ī, m.,** Julius.  
**iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūnctus,** join to (*w. dat.*).  
**iūnior, adj.,** younger.

**Iūnō, -ōnis, f.,** Juno (*a goddess, wife of Jupiter*).  
**Iuppiter, Iovis, m.,** Jupiter (*king of the gods*).  
**iūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,** swear  
**iūs, iūris, n.,** right, justice.  
**iūs, iūris, n.,** soup.  
**iūste,** justly.  
**iustus, -a, -um,** just.  
**Iuvenālis, -is, m.,** Juvenal.

## L

**L.,** abbreviation for **Lūcius**.  
**lābor, lābī, lāpsus sum,** slip, glide by.  
**labor, -ōris, m.,** work, trouble.  
**labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,** labor, work, suffer.  
**lac, lactis, n.,** milk.  
**Lacedaemoniī, -ōrum, m.,** the Lacedaemonians, Spartans (*a people of southern Greece*).  
**lacrima, -ae, f.,** tear.  
**Laecānia, -ae, f.,** Laecania.  
**lancea, -ae, f.,** spear.  
**lanterna, -ae, f.,** lantern.  
**Lār, Laris, m.,** Lar (*a household god*).  
**lassitūdō, -tūdinis, f.,** weariness.  
**Latīnus, -a, -um, adj.,** Latin, belonging to Latium; **Latīna (lingua),** the Latin language.  
**laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,** praise.  
**laus, laudis, f.,** praise.  
**lava, -ae, f.,** lava.  
**lavō, -āre, lāvī, lautus,** wash.  
**lectica, -ae, f.,** litter, sedan.  
**lēgātus, -ī, m.,** envoy, lieutenant general.  
**legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus,** gather, choose, read.  
**Lentulus, -ī, m.,** Lentulus.  
**levis, -e,** light (*in weight*).

leviter, lightly.  
 levō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, lift.  
 lēx, lēgis, *f.*, law.  
 liber, librī, *m.*, book.  
 liber, -era, -erum, free.  
 liberē, freely.  
 liberī, -ōrum, *m.*, children.  
 liberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, set free.  
 libertās, -tātis, *f.*, freedom.  
 licet, -ēre, licuit, it is permitted.  
 lignum, -ī, *n.*, wood.  
 ligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, tie, bind.  
 lingua, -ae, *f.*, tongue, language.  
 littera, -ae, *f.*, a letter (*of the alphabet*); *pl.*, a letter (*epistle*), literature.  
 lītus, litoris, *n.*, shore.  
 Livius, -ī, *m.*, Livius.  
 locō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, place, put, set.  
 locus, -ī, *m.* (*pl.*, loca, locōrum, *n.*), place.  
 longē, *adv.*, far away.  
 longus, -a, -um, long.  
 loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, talk, speak.  
 lōtus, -ī, *f.*, lotus.  
 Lūcius, -ī, *m.*, Lucius.  
 lūdō, -ere, lūsī, lusus, play.  
 lūdus, -ī, *m.*, game, school (*as a place for exercise*).  
 lūmen, lūminis, *n.*, light.  
 lupa, -ae, *f.*, she-wolf.  
 Lūsitānia, -ae, *f.*, Portugal.  
 lūx, lūcis, *f.*, light.  
 Lycōris, -idis, *f.*, Lycoris.

## M

**M.**, abbreviation for **Mārcus**.

**magis**, *adv.*, more; *superl.*, **maximē**, very, very greatly, especially.

**magister**, -trī, *m.*, teacher.  
**magnitūdō**, -tūdinis, *f.*, greatness, size.  
**magnopere**, *adv.*, greatly.  
**magnus**, -a, -um, big, large, great; *comp.*, **maior**, **maius**, greater; *superl.*, **maximus**, -a, -um, greatest, very great.  
**maior**, *see* **magnus**.  
**male**, *adv.*, badly; *comp.*, **peius**, worse; *superl.*, **pessimē**, worst.  
**maleficium**, -ī, *n.*, harm.  
**mālō**, **mālle**, **māluī**, —, prefer.  
**malus**, -a, -um, bad, evil; *comp.*, **peior**, **peius**, worse; *superl.*, **pessimus**, -a, -um, very bad, worst.  
**mandō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, intrust.  
**Mandubīi**, -ōrum, *m.*, the Mandubīi.  
**maneō**, -ēre, **mānsī**, **mānsus**, remain.  
**manus**, -ūs, *f.*, hand, group, force.  
**Mārcus**, -ī, *m.*, Marcus.  
**mare**, **maris**, *n.*, sea.  
**Maria**, -ae, *f.*, Maria, Mary.  
**marītus**, -ī, *m.*, husband.  
**Marius**, -ī, *m.*, Marius.  
**Mārs**, **Mārtis**, *m.*, Mars (*god of war*).  
**māter**, **mātris**, *f.*, mother.  
**māteria**, -ae, *f.*, matter, timber.  
**mātrimōnium**, -ī, *n.*, marriage.  
**mātrōna**, -ae, *f.*, married woman, matron.  
**mātūrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, hasten.  
**mātūrus**, -a, -um, ripe, early.  
**maximē**, *see* **magis**.  
**maximus**, -a, -um, *see* **magnus**.  
**Maximus**, -ī, *m.*, Maximus.  
**medicus**, -ī, *m.*, doctor.



**Mediterrâneum** (**Mare**), Mediter-  
ranean Sea.

**medius**, -a, -um, middle, middle of.  
**mel**, **mellis**, *n.*, honey.

**melior**, *see* **bonus**.

**memor**, *gen. memoris*, *adj.*, mind-  
ful of, remembering (*w. gen.*).

**memoria**, -ae, *f.*, memory; **memo-  
riâ tenêre**, remember.

**mêns**, **mentis**, *f.*, mind.

**mênsa**, -ae, *f.*, table.

**mênsis**, -is, *m.*, month.

**mercâtor**, -tôris, *m.*, trader, mer-  
chant.

**Mercurius**, -i, *m.*, Mercury.

**mereô**, -êre, **merui**, **meritus**, de-  
serve, earn.

**meridiânus**, -a, -um, noon.

**mêta**, -ae, *f.*, goal, turning post  
(*in the Circus*).

**mêtior**, **mêtiri**, **mênsus sum**, meas-  
ure, deal out.

**meus**, -a, -um, mine, my.

**migrô**, -âre, -âvi, -âtus, depart.

**miles**, **militis**, *m.*, soldier.

**militâris**, -e, military.

**mille**, *pl.*, **milia**, thousand.

**Minerva**, -ae, *f.*, Minerva (*goddess  
of wisdom*).

**minimê**, *see* **minus**.

**minus**, -a, -um, *see* **parvus**.

**minor**, *see* **parvus**.

**Minucius**, -i, *m.*, Minucius.

**minus**, *adv.*, less; *superl.*, **minimê**,  
least.

**mîror**, **mîrârî**, **mîrâtus sum**, wonder,  
admire.

**Mithridâtês**, -is, *m.*, Mithridates  
(*king of Pontus in Asia Minor*).

**Mithridâticus**, -a, -um, Mithri-  
datic, with Mithridates.

**mittô**, -ere, **misi**, **missus**, let go,  
send.

**modus**, -i, *m.*, measure, limit, man-  
ner, kind.

**moneô**, -êre, **monui**, **monitus**, re-  
mind, warn.

**môn**s, **montis**, *m.*, mountain; **sum-  
mus môns**, the top of the moun-  
tain.

**mônstrô**, -âre, -âvi, -âtus, point  
out, show.

**mors**, **mortis**, *f.*, death.

**mortuus**, -a, -um, dead.

**môs**, **môris**, *m.*, custom.

**moveô**, -êre, **môvi**, **môtus**, move;  
**castra movêre**, break camp.

**mox**, *adv.*, soon.

**mulier**, **mulieris**, *f.*, woman.

**multitûdô**, -tûdinis, *f.*, multitude,  
great number.

**multum**, *adv.*, much; *comp.*, **plûs**,  
more; *superl.*, **plûrimum**, most.

**multus**, -a, -um, much; *pl.*, many;  
*comp.*, **plûrês**, **plûra**, more;  
*superl.*, **plûrimus**, -a, -um, most.

**mûniô**, -îre, -îvi, -îtus, fortify, de-  
fend; **viam mûnîre**, build a  
road.

**mûnus**, **mûneris**, *n.*, duty, service,  
gift.

**mûrus**, -i, *m.*, wall.

**mûtô**, -âre, -âvi, -âtus, change.

## N

**nam**, *conj.*, for.

**nârrô**, -âre, -âvi, -âtus, tell, relate.

**nâscor**, **nâscî**, **nâtus sum**, be born.

**Nâsica**, -ae, *m.*, Nasica.

**nâtûra**, -ae, *f.*, nature.

**nausea**, -ae, *f.*, seasickness, nausea.

**nauta**, -ae, *m.*, sailor.



**nāvigium**, -ī, *n.*, boat.  
**nāvigō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, sail.  
**nāvis**, *nāvis*, *f.*, ship.  
**nē**, *conj.*, not, that not, lest; **nē**  
 . . . **quidem** (*emphatic word be-*  
*tween*), not even.  
**-ne** (*enclitic*), introduces questions.  
**nec**, see **neque**.  
**necessārius**, -a, -um, necessary.  
**necessitās**, -tātis, *f.*, necessity.  
**neglegentia**, -ae, *f.*, negligence.  
**negō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, deny.  
**negōtium**, -ī, *n.*, business.  
**nēmō**, *dat.* **nēmīni**, *acc.* **nēmīnem**  
 (*no other forms*), no one.  
**nepōs**, -ōtis, *m.*, grandson.  
**Neptūnus**, -ī, *m.*, Neptune (*god of*  
*the sea*).  
**neque** (*or nec*), and not, nor;  
**neque** . . . **neque**, neither . . .  
 nor.  
**neuter**, -tra, -trum, neither (*of*  
*two*).  
**niger**, -gra, -grum, black.  
**nihil**, nothing.  
**nisi**, *conj.*, unless, except.  
**niveus**, -a, -um, snow-white.  
**nōbilis**, -e, distinguished, noble.  
**nōbiscum** = **cum nōbīs**.  
**noceō**, -ēre, **nocuī**, **nocitus**, do  
 harm to (*w. dat.*).  
**nōlō**, **nōlle**, **nōluī**, —, be unwilling,  
 not wish.  
**nōmen**, **nōminis**, *n.*, name.  
**nōn**, *adv.*, not.  
**nōnus**, -a, -um, ninth.  
**nōs**, **nostrum**, we, *pl. of ego*.  
**nōscō**, -ere, **nōvī**, **nōtus**, learn; *in*  
*perf. tenses*, I have learned, I  
 know.  
**noster**, -tra, -trum, our.

**nōtus**, -a, -um, known, familiar.  
**novem**, nine.  
**novus**, -a, -um, new, strange.  
**nox**, **noctis**, *f.*, night.  
**nūllus**, -a, -um, no, none, no one.  
**numerus**, -ī, *m.*, number.  
**Numidia**, -ae, *f.*, Numidia (*a*  
*country in Africa*).  
**Numitor**, -ōris, *m.*, Numitor.  
**numquam**, *adv.*, never.  
**nunc**, *adv.*, now.  
**nūntiō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, report,  
 announce.  
**nūntius**, -ī, *m.*, messenger.  
**nūper**, *adv.*, recently.

## O

**Ō**, *interj.*, O!  
**ob**, *prep. w. acc.*, toward, on ac-  
 count of, for.  
**obiciō**, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, throw  
 against, oppose.  
**obliviō**, -ōnis, *f.*, forgetfulness.  
**obsideō**, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessus, be-  
 siege.  
**obtimeō**, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus, ob-  
 tain.  
**occāsiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, opportunity.  
**occidō**, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus, kill.  
**occupō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, seize.  
**occurrō**, -ere, -currī, -cursus, run  
 against, meet (*w. dat.*), occur.  
**Ōceanus**, -ī, *m.*, ocean (*esp. the*  
*Atlantic Ocean*).  
**octāvus**, -a, -um, eighth.  
**octō**, eight.  
**oculus**, -ī, *m.*, eye.  
**ōdī**, **ōdisse**, **ōsūrus**, hate.  
**officium**, -ī, *n.*, duty.  
**ōh!** *interj.*, oh!  
**oho!** *interj.*, oho!

olim, *adv.*, sometime, once upon a time.

omnis, omne, all, every.

opera, -ae, *f.*, work; meā operā, through my efforts.

oportet, -ēre, oportuit, it is fitting, ought.

oppidum, -ī, *n.*, town.

oppōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, put against, oppose.

opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus, overwhelm, surprise.

oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, attack.

optimē, *see bene*.

optimus, *see bonus*.

opus, operis, *n.*, work.

ōrāculum, -ī, *n.*, oracle, prophecy.

ōrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, speech; ōrātiōnem habēre, deliver an oration.

ōrātor, -ōris, *m.*, speaker, orator.

ōrdō, ōrdinis, *m.*, order, rank; ex ōrdine, in turn.

Orgetorix, -īgis, *m.*, Orgetorix (*a Helvetian chieftain*).

orior, orīrī, ortus sum, arise, rise.

ōrnāmentum, -ī, *n.*, ornament, jewel.

ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, beg, ask; causās ōrāre, plead cases.

ōsculum, -ī, *n.*, kiss.

ostendō, -ere, ostendī, ostentus, (stretch out), show, display.

ōtium, -ī, *n.*, leisure, rest.

ovis, -is, *f.*, sheep.

## P

P., *abbreviation for Pūblius*.

pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, pacify, subdue.

paene, *adv.*, almost.

pāgina, -ae, *f.*, page.

pār, *gen. paris*, equal (*w. dat.*).

parātus, -a, -um, prepared, ready.

parcē, *adv.*, sparingly.

parcō, -ere, peperci, parsus, spare, save (*w. dat.*).

pāreō, -ēre, pārui, pāritus, (appear), be obedient to, obey (*w. dat.*).

parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, get, get ready, prepare.

pars, partis, *f.*, part, side.

parvus, -a, -um, small; *comp.*, minor, minus, less; *superl.*, minimus, -a, -um, least.

passus, -ūs, *m.*, pace (*about five feet*); mille passūs, a mile.

pāstor, -ōris, *m.*, shepherd.

pater, patris, *m.*, father.

patior, patī, passus sum, suffer, endure.

patria, -ae, *f.*, fatherland, country.

paucī, -ae, -a, few.

paulātim, *adv.*, little by little.

paulō, *adv.*, shortly, a little.

pauper, *gen. pauperis*, *adj.*, poor.

paupertās, -tātis, *f.*, poverty.

pāx, pācis, *f.*, peace.

pecūnia, -ae, *f.*, money.

pecus, pecoris, *n.*, cattle.

pedester, -tris, -tre, *adj.*, infantry.

peior, peius, *see malus*.

pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsus, drive, defeat.

Penātēs, -ium, *m.*, the Penates (*household gods*).

pendō, -ere, pependī, pēnsus, hang, weigh, pay.

per, *prep. w. acc.*, through, by.

perducō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, lead through, extend.

perficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, finish.

**perfodiō**, -ere, -fōdī, -fossus, pierce.

**periculum**, -ī, *n.*, danger, trial.

**peritus**, -a, -um, skilled, experienced.

**permaneō**, -ēre, -mānsī, -mānsus, stay to the end, remain.

**permittō**, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, let go through, allow, intrust (*w. dat.*).

**permoveō**, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, move throughout or deeply, induce.

**permūtātiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, exchange.

**perpetuus**, -a, -um, constant.

**persōna**, -ae, *f.*, character, person.

**persuādeō**, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsus, persuade (*w. dat.*).

**perterreō**, -ēre, -terrui, -territus, frighten thoroughly, alarm.

**pertineō**, -ēre, -tinui, -tentus, (*w. ad*), extend to, pertain to.

**pervenio**, -ire, -vēnī, -ventus, come through, arrive.

**pēs**, **pedis**, *m.*, foot; **pedibus**, on foot.

**pessimus**, -a, -um, *see* **malus**.

**petō**, -ere, **petivī**, **petitus**, seek, ask.

**pictūra**, -ae, *f.*, picture.

**pila**, -ae, *f.*, ball.

**pingō**, -ere, **pīnxi**, **pictus**, paint, embroider.

**pīrāta**, -ae, *m.*, pirate.

**pīus**, -a, -um, dutiful, loyal.

**placeō**, -ēre, **placui**, **placitus**, be pleasing to (*w. dat.*).

**plānus**, -a, -um, level, plane.

**plēbs**, **plēbis**, *f.*, the people, the common people.

**plēnus**, -a, -um, full.

**plicō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, fold.

**Plīnius**, -ī, *m.*, Pliny (*a Roman author*).

**plūrēs**, **plūra**, more, *see* **multus**.

**plūrimus**, *see* **multus**.

**plūs**, *see* **multum**, **multus**.

**poena**, -ae, *f.*, penalty, punishment; **poenam dare**, pay the penalty.

**poēta**, -ae, *m.*, poet.

**pompa**, -ae, *f.*, parade.

**Pompeius**, -ī, *m.*, Pompey.

**pōnō**, -ere, **posui**, **positus**, put, place, set; **castra pōnere**, pitch camp.

**pōns**, **pontis**, *m.*, bridge.

**pontifex**, -ficis, *m.*, priest.

**Pontus**, -ī, *m.*, the region south of the Black Sea.

**populus**, -ī, *m.*, people; *pl.*, peoples, nations.

**Porsena**, -ae, *m.*, Porsena.

**porta**, -ae, *f.*, gate; **porta Capēna**, a gate in the wall of Rome.

**portō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, carry.

**portus**, -ūs, *m.*, harbor.

**possum**, **posse**, **potui**, —, can, be able (*w. infin.*).

**post**, *adv. and prep. w. acc.*, behind (*of place*); after (*of time*).

**postea**, *adv.*, afterwards.

**postquam**, *conj.*, after.

**potestās**, -tātis, *f.*, power, authority, chance.

**potior**, **potiri**, **potitus sum**, gain possession of (*w. abl.*).

**prae**, *prep. w. abl.*, before, in front of.

**praecēdō**, -ere, -cessī, -cessus, go before, surpass.

**praeceps**, *gen. praecipitis*, *adj.*, headlong, steep.

- praecipio**, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptus, order, instruct, advise.  
**praeda**, -ae, *f.*, booty, prey.  
**praedicō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, declare, proclaim.  
**praedō**, -ōnis, *m.*, robber.  
**praeficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, put in charge of (*w. acc. and dat.*).  
**praemittō**, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, send ahead.  
**praemium**, -ī, *n.*, reward.  
**praesēns**, *gen. praesentis, adj.*, present, in person.  
**praesidium**, -ī, *n.*, garrison, guard, protection.  
**praestō**, -āre, -stīti, -stitus, stand before, excel (*w. dat.*).  
**praesum**, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, be in charge of (*w. dat.*).  
**praetextus**, -a, -um, woven in front, bordered; *toga praetexta*, a cloak with a purple border, worn by children.  
**prehendō**, -ere, -hendī, -hēnsus, grasp, take hold of.  
**premō**, -ere, pressī, pressus, press, press hard, oppress.  
**pretium**, -ī, *n.*, price.  
**primō**, *adv.*, at first.  
**primus**, -a, -um, first.  
**princeps**, -cipis, *m.*, first man, chief, leader.  
**prō**, *prep. w. abl.*, in front of, before, for.  
**probō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, test, prove, approve.  
**Proca**, -ae, *m.*, Proca.  
**prōcēdō**, -ere, -cessī, -cessus, go forth, advance.  
**procul**, *adv.*, from a distance.  
**procus**, -ī, *m.*, suitor.
- prōducō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, lead forth or out, prolong.  
**proelium**, -ī, *n.*, battle.  
**proficiscor**, proficisci, profectus sum, start, set out.  
**prōgredior**, prōgredi, prōgressus sum, step forward, advance.  
**prohibeō**, -ēre, -hibuī, -hibitus, prevent, keep from.  
**prōiciō**, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, throw forward.  
**prōmittō**, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, promise.  
**properō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, hasten.  
**propinquus**, -a, -um, near.  
**prōpōnō**, -ere, -posuī, -positus, set forth, present, offer.  
**proprius**, -a, -um, one's own, fitting.  
**propter**, *prep. w. acc.*, on account of.  
**prōvideō**, -ēre, -vidī, -vīsus, foresee, provide.  
**prōvincia**, -ae, *f.*, province.  
**proximus**, -a, -um, nearest, next (*w. dat.*).  
**pūblicus**, -a, -um, public.  
**Pūblius**, -ī, *m.*, Publius.  
**puella**, -ae, *f.*, girl.  
**puer**, puerī, *m.*, boy.  
**pugna**, -ae, *f.*, battle.  
**pugnō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, fight.  
**pulcher**, -chra, -chrum, beautiful.  
**Pūnicus**, -a, -um, Punic, Carthaginian.  
**putō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, think.  
**Pyrrhus**, -ī, *m.*, Pyrrhus (*king of Epirus*).

## Q

- Q.**, abbreviation for **Quintus**.  
**quadrīgae**, -ārum, *f.*, a four-horse team, a chariot.

quadringentī, -ae, -a, four hundred.

quaerō, -ere, quaesivī, quaesitus, seek, inquire.

quaestor, -ōris, *m.*, quaestor (*a Roman official*).

quālis, -e, what kind of, such as.

quam, *conj.*, than; *w. superl.*, as . . . as possible.

quamquam, *conj.*, although.

quantus, -a, -um, how great, as (great as).

quārē, why.

quārtus, -a, -um, fourth.

quattuor, four.

-que (*always joined to second word*), and.

quī, quae, quod, *relat. pron.*, who, which, what, that.

quī, quae, quod, *interrog. adj.*, what.

quia, *conj.*, because.

quidam, quaedam, quiddam, a certain one.

quidem (*placed after the word emphasized*), certainly, to be sure.

quiēs, quiētis, *f.*, rest, sleep.

quīndecim, fifteen.

quīque, five.

quīntus, -a, -um, fifth.

Quīntus, -ī, *m.*, Quintus.

quis, quid, *interrog. pron.*, who, what.

quis, quid, *indef. pron.*, any.

quisquis, quidquid, whoever, whatever, what.

quod, *conj.*, because.

quondam, *adv.*, once (upon a time).

quoque, *adv.*, also.

quot, how many.

## R

raeda, -ae, *f.*, four-wheeled carriage, omnibus.

rapidē, swiftly.

rapidus, -a, -um, swift.

rapiō, -ere, rapuī, raptus, seize, carry off.

ratio, -ōnis, *f.*, account, plan, manner, reason.

recēns, *gen. recentis, adj.*, fresh, new, recent.

recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, take back, receive; sē recipere, retreat.

rēctē, rightly.

reddō, -ere, reddidī, redditus, give back, deliver.

redeō, redīre, rediī, reditus, go back.

redigō, -ere, redēgī, redāctus, drive or bring back, reduce.

redimō, -ere, redēmī, redēptus, buy back, ransom.

redūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, lead back, bring back.

referō, referre, rettulī, relātus, bring back, report, give back.

reficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, repair.

rēgālis, -e, regal, kinglike.

rēgia, -ae, *f.*, palace.

rēgīna, -ae, *f.*, queen.

regiō, -ōnis, *f.*, district, region.

rēgnum, -ī, *n.*, royal power, kingdom.

regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctus, rule, guide.

regredior, regredī, regressus sum, go back.

Rēgulus, -ī, *m.*, Regulus.

reiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, throw back.

**relinquō, -ere, -liquī, -lictus**, leave (behind), abandon.

**reliquus, -a, -um**, remaining, rest (of).

**remaneō, -ēre, -mānsī, -mānsūrus**, remain behind, remain.

**remedium, -ī, n.**, remedy.

**remittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus**, relax, send back.

**removeō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus**, move back, remove, withdraw.

**Remus, -ī, m.**, Remus.

**reor, rēri, ratus sum**, think, calculate.

**repellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsus**, drive back, repulse.

**rēs, rei, f.**, thing, matter, affair;  
**rēs frūmentāria**, grain supplies;  
**rēs militāris**, military affairs, art of war;  
**rēs pūblica**, public affairs, government.

**reservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, save up, reserve.

**resistō, -ere, restitī, —**, stand against, resist (*v. dat.*).

**respondeō, -ēre, -spondī, -spōnsus**, answer.

**responsum, -ī, n.**, reply.

**restō, -āre, restitī, —**, remain.

**retexō, -ere, -texuī, textus**, unweave.

**retineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus**, hold back, restrain, keep.

**revertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus**, return (*sometimes deponent*).

**revocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, recall, call back.

**rēx, rēgis, m.**, king.

**Rhēa, -ae, f.**, Rhea.

**Rhēnus, -ī, m.**, the Rhine river.

**rideō, -ēre, rīsī, risus**, laugh (at).

**rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, ask.

**Rōma, -ae, f.**, Rome.

**Rōmānus, -a, -um**, Roman; **Rōmānus, -ī, m.**, a Roman.

**Rōmulus, -ī, m.**, Romulus.

**Rubicō, -ōnis, m.**, the Rubicon (*a river in Italy*).

**ruīna, -ae, f.**, ruin.

**rumpō, -ere, rūpī, ruptus**, break, destroy.

**rūrsus, adv.**, again.

## S

**Sabidius, -ī, m.**, Sabidius.

**Sabinus, -ī, m.**, Sabinus.

**saccus, -ī, m.**, sack.

**sacer, -cra, -crum**, sacred.

**sacerdōs, -ōtis, m. and f.**, priest, priestess.

**saepe, adv.**, often.

**salūs, salutis, f.**, health, safety, greeting.

**salvus, -a, -um**, unhurt, saved.

**sapientia, -ae, f.**, wisdom.

**satis, adv. and indecl. adj.**, enough.

**satisfaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factus**, satisfy.

**Sāturnālia, -ium, n.**, the Saturnalia (*a festival in honor of the god Saturn*).

**Sāturnus, -ī, m.**, Saturn.

**saxum, -ī, n.**, stone, rock.

**scēptrum, -ī, n.**, scepter.

**scientia, -ae, f.**, knowledge.

**sciō, -īre, scivī, scītus**, know.

**Scīpiō, -ōnis, m.**, Scipio.

**scribō, -ere, scripsī, scriptus**, write.

**sēcrētō, adv.**, secretly.

**sēcum = cum sē.**

**secundus, -a, -um**, second.

**sed, conj.**, but.



**sedeō**, -ēre, **sēdī**, sessus, sit.  
**sēdēs**, -is, *f.*, dwelling place.  
**sēditiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, discord.  
**sēmita**, -ae, *f.*, path.  
**semper**, *adv.*, always.  
**senātor**, -ōris, *m.*, senator.  
**senātus**, -ūs, *m.*, senate.  
**senex**, senis, *m.*, old man.  
**sententia**, -ae, *f.*, feeling, opinion, motto.  
**sentiō**, -īre, **sēnsī**, **sēnsus**, feel, realize.  
**sēparō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, separate.  
**septem**, seven.  
**septimus**, -a, -um, seventh.  
**sepulchrum**, -ī, *n.*, tomb.  
**sequor**, sequī, **secūtus sum**, follow, pursue.  
**sermō**, -ōnis, *m.*, talk, conversation.  
**serviō**, -īre, -ivī, -ītus, serve (*w. dat.*).  
**servitūs**, -tūtis, *f.*, slavery.  
**servō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, save, guard, preserve.  
**servus**, -ī, *m.*, slave.  
**sescentī**, -ae, -a, six hundred.  
**sex**, six.  
**sextus**, -a, -um, sixth; **sextus decimus**, sixteenth.  
**sī**, *conj.*, if.  
**Sicilia**, -ae, *f.*, Sicily.  
**signum**, -ī, *n.*, sign, standard, signal.  
**silentium**, -ī, *n.*, silence.  
**silva**, -ae, *f.*, forest, woods.  
**Silvia**, -ae, *f.*, Silvia.  
**Silvius**, -ī, *m.*, Silvius.  
**similis**, -e, like.  
**simulō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, pretend.  
**sine**, *prep. w. abl.*, without.  
**singulāris**, -e, single, unusual.

**singulī**, -ae, -a, *pl. only*, one at a time.  
**sinister**, -tra, -trum, left (*hand*).  
**sinō**, sinere, **sivī**, situs, let, permit.  
**Sion**, Zion.  
**socius**, -ī, *m.*, comrade, ally.  
**sōl**, sōlis, *m.*, sun.  
**sōlus**, -a, -um, alone, sole, only.  
**solvō**, -ere, solvī, solūtus, loose, pay.  
**somnus**, -ī, *m.*, sleep.  
**sordidus**, -a, -um, dirty.  
**soror**, -ōris, *f.*, sister.  
**Spartacus**, -ī, *m.*, Spartacus.  
**spatium**, -ī, *n.*, space, time, distance, "lap" (*in a race*).  
**speciēs**, speciēi, *f.*, appearance, pretense, kind.  
**spectō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, look at, face.  
**spēlunca**, -ae, *f.*, cave.  
**spērō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, hope (*for*).  
**spēs**, spei, *f.*, hope.  
**spīna**, -ae, *f.*, spina (*a low wall in the Circus, around which the track ran*).  
**spīrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, breathe.  
**statim**, *adv.*, at once.  
**statua**, -ae, *f.*, statue.  
**statuō**, -ere, statui, statūtus, place, establish, determine.  
**statūra**, -ae, *f.*, stature.  
**stō**, stāre, steti, status, stand.  
**stomachus**, -ī, *m.*, stomach.  
**stringō**, -ere, strinxī, strictus, draw tight, graze.  
**studium**, -ī, *n.*, eagerness, interest, zeal; *pl.*, studies.  
**stupidus**, -a, -um, stupid.  
**sub**, *prep.*, under, close to, at the foot of (*w. acc. after verbs of mo-*



tion; *w. abl. after verbs of rest or position*).

subigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctus, subdue.

subitō, *adv.*, suddenly.

sublevō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, lift up from beneath, hold up.

submitto, -ere, -misi, -missus, (send from under), dispatch.

succēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessus, come up, succeed.

sudis, -is, *f.*, stake.

suī, *reflexive pron.*, of himself, herself, itself, themselves.

Sulla, -ae, *m.*, Sulla.

sum, esse, fui, futurus, be, exist.

summus, -a, -um, highest, top of.

sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, take, assume.

super, *prep. w. acc.*, over, above.

superbia, -ae, *f.*, pride.

superbus, -a, -um, haughty.

superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, overcome, excel.

supersum, -esse, -fui, -futurus, be left over.

superus, -a, -um, on high, above.

supplex, *gen. supplicis, adj.*, (kneeling), suppliant, beseeching.

supplicium, -ī, *n.*, punishment, torture.

surgō, -ere, surrēxī, surrēctus, rise.

sūs, suis, *m. and f.*, pig.

suscipio, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, take up, undertake.

sustineō, -ēre, -tinui, -tentus, hold up or back, maintain, endure.

suus, -a, -um, *reflexive adj.*, his, her, its, their; his own, her own, etc.

## T

tālis, -e, such.

tam, *adv.*, so.

tamen, *adv.*, still, nevertheless.

tamquam, *adv.*, as if.

tandem, *adv.*, at last.

tangō, -ere, tetigī, tāctus, touch.

tantum, *adv.*, only.

tantus, -a, -um, so great.

tardē, slowly.

tardus, -a, -um, slow, late.

Tarentinī, -ōrum, *m.*, the Tarentines, inhabitants of Tarentum.

Tarentum, -ī, *n.*, Tarentum (*a city in Italy*).

Tarquiniī, -ōrum, *m.*, the Tarquins (*kings at Rome*).

tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctus, cover, conceal.

tēlum, -ī, *n.*, missile, weapon.

temperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, regulate, refrain from (*w. abl.*).

tempestās, -tātis, *f.*, season, storm.

templum, -ī, *n.*, temple.

temptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, test, try, attempt.

tempus, temporis, *n.*, time.

tendō, -ere, tetendī, tentus, stretch.

teneō, -ēre, tenuī, tentus, hold, keep; memoriā tenēre, remember.

terminus, -ī, *m.*, end, boundary.

terra, -ae, *f.*, land, earth, country.

terreō, -ēre, terrui, territus, terrify, frighten.

tertius, -a, -um, third.

testis, testis, *m.*, witness.

Teutonēs, -um, *m.*, the Teutons (*a people of Germany*).

texō, -ere, texui, textus, weave.

Thāis, -idis, *f.*, Thais.

theātrum, -ī, *n.*, theater.

Ti., *abbreviation for Tiberius.*

Tiberis, -is, *m.*, the Tiber (*a river of Italy*).

Tiberius, -ī, *m.*, Tiberius.

timeō, -ēre, timui, —, fear, be afraid.

timidus, -a, -um, fearful, afraid.

timor, -ōris, *m.*, fear.

Titūrius, -ī, *m.*, Titurius.

Titus, -ī, *m.*, Titus.

toga, -ae, *f.*, toga, cloak.

tolerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, endure.

tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātus, raise, remove.

torqueō, -ēre, torsi, tortus, twist, torture.

tōtus, -a, -um, whole.

trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, give or hand over, deliver.

trādūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, lead across.

trahō, -ere, trāxī, trāctus, draw, drag.

trāciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, throw across, pierce.

trānō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, swim across.

trāns, *prep. w. acc.*, across.

trānsēō, -īre, -iī, -itus, cross.

trānsportō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, carry over, transport.

trecentī, -ae, -a, three hundred.

trēs, tria, three.

tribūnus, -ī, *m.*, tribune (*a Roman official*).

tribuō, -ere, tribui, tributus, bestow, grant.

trigintā, thirty.

triplex, *gen. triplicis, adj.*, threefold.

tristis, -e, sad.

triumphō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, triumph.

triumphus, -ī, *m.*, triumph.

tū, tuī, you.

tum, *adv.*, then.

turbō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, disturb, agitate.

turris, turris, *f.*, tower.

tuus, -a, -um, your, yours (*referring to one person*).

## U

ubi, *adv.*, where (*place*); when (*time*).

ūllus, -a, -um, any.

ulterior, ulterius, farther.

ultimus, -a, -um, last, farthest.

ultrā, *adv.*, beyond, any more.

unda, -ae, *f.*, wave.

ūnus, -a, -um, one.

urbs, urbis, *f.*, city.

ūrō, -ere, ussi, ustus, burn.

ut, *conj.*, in order that, that, so that; as (*w. indic.*).

ūtilis, -e, useful.

ūtor, ūti, ūsus sum, use, make use of (*w. abl.*).

uxor, -ōris, *f.*, wife.

## V

vacca, -ae, *f.*, cow.

vacō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, be free, be uninhabited.

valē! *imper.*, farewell!

valeō, -ēre, valuī, valitūrus, be strong, be well, be powerful.

vāllum, -ī, *n.*, wall.

varius, -a, -um, changing, varying, various.

vāstō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, lay waste, ravage.

- vehō, -ere, vexī, vectus, convey, carry.  
 vel, or; vel . . . vel, either . . . or.  
 veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus, come.  
 ventus, -ī, *m.*, wind.  
 Venus, -eris, *f.*, Venus (*goddess of love and beauty*).  
 vēr, vēris, *n.*, spring.  
 verberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, beat, strike.  
 verbum, -ī, *n.*, word; verba facere, speak, make a speech.  
 Vercingetorix, -rīgis, *m.*, Vercingetorix (*a Gallic chieftain*).  
 vērō, *adv.*, in truth, but.  
 vertō, -ere, vertī, versus, turn.  
 vērus, -a, -um, true.  
 vesper, -erī, *m.*, evening.  
 Vesta, -ae, *f.*, Vesta (*a goddess*).  
 Vestālis, -e, Vestal, of Vesta.  
 vester, -tra, -trum, your, yours (*referring to two or more persons*).  
 vēstīgium, -ī, *n.*, trace.  
 vestis, -is, *f.*, clothing, garment.  
 via, -ae, *f.*, way, road, street; viam mūnīre, build a road.  
 victōria, -ae, *f.*, victory.  
 vīcus, -ī, *m.*, village.  
 videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsus, see; *passive*, seem, be seen.  
 vigilantia, -ae, *f.*, vigilance.  
 vigilia, -ae, *f.*, guard, watchfulness.  
 .  
 vīgintī, twenty.  
 villa, -ae, *f.*, farmhouse, country home.
- vincō, -ere, vīcī, victus, conquer.  
 vindicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, avenge.  
 vīnum, -ī, *n.*, wine.  
 violō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, treat with violence, profane.  
 vir, virī, *m.*, man, hero.  
 virgō, -īnis, *f.*, virgin, maiden.  
 virilis, -e, of a man, manly.  
 viritim, *adv.*, man by man, individually.  
 virtūs, -tūtis, *f.*, manliness, courage.  
 vīs, —, *f.*, force, violence; *pl.*, vīrēs, -ium, strength.  
 vispillo, -ōnis, *m.*, undertaker.  
 vīta, -ae, *f.*, life.  
 vīvō, -ere, vixī, vīctus, live.  
 vīvus, -a, -um, alive, living.  
 vix, *adv.*, scarcely, with difficulty.  
 vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, call, summon.  
 volō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, fly.  
 volō, velle, voluī, —, want, be willing, wish.  
 volvō, -ere, volvī, volūtus, roll; *passive*, tumble.  
 vōmer, -eris, *m.*, plowshare.  
 vōs, vestrum, *pl.* of tū.  
 voveō, -ēre, vōvī, vōtus, vow, promise.  
 vōx, vōcis, *f.*, voice, remark.  
 Vulcānus, -ī, *m.*, Vulcan (*god of fire*).  
 vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, wound.  
 vulnus, vulneris, *n.*, wound.
- Z
- Zama, -ae, *f.*, Zama (*a town in Africa*).

# ENGLISH - LATIN VOCABULARY

## A

**abandon**, relinqūō, -ere, -liquī, -lictus.

**able** (be), possum, posse, potuī, —.

**about**, dē, *w. abl.*; circum, *w. acc.*

**absent** (be), absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus.

**abundance**, cōpia, -ae, *f.*

**accept**, accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus.

**account**: on account of, ob, *w. acc.*

**accuse**, accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

**across**, trāns, *w. acc.*

**admire**, mīror, -ārī, -ātus sum.

**advance**, prōcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus; prōgredior, -gredi, -gressus sum.

**advice**, cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*

**affair**, rēs, rei, *f.*

**afflict**, afficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus.

**afraid** (be), timeō, -ēre, timuī, —.

**after**, use *abl. abs.*; post (*prep. w. acc.*); postquam (*conj.*).

**afterwards**, postea (*adv.*).

**against**, contrā, *w. acc.*

**aid**, auxilium, -ī, *n.*

**alive**, vīvus, -a, -um.

**all**, omnis, -e.

**allow**, permittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus; patior, patī, passus sum.

**ally**, socius, -ī, *m.*

**alone**, sōlus, -a, -um.

**already**, iam.

**also**, etiam.

**although**, use *particip. or abl. abs.*

**always**, semper.

**America**, America, -ae, *f.*

**among**, inter, *w. acc.*

**and**, et, -que.

**Anna**, Anna, -ae, *f.*

**announce**, nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

**answer**, respondeō, -ēre, -spondī, -spōnsus.

**any**, ūllus, -a, -um; **any one**, anything, aliquis, aliquid; quis, quid (*after sī*).

**approach**, accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus (*w. ad*).

**approve**, probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

**arms**, arma, -ōrum, *n.*

**army**, exercitus, -ūs, *m.*

**around**, circum, *w. acc.*

**arouse**, incitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

**arrive**, perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus.

**as**, use *abl. abs.*; **so as to**, ut (*neg. nē*).

**ask**, rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; quaerō, -ere, -sivī, -sītus.

**assault**: take by assault, expugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

**assemble**, conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus.

**at** (near), ad, *w. acc.*; *abl. of time or place*.

**author**, auctor, auctōris, *m.*

**authority**, auctōritās, -tātis, *f.*

**await**, exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

**away** (be), absum, -esse, āfuī, āfutūrus.

**B**

bad, malus, -a, -um.  
 battle, pugna, -ae, *f.*; proelium, -ī, *n.*  
 be, sum, esse, fui, futūrus.  
 beautiful, pulcher, -chra, -chrom.  
 because, *use particip. or abl. abs.*; quod, quia.  
 become, fiō, fierī, factus sum.  
 before, prae, *w. abl.*; ante, *w. acc.*  
 beg, ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; petō, -ere, petīvī, petitus.  
 begin, incipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus;  
   begin battle, proelium committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus.  
 behind, post, *w. acc.*  
 behold, cōspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus.  
 believe, crēdō, -ere, crēdidī, crēditus (*w. dat.*).  
 best, optimus, -a, -um.  
 better, melior, melius.  
 between, inter, *w. acc.*  
 bind, ligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.  
 boat, nāvis, nāvis, *f.*  
 body, corpus, corporis, *n.*  
 book, liber, librī, *m.*  
 booty, praeda, -ae, *f.*  
 born (be), nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum.  
 boundary, terminus, -ī, *m.*; finis, finis, *m.*  
 boy, puer, puerī, *m.*  
 brave, fortis, -e; bravely, fortiter.  
 break, frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctus;  
   rumpō, -ere, rūpī, ruptus; break camp, castra moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus.  
 breathe, spirō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.  
 bring, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus; bring about, efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus;  
   bring back, redūcō, -ere, -dūxī,

-ductus; referō, -ferre, rettulī, relātus.

brother, frāter, frātris, *m.*

but, sed.

buy, emō, -ere, ēmī, ēmptus.

by, ā, ab, *w. abl.*

**C**

Caesar, Caesar, Caesaris, *m.*

call, vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; call together, convocō.

camp, castra, -ōrum, *n.*; break camp, castra moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus; pitch camp, castra pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus.

can, possum, posse, potuī, —.

capture, capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus.

care, cūra, -ae, *f.*

carefully, cum cūra.

carry, portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus; carry on war, bellum gerō, -ere, gessi, gestus.

cart, carrus, -ī, *m.*

catch sight of, cōspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus.

cattle, pecus, pecoris, *n.*

cause, causa, -ae, *f.*

certain, certus, -a, -um; certainly, certē; a certain (one), quīdam, quaedam, quiddam.

chance, cāsus, -ūs, *m.*

changing, varius, -a, -um.

charge, crīmen, crīminis, *n.*; be in charge of, praesum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus; put in charge of, praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus.

children, liberī, -ōrum, *m.*

citizen, cīvis, cīvis, *m.*

climb, ascendō, -ere, ascendī, ascēnsus.

close, claudō, -ere, clausī, clausus.  
 close together, crēber, -bra, -brum.  
 collect, cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, collā-  
 tus; cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctus.  
 colonist, colōnus, -ī, *m*.  
 come, veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus;  
 come together, conveniō.  
 command, imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus  
 (*w. dat.*); iubeō, -ēre, iussī, ius-  
 sus; be in command of, praesum,  
 -esse, -fuī, -futūrus (*w. dat.*).  
 commence, incipiō, -ere, -cēpī,  
 -ceptus.  
 commit, committō, -ere, -mīsī,  
 -missus.  
 compel, cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctus.  
 complete, cōficiō, -ere, -fēcī,  
 -fectus.  
 concerning, dē, *w. abl.*  
 condemn, damnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.  
 confess, fateor, -ērī, fassus sum.  
 confident (be), cōnfidō, -ere, -fīsus  
 sum.  
 confide, have confidence in, cōn-  
 fidō (*w. dat.*).  
 conquer, vincō, -ere, vicī, victus.  
 constant, perpetuus, -a, -um.  
 consult, cōnsulō, -ere, -sulū,  
 -sultus.  
 convenient, commodus, -a, -um.  
 convey, vehō, -ere, vexī, vectus.  
 country, patria, -ae, *f*.  
 courage, animus, -ī, *m*.; virtūs,  
 -tūtis, *f*.  
 cruel, crūdēlis, -e.  
 cry out, clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.  
 cut, caedō, -ere, cecīdī, caesus.

D

danger, periculum, -ī, *n*.  
 daughter, filia, -ae, *f*.

day, diēs, diēī, *m*.  
 death, mors, mortis, *f*.  
 deceive, fallō, -ere, fefellī, falsus.  
 deed, factum, -ī, *n*.  
 deep, altus, -a, -um.  
 (deeply) move, permovēō, -ēre,  
 -mōvī, -mōtus.  
 defeat, pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsus;  
 vincō, -ere, vicī, victus.  
 defend, dēfendō, -ere, -fendī,  
 -fēnsus.  
 deliver, reddō, -ere, -didī, -ditus;  
 trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditus.  
 demand, exigō, -ere, exēgī, exāctus.  
 depart, excēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus;  
 discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus.  
 desert, dēserō, -ere, -seruī, -sertus;  
 relinquō, -ere, -liquī, -lictus.  
 deserve, mereō, -ēre, meruī, meri-  
 tus.  
 destroy, exstinguō, -ere, -stīnxi,  
 -stīnctus.  
 determine, statuō, -ere, statuī,  
 statūtus; cōstituō, -ere,  
 -stituī, -stitūtus.  
 difficult, difficilis, -e.  
 diligence, diligentia, -ae, *f*.  
 dismiss, dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -mis-  
 sus.  
 dispatch, submittō, -ere, -mīsī,  
 -missus.  
 display, ostendō, -ere, -tendī, -ten-  
 tus.  
 distinguished, ēgregius, -a, -um.  
 distribute, distribuō, -ere, -tribuī,  
 -tribūtus.  
 divide, dīvidō, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsus.  
 do, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus; agō,  
 -ere, ēgī, āctus; do harm to,  
 noceō, -ēre, nocuī, nocitus (*w.*  
*dat.*).



down from, *dē, w. abl.*  
 drag, *trahō, -ere, trāxī, trāctus.*  
 drive, *agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus; drive*  
     *back, repellō, -ere, reppulī, re-*  
     *pulsus.*  
 dutiful, *pīus, -a, -um.*  
 duty, *officium, -ī, n.*

## E

eagerness, *studium, -ī, n.*  
 early, *mātūrus, -a, -um.*  
 earn, *mereō, -ēre, meruī, meritus.*  
 earth, *terra, -ae, f.*  
 easy, *facilis, -e.*  
 eight, *octō.*  
 eighth, *octāvus, -a, -um.*  
 either . . . or, *aut . . . aut.*  
 employ, *adhibeō, -ēre, -hibuī,*  
     *-hibitus.*  
 end, *fīnis, fīnis, m.*  
 endure, *sustineō, -ēre, -tinuī,*  
     *-tentus.*  
 enemy, *inimicus, -ī, m. (personal);*  
     *hostis, -is, m. (national).*  
 enforce, *cōnfirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*  
 enlist, *cōnscribō, -ere, -scripsī,*  
     *-scriptus.*  
 enough, *satis.*  
 entire, *tōtus, -a, -um.*  
 envoy, *līgātus, -ī, m.*  
 envy, *invideō, -ēre, -vidī, -vīsus*  
     *(w. dat.).*  
 escape, *ēvādō, -ere, -vāsī, -vāsus.*  
 establish, *cōnfirmō, -āre, -āvī,*  
     *-ātus.*  
 Europe, *Eurōpa, -ae, f.*  
 even, *etiam.*  
 every, *omnis, -e; everything,*  
     *omne or omnia.*  
 evil, *malus, -a, -um.*  
 example, *exemplum, -ī, n.*

excel, *superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus;*  
     *praestō, -āre, praestitī, -stītus*  
     *(w. dat.).*  
 expect, *expectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus*  
 explore, *explōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus*  
 extend, *pertineō, -ēre, -tinuī,*  
     *-tentus (w. ad).*

## F

face, *faciēs, faciēs, f.*  
 fall, *cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsus; fall*  
     *in, incidō, -ere, -cidī, —.*  
 fame, *fāma, -ae, f.*  
 familiar, *nōtus, -a, -um.*  
 family, *familia, -ae, f.*  
 famous, *clārus, -a, -um.*  
 farmer, *agricola, -ae, m.*  
 farthest, *ultimus, -a, -um.*  
 father, *pater, patris, m.*  
 fear (*v.*), *timeō, -ēre, timuī, —;*  
     *(noun), timor, -ōris, m.*  
 feed, *alō, -ere, aluī, alitus.*  
 few, *paucī, -ae, -a.*  
 field, *ager, agrī, m.*  
 fifth, *quīntus, -a, -um.*  
 fight, *pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*  
 fill, fill up, *compleō, -ēre, -plēvī,*  
     *-plētus.*  
 find, *inveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus.*  
 finish, *perficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus.*  
 firm, *fīrmus, -a, -um.*  
 first, *prīmus, -a, -um.*  
 fit, *aptus, -a, -um.*  
 five, *quīnque.*  
 flee, *fugiō, -ere, fugī, fugitūrus.*  
 flight, *fuga, -ae, f.; put to flight, in*  
     *fugam dō, dare, dedī, datus.*  
 flow, *fluō, -ere, fluxī, fluxus.*  
 fold, *plicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*  
 foot, *pēs, pedis, m.; on foot, pedi-*  
     *bus.*



for (*conj.*), *nam*; (*prep.*), *prō*, *w. abl.*; for the sake of, *causā* or *grātiā* (*preceded by gen.*).

force, *manus*, -ūs, *f.*; *vis*, —, *f.*

forces (troops), *cōpiae*, -ārum, *f.*

forest, *silva*, -ae, *f.*

form, *figō*, -ere, *fīnxi*, *fictus*.

fortify, *mūniō*, -ire, -īvi, -ītus.

fortune, *fortūna*, -ae, *f.*

four, *quattuor*.

fourth, *quārtus*, -a, -um.

free (*adj.*), *liber*, -era, -erum; (*v.*), *liberō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.

freedom, *libertās*, *libertātis*, *f.*

fresh, integer, -gra, -grum.

friend, *amicus*, -ī, *m.*

friendly, *amicus*, -a, -um; *familiāris*, -e.

friendship, *amicitia*, -ae, *f.*

frighten, *terreō*, -ēre, -uī, -ītus; frighten thoroughly, *perterreō*.

from, out from, *ē*, *ex*, *w. abl.*; down from, *dē*, *w. abl.*; away from, *ā*, *ab*, *w. abl.*

front: in front of, *prō*, *w. abl.*

further, *amplius*.

## G

Galba, *Galba*, -ae, *m.*

garrison, *praesidium*, -ī, *n.*

gate, *porta*, -ae, *f.*

Gaul, *Gallia*, -ae, *f.*; a Gaul, *Gallus*, -ī, *m.*

general, *dux*, *ducis*, *m.*

Germans, *Germāni*, -ōrum, *m.*

get, get ready, *parō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātus; get together, *comparō*.

gift, *mūnus*, *mūneris*, *n.*

girl, *puella*, -ae, *f.*

give, *dōnō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātus; *dō*, dare, *dedī*, *datus*; give up,

*trādō*, -ere, -didī, -ditus; give back, *reddō*, -ere, -didī, -ditus; give thanks to, *grātiās agō*, -ere, *ēgi*, *actus* (*w. dat.*).

glorious, *clārus*, -a, -um.

glory, *glōria*, -ae, *f.*

go, *eō*, *ire*, *iī*, *itus*; go away, *discēdō*, -ere, -cessī, -cessus; go back, *redeō*, -ire, -īī, -ītus; go out, *exeō*.

god, *deus*, -ī, *m.*

good, *bonus*, -a, -um.

grain, *frūmentum*, -ī, *n.*

grant, *tribuō*, -ere, -uī, -ūtus; *dōnō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātus; *dō*, dare, *dedī*, *datus*; *permittō*, -ere, -misi, -missus.

grasp, *prehendō*, -ere, -hendī, -hēnsus.

grateful, *grātus*, -a, -um; be or feel grateful, *grātiām habeo*, -ēre, -uī, -ītus.

graze, *stringō*, -ere, *strīnxi*, *strictus*.

great, *magnus*, -a, -um; so great, *tantus*, -a, -um; how great, *quantus*, -a, -um.

guard (*noun*), *vigilia*, -ae, *f.*; *praesidium*, -ī, *n.*; (*v.*), *servō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātus; *dēfendō*, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsus.

## H

hand, *manus*, -ūs, *f.*

hang, *pendō*, -ere, *pependī*, *pēnsus*.

happen, *accidō*, -ere, -cidī, —.

hard, *dūrus*, -a, -um; *gravis*, -e.

harm, do harm to, *noceō*, -ēre, -uī, *nocitus* (*w. dat.*).

harmony, *concordia*, -ae, *f.*

harsh, *dūrus*, -a, -um.

**hasten**, *mātūrō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; *properō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

**have**, *habēō*, -ēre, -uī, -itus; **have confidence in**, *cōfidō*, -ere, -fīsus sum (*w. dat.*).

**he, is**; *hic*; *ille*; *often not expressed*.

**head**, *caput*, *capitis*, *n.*

**hear**, *audiō*, -īre, -ivī, -ītus.

**heart**, *cor*, *cordis*, *n.*

**heavy**, *gravis*, -e.

**help**, *auxilium*, -ī, *n.*

**her** (*poss.*), *eius*; (*reflex.*), *suus*, -a, -um.

**hero**, *vir*, *virī*, *m.*

**hesitate**, *dubitō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

**high**, *altus*, -a, -um.

**himself** (*reflex.*), *suī*; (*intens.*), *ipse*.

**hinder**, *impediō*, -īre, -ivī, -ītus.

**his** (*poss.*), *eius*; **his own** (*reflex.*), *suus*, -a, -um.

**hold, hold back**, *retineō*, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus.

**home**, *domus*, -ūs, *f.*

**honor**, *honor*, *honōris*, *m.*

**hope** (*v.*), *spērō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; (*noun*), *spēs*, *speī*, *f.*

**horse**, *equus*, -ī, *m.*

**hostile**, *inimīcus*, -a, -um.

**house**, *domus*, -ūs, *f.*

**how**, *quō modō*.

**how great**, *quantus*, -a, -um.

**human**, *hūmānus*, -a, -um.

**humble**, *humilis*, -e.

**hundred**, *centum*.

## I

**I, ego**, *meī*; *often not expressed*.

**if**, *si*.

**in, in**, *w. abl.*; **in order to**, *ut* (*w. subjunctive*).

**inasmuch as**, *expressed by particip.*

**increase**, *augeō*, -ēre, *auxī*, *auctus*. **influence**, *addūcō*, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus.

**inform**, (*eum*) *certiōrem faciō*, -ere, *fēcī*, *factus*.

**inhabit**, *habitō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; *incolō*, -ere, -coluī, -cultus.

**injury**, *iniūria*, -ae, *f.*

**inquire**, *quaerō*, -ere, *quaesivī*, *quaesitus*.

**instruction**, *disciplīna*, -ae, *f.*

**intercept**, *intercipiō*, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus.

**interest**, *studium*, -ī, *n.*

**into, in**, *w. acc.*

**intrust**, *mandō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; *committō*, -ere, -misi, -missus.

**invent**, *ingō*, -ere, *finxi*, *fictus*.

**island**, *insula*, -ae, *f.*

**it, id**; *hoc*; *illud*; *often not expressed*.

**Italy**, *Italia*, -ae, *f.*

**its** (*poss.*), *eius*; (*reflex.*), *suus*, -a, -um.

**itself** (*reflex.*), *suī* (*see 452*).

## J

**join**, *iungō*, -ere, *iunxi*, *iunctus*.

**journey**, *iter*, *itineris*, *n.*

**judge**, *arbitror*, -ārī, -ātus sum; *reor*, *rērī*, *ratus sum*; *existimō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

**jump, jump down**, *dēsiliō*, -īre, -siluī, -sultus.

**just**, *aequus*, -a, -um; *iustus*, -a, -um.

## K

**keen**, *ācer*, *ācris*, *ācre*.

**keep**, *teneō*, -ēre, -uī, *tentus*; *retineō*, -ēre, -uī, *tentus*; **keep from**, *prohibeō*, -ēre, -uī, -itus.

**kill**, interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus;  
caedō, -ere, cecidī, caesus.

**kind**, genus, generis, *n.*

**king**, rēx, rēgis, *m.*

**kingdom**, rēgnum, -ī, *n.*

**know**, *perfect tenses of* nōscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtus, *or of* cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus; sciō, -īre, scīvī, scītus.

## L

**labor**, labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

**land**, terra, -ae, *f.*; **native land**, patria, -ae, *f.*

**language**, lingua, -ae, *f.*

**large**, magnus, -a, -um.

**last**, extrēmus, -a, -um.

**late**, tardus, -a, -um.

**lay aside**, dēpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus.

**lay waste**, vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

**lead**, dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus;  
**lead across or over**, trādūcō;  
**lead back**, redūcō; **lead forth or out**, prōdūcō.

**leader**, dux, ducis, *m.*; princeps, principis, *m.*

**learn**, nōscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtus;  
cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus;  
discō, -ere, didicī, —.

**leave (behind)**, relīquō, -ere, -liquī, -lictus; **be left**, supersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus.

**leisure**, ōtium, -ī, *n.*

**letter (of alphabet)**, littera, -ae, *f.*;  
(*epistle*), litterae, -ārum, *f.*

**level**, plānus, -a, -um.

**liberty**, libertās, -tātis, *f.*

**lieutenant general**, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*

**life**, vīta, -ae, *f.*

**light (noun)**, lūmen, lūminis, *n.*;  
(*adj.*), levis, -e; **lightly**, leviter.

**like**, similis, -e.

**likeness**, imāgō, imāginis, *f.*

**little**, parvus, -a, -um.

**live (a life)**, agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus;  
 **dwell**, habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus;  
**incolō**, -ere, -coluī, -cultus.

**long**, longus, -a, -um; **no longer**, nōn iam.

**look at**, spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

**loose**, solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtus.

**lose**, āmittō, -ere, -misi, -missus.

**love**, amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

**lower**, inferior, inferius.

## M

**maintain**, sustineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus.

**make**, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus.

**man**, vir, virī, *m.*; homō, hominis, *m.*; **old man**, senex, senis, *m.*

**manage**, gerō, -ere, gessi, gestus;  
administrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

**manner**, modus, -ī, *m.*

**many**, multi, -ae, -a.

**march**, iter, itineris, *n.*

**Marcus**, Mārcus, -ī, *m.*

**Marius**, Marius, -ī, *m.*

**master**, dominus, -ī, *m.*

**meet**, occurrō, -ere, -curri, -cursus.

**memory**, memoria, -ae, *f.*

**merchant**, mercātor, -ōris, *m.*

**messenger**, nūntius, -ī, *m.*

**middle of**, medius, -a, -um.

**mind**, animus, -ī, *m.*

**money**, pecūnia, -ae, *f.*

**mother**, māter, mātis, *f.*

**motto**, sententia, -ae, *f.*

**mountain**, mōns, montis, *m.*

move, moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus;  
 move deeply, permoveō.  
 much, multus, -a, -um.  
 my, meus, -a, -um; myself (*reflex.*), mei; (*intens.*), ipse, ipsa, ipsum.

## N

name, nōmen, nōminis, *n.*  
 nation, gēns, gentis, *f.*  
 native land, patria, -ae, *f.*  
 nature, nātūra, -ae, *f.*  
 near, ad, *w. acc.*  
 necessary, necessārius, -a, -um.  
 neighboring, finitimus, -a, -um.  
 neither (*adj.*), neuter, -tra, -trum.  
 neither . . . nor (*conj.*), neque . . . neque.  
 new, novus, -a, -um.  
 next, proximus, -a, -um.  
 nine, novem.  
 no (*adj.*), nūllus, -a, -um; no longer (*adv.*), nōn iam; no one (*pron.*), nēmō, *dat.* nēmini, *m.*  
 noble, nōbilis, -e.  
 nor, neque.  
 not, nōn.  
 notable, clārus, -a, -um.  
 nothing, nihil, *indecl., n.*  
 notice, animadvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus.  
 now, nunc.  
 number, numerus, -ī, *m.*

## O

obedient (be), pāreō, -ēre, -uī, pāritus (*w. dat.*).  
 obey, pāreō.  
 obtain, obtineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus.  
 of (concerning), dē, *w. abl.*  
 offer, dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus.

old man, senex, senis, *m.*  
 on, in, *w. abl.*; on account of, ob, *w. acc.*  
 one, ūnus, -a, -um; one at a time, one by one, singulī, -ae, -a; any one, aliquis or quis; one . . . the other, alter . . . alter.  
 opinion, sententia, -ae, *f.*  
 or, aut.  
 order (*v.*), iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussus; imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (*w. dat.*); (*noun*), ōrdō, ōrdinis, *m.*; in order to, ut.  
 other, alius, -a, -ud; the other (of two), alter, -era, -erum.  
 ought, dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.  
 our, noster, -tra, -trum.  
 ourselves (*intens.*), ipsī.  
 out of, ē, ex, *w. abl.*  
 over, trāns.  
 own, proprius, -a, -um; his own, see his (*reflex.*).

## P

paint, pingō, -ere, pīnxi, pictus.  
 part, pars, partis, *f.*  
 pay, solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtus; pendō, -ere, pependī, pēnsus.  
 peace, pāx, pācis, *f.*  
 people, populus, -ī, *m.*  
 permit, permittō, -ere, -misi, -missus.  
 persuade, impellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus.  
 pitch camp, castra pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus.  
 place (*noun*), locus, -ī, *m. (pl.)*, loca, -ōrum, *n.*; (*v.*), pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus.  
 plan, cōsiliū, -ī, *n.*  
 please, be pleasing to, placeō, -ēre, placuī, placitus (*w. dat.*).

pleasing, grātus, -a, -um.  
 point out, mōnstrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.  
 power, potestās, -tātis, *f.*; imperium, -ī, *n.*  
 powerful (be), valeō, -ēre, valui, valitūrus.  
 prepare, parō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.  
 present (be), adsum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus.  
 present, dōnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.  
 preserve, cōservō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.  
 press, press hard, premō, -ere, pressi, pressus.  
 pretense, speciēs, speciēi, *f.*  
 prevent, prohibeō, -ēre, -ui, -itus.  
 price, pretium, -ī, *n.*  
 prisoner, captivus, -ī, *m.*  
 promise, voveō, -ēre, vōvi, vōtus.  
 prove, probō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.  
 public, pūbicus, -a, -um.  
 punishment, poena, -ae, *f.*; supplicium, -ī, *n.*  
 pursue, premō, -ere, pressi, pressus.  
 put, pōnō, -ere, posui, positus;  
 put to flight, in fugam dō, dare, dedi, datus; put out, exstinguō, -ere, -stīnxī, -stīnctus; put in charge of, praeiciō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus.

## Q

quick, celer, celeris, celere.  
 quickly, celeriter.

## R

race, genus, generis, *n.*  
 rank, ōrdō, ōrdinis, *m.*  
 ransom, redimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēptus.

rather, expressed by comparative.  
 read, legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus.  
 ready, parātus, -a, -um; get ready, parō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.  
 realize, sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus.  
 reason, causa, -ae, *f.*; ratiō, -ōnis, *f.*  
 receive, accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus.  
 refrain, temperō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus (*v. ab*).  
 region, regiō, -ōnis, *f.*  
 reinforcements, auxilia, -ōrum, *n.*  
 remain, maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsus.  
 remarkable, ēgregius, -a, -um; clārus, -a, -um.  
 remember, memoriā teneō, -ēre, -ui, tentus.  
 remove, removeō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus.  
 report (*noun*), fāma, -ae, *f.*; (*v.*), nūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus; referō, -ferre, rettulī, relātus.  
 repulse, repellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsus.  
 reserve, reservō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.  
 rest (of), reliquus, -a, -um.  
 rest, quiēs, quiētis, *f.*  
 retreat, cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessus; sē recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus.  
 reward, praemium, -ī, *n.*  
 right, iūs, iūris, *n.*  
 river, flūmen, flūminis, *n.*  
 road, via, -ae, *f.*; iter, itineris, *n.*  
 roll, volvō, -ere, volvī, volūtus.  
 Roman, Rōmānus, -a, -um; a Roman, Rōmānus, -ī, *m.*  
 rout, fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsus.  
 run, currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursus.

## S

sacred, sacer, -cra, -crum.  
 safety, salūs, -ūtis, *f*.  
 sail, nāvigō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.  
 sailor, nauta, -ae, *m*.  
 sake of, for the, causā or grātiā  
   (*w. gen. preceding*).  
 same, idem, eadem, idem.  
 save, servō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus; cōn-  
   servō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.  
 say, dicō, -ere, dixi, dictus.  
 sea, mare, maris, *n*.  
 see, videō, -ēre, vīdi, vīsus.  
 seek, petō, -ere, petivī, petitus.  
 seem, videor, -ērī, vīsus sum.  
 seize, capiō, -ere, cēpi, captus;  
   occupō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.  
 select, dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus.  
 self (*intens.*), ipse, ipsa, ipsum.  
 senate, senātus, -ūs, *m*.  
 send, mittō, -ere, misī, missus;  
   send away, dīmittō; send back,  
   remittō; send ahead, praemittō.  
 set, pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus;  
   prōpōnō; set out, proficiscor,  
   proficisci, profectus sum.  
 settler, colōnus, -ī, *m*.  
 seven, septem.  
 seventh, septimus, -a, -um.  
 severe, gravis, -e.  
 shape, fōrma, -ae, *f*.  
 sharply, ācriter.  
 she, ea; haec; illa; *often not ex-*  
   *pressed*.  
 ship, nāvis, nāvis, *f*.  
 shout (*v.*), clāmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus;  
   (*noun*), clāmor, -ōris, *m*.  
 show, mōnstrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.  
 sight: catch sight of, cōspiciō,  
   -ere, -spexī, -spectus.  
 sign, signal, signum, -ī, *n*.

similar, similis, -e.  
 since, *use abl. abs.*; quod (*conj.*).  
 sister, soror, sorōris, *f*.  
 sit, sedeō, -ēre, sēdi, sessus.  
 size, magnitūdō, -tūdinis, *f*.  
 skill, ars, artis, *f*.  
 slave, servus, -ī, *m*.  
 slowly, tardē.  
 small, parvus, -a, -um.  
 so, ita; so great, tantus, -a, -um.  
 so as to, ut; so as not to, nē, *w.*  
   *subj.*  
 soldier, miles, militis, *m*.  
 solid, firmus, -a, -um.  
 someone, something, aliquis,  
   aliquid.  
 son, filius, -ī, *m*.  
 speak, loquor, loquī, locūtus sum.  
 speech, ōrātiō, -ōnis, *f*.  
 speed, celeritās, -tātis, *f*.  
 spend (years), agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus.  
 spirit, animus, -ī, *m*.  
 stand, stō, -āre, steti, status.  
 state, civitās, -tātis, *f*.  
 steep, praeceps, *gen. praecipitis*.  
 stick, haereō, -ēre, haesi, haesus.  
 stop, cōsistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitus.  
 storm, tempestās, -tātis, *f*.  
 strange, novus, -a, -um.  
 street, via, -ae, *f*.  
 stretch, tendō, -ere, tetendī, tentus.  
 strong, firmus, -a, -um; fortis,  
   -e; be strong, valeō, -ēre, valui,  
   valitūrus.  
 struggle, contendō, -ere, -tendi,  
   -tentus.  
 studies, studia, -ōrum, *n*.  
 such (great), tantus, -a, -um;  
   in such a way, ita.  
 suffer, patior, pati, passus sum.  
 suitable, commodus, -a, -um.



summer, aestās, -tātis, *f.*  
 summon, vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.  
 supply, cōpia, -ae, *f.*  
 surprise, opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus.  
 surround, circumveniō, -īre, -vērī, -ventus.  
 swear, iūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.  
 swift, celer, celeris, celere; rapidus, -a, -um.  
 swiftly, celeriter, rapidē.  
 swiftness, celeritās, -tātis, *f.*

## T

take, capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus;  
 take by assault, expugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.  
 tall, altus, -a, -um.  
 teach, doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctus.  
 teacher, magister, -trī, *m.*  
 tell, dicō, -ere, dixī, dictus.  
 ten, decem.  
 tenth, decimus, -a, -um.  
 terms (of peace), condiciō, -ōnis, *f.*  
 terrify, terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.  
 territory, finēs, -ium, *m. pl.*  
 than, quam.  
 thank, grātiās agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus (*w. dat.*).  
 that (*demonst.*), ille, illa, illud; is, ea, id; that of yours, iste, ista, istud.  
 that (*relat.*), quī, quae, quod.  
 that, in order that, so that (*conj.*), ut; that . . . not, nē (*purpose*), ut . . . nōn (*result*).  
 their (*poss.*), eōrum, eārum, eōrum; (*reflex.*), suus, -a, -um.  
 themselves (*reflex.*), sui; (*intens.*), ipsī, -ae, -a.  
 there (*in that place*), ibi.

they, eī, eae, ea; illi, illae, illa; often not expressed.  
 thing, rēs, rei, *f.*; often not expressed.  
 think, putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; existimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; reor, rēri, ratus sum; arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum.  
 this (*demonst.*), hic, haec, hoc; is, ea, id.  
 thoroughly frighten, perterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.  
 thousand, mille.  
 threaten, instō, -āre, institi, —.  
 three, trēs, tria.  
 through, per, *w. acc.*  
 throw, iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactus; throw out, ēiciō, -ere, ēiēcī, ēiectus.  
 thrust out, ēiciō, -ere, ēiēcī, ēiectus.  
 tie, ligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.  
 till, colō, -ere, -uī, cultus.  
 timber, māteria, -ae, *f.*  
 time, tempus, -oris, *n.*; one at a time, singulī, -ae, -a.  
 to, ad, *w. acc.*; (*purpose*), ut.  
 tongue, lingua, -ae, *f.*  
 too, expressed by comparative.  
 top (of), summus, -a, -um.  
 touch, tangō, -ere, tetigī, tāctus.  
 town, oppidum, -ī, *n.*  
 train, exerceō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, instituō, -ere, -stitui, -stitūtus.  
 transport, trānsportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.  
 troops, cōpiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*  
 true, vērus, -a, -um.  
 try, experior, -iri, -pertus sum; temptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.  
 two, duo, duae, duo.  
 twofold, duplex, *gen. duplicis.*



## U

under, sub, *w. acc. or abl.*  
 understand, intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus.  
 undertake, suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus.  
 unfold, explicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.  
 uninhabited (be), vacō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.  
 unjustly, cum iniuriā.  
 unlike, dissimilis, -e.  
 unwilling (be), nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —.  
 urge on, incitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.  
 useful, ūtilis, -e.  
 use up, cōnsūmō, -ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptus.

## V

varying, varius, -a, -um.  
 very, *expressed by superlative; very*  
     carefully, magnā cūrā.  
 victory, victōria, -ae, *f.*  
 voice, vōx, vōcis, *f.*  
 vow, voveō, -ēre, vōvī, vōtus.

## W

wage war, bellum gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus.  
 wagon, carrus, -ī, *m.*  
 walk, gradior, gradī, gressus sum.  
 want, volō, velle, voluī, —.  
 war, bellum, -ī, *n.*  
 warn, moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.  
 waste (lay), vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.  
 water, aqua, -ae, *f.*  
 wave, unda, -ae, *f.*  
 way, via, -ae, *f.*

we, nōs; *often not expressed.*  
 weapons, arma, -ōrum, *n.*  
 well, bene.  
 what, (*pron.*), quis, quid; (*adj.*), quī, quae, quod.  
 when, ubi, cum; *often expressed by particip. or abl. abs.*  
 where, ubi.  
 which, quī, quae, quod.  
 while, dum, cum; *often expressed by particip.*  
 who (*rel. pron.*), quī, quae, quod; (*interrog. pron.*), quis, quid.  
 whole, tōtus, -a, -um.  
 why, cūr.  
 winter, hiems, hiemis, *f.*  
 wish, volō, velle, voluī, —.  
 wish not, nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —.  
 with, cum, *w. abl.*; *sometimes abl. alone.*  
 witness, testis, testis, *m.*  
 wonder, mīror, -ārī, -ātus sum.  
 woods, silva, -ae, *f.*  
 word, verbum, -ī, *n.*  
 work (*v.*), labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; (*noun*), opus, operis, *n.*; labor, -ōris, *m.*  
 worthy, dignus, -a, -um.  
 wound, vulnus, vulneris, *n.*  
 write, scribō, -ere, scripsī, scriptus.  
 wrong, iniūria, -ae, *f.*

## Y

year, annus, -ī, *m.*  
 you, tū (*sing.*); vōs (*pl.*); *often not expressed.*  
 your, tuus, -a, -um; vester, -tra, -trum.

# INDEX

(The numbers refer to sections unless otherwise stated.)

- ā, ab**, 83, 182
- abbreviations** (*see word studies*)
- ablative case**, 55
  - absolute, 292-293
  - of accompaniment, 150-151
  - of agent, 181-182
  - of cause, 97, footnote 1
  - of description, 586
  - of manner, 250-251
  - of means, 56-57
  - of measure of difference, 573
  - of place from which, 84
  - of place where, 75,*a*
  - of respect, 322-323
  - of separation, 84, 595, footnote 1
  - of time, 338
- ablative**, summary of uses, 302
- accent**, 611
- accompaniment**, 150-151
- accusative case**, 25, 627,*b*
  - as subject of infinitive, 205, 378
  - of direct object, 25-26, 626,*b*
  - of extent, 481
  - of place to which, 96, 536
  - two accusatives, 591, 2(*a*)1
  - with prepositions, 96, etc.
- adjectives**, 616
  - agreement, 14-15, 112, 114
  - comparison, 399, 650; of *-er* adjectives, 412; of *-lis* adjectives, 414; of irregular adjectives, 419, 650,*b*
  - dative with, 415
  - declension of comparatives, 400, 651
  - of first and second declensions, 79, 90, 100, 112, 646; of third declension, 316, 647; irregular, 355, 649
  - position of, 16(*b*)
  - possessive, 455, 616,*b*, 3
  - predicate, 16(*c*), 562
- adverbs**
  - comparison, 408, 652; of irregular adverbs, 420, 652
  - formation, 407
- agent**, ablative of, 181-182; dative of, 579
- agō**, different meanings of, 229
- agreement**
  - of adjective, 14-15
  - of appositive, 130
  - of relative pronoun, 244
  - of verb, 28-29, 183
- aliquis**, declension of 556(*b*), 659
- alphabet**, 603
- antecedent**, 241
- apposition**, 129-130
- assimilation** (*see word studies*)
- base**, 63,*a*
- cardinal numerals**, 272, 653
- case**, 7, 625 (*see also nominative, etc.*)
- causā and grātiā**, 577, 584
- causal clauses**
  - quia*, Lesson LXXXIII
  - quod*, Lesson XXIII
- clauses**, 514, 638
- color scheme for learning verb forms**, 227
- comparison**
  - of adjectives, 399, 412, 414, 419, 650
  - of adverbs, 408, 420, 652
- complementary infinitive**, 107
- conjugations**
  - first (*parō*), 20, 660

**[conjugations]**

- second (*habēō*), 69, 661
- third (*pōnō*), 123, 662; *-iō* verbs (*capiō*), 135, 664
- fourth (*mūniō*), 136, 663
- summary of, 660-671
- connected Latin, how to study, 230
- connected passages for translation (*see also* Latin plays, supplementary reading)
  - Columbus, 52
  - Sicily, 67
  - Slaves, 88
  - Spartacus to the Gladiators, 110
  - War and Victory, 119
  - Brothers, 153
  - A Clever Reply, 208
  - An Ancient Philanthropist, 268
  - Romulus and Remus, 309
  - Horatius at the Bridge, 354
  - Cincinnatus, the Plowman-Dicator, 371
  - A "Pyrrhic Victory," 424
  - Pyrrhus and Fabricius, 449
  - The Hero Regulus, 493
  - Scipio, 512
  - The Gracchi, 559
  - Marius and Sulla, 589
  - The Story of Lucius:
    - Forum Rōmānum*, 170
    - Lūdus*, 231
    - Circus*, 284
    - Deī*, 330
    - Virginēs Vestālēs*, 393
    - Caesaris Triumphus*, 466
    - Civis Novus Iter Facit*, 533
- consonants, 606
- conundrum, 166
- conversation, 121, 171, 232, 282;
  - helps for, 690
- copula (*see* linking verb)
- cum, in descriptive clauses, 524-525
- dative case, 48, 627,*c*
  - of agent, 579

- of indirect object, 48-49, 537
- of purpose, 572
- of reference, 571
- with adjectives, 415
- with special verbs, 541
- with transitive verbs, 537
- declensions
  - first (a summary), 63, 640
  - second, nouns and adjectives
    - in *-us*, 79, 640; in *-er* and *-r*, 90, 641; in *-um*, 100, 641
  - third, masculine and feminine nouns, 286, 642; neuters, 296, 642; *i*-stem nouns, 305, 642; gender of, 312; adjectives, 316
  - fourth, 550, 643
  - fifth, 566, 644
  - summary of, 640-659
- demonstratives, 333, 341-342, 348, 615,*d*, 656; position of, 334
- deponent verbs, 503-504, 665
- derivative match, 532
- derivatives (*see* word studies)
- descriptive ablative, 586
- descriptive *cum* clauses, 524-525
- diphthongs, 605
- direct object, 25-26, 626,*b*
- domus, declension of, 549, 645
- duo, declension of, 476, 649
- ē*, *ex*, 83
- ego, declension of, 451, 654
- elementary grammar, 612-639
- enclitics, 120
- eō*, conjugation of, 519, 669
- extent of time or space, 481
- extrēmus, use of, 421
- ferō, conjugation of, 395, 668;
  - fifth declension, 566, 644
- fiō, conjugation of, 561, 671
- first conjugation, 20, 660
- first declension, 63, 640
- fourth conjugation, 136, 155, 663
- fourth declension, 550, 643

- French through Latin, 672-682
- future active infinitive, 374
- future active participle, 363
- future passive participle, 578;  
with *ad*, *causā*, or *grātiā*, 579;  
distinguished from gerund, 585
- future perfect indicative, 630,*f*;  
active, 198; passive, 219
- future tense, 630,*c*; formation of, 43, 145
- gender, 6, 624  
in the first declension, 9  
in the second declension, 79, 90, 100  
in the third declension, 312  
in the fourth declension, 551  
in the fifth declension, 566
- genitive case, 38  
of description, 586  
of nouns and adjectives in *-ius*, 79(*d*), in *-ium*, 100(*c*)  
of possession, 38, 627,*d*
- gerund, 583-584; with *ad*, *causā*, or *grātiā*, 584
- gerundive (see future passive participle)
- grammar, elementary, 612-639
- grātiā*, 577
- hic*, declension of, 333, 656
- i*-stem nouns, 305, 642
- idem*, declension of, 348, 656
- idioms, 161, 535, 577
- ille*, declension of, 333, 656
- imperfect indicative, 193; active, 33; passive, 176
- imperfect subjunctive, 446
- indefinite pronouns, 556, 659
- indirect object, 48-49, 537
- indirect question, 488-489
- indirect statement, 376-378, 459;  
tenses used, 383-384; compared with indirect question, 490
- infinitive, 634  
as object (complementary), 107, 204  
as subject, 106(*a*)  
formation, 106, 221, 368, 374  
in indirect statements, 376-378  
tenses of, how they differ, 383-384
- inflection, 622
- intensive pronoun in English and Latin, 352, 656
- interrogative pronoun and adjective, 255, 658
- intransitive verbs, 617,*a*
- iō* verbs of the third conjugation, 135, 664
- ipse*, declension of, 352, 656
- irregular adjectives, 355, 649
- irregular comparison  
of adjectives, 419  
of adverbs, 420
- irregular nouns, 645
- irregular verbs, 666-671
- is*, declension and use of, 341-342, 656
- Latin phrases and quotations (see word studies)
- Latin plays  
*Victōria Mātris*, 345  
*Sāturnālia*, 590
- Latin songs  
America, p. 348  
*Gaudeāmus Igitur*, p. 346  
*Integer Vitae*, p. 347  
The Star-spangled Banner, p. 348
- linking verb, 12, 26, 617,*b*
- loan words (see word studies)
- locative case, 597
- Lucius, The Story of (see connected passages for translation)
- mālō*, conjugation of, 670
- manner, ablative of, 250-251

- means, ablative of, 56-57  
 measure of difference, ablative of, 573  
 mille, declension of, 477, 649  
 modifiers, 612  
 mood (*see* indicative, etc.)  
  
 names of months and states (*see* word studies)  
 -ne (enclitic), 120  
 nē, in purpose clause, 433-434  
 nēmō, declension of, 405, 645  
 nōlō, conjugation of, 545, 670  
 nominative case, as subject and predicate, 13, 562, 627,*a*  
 notebook, vocabulary, p. xviii  
 nouns (*see* first declension, etc.), 614; in predicate, 562  
 number, 5, 623  
 numerals  
     cardinals, 272, 653  
     ordinals, 475, 653  
  
 object, direct, 25-26, 626,*b*; indirect, 48-49, 537  
 order of words (*see* word order)  
 ordinal numerals, 475, 653  
  
 participial stem, 236  
 participles (*see* present participle, etc.), 635; used as clauses, 276; in ablative absolute, 292  
 passive voice, 176  
 past perfect indicative, 630,*e*; active, 197, passive, 214  
 past perfect subjunctive, 495  
 perception cards, 66  
 perception device for learning verb, 281  
 perfect infinitive, active, 368; passive, 374  
 perfect participle, 211; used as adjective and noun, 263  
 perfect stem, 187  
 perfect subjunctive, 495  
 perfect system defined, 198, note
- perfect tense  
     distinguished from imperfect, 193  
     formation of active, 188; of passive, 213  
 personal endings, 20, 188; passive, 176  
 personal pronouns, 451, 615,*a*, 654  
 phrases and quotations (*see* word studies)  
 place from which, 84  
 place to which, 96  
 place where, 75,*a*  
 plays, Latin  
     *Victōria Mātris*, 345  
     *Sāturnālia*, 590  
 position (*see* word order)  
 possession (*see* genitive)  
 possessive adjectives, 455, 616,*b*,*3*  
 possum, conjugation of, 265, 667  
 post, postea, postquam, 510  
 predicate, 612  
 predicate nominative, 13, 562  
 predicate nouns and adjectives, 13, 562  
 prefixes (*see* word studies)  
 prepositions, 619; of place, 75, 84, 96  
 present indicative, formation of, 20  
 present infinitive, 106  
 present participle, 361-362, 648  
 present stem, 20  
 present subjunctive, 426-427, 438  
 present system, 61  
 principal parts, 235  
     of first conjugation, 237  
     of second conjugation, 249  
     of third conjugation, 260  
     of fourth conjugation, 271  
 progressive verb forms, 631,*a*  
 pronouns  
     demonstrative, 333, 615,*d*, 656  
     indefinite, 556, 659  
     intensive, 352, 656

## [pronouns]

interrogative, 255, 615,*b*, 658personal, 451, 615,*a*, 654

reflexive, 452-453, 655

relative, 241, 615,*c*, 657

pronunciation, 603-611; exercises in, 3-4

## purpose

dative of, 572

sequence in clauses of, 447

subjunctive of, 433-434

with *ad*, *causā*, or *gratiā*, 584

quantity, of vowels, 608; of syllables, 610

questions, 120; indirect, 488-489

*qui*, declension of, 241, 657*quidam*, declension of, 556(*c*), 659*quis* (interrogative), 255, 658; (indefinite), 556(*a*)quotations (*see* word studies)

reference, books for, p. 302

reference, dative of, 571

reflexive pronouns, 452-453, 655

relative pronouns, 615,*c*; in English, 242; in Latin, 241, 243, 657

respect, ablative of, 322-323

result, subjunctive of, 469-470; 515,*b*

reviews, Lessons X, XIX, XXIX, XXXIX, XLVIII, LVII, LXVIII, LXXIX, XC

second conjugation, 69, 661

second declension, 79, 90, 100, 640-641

sentence analysis, 58

separation, ablative of, 84, 595, footnote 1

sequence (harmony) of tenses, 441; in temporal clauses, 525; in purpose clauses, 447; summary of, 498-499

songs (*see* Latin songs)

Spanish through Latin, 672-675; 683-689

spelling helps (*see* word studies)

states, names of, from Latin, 527

stem of verbs

present, 20

perfect, 187

tense stems, 236

subject, 612; of verb, 13; of infinitive, 205, 378

subjunctive, formation

of imperfect, 446

of perfect and past perfect, 495

of present, 427, 438

of *sum*, 440

subjunctive, uses of, 426

*cum* clauses, 524-525

indirect questions, 488-490

purpose, 433-434

purpose and result compared, 471

result, 469-470

substantive clauses, 515

volitive, 429, 515,*a*

subordinate clauses, review of, 514

substantive clauses, 514-515

substantives, 168

suffixes (*see* word studies)*sui*, declension of, 452, 655*sum*, conjugation of, 95, 666

summary of inflections, 640-671

*summus*, use of, 421

supplementary reading, pp. 297-301, 349-384

*suus* and *eius*, use of, 455

syllables, 609; quantity of, 610

synonyms, 531

synopsis, 636

syntax outlines for final review, 591-602

tense (*see* present tense, etc.)

tense sequence, 441, 447; summary of, 498-499

tense signs (*see* present tense, etc.)

tense stems, 236



- third conjugation**, 123, 662; *-iō* verbs, 135, 664  
**third declension**, 286, 296, 642  
     adjectives, 316  
     gender, 312  
     *i*-stems, 305, 642  
**time**, ablative of, 338  
**to**, with verbs of motion, 536  
**tōtus**, declension of, 355(b)  
**transitive verbs**, 617,*a*  
**translating**, hints for reading and, 169  
**trēs**, declension of, 476, 649  
**tū**, declension of, 451, 654  
  
**ūnus**, declension of, 476, 649  
**ut**, in clauses of purpose, 433-434;  
     of result, 470  
**ut nōn**, in clauses of result, 470  
  
**verbal signboards**, 472  
**verbs**, 617  
     agreement with subject, 29, 183  
     conjugation of (*see* conjugations)  
     deponent, 503-504  
     intransitive, 617,*a*  
     irregular, 666-671  
     perfect system, 187; passive, 212  
     personal endings, 20, 188; passive, 176  
     position of, 28(c)  
     present stem, 20, 236  
     present system, a summary of, 61  
     principal parts, 235, 237, 249, 260, 271  
     progressive and emphatic forms, 20,*b*, 631  
     summary of, 660-671  
     transitive, 617,*a*  
**vīs**, declension of, 366, 645  
**vocabulary matches**, 391  
**vocabulary notebook**, p. xviii  
**vocative case**, 596  
**voice**, 632; active, 174-175; passive, 176  
  
**volitive subjunctive**, 429, 515,*a*  
**volō**, conjugation of, 545, 670  
**vowel changes** (*see* word studies)  
**vowels**, 604; quantity of, 608;  
     shortening of, 20,*a*, 176, footnote 1, 578, footnote 1  
  
**word formation** (*see* word studies)  
**word order**, 16(b), 28(c), 141, 334, 421  
**word sense**, how to develop, 229  
**word studies**, English and Latin  
     abbreviations, of Latin titles, 543; used in English, 436  
     assimilation, 93  
     derivative studies, 11, 47, 160, 248, 404  
     English spelling, 351, 358, 373, 382, 479  
     English words from Latin names, 485  
     English words with Latin base, 126, 128, 443  
     importance, of verb, 259; of third declension, 332  
     intensive prefixes, 240  
     Latin abbreviations used in English, 436, 577  
     Latin base in English words, 126, 128, 443  
     Latin forms in English (*see* loan words, Latin verb forms)  
     Latin forms, of English names, 581; of names of states, 527  
     Latin influence upon English, 270, 275  
     Latin in medicine, 575  
     Latin phrases and quotations used in English, 24, 54, 109,*a*, 140, 144, 180, 186,*a*, 218, 254, 267, 289, 301, 314,*b*, 321, 337, 347, 360, 397, 417, 431, 458, 517, 558, 564, 588  
     Latin root a guide to correct English use, 501



## [word studies]

Latin verb forms in English, 72, 207

legal phrases in English, 417, 517

loan words, of first declension, 10, 19, 32, 37, 42, 77; of second declension, 82, 93, 103, 109; of third declension, 299, 308, 319; of fourth and fifth declensions, 569; of irregular comparative and superlative forms, 423; of future passive participle, 588

medical terms in English, 575

months, names of, 344

musical terms in English, 564  
names, Latin forms of English, 581; of months, 344; of states, 527

Norman-French influence, 522

prefixes, intensive, 240

prefixes, Latin (and English), *ab-*, *dē-*, *ex-*, 87; *ad-*, 93; *in-*, 98; *con-* (*com-*), 149; *re-*, 158; *prō-*, 186; *in-* (neg.),

*dis-*, 195; *sub-*, *per-*, 210; *inter-*, *ob-*, 234; *ante-*, *trāns-*, 259; *prae-*, *contrā-*, *bene-*, *male-*, 468; *ne-*, *circum-*, *super-*, 509

Renaissance, effect of the, 554

spelling helps, English, 351, 358, 373, 382, 479

suffixes, Latin (and English), *-ia*, 201; *-tia*, 207; *-tās*, 314, a; *-or*, 367; *-antia* (*-entia*), 382; *-iō*, 406; *-men*, *-ium*, *-tūs*, 445; *-ilis*, *-bilis*, *-āris*, *-ārius*, 507; *-ānus*, *-ālis*, *-icus*, *-ivus*, *-ōsus*, 539; *-tūdō*, *-mentum*, *-tūra*, *-faciō*, 548

third declension, importance of, 332

titles, abbreviations of, 543

verb, importance of, 259

vowel changes, 134, 443, 487

word families, 173, 291

word formation (*see* prefixes, suffixes, vowel changes)

words, choice of, 311; how to learn, 327, 483





Eugene Newberry





